



Brit.

Scriptores

485 ad

(92)

E

<36621791520011

S

<36621791520011

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

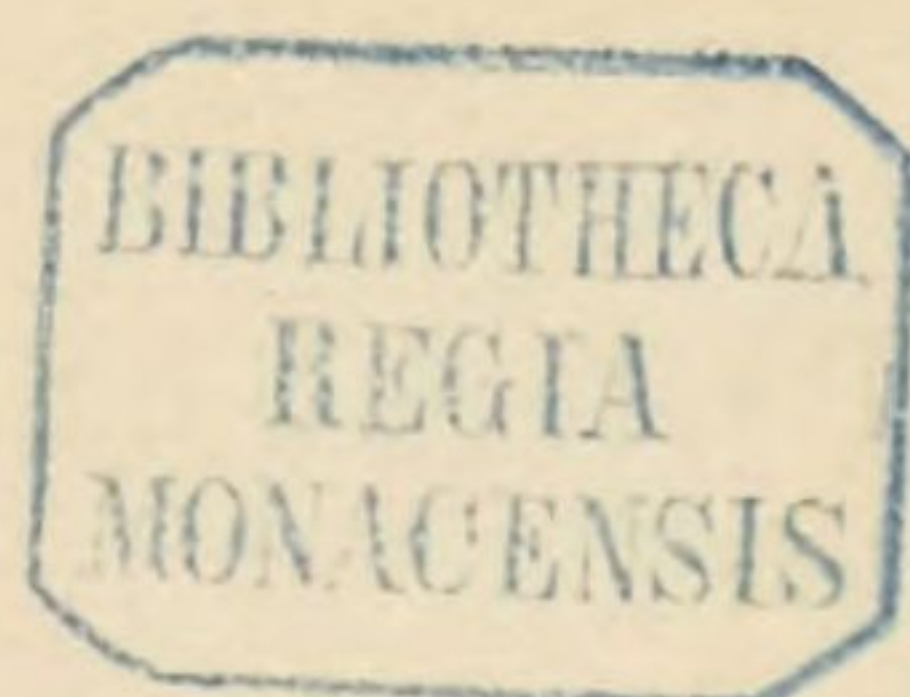
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.



THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS
OF
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

ON the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

THE CHRONICLE
OF
ROBERT MANNING OF BRUNNE.

[*All Rights Reserved.*]

THE
STORY OF ENGLAND

BY

ROBERT MANNING OF BRUNNE,

A.D. 1338.

EDITED

FROM MSS. AT LAMBETH PALACE AND THE INNER TEMPLE,

BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL,

M.A. TRIN. HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL., BERLIN.

PART I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,
BY EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE,
PRINTERS TO THE QUEEN'S MOST EXCELLENT MAJESTY.

And to be purchased, either directly or through any Bookseller, from
EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C.; or
ADAM AND CHARLES BLACK, 6, NORTH BRIDGE, EDINBURGH; or
HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., 104, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.

1887.

INTRODUCTION.

~~~~~

§ 1. Robert of Brunne, a forerunner of Chaucer.

§ 2. His personal history. Born at Bourne, in Lincolnshire, lived at Sempringham, p. ii.

§ 3. The Priors of Sempringham, A.D. 1288-1332, p. iv.

§ 4. Robert of Brunne, a member of the Gilbertine Order: sketch of the life there, p. vi.

§ 5. Robert of Brunne's later life, and his motives in writing his books, p. xii.

§ 6. His *Chronicle* is Fiction; his *Handlyng Synne* is History: sketch of its pictures of English

Life in 1303 (p. xiv), and the kind of man it shows him to have been, p. xv.

§ 7. Robert of Brunne's *Chronicle*, and its sources, p. xviii.

§ 8. The cause of its issue in the Rolls Series of Chronicles, p. xix.

§ 9. The two MSS. of the *Chronicle*, p. xix.

§ 10. The mark for the part of it not englished from Wace, p. xxi.

§ 11. Robert of Brunne's dwelling-places, p. xxi.

§ 12. Apologies for delay, p. xxii.

§ 1. Among the forerunners of Chaucer, a leading place has always been given to Robert of Brunne. The cheeriness of the man, his wish to help his careless mates along, his sketches of the England of his day, his striving to be simple and easy in style, so that he might be understood of common folk,—all these qualities have disposed his readers in his favour, and led them to link him with his great successor, who, at the end of his century, painted those undying pictures of the Canterbury Pilgrims which have delighted, and will delight, all after time.

For individuality and independence, Robert of Brunne cannot compare with the writer miscalled Robert of



Gloucester, who could leave his historical authorities in order to lament the sad state of his English fellows, and denounce the cruelty and oppression of their Norman lords.<sup>1</sup> Like the architect of Lincoln's Inn Hall, Robert of Brunne can assure his hearers and readers that in his production "there is not a single thing for " which I haven't a precedent." As compared with the author of that delightful satire, "*The Land of Cokaigne*," Robert of Brunne is dead and dull. Yet in both his chief works there is much to value, and the worth of them in matter of language has been of late triumphantly vindicated by the author of "*Old and Middle English*" (Macmillan, 1878), Mr. T. L. Kington-Oliphant.

§ 2. Of Robert of Brunne's personal history we know nothing besides what he has told us himself; and even this little was somewhat obscured till Mr G. F. Warner, of the British Museum, printed, in 1881, in his Catalogue of the Dulwich MSS., the right reading of a line in the *Handlyng Synne*. The probable Midland MS. of that poem, with initial *qu* for *wh* words, which was quoted by Halliwell in his *Glossary*,<sup>2</sup> I have not been able to trace since it passed through his hands.<sup>3</sup> It is thus in the same case as the incomplete Trinity MS. of St. Margaret, once printed by Hickes,<sup>4</sup> and reprinted,—the

<sup>1</sup> In Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* there is plenty of this, but it is in the way of business, and founded more or less on his original, William of Wadington.

<sup>2</sup> See the extracts in vol. i. under *ayer* 128/2, *ayre* 127/11, *bretenyd* 210/1, *ferd* 353/1, *golsoght* 409/1, *Roylly* 439/2; and in vol. ii. under *lake* 502/1, *mede* 547/1, *negon* 577/2, *nente* 574/1, *okere* 587/1, *olypraunce* 587/2, *pardenelle* 605/2,

*pigace* 622/1, *quine* (*qwyne*, whence) 659/1, *quome* 660/2, *spice* 783/1, &c.

<sup>3</sup> I went up to the place of its former owner, Mr. Bowes, Streatham Castle, near Barnard Castle, Durham, in the hope of seeing it, but it was not in the muniment room there, and Mr. Bowes's secretary knew nothing of it.

<sup>4</sup> *Thesaurus*, vol. i., p. 224.



MS. having meantime vanished,—by Mr. Cockayne (*St. Marharete*), through a publisher in 1862, and through the Early English Text Society in 1866.

Robert of Brunne's first notice of himself is at the beginning of his *Handlyng Synne*, A.D. 1303, an englishing by him, with additions, of the French *Manuel des Pechiez*, by a fellow countryman of his, William of Wadlington, written in Edward the First's reign. Of this English treatise there are two complete vellum MSS. of the end of the fourteenth century, which are nearly the same in the words of the text, and of which I edited, in 1862 (for the Roxburghe Club), the earlier Harleian MS. 1701, in the British Museum, with collations of the slightly later Bodleian MS. 415, alongside of their original, Wadlington's French treatise, from Harl. MS. 273, collated with Harl. 4657. There is also a paper fragment of the English version in the Dulwich College Library.<sup>1</sup> This *Handlyng Synne* Robert of Brunne dedicates—

[*Harl. MS. 1701.*]

To alle crystyn men vndir  
sunne,  
And to godë men of brunne,  
And speciali alle be name  
pe felaushepe of sympryng-  
hame,  
Roberd of brunnë greteþ 3ow—  
In al godenesse þat may to  
prow—  
Of brymwake yn kesteuene,

[*Dulwich MS., 24.*]

[Two lines torn off.]

And specyally alle be name.  
pe felaschepe of Sympryng hame.  
Robert of Brunne greteþ 3ow  
In al goodness þ<sup>t</sup> may be prow.  
Of Brunnë Wakë<sup>2</sup> in Kesteuene.

<sup>1</sup> Dulwich College MS. No. xxiv, Paper, ff. 21 quarto. *Manuel de Pecche*. A fragment, ending at the 9th century with the story of Jephtha, being lines 1-2897 of Furnivall's edition. Written in a rough ill-formed hand of the early part of the 15th century by a scribe named Rose (f. 16)—1881. Dulwich Col-

lege MSS. x, edited by G. F. Warner, p. 347-8.

<sup>2</sup> The name of the present wapentake in which Bourne is, is Aveland, in Kesteven. The reading of the Dulwich MS. is evidently right, as it makes the line four measures, whereas the Harleian and Oxford MSS. make it only three



|                                           |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Syxe myle be syde sympryng-<br>ham euene! | Sixe myle fro Sympryngham<br>euene.                   |
| Y dwelled yn þe pryorye                   | I duellyd in þ <sup>t</sup> priory.                   |
| Fyftene ȝere yn cumpanye,                 | Xv ȝear in good cumpany.                              |
| In þe tyme of gode dane Ione              | In þ <sup>e</sup> tyme of goode Dan John.             |
| Of camelton, þat now ys gone;—            | Of Cameltone þat now is gon.                          |
| In hys tyme was y þere ten<br>ȝeres       | <sup>1</sup> In his tyme was I ther x ȝerys.          |
| And knewe and herd of hys<br>maneres;—    | And knew and herd of his goode<br>manerys.            |
| Syþyn with dane Ione of clyn-<br>tone,    | Sipþin w <sup>t</sup> dan John <sup>2</sup> Clattone. |
| Fyue wyntyr wyþ hym gon y<br>wone:        | V ȝear w <sup>t</sup> hym gan I wone.                 |
| Dane felyp was mayster þat<br>tyme        | Dan Philipp was mayster þ <sup>t</sup><br>tyme.       |
| þat y began þys englyssh ryme;            | þ <sup>t</sup> I began þis ynglysche ryme.            |
| þe ȝeres of grace fyl þan to be           | þ <sup>e</sup> ȝeer of grace fil þan to be.           |
| A þousynd & þre hundred &<br>þre.         | A m <sup>l</sup> ccc. and þre.                        |

(p. 3, l. 57–76, of my edition.)

§ 3. Now Sempringham, in Lincolnshire, is well known as the Mother-House of the Gilbertine Order, founded by Sir Gilbert de Sempringham, about A.D. 1139, for monks and nuns to live in the same building, though separated from each other; and it is the better known from the amusing satire on it, *L'Ordre de bel Eyse*, printed by the late Thomas Wright in his Camden Society volume, "*Political Songs of England*" t. John—Edw. II., 1839, p. 137–148. This central house of the Order being only some six miles from Brunne, or Bourne, Robert Manning's birth-place, we cannot wonder that he joined

with "Brymwake." The mistake probably arose from the original of the latter MSS. writing *Brunne* "Bruñ," and the copier mistaking the mark of contraction for the dash used instead of a dot to *i*, and thus reading *brim*, wrote that down as "brym." Not knowing the

Dulwich MS., Sir F. Madden, and we who followed him, went wrong as to Brunne being in the wake of its own name. See a letter by Professor Hales in *The Academy*, Jan. 1887.

<sup>1</sup> p. 348 of Mr. Warner's book.

<sup>2</sup> MS. John John.



it. The Austin Abbey at Brunne itself, was for males only.<sup>1</sup>

According to Browne Willis's list of "Names of some of the Priors" of Sempringham, "out of the Registers of Lincoln," *Mitred Abbeyes*, ii. 121 (par. 1719), "Philip de Burton, prior of St. Edmund's at Cambridge, [was] admitted<sup>2</sup> on the 2<sup>d</sup> of the Cal. of August 1298." But in the British-Museum Additional Charter, 20,652, John de Camelton appears as Prior of Sempringham in 1298.<sup>3</sup> If he became prior in 1288,—to make Robert of Brunne's needed ten years—then his predecessor, Roger de Bolingbrok, who was "elected and confirm'd the Id. of April 1283,"<sup>4</sup> must have died in 1288 instead of 1298,<sup>5</sup> as Willis says. He must also have been succeeded by John of Clinton<sup>6</sup> (or John Clatton), who must have been prior for the five years 1298–1303;<sup>5</sup> and then Philip de Burton got the post: his name, says Dugdale, VI. ii., 947, "occurs in 1311: he died in 1332." Further search in the Lincoln Registers will doubtless confirm Robert of Brunne's names and dates.

§ 4. From the way in which Robert of Brunne speaks of priests in his *Handlyng Synne*, and the awe he has of

<sup>1</sup> St. Gilbert . . composed his rule out of those of St. Austin and St. Benedict, the women following the Cistercian regulation of St. Benedict's rule, and the men the rule of St. Austin, to which the founder added some especial statutes of his own. Dugdale, vol. VI., pt. ii., p. iii\*, after p. 945.

<sup>2</sup> Can this mean admitted to some lower office; and not to the priorate till 1303?

<sup>3</sup> Warner, *Dulwich Catalogue*, p. 347.

<sup>4</sup> His predecessor was "John de Hamerton, prior of Malton, confirm'd the 3d of the Id. of May 1276. He died about the latter end of March 1282."—Willis.

<sup>5</sup> Warner, *ibid.*

<sup>6</sup> Not "John de Glyndon [who] was elected and confirm'd the 9th [29th, says Dugdale] of the Cal. of August 1332. He died or resigned An. 1341."—Willis.



them,<sup>1</sup> I assume that he was not in full orders, but more likely a lay brother or a canon of the Gilbertine Order. The post I should pick out for him was that of the *Magister* fit to teach the novices,<sup>2</sup> and no doubt the brethren unable to read their Office. He was evidently a highly educated man for his time, but he lived a hard life, poorly clad, poorly fed,<sup>3</sup> and forbidden to talk.<sup>4</sup> The difficulty of realizing Robert of Brunne's daily life and surroundings is great, from our not knowing how far the monastic rules had, in his day, been relaxed to the freedom or license of Chaucer's time. But if they were adhered to in the main from A.D. 1303 to 1338, as they are printed in *Dugdale*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. xxix-xcvii, the following sketch, drawn up by Mr. W. H. Utley, pictures the life led at Sempringham, as also at Sixille, in Lincolnshire, a

<sup>1</sup> p. 251, of *Lechery*.

Of prestës kan y sey no þyng; 8088  
(So seyð y at þe bygynnyng.)  
Noper of clerkys neuer a deyl;  
þey wote what ys ylle and weyl.

What Robert of Brunne said "at the bygynnyng" is at p. 2 of my edition, not englisning any French:—

Of þys clerkys wyl y nouȝt seye; 37  
To greuë hem y haue grete eye,  
For þey wote þat ys to wetyn,  
And se hyt wel before hem wrytyn. 40

<sup>2</sup> Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. lx.\* Fratres de consensu et voluntate prioris et conventu canonicorum suscipiantur; suscepti statim laboribus certis assignentur; carucis videlicet, et hujusmodi laboriosis. Deputetur autem noviciis magister, qui ydoneus sit ad mores instruendos et docendum ordinem.

<sup>3</sup> Dugdale's *Monasticon*, p. lix.\* Eo tempore quo inchoata est monachorum de Sempringham religio, venerunt monachi de ordine Cisterciæ in equitatu et apparatu humillimo, et abjecto cultu, contenti

*Wm. of Wadington.*

De fols prestres rien ne dirrum,  
Car nus la sus premis auum  
Qe des clers rien ne dirrum.

victu paupere. Cum quibus venerunt laici ad laborem promptissimi, in vestitu paupere, contenti victu pauperum; olera et legumina computabant divitias, et aquæ potus erat satis placidus, grangiis morantibus; et nichil amplius ex ordine. Quod audientes plurimi de communi laboriosorum genere nobis servientes in victu paupere, obtabant Deo vivere apud nos in eorum ordine.

<sup>4</sup> Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vol. VI., Part ii., p. lv.\* Qui infringit silentium manifeste jejundet in pane et aqua, vel vapulet in capitulo.



priory founded by a knight named Gresle or Greslie, for men and women.

About the year 1139, Saint Gilbert established his first priory, the one at Sempringham, as a retreat for a number of poor maidens whom he had imbued with a desire for continual chastity and for the monastic life. At first they were served only by a number of other poor maids, but these desiring also to enter the cloister, lay brothers were appointed to serve them, and priests to minister to them. This gave its whole character to the order in after times ; and the brothers and the canons were little more than attendants, temporal and spiritual, to the nuns and sisters. The two sexes lived together within the same enclosure, but were separated from each other by a high wall, the only communication between the two portions being a small window, furnished with a turn-table, through which food and other necessities were passed.

From seven to thirteen canons were attached to each establishment, with a prior at their head ; the nuns being similarly subject to a prioress. The functions of the canons were to administer the Sacrament and to conduct the services in the chapel. On high feast days, both sexes met in the church of the nuns, but they were separated by a cloth, so that they could not see each other. No organ or music of any kind was allowed, nor any pictures or carvings, "lest they divert the mind" from prayer and contemplation." The officiating priests were enjoined to carefully cover the neck, so that it might not be seen bare.

The life of the lay brothers in this order was a somewhat hard one. The rule they were under resembled that of the Cistercians, who endeavoured to restore the severity of the original Benedictine ordinances. They wore an under garment of ram's skin, with a tunic of white material lined with common skins, and over all a grey mantle of coarse cloth reaching nearly down to the heels. A pair of shoes, which were to "last a year and



“ be mended on occasion,” completed their attire. None were admitted to the priory until they were twenty-four years of age. The canons and the brothers ate in separate refectories, but their manner of living and food were nearly alike. No flesh was allowed, except to the sick, and then only when it was very necessary. Beer was the only beverage ; but if the supply ran short, wine might be used, well watered. No man was to drink more than a measure and a half of any intoxicating liquor, under penalty of drinking nothing but water for forty days. All the food was prepared by the nuns and the sisters, and passed through the small window before mentioned, the turn-table being so arranged that it was not possible to see to the other side. Stringent regulations were made with regard to the attendants at this window. A lay brother, “mature, discreet, peaceable, “ bland, modest, of good repute amongst all,” was appointed to serve at the men’s side, whilst on the other, the nuns and sisters were never to serve alone, but always two or three together.

The daily life of the monastery was similar to that of other foundations, save that everything was more or less subservient to the welfare of the nuns. “The “ brothers are to serve the nuns,” says one of the ordinances, “and to see that their house is in all respects “ better furnished than their own.” The chief nun had the care of all moneys, &c. ; and when any purchases had to be made, money was given to the canons or brothers through the window, and the accounts were afterwards adjusted there.

One can see with the mind’s eye Robert Mannyng serving at the window perhaps as the discreet, peaceable, bland, modest brother of good repute, afore-mentioned, contriving now and then to exchange a word or two with the sisters on the other side. Or he may have been the “trusty brother” appointed to overlook the hired women who occasionally came to help the nuns and sisters to comb the wool, to prevent any communi-



cations between the sacred and the secular workers. Or perhaps he was that other brother who was sent yearly to the farms to see that all went well, and to send the produce of the geese, hens, bees, &c. to the nuns. Had he had a taste for agriculture—we cannot say that his books show any—he might have been one of the farmer-brothers who lived always on, and managed, a farm; but, as he tells us (p. iv. above), he “dwelled yn the pryorye” of Sempringham.

The regulations regarding the conduct of these farms are interesting. No women were ever to be allowed on them without the express permission of the prior; and when they were hired to work, either as milkmaids or as reapers, the brother in charge was to have no direct dealings with them of any kind. If he needed to speak to any of them, he was commanded to have some one with him to listen to the conversation. Trusty fellows were to be hired, who would obey the behests of the brothers, and convey their commands to the petticoated toilers. They were to look after the milkmaids and reapers, and see that they did their work properly. No milkmaid was to milk in or near the farmstead where the brother might perchance see her, but always in the fields; nor must the lay brothers ever work amongst or near the women in the fields. A “mature layman” was to be appointed to superintend the field work, and to see that there was no idling or shirking. At harvest time, the women reapers who were hired were not to live within the enclosure, but in little houses “with doors,” some little distance away. Another trusty lay-person was appointed to furnish them with all necessaries, and the brother superintendent had a small window or peep-hole through which he could see what was going on amongst them, but through which he was forbidden to talk. “Young and pretty women,” the ordinances expressly say, “are to be especially shunned.” The farmer brothers were not allowed to brew any beer on the farms themselves. Sufficient quantities were sent



from the priory at Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide, along with a small amount of cash to defray any necessary expenses.

Whatever vocation Robert Mannyng may have had, however, the ordinary routine of the monastery would be much the same. To rise early, and then go to prayer, breakfast, and labour; prayers, dinner, and labour; prayers, supper, and sleep, each day throughout the year. None were to be taught in the monastery save the novices. The lay brothers were not allowed any books, and learned only the *Pater Noster*, the *Credo*, the *Miserere*, and other necessary prayers. What knowledge any of them had, therefore, must have been obtained before they entered the Order. Nor was anything allowed to be written in the monastery by either brother or canon, without the knowledge and permission of the prior. This is, no doubt, why Robert of Brunne says that Dan Robert of Malton, the prior, caused him to write his Chronicle "for felawes sake, when they wild solacë make."

Occasionally a diversion would come in the shape of the periodical visit of the head prior of the order, or his deputy, or the annual visit of the head prioress, who went round all the houses to see that everything went right and nothing went wrong; "to correct what needs correction, to instruct the ignorant, and to commend the virtuous and the diligent," as the ordinances put it. Sometimes the diversion would be the visit to the fair of two of the canons and a lay brother, who were to buy what was necessary for the monastery and the farms.

Many and minute are the commands of St. Gilbert respecting the behaviour of the brothers towards the sisters.

The priests, when they entered the nuns' house, were to have always a number of persons accompanying them, and the nuns were to have their faces covered in their presence. The canons were only to visit the nuns to



administer the Sacrament or to perform other religious offices. The prior, the cellarer, and the storekeeper might consult with the prioress on matters of business, but in as few words as possible, and always with others standing near. On no account was there to be any gossiping or talebearing. The lay brothers were never to enter the nuns' enclosure, "save in case of fire, thieves, &c." The nuns and sisters washed the linen of the canons, but not that of the lay brothers. The latter had either to do their own washing, or to get the porter to find some poor people who would do it for them. The women in the monasteries were also permitted to sew for the men, but they were on no account to cut out, make, or mend their breeches for them. The head prioress and the nuns who accompanied her on her annual journey round the nuns' houses were to have an escort consisting of a canon and a lay brother, whose duty it was to protect them and to supply them with all necessaries. There was to be no more conversation between them than was absolutely necessary, and the men were enjoined to retire to a respectful distance whenever the women had to descend from the waggon in which they travelled. On these journeys the women were never to lodge in the same houses as the men, if it could possibly be helped. There were many other regulations and devices of a similar nature, all designed to reduce temptation as much as possible. Incontinent monks were to be stripped of their habits and expelled, never to return, or else be imprisoned. Incontinent nuns were not to be sent abroad to corrupt others, but to be shut up in a little hut separate from the rest, there to repent of their sin, and to remain until death should bring release.

Such were the principal rules of life for those who entered the Gilbertine Order, as they appear in the ordinances of its founder. That at Sempringham the discipline was tempered by the weaknesses of human nature, *L'Ordre de bel Eyse* renders probable, and later writers do not always give satisfactory accounts of the



Gilbertine monasteries elsewhere. They were, of course, all broken up at the dissolution, and were evidently not important foundations.

§ 5. Robert of Brunne's *Handlyng Synne* was written in 1303. After thirty-five years' waiting, he produced his *Chronicle*, or "*Story of England*," in 1338. In it the account he gives of himself is (p. 5, l. 135-144):—

" Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,  
 " Robert Mannyng is my name ;—  
 " Blissed be he, of God of heuene,  
 " þat me, Robert, with gude wille neuene !—  
 " In þe third Edwardes tyme was I  
 " When I wrote alle þis story,  
 " In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe :  
 " Danz Robert of Maltone<sup>1</sup> þat ze know,  
 " Did it wryte for felawes sake,  
 " When þai wild solacë make."

Further on in his *Chronicle*, Part II., Robert of Brunne tells us that he had been at Cambridge, where was another Gilbertine House, and had there known Robert of Bruce and his brothers, Thomas and Alexander, of whom Alexander was the best artist of his time, and made a carven king. At the feast which Robert of Bruce made at Cambridge, evidently before he was king, Robert of Brunne was present. The Bruces were Yorkshire folk, and Cambridge was their natural University. Robert of Brunne's words are,—

Now of kyng Robyn salle I zit speke more,  
 & his broþer Tomlyn—Thomas, als it wore,<sup>2</sup>—  
 & of sir Alisandere þat me rewes sore,  
 þat both com in skandere for dedes þei did pore.  
 Of arte he had þe maistrie ; he mad a coruen king

<sup>1</sup> Malton was another Gilbertine House in Yorkshire: its priory church is engraved in Dugdale, VI., ii.

<sup>2</sup> The side note is "*De Thoma et Alexandro fratribus Roberti Brus, et capcione eorum.*"



In Cantebrige to þe clergie, or his broþer were kyng.  
 Sipeu was neuer non, of arte so þat sped,  
 Ne bifore bot on, þat in Cantebrigge red.  
 Robert mad his fest; for he was þore þat tyme,  
 And he sauh alle þe gest, þat wrote & made þis ryme.  
 (Inner Temple MS., leaf 193, back; and Hearne's  
*Langtoft*, p. 336-7.)

If, as I suppose, Robert of Brunne was not full canon, but a lay brother of his Order, he cannot have entered it till he was 24. If he did so at that age, he would be 39 when he wrote his *Handlyng Synne*, in 1303, and 74 when he produced his *Chronicle*, in 1338. But whatever his age, his helpful cheery spirit was the same at both dates. He wrote his *Handlyng Synne* for unlearned men, to keep them out of mischief at their games and ale:—

For lewdē men y vndyrtoke  
 On englysshe tunge to make þys boke.  
 For many ben of swyche manere,  
 þat talys and rymys wyl bleþly here:  
 Yn gamys & festys, at þe ale,  
 loue men to lestene trotēuale,  
 þat may falle ofte to vylanye,  
 To dedly synne or oþer folye;  
 For swyche men haue y made þys<sup>1</sup> ryme,  
 þat þey<sup>2</sup> may weyl dyspende here tyme.  
 (p. 2-3, l. 43-52, ed. 1862.)

He wrote his *Chronicle* "in simple speech . . . for  
 "love of simple men" (p. 3, l. 73, 77), not in quaint  
 English and strange speech, but in light ryme:—

" And þerfore for þe comonalte  
 " þat blythely wild listen to me,  
 " On lightē lange I it begaṇ,  
 " for luf of þe lewed maṇ,

---

<sup>1</sup> þys, Bodl. MS.; þat, Harl. MS. | <sup>2</sup> þy, Bodl.; Harl. omits "þey."



“ to tellë þam þe chaunces bolde,  
 “ þat here before was don & tolde.  
 “ For þis makyng I wille no mede  
 “ bot gude prayere when ȝe it rede;  
 “ þerfore, [alle] ȝe lordes lewed,  
 “ For whom I haf þis Inglis schewed,  
 “ Prayes to God he gyf me grace;  
 “ I trauayled for ȝour solace.”

As an early social reformer, as a lover of the poor, one who wished to give them knowledge, to lead them to higher things; as a language reformer too,—one who did much to make English flexible and easy, to lessen the friction of ideas travelling on the rails of words into brains,—Robert of Brunne is worthy of all honour; while for his pictures of English social life, in the English tongue, he has, I venture to say, no equal before Chaucer.

§ 6. Of his two main works, the *Handlyng Synne* and the *Chronicle*,<sup>1</sup> the former is history, fact; the latter, fiction, though it finds a place in this series of National Memorials. The *Chronicle* englishes the romances of Geoffrey of Monmouth and Wace, with a few additions from Bede, &c. The *Handlyng Synne*, in its comments on the Cardinal Virtues and Vices, the Ten Commandments, Creeds, Sacraments, &c., tells of the sins of English men and women—the faults of their children too—as Wadington saw them in Edward I.’s

---

<sup>1</sup> “ Medytacyuns of þe soper of our lorde Ihesu; and also of hys passyun; and eke of þe peynes of hys swete moder, Mayden Marye, þe whyche made yn Latyn, Bonaventure Cardynall ” (ed. J. M. Cowper, Early English Text Society, 1875) may or may not be Robert of Brunne’s. (Mr. Cowper and Mr.

Oliphant hold that it is: in Germany I am told that a different opinion prevails.) It follows the *Handlyng Synne* in the Harleian and Bodleian MSS., though without attribution to him. It contains no definite characteristics of him, so far as I can see.



time, and as they were under Robert of Brunne's eyes in 1303. Save the King and Court, all classes of society come under their critic's lash. As I have said before (*H. S.*, p. viii-xi.), the Earl and Knight at their robbery (p. 212, l. 6792, l. 6815-17); the Lord in his grasping (p. 71, l. 2201-2); the Rich Man in his oaths (p. 23, l. 669), his adultery (p. 95, l. 2931), his gluttony (p. 207, l. 225-6), his sloth (p. 135), and his indulgence to his children in their insolent ways (p. 155, l. 4910-17); the Landowner in his covetousness (p. 187, p. 293); the Priest with his "mare" or concubine (p. 248, l. 7981); the Judge and Assizer in their harshness (p. 44, p. 49, p. 171-2); the Lawyer with his wicked counsels (p. 170, l. 5413); the Merchant in his usury (p. 174, l. 5546); the Trader at his tricks (p. 187); the Scold in her household (p. 93, l. 2936, &c.); the Flunkey of the time at his riotous supper (p. 227); the Poor in their sufferings (p. 76, 169, 172, 213); the Bearded Bucks (p. 102, l. 3212); the Beauties with their saffron wimples (p. 110) and whitened faces (p. 102, l. 3221), all pass under Robert of Brunne's review; and none without those individualising touches which show that he had studied from the life. He must have seen the rich man's sluggardry, and heard his yawns on Sunday mornings, when he was late for mass, or shirked it (p. 135, &c.), as well as been witness of the shrew's airs and "veyes moy sy" (p. 94, l. 2941), ere he could have put his sketches on parchment or paper. And one can fancy his monkish disgust at hearing men in church chattering, telling tales, asking where they could get the best ale (p. 143, l. 4546-7), and thinking what much better fun it would be at the ale-house, or larking with girls (l. 4538-40), as well as share his indignation at seeing poor men kept shivering all day in the cold, crying at rich men's gates for alms (p. 215, l. 6899-6900), or getting them only with beating and abuse (p. 210, l. 6728). For Robert of Brunne's other qualities, some



humour we may allow him for his bear's bow,<sup>1</sup> his Zenon hanging by the *hand*, not by the *neck*, I understand (p. 69, l. 2122), and his cut at wives in general, "they do not wrong, except all day."<sup>2</sup> Still, monkish as he is, he can praise a good wife, p. 62, l. 1904-13 :—

Ne no þyng ys to man so dere,  
As wommanys loue yn good manere.  
A gode womman ys mannys blys,  
þere here loue ryȝt and stedfast ys ;  
þere ys no solas vndyr heuene,  
Of al[lë] þat a man may neuene,  
þat shulde a man so mochë glew,  
As a gode womman þat loueþ trew ;  
Ne derer ys none yn goddys hurde  
þan a chaste womman *with* louely wrde.

Robert of Brunne is too an appreciator of good company (p. 127, l. 4028), and a lover of music (p. 150-1), though a doubter of singers' morals, — "ful selde ys synger  
" gode yn thew " (p. 97, l. 3062),—a hater of false pride;<sup>3</sup> cautious too, not believing in men with "lagheyng  
" wurdys," "flourshede wurdys, and oþerwhyle louely " (p. 97, l. 3066-9), liking plain speech, and not the  
" tyfede wurdys þat slykede are " (p. 365, l. 11,765), knowing the difference between a gentleman in deed and a lord in name,<sup>4</sup> and aware that kings are fools, as

<sup>1</sup> þe bere to hym loutede, and  
made feyre chere,

Feyre chere as a bere myghte  
make. p. 128, l. 4043-4.

<sup>2</sup> But how as euer men preche or  
spelle,

Of prestës wyues men here euer  
telle ;

Of ouþer wyues y wyl noghte  
say,

þey do not wrong—but al [þe]  
day. p. 247, l. 7936-39.

<sup>3</sup> þat pourë prydë, God hyt loþes,  
þat make[s] hem proude of ouþer  
mennys cloþys.

p. 110, l. 3462-3.

<sup>4</sup> Speaking of a Norfolk lord  
who takes in good part a churl's  
reproof, Robert says :—

þyr are but fewë lordës now  
þat turne a wrde so wel to prow ;  
But who so seyþ hem any skylle,  
Mysseye aȝen fouly þey wylle.

Lordynges-þyr are ynow of þo ;  
Of gentyl men, þyr are but fo.

(*glost* fewe). p. 279, l. 8713-18.



well as other folk (below, p. 1, l. 16, 17). Also a man that will not take shamming excuses (p. 77, l. 2385-8), but will call a spade a spade:—

He ys no morë crystyn man  
 þan who so kallyþ a blak oxe ‘swan.’  
 (p. 137, l. 4321-2.)

Altogether a direct, straightforward, practical man, with many right sympathies, working in a sensible way for the improvement of his fellow countrymen, teaching them morals and history, their relation and duties to God and man. But he is not a “muscular-Christian,” to judge from his condemnation of “wrastlynges” (though only on Holy Days and in Holy Places, p. 33, l. 994-5; p. 117, l. 3690; p. 278, l. 8989), squires’ games (p. 146, l. 4628), and tournaments, where, for a woman’s fancy, a man may be so

bete þere for here loue,  
 pat he ne may sytte his hors aboue,  
 pat peraventure yn alle hys lyue  
 Shal he neuer after þryue.  
 (p. 146, l. 4614-17.)

Lechery is the source of jousting and tourneys, he says. (l. 4632.)

His lecturing of and against women—specially those who tempt priests—is very frequent. Perhaps the three points he presses most, are the duty of almsgiving and charity (p. 231-3); the shame and sin of earls and rich men beating the poor (p. 212-13), carrying off their wives and daughters (p. 231, l. 7420-7), robbing and otherwise oppressing them (p. 71-2, p. 76, p. 187, p. 213, l. 6815); and the evil of men’s leaving to executors the duty of giving gifts to Holy Church for the good of their souls (p. 195-203, &c.): this, a point which all religious writers felt in their inmost hearts. The three peculiarities which he notes as English, in contrast with foreign customs, are, the Saturday half-holiday—keeping



the afternoon holy to the Virgin (p. 28, l. 845, &c.); Englishmen's impatience of reproof (p. 132, l. 4160-9); and their sin of envy, on which he cites a proverb:—

And englys men namely (= especially)  
 Are, þurghe kynde, of hertē hy.  
 A forbysyn ys toldē þys,  
 Seyd on frenshe men and on englys:  
 “ That frenche men synne yn lecherye,  
 “ And englys men yn enuye.”  
 (p. 131, l. 4150-5.)

§ 7. As to his *Chronicle*, which Robert of Brunne wrote, not for the learned, but for the lewēd, that they might have

“ solace and gamen,  
 “ In felawscip when þai sitt samen.”  
 (p. 1, l. 9, 10.)

and that they might know, of their kings, “ which were  
 “ fools and which were wise” (l. 16, 17), he starts with Noah and the Deluge (p. 7), then traces the genealogy of Locrin, king of Britain, to Noah, through Æneas (p. 9-15), tells the story of the Trojan war (under the guidance of Dares Phrygius) to p. 25; and then, on p. 26, begins to english Wace on the settlement of Æneas in Italy (p. 15-28), the birth and Grecian wars of Brutus (to p. 46), his landing in France, and battles there (to p. 62), and then his arrival at Dartmouth, p. 62. After this, Wace is followed, with a bit from Bede here and there (p. 555, 562, 579), from Langtoft and Geoffrey of Monmouth (p. 571-574, 577), till this volume, Part I. of the *Chronicle*, ends, and Robert of Brunne describes what he will tell us in his Second Part, which he will english from Peres of Langtoft, and which Hearne printed in two volumes 8vo. in 1725, reprinted 1800. Langtoft's French *Chronicle* appeared in this Rolls Series in two vols., i. 1866, ii. 1868, edited by the late Thomas Wright.



§ 8. The present volume is, then, not a contribution to English history, but to the history of English. It was (with the approval of the then Master of the Rolls) authorised by my friend, the late Sir Thomas Hardy, because it was in name a "Chronicle;" because, the Second Part being so widely known, the First was of course often asked for and wanted; and because Sir Thomas thought it only fair that, amongst so much worthless repetition in Latin as the Rolls Series must of necessity contain, there might well be one rendering of our early historic legends in useful English. He wished, and most legitimately say I, to give us students of the history of English words and syntax a lift by the way. For the like reason he also consented to the insertion in this book of the List of Manning's Rymes, to contrast with our Chaucer Ryme Index, and show that the latter poet's *-ye* rule<sup>1</sup> was not observed by the earlier one.

Were this the place then, a disquisition on the language and dialect of Robert of Brunne should follow here. But such an essay would be inadmissible; and, moreover, Mr. Kington Oliphant<sup>2</sup> has dealt so sympathetically and ably with our debt to Robert Manning in this regard, that I, at least, should have little to add to his main view here, much as there is undoubtedly yet to be done elsewhere.

§ 9. Robert of Brunne's Chronicle exists in two manuscripts, one at the Lambeth Library, of the old ribbed paper of about the middle of the fourteenth century, which has lost its first leaf, and the other on vellum, before 1400 A.D., in the Inner Temple Library, Petyt

---

<sup>1</sup> Chaucer made the ending *-ye* two syllables, and didn't ryme it with the adverbial *-ly*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> *Old and Middle English*, 1878, Chapter VI. The Rise of the New

English. Robert of Brunne, "The Patriarch of the New English," (p. 588); (p. 427-474; also p. 575-80, and p. 585-8).



MSS. No. 511, vol. 7. These MSS. differ in dialect. The Petyt MS. is more consistently Northern in forms, I believe, than the Lambeth MS., and if I had judged by the consonance of the forms (the participial-*and*, for instance), inside the lines with those at the ends of them, or their rymes, I might possibly have been bound to make the Petyt MS. the basis of my text.<sup>1</sup> But knowing that the Midland was a mixed dialect, not consistently Northern, and that the MSS. of the *Handlyng Synne* showed this mixture, I concluded that the Lambeth MS., which also had a mixture of forms, was more likely to represent Robert of Brunne's actual writing than the more consistently Northern Petyt MS. This was the judgment of my friend, Dr. Richard Morris, then our highest authority on the subject, and I willingly followed it. I still believe it right. The question then rose whether I should be justified in repeating, hundreds of times, every Petyt *scho*, *sall*, *suld*, &c., for every Lambeth *scheo*, *schal*, *schalt*, *schul*, *scholden*, *schold*, &c., and so swelling the various readings inordinately. I concluded that I should not be so justified, and I have accordingly given some samples of these changes, and then dropped the collation of them. If I live long enough, I shall no doubt print the whole of the Petyt MS. in the Early English Text Society's Extra Series, and then the dialect question between the two MSS. can be settled.

The contractions of the MS. have been expanded, and the expansions printed in italics in the text.

The occasional pronunciations conjecturally suggested between brackets after some of the ryme-endings (p. 589, 593, &c.), the reader should disregard. They are not trustworthy.

---

<sup>1</sup> But the Northern forms often spoil the rhythm: see N. *suld*, p. 16, l. 463; for M. *scholden*, &c. The characteristic differences of dialect between Lincolnshire and Yorkshire in the early part of the 14th century are not easily to be found out.



§ 10. As there is but little in Robert of Brunne's English which is not a translation of Wace's French Chronicle, I have put a dot (.) before every line which is not due to Wace, or at least, Wace as shown by the Paris MS. du Roi, No. 27, printed by Le Roux de Lincy, Rouen, 1836. Readers can therefore tell by a glance at any page, what in it is Manning's own, or got from a source other than Wace.

§ 11. Some ten years or more ago, when I hoped that this Introduction would have been at once written, I went to Robert of Brunne's dwelling places,—Bourne, Sempringham, and Six Hills (as Sixille is now called), to see the country where he was born and lived.

Bourne I found a fair-sized market town,<sup>1</sup> of one long street ( $1\frac{1}{4}$  miles), with a fine Norman Church, (3,060 inhabitants in 1861,) and for its railway station, a genuine Elizabethan house, well-treed; a large round spring or pond, Bournewell, close at hand, with the Bourne running from it, and with records of excavations in which the remains of the old castle which once dominated the town were found. The country round is very flat; the edge of the old fen district lies a little to the east, and this made me at one time think that the "Brymwake" of the *Handlyng Synne* MSS. might possibly be the brim or edge-wake. The town is 97 miles N. by W. of London, and 35 miles S.S.E. of Boston.

To Sempringham, or the fields and 93 scattered houses (in 1841) so called, the surgeon of Folkingham, three miles off, was kind enough to drive me.<sup>2</sup> The church, engraved in Dugdale, vol. VI., part ii., stands on a knoll whose grass evidently covers the ruins of former buildings. It has one fine Norman doorway which Robert of Brunne may well have seen, though the rest of the building

---

<sup>1</sup> The chief trade of the place is leather and wool. It has several large tanyards.

<sup>2</sup> The hamlet is 106 miles by coach road from London.—Clarke, *Brit. Gaz.*



must be of later date. On the level ground below are the ruins of the Hall, which is said to have been mainly built out of the stones of Sempringham Priory ; and as we walked along the grass-covered walls, we started, on the yard-high top of one of them, a hare, which had there made its form.

Priory gone ; the Hall built out of it too ; but Robert of Brunne, in his copyists' books of paper and skin, is left to tell us what the builders and stones have failed to tell. A walk across the fields to a farmhouse to ask the road, produced in answer one of Robert's words, " Yes, " that's the *gainest* way." And next day I went to Six Hills, as Sixille is now called.

A little village or hamlet is Six Hills, 5 miles from Market-Rasen station, and 150 by railroad from London. It had 25 houses and 205 inhabitants in 1841 (Clarke). It is cottaged and gardened up to the top of the brow of land, partly circling it. A dull flat road leads to it, lightened only on the day I was there by a solitary swan on a pond in some landowner's grounds. On walking up the hamlet hill, a chance look to the right showed Lincoln Cathedral standing grandly on the horizon, on its hill : a view to which Robert of Brunne's eyes surely often turned. Below was an old rubble shed, partly pulled down, which was said to have been part of the grange of the ex-Priory in the hamlet : no other remains were to be heard of.

§ 12. Twice before, in the many years since this text was begun, have I made collections of notes, &c. for preparing a fit Introduction to this Chronicle. The first time, all my notes, disappeared while workmen were in the house during a long country holiday that I took. The second time, last year, I must have left in some shop, railway, or omnibus, the bound and noted volume of the text, with a Paper on the dialect and phonetics of the Lambeth MS. which Dr. Henry Sweet had most kindly prepared for me. Now, under great pressure



of other work, the present Introduction has been written, on the urgent remonstrance of the Deputy Keeper of the Records. I can only ask mercy for its shortcomings, and for the long delay which has taken place in the production of the book ; pleading also that this delay has not been due to mere laziness, though I acknowledge that it was wrong in me to do other work and leave this volume undone. I thank all the Rolls authorities, many, alas, now no longer with us,<sup>1</sup> for their great forbearance ; and also Mr. Sidney J. Herrtage, now the editor of Cassell's *Encyclopædic Dictionary*, for his help in the Indexes and Glossary.

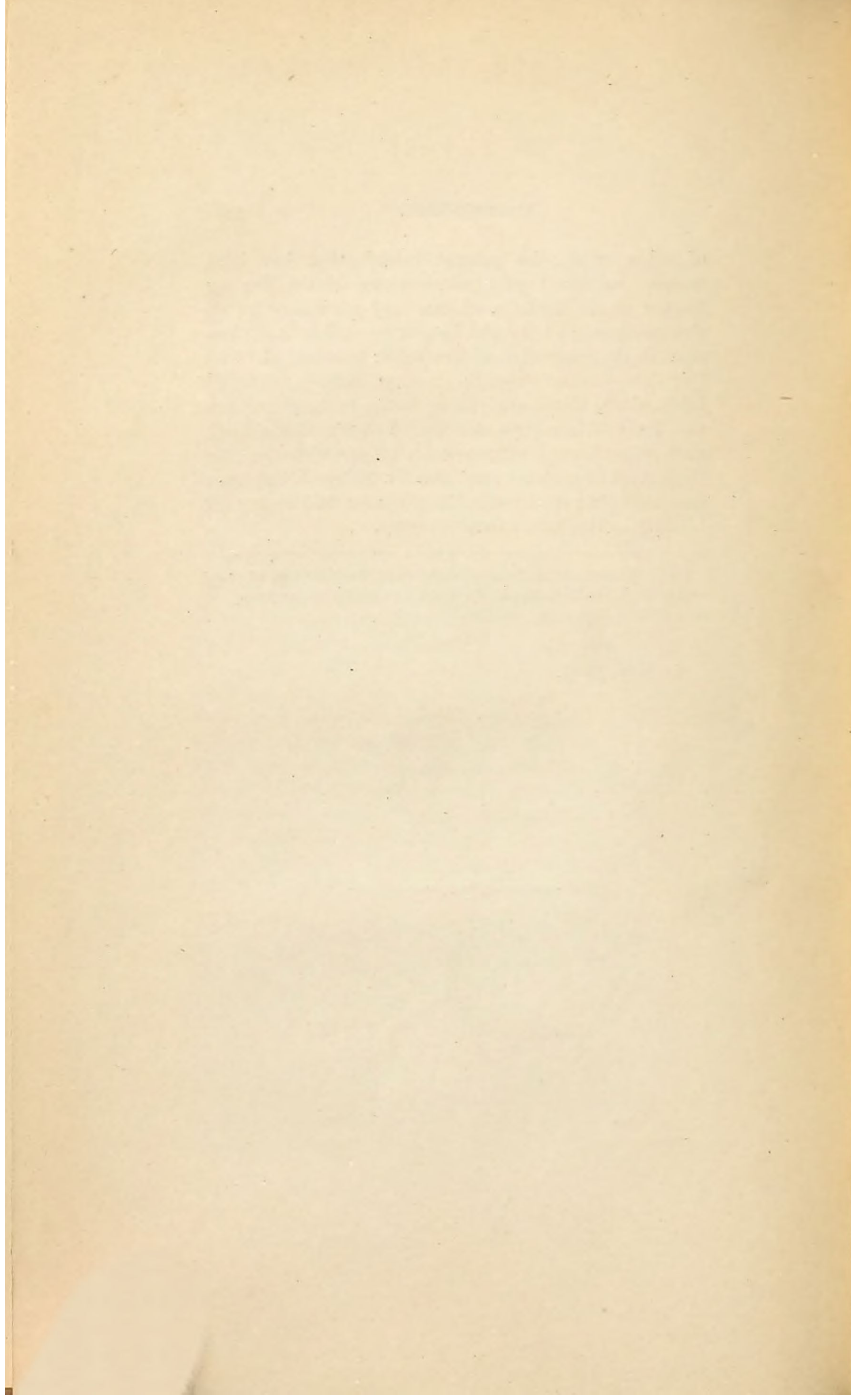
---

<sup>1</sup> Two Masters of the Rolls, as well as Sir T. Duffus Hardy, kindly took great interest in my work for | the Early English Text, Chaucer, and New Shakspeare Societies.

16 May, 1887.

---







# De Story of Englande

als Robert Mannyng wryten it fand,  
& on Englysch has it schewed.

## <sup>1</sup> Incipit *Prologus de Historia Britannie transumpta per Robertum in materna lingua.*

|                                         |    |                 |
|-----------------------------------------|----|-----------------|
| . Lordynges <i>that</i> be now here,    |    | Listen to the   |
| . if ȝe wille listene & lere            |    | story of Eng-   |
| . All <i>the</i> story of Englande      |    | land, as Robert |
| . als Robert Mannyng wryten it fand,    | 4  | Mannyng         |
| . & on Inglysch has it schewed,         |    | found it, and   |
| . not for þe lewid bot for þe lewed,    |    | Englished it    |
| . ffor þo þat in þis land[e] wone       |    |                 |
| . þat þe Latyn no Frankys cone,         | 8  | for the solace  |
| . ffor to haf solace & gameñ            |    | of those who    |
| . In felawschip when þai sitt samen.    |    | know not Latin  |
| . And it is wisdom for to wyttē         |    | or French,      |
| . þe state of þe land, & haf it wryten, | 12 |                 |
| . what manere of folk first it wan,     |    | when they sit   |
| . & of what kynde it first began ;      |    | togeth er.      |
| . And gude it is for many thynges       |    | And it is wise  |
| . for to here þe dedis of kynges,       | 16 | to know         |
| . whilk were foles, & whilk were wyse,  |    | who first won   |
| . & whilk of þam couthe most quantyse,  |    | England,        |
| . and whilk did wrong, & whilk ryght,   |    |                 |
| . & whilk maynten[e]d pes & fyght.      | 20 | and to hear     |
|                                         |    | which kings     |
|                                         |    | were fools and  |
|                                         |    | which were not, |
|                                         |    | which did       |
|                                         |    | wrong, and      |
|                                         |    | which did       |
|                                         |    | right.          |

<sup>1</sup> The first 198 lines are from the Inner Temple MS., Petyt MSS. No. 511, vol. 7. The dots on the left of certain lines show that the

lines dotted are not translated from Wace, as he is shown by the Paris MS. du Roi, No. 27, printed by Le Roux de Lincy, Rouen, 1836.



|                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| All this I'll<br>tell you:                                                                                                     | . Of þare dedes saff be my sawe;<br>. & what tyme, & of what lawe<br>. I saff yow schewe fro gre to gre<br>. sen þe tyme of sir Noe,                                                                                                                                                                                    | 24 |
| what<br>happened<br>from Noah to<br>Æneas;                                                                                     | . ffro Noe vnto Eneas,<br>. & what betwix þam was;<br>. And fro Eneas tiff Brutus tyme,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 28 |
| from him to<br>Brutus; and<br>then to Cad-<br>wallader, the<br>last of the<br>Briton kings.                                    | . . . . .<br>. ffro Brutus tiff Cadwaladres,<br>. þe last Bryton þat þis lande lees.<br>. All þat kynde & all þe frute<br>. þat come of Brutus, þat is þe Brute;<br>. And þe ryght Brute is told nomore<br>. þan þe Brytons tyme wore.<br>. After þe Bretons þe Inglis camen,<br>. þe lordschip of þis lande þai namen, | 32 |
| After them<br>came the<br>English,                                                                                             | . Southe & northe, west & est,<br>. þat calle meñ now þe Inglis gest.<br>. when þai first [came] amang þe Bretons,<br>. þat now ere Inglis, þan were Saxons;<br>. Saxons Inglis hight alle oliche;                                                                                                                      | 36 |
| before whom<br>were Saxons.<br>The English<br>landed at<br>Sandwich, in<br>Vortigern's<br>days,<br>under Hengist<br>and Horsa, | . þai aryued vp at Sandwyche<br>. In þe kynges tyme Vortogerne,<br>. þat þe lande walde þam not werne.<br>. þat were Maysters of alle þe toþire,<br>. Hengist he hight, & Hors his broþire;<br>. þes were hede, als we fynde,<br>. where-of is comen oure Inglis kynde.                                                 | 40 |
| and were<br>heathens 150<br>years among<br>the Britons,<br>till St. Augus-<br>tine converted<br>them.                          | . A hundrethe & fifty ȝere þai com<br>. or þai receyued cristendom;<br>. So lang woned þai þis lande in,<br>. or þai herde out of Saynt Austyn,<br>. Amang þe Bretons with mykelle wo,<br>. In sclaundire & threte, & in thro.<br>. þes Inglis dedes ȝe may here,<br>. as Pers telles alle þe manere.                   | 44 |
| Of the English,<br>Piers of Lang-<br>toft tells.<br>Master Wace<br>frenchized all                                              | . One Mayster Wace þe ffrankes telles,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 48 |
|                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 52 |
|                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 56 |

[leaf 1, col. 2.]



|                                         |                 |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| . þe Brute, all þat þe Latyn spellas,   |                 | the Latin <i>Brute</i>          |
| . ffro Eneas tiff Cadwaladre ;          |                 | till Cadwal-                    |
| . þis Mayster Wace þer leues he.        | 60              | lader's time ;                  |
| . And ryght as Mayster Wace says,       |                 | & I follow                      |
| . I telle myn Inglis þe same ways ;     |                 | Wace,                           |
| . ffor Mayster Wace þe Latyn alle rymes |                 | because Piers                   |
| . þat Pers ouerhippis many tymes.       | 64              | often hops                      |
| . Mayster Wace þe Brute alle redes,     |                 | over much of                    |
| . & Pers tellis alle þe Inglis dedes ;  |                 | the Latin.                      |
| . þer Mayster Wace of þe Brute left,    |                 | But where                       |
| . ryght begynnes Pers [þer] eft,        | 68              | Wace stops,                     |
| . And tellis forth þe Inglis story,     |                 | Piers begins,                   |
| . & as he says, þan say I.              |                 | and tells the                   |
| . Als þai haf wryteñ & sayd,            |                 | English story,                  |
| . haf I alle in myn Inglis layd,        | 72              | & I follow him.                 |
| . In symple speche as I couthe,         |                 | I've written in                 |
| . þat is lightest in mannes mouth.      |                 | as simple Eng-                  |
| . I mad noght for no disours,           |                 | lish as I could,                |
| . ne for no seggers, no harpours,       | 76              |                                 |
| . Bot for þe luf of symple men          |                 | for love of                     |
| . þat strange Inglis can not ken ;      |                 | simple men                      |
| . ffor many it ere þat strange Inglis   |                 | who can't make                  |
| . In ryme wate neuer what it is ;       | 80              | out hard Eng-                   |
| . And bot þai wist what it mente,       |                 | lish.                           |
| . ellis me thoght it were alle schente. |                 | If they couldn't                |
| . I made it not forto be prayssed,      | [leaf 1, back.] | make out me,                    |
| . bot at þe lewed men were aysed.       | 84              | my writing                      |
| . If it were made in ryme couwee,       |                 | would be no                     |
| . or in strangere or enterlace,         |                 | good.                           |
| . þat rede Inglis it ere inowe,         |                 | I don't write                   |
| . þat couthe not haf coppled a kowe,    | 88              | for praise, but                 |
| . þat outhere in couwee or in baston    |                 | to benefit the                  |
| . som suld haf ben fordon,              |                 | unlearned.                      |
| . so þat fele men þat it herde          |                 | And if I'd                      |
| . suld not witte howe þat it ferde :    | 92              | bothered them                   |
| . I see in song, in sedgeyng tale       |                 | with                            |
| . of Erceldoun & of Kendale,            |                 | <i>couvé</i> or <i>baston</i> , |
|                                         |                 | some must have                  |
|                                         |                 | come to grief.                  |
|                                         |                 | In tales of                     |
|                                         |                 | Erceldoun                       |
|                                         |                 | & Kendale,                      |



I see that none  
repeat them as  
they were  
written;  
and specially  
the best story,  
*Sir Tristrem*,

is always spoilt,

by the repeaters  
wanting to  
show off their  
own cleverness.

Besides, I'm  
too dull to  
write strange  
words;

and men be-  
sought me to  
write my story  
in easy ones.

So I have  
written it for  
the com-  
monalty,

for love of the  
unlearned, to  
tell them the  
chances of old;

and I ask no  
reward but the  
prayers of my  
hearers,

. Non þam says as þai þam wroght,  
. & in þer sayng it semes noght; 96  
. þat may þou here in sir Tristrem;  
. ouer gestes it has þe steem,  
. Ouer alle *that* is or was,  
. if meñ it sayd as made Thomas; 100  
. But I here it no mañ so say,  
. þat of som copple som is away;  
. So þare fayre sayng here beforñ  
. is þare trauayle nere forlorñ; 104  
. þai sayd it for pride & nobleye,  
. þat non were suylk as þei;  
. And aʃ þat þai wild ouerwhere,  
. aʃ þat ilk wiʃ now forfare. 108  
. þai sayd in so quante Inglis  
. þat many one wate not what it is.  
. þerfore [I] henyed<sup>1</sup> wele þe more [<sup>1</sup> MS. henþed]  
. In strange ryme to trauayle sore; 112  
. And my witte was oure thynne  
. So strange speche to trauayle in;  
. And forsoth I couth[e] noght  
. so strange Inglis as þai wroght; 116  
. And meñ besoght me many a tyme  
. to turne it bot in light[e] ryme;  
. þai sayd, if I in strange it turne,  
. to here it manyon suld skurne; 120  
. ffor it ere names full selcouthe  
. þat ere not vused now in mouthe;  
. And þerfore for þe comonalte  
. þat blythely wild listen to me, 124  
. On light[e] lange I it begañ, [leaf 2, back, col. 2.]  
. for luf of þe lewed mañ,  
. to telle þam þe chaunces bolde  
. þat here before was don & tolde. 128  
. ffor þis makying I wiʃ no mede  
. bot gude prayere when ʒe it rede;  
. þerfore, [alle] ʒe lordes lewed,



|                                           |     |                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------|
| . ffor wham I haf þis Inglis schewed,     | 132 |                                                            |
| . Prayes to God he gyf me grace,—         |     |                                                            |
| . I trauayled for ȝour solace;—           |     | for whose<br>solace I have<br>worked.                      |
| . Of Brunne I am, if any me blame,        |     |                                                            |
| . Robert Mannyng is my name;              | 136 | Of Brunne<br>I am,<br>Robert<br>Mannyng's<br>my name;      |
| . Blissed be he of God of heuene          |     |                                                            |
| . þat me, Robert, with gude wille neuene; |     |                                                            |
| . In þe third Edwardes tyme was I         |     |                                                            |
| . when I wrote alle þis story,            | 140 | and I wrote this<br>story in King<br>Edward III.'s<br>time |
| . In þe hous of Sixille I was a throwe;   |     |                                                            |
| . Danz Robert of Maltoñ þat ȝe know,      |     |                                                            |
| . did it wryte for felawes sake,          |     | for my fellows'<br>delight.                                |
| . when þai wild solace make.              | 144 |                                                            |

Dares Frigius, qui historiam Troianorum scripsit, ait  
se militasse vsque dum Troia capta est, hosque  
duces se vidisse cum indutie essent & partim  
prelio interfuisse.

|                                          |     |                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| . Dares the Freson of Troie first wrote, |     | Dares the<br>Freson first<br>wrote of the<br>loss of Troy.                   |
| . & putt it in buke þat we now wote;     |     |                                                                              |
| . he was a clerk and a gude knyght,      |     |                                                                              |
| . when Troie was lorn he sawe þat fight; | 148 |                                                                              |
| . Alle þe barons wele he knewe,          |     |                                                                              |
| . he tellis þer stature & þer hewe,      |     | He tells the<br>stature and hue<br>of all the<br>barons who<br>fought there, |
| . long or schorte, whyte or blak,        |     |                                                                              |
| . alle he telles, gude or lak.           | 152 |                                                                              |
| . Alle þer lymmes, how þai besemed,      |     |                                                                              |
| . In his buke has Dares demed,           |     |                                                                              |
| . Both of Troie & of Grece,              |     | both Trojans<br>& Greeks.                                                    |
| . whatkyns schappe was ilka pece;        | 156 |                                                                              |
| . Of manyon he reknes & sayes,           |     |                                                                              |
| . both of Troiens & of Gregeis,          |     |                                                                              |
| . þat it were oure long to telle,        |     |                                                                              |
| . & many wald not þer-in duelle          | 160 |                                                                              |
| . þare names alle forto here,            |     |                                                                              |
| . bot þe Latyn is fayre to lere.         |     |                                                                              |



[leaf 2.] Ego Galfridus Arthurus Monemutensis, qui hanc  
historiam Britonum de eorum lingua in nos-  
tram transferre curavi, dimitto fortunas suc-  
cessoribus meis scribendas.

Geoffrey of  
Monmouth  
turned a book  
out of Breton  
speech into  
Latin,

.Geffrey Arthure of Minumue,  
.fro Breton speche he did remue, 164  
. & made it alle in Latyn  
.þat clerkes haf now knawying in.  
.In Gloucestre was fonden a buke

at the request  
of Erle  
Roberde of  
Gloucestre.

.þat þe Inglis couthe not rede no luke, 168  
.On þat langage þai knew no herde;  
.bot an erle þat hyght Roberde,  
.he prayed þat ilk clerk Geffrey  
.to turne it fro þat speche away 172  
.In-to Latyn, as it mente,

Then came  
Mayster Wace,  
in 1055,  
and turned the  
Latin into  
French rhyme,  
up to Cad-  
waladre's time.

.þat þe Inglis mot know þe entente;  
.ffor Geffrey knew þe langage wele,  
.In Latyn he broght it ilka dele. 176  
.Sipen com a clerk, Mayster Wace,

.to make romance had he grace,  
. & turned it ro Latyne,  
. & rymed it in Frankis fyne 180  
.vnto þe Cadwaladres;  
.no forer, þer makes he ses.

.Als Geffrey in Latyn sayd,  
.so Mayster Wace in Frankis layd; 184  
.þe date of Criste was þan þis lyue,  
.A thousand þere fifty & fyue.

Afterwards  
Pers of Lang-  
toft  
put the same  
story into  
different verse,  
from Eneas,  
through the  
Brut, to the  
English deeds;  
fairer language  
was never read.

.Than com out of Brydlyngton  
.Pers of Langtoft, a chanon; 188

.Als Mayster Wace þe same he says,  
.bot he rymed it oþer ways;  
.he begynnes at Eneas,

.of alle þe Brute he tellis þe pas, 192  
. & s[i]þen<sup>1</sup> alle þe Inglis dedis; [1 or syen]  
.feyrere langage non ne redis.



- . After þe Inglis kynges he says þer pris  
 . þat all in metir fulle wele lys; 196  
 . And I, Robert, fulle fayn wald bringe  
 . In Inglis tonge þer faire saiynge.  
 . <sup>1</sup> God gyve me grace wel to spede, [leaf 1, Lamb, MS.] into English  
 . þys rym on Englishe for to rede. 200 words.

Genealogia primi regis Troge & Enee a Noe et Saphet  
 vsque ad Loquerinum<sup>2</sup> deducta.

- . Now of þe story wyl we <sup>3</sup> gynne:  
 . Whan God took wreche of Kaymes<sup>4</sup> synne,  
 . þe erthe was waryed in his werk—  
 . Als y<sup>5</sup> þe bible seys þe Clerk/,— 204  
 . & þerfore God sente a flood  
 . þat<sup>6</sup> fordide al flesche & blood,<sup>7</sup>  
 . Man & best þat beren lyues,  
 . Bot foure men & foure wyues. 208  
 . So mykel was þenne<sup>8</sup> mannes trespas,  
 . þat alle þat euer of Adam was  
 . Wyþynne a þousand þer & mo,  
 . In þat flod were lorn alle þo. 212  
 . Bot Noe & his þre sones  
 . And þeir wyues—þe bible hit mones—  
 . Wer none worthi in Godes sight,  
 . Ne non bot þese þat liueden<sup>9</sup> ryght. 216
- Through Cain's  
 sin the earth  
 was cursed,  
 and God sent a  
 flood which  
 destroyed  
 all flesh,  
 save four  
 men and four  
 women,  
 Noe and his  
 three sons,

<sup>1</sup> The Lambeth MS. begins here, and the text is printed from it. A modern hand has put the following title to the MS.:—"A Chronicle of England, in olde Englishe meeter, from Brute to King Richarde y<sup>c</sup> .I., made by Piers of Langtofte, chanonne of Bridlington, and putte into Englishe ryme by Robert de Brunne iuxta Depinge .v. infr. f. lxxij." The various readings are from the Petyt MS.

<sup>2</sup> loerinum.

<sup>3</sup> A later hand has struck out *wyl* (wille P.) and prefixed *be* to *gynne*.

<sup>4</sup> wreke of Caym.

<sup>5</sup> MS. scratched over with a pen. "as in," P.

<sup>6</sup> &.

<sup>7</sup> The later hand puts *both* for *al*, and *all* before *blood*; as also *both* before *Man* in the next line, and & *left* before *Bot* in the line after.

<sup>8</sup> þan.

<sup>9</sup> lyued.



Shem, Ham,  
and Japhet,  
and their wives.

. þyse were þo<sup>1</sup> þat skaped þe deþ,  
. Noe, Seem, Cam, & Sapheþ,<sup>2</sup>  
. And þer wyues þat<sup>3</sup> wiþ þem<sup>4</sup> nam;  
. þo þat now ar, of þys folk þey<sup>5</sup> cam. 220

These sons  
divided the  
world into  
three parts,

. þyse<sup>6</sup> Noe sonen, 3e han<sup>7</sup> wel herd  
. How þey departed al þys werd:<sup>8</sup>  
. þey departed [it]<sup>9</sup> in þre parties,  
. And names gaf at þeir deuis, 224

Asia, Africa,  
and Europe.

Shem took  
Asia;  
Ham, Africa;  
Japheth,  
Europe.

. Assye, Aufryk, & Europe;  
. þys ar<sup>10</sup> þe parties, wel y hope.  
. Sem was þe eldest:<sup>11</sup> he ches Assye;  
. Cam took Aufryk til<sup>12</sup> his partie; 228  
. Saphet,<sup>13</sup> Europè<sup>14</sup> he took;  
. & þus þey parted,<sup>15</sup> als seyþ þe book.

### Tot terre sunt in vniuerso mundo.

Asia had 15  
divisions.

. How many landes in ilk of þyse,  
. Ilk a partie haf þeyr<sup>16</sup> assise: 232  
. In Assye fiftene landes are,  
. Bot þer names we seye no<sup>17</sup> mare:  
. India, Assery, and Partye,  
. Sire, Perce, Mede, Mesapotanie, 236  
. Capadoce, Palestine, & Armenye,  
. Cylyce, Cades, & Arrabye,  
. Al Egipte, & Lybye;  
. þyse ar<sup>18</sup> þe landes in Assye. 240

<sup>1</sup> þes were þai.

<sup>2</sup> Iapheth.

<sup>3</sup> þai.

<sup>4</sup> þam.

<sup>5</sup> ere of þes aught.

<sup>6</sup> This.

<sup>7</sup> haf.

<sup>8</sup> þe werlde.

<sup>9</sup> parted it.

<sup>10</sup> þes ere.

<sup>11</sup> was eldest.

<sup>12</sup> to.

<sup>13</sup> Iapheth.

<sup>14</sup> The accent is in the MS.

<sup>15</sup> & þis departid.

<sup>16</sup> has þer.

<sup>17</sup> na.

<sup>18</sup> ere.



|                                                        |                   |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| . ¶ Tyl Aufryk twelf landes longe, <sup>1</sup>        |                   | Africa had 12.  |
| . þat Cam til his partie gan fonge : <sup>2</sup>      |                   |                 |
| . Cireneus, Pentapolys, & Lyddya,                      |                   |                 |
| . Ethiope, Tripolitan, & Pysancia, <sup>3</sup>        | 244               |                 |
| . Gentulye, <sup>4</sup> Natabrie, Numidye,            |                   |                 |
| . Maurytan & Tynguytanie ;                             |                   |                 |
| . Sirtes þe more & þe lasse,                           |                   |                 |
| . ffor þe twelfte teld hit es.                         | 248               |                 |
| . ¶ ffiftene <sup>5</sup> landes ar in Europe,         | [leaf 1, col. 2.] | and Europe      |
| . Saphethes partie, þer dwelleþ <sup>6</sup> þe Pope : |                   | (where the      |
| . Romanie, <sup>7</sup> Calabre, Poille, & Spayne,     |                   | pope lives) 15. |
| . Massedoigne & Alemaygne,                             | 252               |                 |
| . Tracye, Dalmank, & Pamonie <sup>8</sup>              |                   |                 |
| . Lange-dok, ffraunce, <sup>9</sup> Acquitonie,        |                   |                 |
| . Brytaigne, Irland,—þyse arn <sup>10</sup> þe best,—  |                   |                 |
| . And al þe Northe toward þe west.                     | 256               |                 |
| . Now schal <sup>11</sup> we telle as we fynde         |                   | This is the     |
| . How Eneas com of Saphethes <sup>12</sup> kynde ;     |                   | genealogy of    |
| . ffol merk hit ys for to here,                        |                   | Eneas :         |
| . Bot algate a man may lere.                           | 260               |                 |

## Genealogia, siue generacio.

|                                                   |     |            |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|------------|
| . Noe þat God saued fro <sup>13</sup> dep.        |     | 1, Noah,   |
| . His sone was cald sire <sup>14</sup> Saphet.    |     | 2, Japhet, |
| . Iauan, his sone þat cam <sup>15</sup> of hym,   |     | 3, Javan,  |
| . He hadde a sone þat hight Setym ; <sup>16</sup> | 264 | 4, Setym,  |

<sup>1</sup> *lang.* [leaf 2, back.]<sup>2</sup> *parte vnderfang.*<sup>3</sup> *Bizancia.*<sup>4</sup> *Getulie.*<sup>5</sup> *ffouretene.* To make 15, the pope's dwelling must be counted as one land.<sup>6</sup> *was Iapheth parte þer es.*<sup>7</sup> *Rome.* (*Poille* is omitted.)<sup>8</sup> *Dalmatik, Pannonie.*<sup>9</sup> *Coloyne, Galle.*<sup>10</sup> *þes be.*<sup>11</sup> *satt.*<sup>12</sup> *Iaphet.*<sup>13</sup> *Noe god saued fro þe.*<sup>14</sup> *was sir.*<sup>15</sup> *com.*<sup>16</sup> *Cetim.*



|                                                        |                                                                       |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 5, Ciprius,                                            | . Setymes <sup>1</sup> sone, Ciprius hight,                           |     |
|                                                        | . A man of ffame & of myght ;                                         |     |
|                                                        | . So mikel þat tyme was his fame,                                     |     |
| (who gave his<br>name to<br>Cyprus,)                   | . þe lande of Cipre of <sup>2</sup> hym had name.                     | 268 |
| 6, Cretus,                                             | . Of þys noble sire Cyprius,                                          |     |
|                                                        | . Was a sone þat hight <sup>3</sup> Cretus ;                          |     |
| (from whom<br>Crete was<br>called,)                    | . þis Cretus an ilde he augte, <sup>4</sup>                           |     |
| 7, Celus,                                              | . þe name of hym Cret hit laughte.                                    | 272 |
| 8, Saturn,                                             | . Cretus sone hyghte Cellius,                                         |     |
| 9, Jupiter,                                            | . And Cellius sone was Saturnus ;                                     |     |
| (who was<br>learned in<br>astronomy,<br>had two wives, | . Saturnus sone highte Iubiter,                                       |     |
| May & Electra,<br>daughters of<br>king Atlas,          | . In astronomie he lerede fer.                                        | 276 |
|                                                        | . þis ilk Iubiter had twey <sup>5</sup> wyues,                        |     |
|                                                        | . Kynges doughtres, faire lyues ;                                     |     |
|                                                        | . þat on <sup>6</sup> hight Maye, þat oþer <sup>7</sup> Electra,      |     |
|                                                        | . þe <sup>8</sup> ffader hight Aclas <sup>9</sup> of þem twa ;        | 280 |
|                                                        | . ffor Aclas alle hise men calde, <sup>10</sup>                       |     |
|                                                        | . Mons Aclatis <sup>11</sup> ȝif hit now halde ;                      |     |
|                                                        | . þe <sup>12</sup> hil was so hey, as men hit leet, <sup>13</sup>     |     |
|                                                        | . þat heuen (men seye) hit vnder-feet. <sup>14</sup>                  | 284 |
|                                                        | . þys noble kynge sire Aclas, <sup>15</sup>                           |     |
| and a tree that<br>bore golden<br>apples               | . In his orchard <sup>16</sup> a tre þer was,                         |     |
|                                                        | . þat gilden apples hit bar ere-more <sup>17</sup>                    |     |
|                                                        | . Al þe tyme þat apples wore ; <sup>18</sup>                          | 288 |
|                                                        | . & alwey on dragon hem kepte ; <sup>19</sup>                         |     |
| which were<br>stolen).                                 | . Syn <sup>20</sup> were þey stolen þe while <sup>21</sup> he slepte. |     |

<sup>1</sup> *Cetim.*<sup>2</sup> *for.*<sup>3</sup> *meñ called.*<sup>4</sup> *MS. augste ; P. has aught.*<sup>5</sup> *þis Iubiter had twa.*<sup>6</sup> *þe ton.*<sup>7</sup> *þe toþer.*<sup>8</sup> *þer.*<sup>9</sup> *Atlans.*<sup>10</sup> *for Atlans a hitt men called.*<sup>11</sup> *Atlantis.*<sup>12</sup> *þat.*<sup>13</sup> *so hij meñ lette.*<sup>14</sup> *sayd it vndersette. ? feet = took.*<sup>15</sup> *Atlas.*<sup>16</sup> *lordschip.*<sup>17</sup> *euermore.*<sup>18</sup> *tymes þat appilles are.*<sup>19</sup> *Alle tymes a dragon þam.*<sup>20</sup> *Siþen.*<sup>21</sup> *whils.*



|                                                    |     |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------|
| . þys Iubiter lay dame Maye by,                    |     |                  |
| . & gat on hure <sup>1</sup> sire Mercury;         | 292 |                  |
| . Of Electra he gat an oþer,                       |     |                  |
| . Dardanum, Mercurius <sup>2</sup> brother.        |     | 10, Dardanus,    |
| . Iubiter loued wel more Maye                      |     |                  |
| . And Mercury þan þe oþer twaye,                   | 296 |                  |
| <sup>3</sup> . Wel more Maye & Mercurium           |     |                  |
| . þan Electra or Dardanum. <sup>3</sup>            |     |                  |
| . ffor loue of Maye he dide calle                  |     |                  |
| . þe monthe of May þat we knowe <sup>4</sup> alle; | 300 |                  |
| . ffor in that month made þey feste,               |     |                  |
| . þat time þey helden most honeste. <sup>5</sup>   |     |                  |
| . þys Darda[n]um gaf hym to chiualrie;             |     | (who took to     |
| . Mercury gaf him al to clergie.                   | 304 | chivalry,        |
| . ¶ þys Dardanus was a noble kyng, [leaf 1, back.] |     |                  |
| . Hys Godes schewed hym mykel þynge,               |     | and was bidden   |
| . & bed him gon <sup>6</sup> til Ytalye,           |     | by his gods      |
| . Toward Samo, þorough Tracye;                     | 308 | to go to Italy.  |
| . (Tracie for-sothe ys a lond,                     |     |                  |
| . Samo a contre, y vnderstond;)                    |     |                  |
| . þe whilk Dardan þorow maistrise                  |     | He united        |
| . Mad hem <sup>7</sup> boþ on, Samo-Tracye;        | 312 | Samos and        |
| . Samo-Tracie hap <sup>8</sup> his deuise.         |     | Thrace into      |
| . Syþen he wente in-til <sup>9</sup> ffrise,       |     | Samothracia,     |
| . & gaf hit <sup>10</sup> name when he þer cam,    |     |                  |
| . After him self Dardanium;                        | 316 |                  |
| . þe name of ffryse calde Dardanye,                |     | and named        |
| . Als he calde Tracye Samotracye.                  |     | Frisia Dar-      |
| . Of þys Dardan com a sone                         |     | dania).          |
| . Erectorius, <sup>11</sup> þat þer gan wone.      | 320 | 11, Ericthonius, |

<sup>1</sup> of hir.<sup>2</sup> Mercury.<sup>3</sup> P. omits these two lines.<sup>4</sup> know.<sup>5</sup> þai helde fairest & Mest.<sup>6</sup> P. omits gon.<sup>7</sup> Made þam.<sup>8</sup> at.<sup>9</sup> vnto.<sup>10</sup> P. omits hit.<sup>11</sup> Erictonius.



|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                         |                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 12, Tros,                                                | . þys Erectorius a sone he gat,<br>. Troius <sup>1</sup> ; a noble man was þat<br>. Of rightfulnessse & pitee;<br>. Ouer alle oper praised was he                                       | 324                    |
| (who built<br>Troy).                                     | . ffor a rightful man & hende,<br>. Of hym ys mynsyng wiþ-outen ende,<br>. ffor he made a cite of ioie<br>. After his name, & <sup>2</sup> calde hit Troye;                             | 328                    |
| 13, Assaracus,                                           | . Of þys Troye, þys <sup>3</sup> stori mones,<br>. Com of hym to <sup>4</sup> noble sones,<br>. þat on <sup>5</sup> hight Ile, þat oper Asserak,<br>. þys wer þer names, þe stori spak; | 332                    |
| (whose brother<br>Ilus built<br>Ilium,                   | . Ile was after his ffader kyngge,<br>. He made a cite of fair byggynge,<br>. And after him selue <sup>6</sup> made hit ryght,<br>. Ilye after Ile hit hight.                           | 336                    |
| & had a son<br>Laomedon,<br>whom                         | . Of þis Ile a sone was on,<br>. & his name was Laomedon;<br>. þys Laomedon a bataille chees;                                                                                           |                        |
| Hercules slew ;                                          | . He was slayn wyþ Ercules.<br>. Of Troye was mad destructione<br>. þorow Iason, kyngge Pelles sone.<br>. Of þys nys nought to tellen her,<br>. ffor hit ys nought of oure mater.       | 340<br><br><br><br>344 |
| Laomedon<br>begat Priam,                                 | . Of Laomedon com Priamus,<br>. Volcontus, and Ysyphilus;<br>. & a doughter of him cam,<br>. Hure name was Esionam.                                                                     | <br><br><br>348        |
| & he Hector,<br>and six other<br>sons and<br>daughters). | . ¶ Of Pryamus, eldest & mor,<br>. He had a sone men cald Ector,<br>. & oper syxe, & doughtres two,<br>. þe names may ȝe here of þo;                                                    | <br><br><br>352        |

<sup>1</sup> *Troys.*<sup>2</sup> & after his name. [leaf 3.]<sup>3</sup> *troys þe.*<sup>4</sup> *tuo.*<sup>5</sup> *þe tone.*<sup>6</sup> *self.*



- . Alysandre, Parys, Deyphebum,  
 . Elenim,<sup>1</sup> Troyl, Amphimacum;  
 . & two doughtres þat of him cam,  
 . Cassandram & Pollixenam. 356  
 . Of Troies bifore an oþer sone,  
 . Asserak, ʒe herde me mone.  
 . of þys Asserak now geten es  
 . A sone men callede Kapes; 360 14, Capes.  
 . & of Kapes Enches was, 15, Anchises.  
 . An[d] of Enches cam Eneas: 16, Eneas.  
 . þys ys þe kynde, fro gre til<sup>2</sup> gre, [leaf 1, back, col. 2.]  
 . Bytwyxten<sup>3</sup> Eneas & Noe. 364  
 . ¶ Bot now donward hit ys þus,  
 . ffro Eneas vntil<sup>4</sup> sire Brutus:  
 . Sire Eneas hadde sones twa,  
 . Askaneus was by dame Creusa; 368 17, Ascaneus,  
 . I þe bataille of Troye y-monge<sup>5</sup> þe pres,  
 . Hys wyf Creusa þere he<sup>6</sup> les.  
 . ¶ Whan þe Duk sire Eneas  
 . ffro þe bataille a-scaped was, 372  
 . He cam in-to<sup>7</sup> þe lond of Latyne,  
 . & þer wedded dame Lauyne.  
 . Latin highte þenne þe<sup>8</sup> landes  
 . þat men sayn þat Rome in<sup>9</sup> standes. 376  
 . By dame Lauyne þat leuedy<sup>10</sup> (Eneas also  
 . He gat a sone þat highte Syluy; begat Silvius  
 . Hys eldeste sone Ascaneus, on Lavinia).  
 . He gat a child<sup>11</sup> Cycillius;<sup>12</sup> 380 18, Cycillius.  
 . pylke Cycylli<sup>13</sup> gat þat man

<sup>1</sup> *Helenium*.<sup>2</sup> *to*.<sup>3</sup> *betuen*.<sup>4</sup> *titt*.<sup>5</sup> the *y* has been altered.<sup>6</sup> þer *he* *hir*.<sup>7</sup> *com to*.<sup>8</sup> þan þo.<sup>9</sup> þer *meñ* says þat rome.<sup>10</sup> *lady*.<sup>11</sup> *soñ* (or *sone*).<sup>12</sup> "ascane siluius" substituted by a later hand; P. has *Sisillius*.<sup>13</sup> *siluius* in the later hand; P. has þat *ilk* *Sisilli*.



|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 19, Brutus.                                             | . Brutus, þat al þys land first wan.                                                                                                                                                                |     |
| 20, Locrin<br>(and his<br>brothers).                    | . Of Brutus cam sire Lokeryn,<br>. Kamber, Albanak, Euen, Iulyn :                                                                                                                                   | 384 |
|                                                         | . How þey departed þys land in þrynne,<br>. þat may 3e heren wel wyþynne.                                                                                                                           |     |
|                                                         | . Now haue y s[eyd] <sup>1</sup> al þe kynde<br>. Vntil Lokerynes, <sup>2</sup> as we ffynde ;                                                                                                      | 388 |
| Reversing the<br>genealogy of<br>Assaracus,<br>we have, | . Now ageynward vntil <sup>3</sup> Noe,<br>. Schortly to seye, wilt <sup>4</sup> þou se<br>. þe kynde of alle þat y er of <sup>5</sup> spak,<br>. And of Troies sones, <sup>6</sup> Ile & Asserak/. | 392 |
| 20, Lokeryn.                                            | . Lokeryn com of Brutus,                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| 19, Brutus.                                             | . Brutus was geten of Cicillius ;                                                                                                                                                                   |     |
| 18, Cycillius.                                          | . Cicilli, Askaneus sone was,                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
| 17, Ascanus.                                            | . & Askaneus com of Eneas, <sup>7</sup>                                                                                                                                                             | 396 |
| 16, Eneas.                                              | . Eneas com of Enchise ;                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| 15, Anchises.                                           | . Enches, Kapes sone was he ;                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
| 14, Capes.                                              | . Capes com of Asserak ;                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| 13, Assaracus.                                          | . Asserak, of Troies blod he brak, <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                     | 400 |
| 12, Tros.                                               | . Troies cam of Eryctonius,                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
| 11, Eriethonius.                                        | . Erycton com of Dardanus,                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
| 10, Dardanus.                                           | . Dardan <sup>9</sup> com of Iubiter,                                                                                                                                                               |     |
| 9, Jupiter.                                             | . Iubiter was Saturnus heyr,                                                                                                                                                                        | 404 |
| 8, Saturnus.                                            | . Saturnus cam of Cellius,                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
| 7, Celus.                                               | . & Selius cam of sire Cretus,                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
| 6, Cretus.                                              | . And Cretus cam of Cyprim,                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
| 5, Ciprius.                                             | . & Ciprius cam of Setym,                                                                                                                                                                           | 408 |
| 4, Setym.                                               | . Setym com of Iauan,                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
| 3, Javan.                                               | . & Iauan of Saphet <sup>10</sup> gan,                                                                                                                                                              |     |
| 2, Japhet.                                              | . And Saphet <sup>10</sup> cam of sire Noe :                                                                                                                                                        |     |
| 1, Noah.                                                | . Of Asserak þys ys þe degre.                                                                                                                                                                       | 412 |

<sup>1</sup> MS. rubbed. *sayd*.<sup>2</sup> *vnto Lokeryn*.<sup>3</sup> *vnto*.<sup>4</sup> *witt*.<sup>5</sup> *I are*.<sup>6</sup> *of troys*.<sup>7</sup> *sir Eneas*.<sup>8</sup> *blode brak*.<sup>9</sup> ? MS. *Dardari*.<sup>10</sup> *Iaphet*.



|                                                    |           |                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| . Now schul we seye of ylke <sup>1</sup> parti :   |           | And reversing<br>the genealogy<br>of Ilus, we get,                    |
| . Ector cam of Pryamy,                             |           | 16, Hector.                                                           |
| . Priamus com of Laomedon,                         |           | 15, Priam.                                                            |
| . Laomedon of Ile gan ; <sup>2</sup>               | 416       | 14, Laomedon.                                                         |
| . Ile cam of Troyus,                               |           | 13, Ilus.                                                             |
| . & Troyus of Erectonius ;                         |           | 12, Tros.                                                             |
| . Erector <sup>3</sup> cam of kyng Dardan,         |           | 11, Erich-<br>thonius.                                                |
| . Dardanus of Iubiter ran,                         | 420       | 10, Dardanus.                                                         |
| . And Iubiter cam of Saturnus,                     |           | 9, Jupiter.                                                           |
| . And Saturnus of Celius,                          |           | 8, Saturnus.                                                          |
| . Celius com of Cretus,                            | [leaf 2.] | 7, Celius.                                                            |
| . And Cretus com of Cyprius,                       | 424       | 6, Cretus.                                                            |
| . Ciprius of Cetym gan,                            |           | 5, Cyprius.                                                           |
| . & Cetyn com of Iauan ;                           |           | 4, Cetym.                                                             |
| . Iauan, Iaphethes <sup>4</sup> sone was he,       |           | 3, Javan.                                                             |
| . And Saphet <sup>4</sup> com of sire Noe :        | 428       | 2, Japhet.                                                            |
| . Of Troius sones þyse ar þe kyndes,               |           | 1, Noah.                                                              |
| . þat bothe in-to Noe byndes.                      |           |                                                                       |
| . Now, lordynges, hit were to witen                |           |                                                                       |
| . Whi þe bataille of Troye was smiten :            | 432       | The battle of<br>Troy was<br>fought for<br>Helen, queen<br>of Greece, |
| . þe laste meschaunce & þe peyne                   |           | whom Paris<br>ravished.                                               |
| . Was for þe Quene of Grece, Eleyne ;              |           |                                                                       |
| . þe kynges wyf of Grece scho <sup>5</sup> was,    |           |                                                                       |
| . þat Parys rauished <sup>6</sup> þorow a cas.     | 436       |                                                                       |
| . þat werre was in tyme ser,                       |           |                                                                       |
| . & lasted <sup>7</sup> two & twenty ȝer.          |           |                                                                       |
| . ffor þat werre þe barons fledde                  |           |                                                                       |
| . þat weren in Troye born & fedde ;                | 440       |                                                                       |
| <sup>8</sup> . How hit bigan, þe laste bale,       |           |                                                                       |
| . Listneþ, & [I] schal telle þe tale, <sup>8</sup> |           |                                                                       |
| . Of Troye þe firste destructione,                 |           | Troy was first<br>destroyed by<br>Jason,                              |
| . þat cam <sup>9</sup> þorow Iasan, Pelles sone,   | 444       |                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> *satt we say of Ile.* [leaf 3, back.]<sup>2</sup> *began.*<sup>3</sup> *Erickton.*<sup>4</sup> *Iaphet.*<sup>5</sup> *scho.*<sup>6</sup> *rauyst.*<sup>7</sup> *lastand.*<sup>8</sup> P. omits these two lines.<sup>9</sup> *com* (for *þat cam*).



who won the  
ram with the  
fleece of gold,

& levelled  
Troy ;  
but Priam  
built it again,

though since  
its last ruin it  
has never been  
rebuilt.

Here is the tale  
of its fall.

. þat wan the Ram wiþ the fles<sup>1</sup> of golde,  
 . þat neuere man of erthe molde  
 . Mighte hit<sup>2</sup> wyne byfore wiþ fyght,  
 . Bot sire Iasan þe gode knyght<sup>3</sup> 448  
 . Whan<sup>4</sup> þe Ram wyþ<sup>5</sup> gilden flees,  
 . & stryed Troye wiþ alle þe cites ;  
 . Bot þe kyng sire Pryami  
 . Bigged hit a-geyn fol noblely,<sup>6</sup> 452  
 . & vitailed hit of ston & corn ;<sup>7</sup>  
 . Was hit neuer so fair biforn ;  
 . Bot siþen þe laste sorewe & peyne  
 . Was hit neuere bygged ageyne. 456  
 . How hit bygan, þe laste bale,  
 . List<sup>8</sup> a partie of þe tale.

*Exe de Troia de qua causa bellum fuit ammotum.*

Paris was  
Priam's son,  
and the custom  
then was that  
none but  
knights

should keep  
beasts ;

. In Troye was a Duc of prys,  
 . Pryamy sone þat highte Parys. 460  
 . Custume was bi þo dawes,  
 . In tyme of þe elde lawes,  
 . Knygtes scholden<sup>9</sup> kepe bestes,  
 . Als y haue herd rede[n] in gestes. 464  
 . þe Bible wytnesseþ<sup>10</sup> wel þys þynge  
 . Of Moyses & Daud þe kyng ;  
 . Schold<sup>11</sup> non bot of gentil blod,  
 . Erl or duc, or also<sup>12</sup> god, 468  
 . Bestes kepe, bot he were knyght,  
 . & stalworthe in armes for to fyght,

<sup>1</sup> fleez.

<sup>2</sup> Mot it.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *knynght*.

<sup>4</sup> wañ.

<sup>5</sup> with þe.

<sup>6</sup> nobly.

<sup>7</sup> & vouted it oft ston att corn.

<sup>8</sup> Listes.

<sup>9</sup> suld.

<sup>10</sup> wittnes.

<sup>11</sup> suld.

<sup>12</sup> als.



|                                              |     |                 |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------|
| . And hardy, & of honour,                    |     |                 |
| . He kepte bestes y <sup>1</sup> þe pastour, | 472 | so Paris        |
| . Swylk on was þys ilke Parys,               |     |                 |
| . A duk hardi, & a knyght wys; <sup>2</sup>  |     |                 |
| . He kepte bestes in þe feld                 |     | keeps beasts in |
| . As a knyght armed wip scheld.              | 476 | the field.      |
| . Als Parys <sup>3</sup> sat at his hole,    |     |                 |
| . Out fro Grece þer cam a bole;              |     | To his beasts   |
| . To Paris bestes was his draught,           |     | comes a bull    |
| . And wip Parys bole he faught.              | 480 | from Greece,    |
|                                              |     | and fights      |
|                                              |     | with Paris's    |
|                                              |     | bull,           |

**Exe pugnum inter Taurum Troie & Taurum  
Grecie.**

[leaf 2, col. 2.]

|                                                        |     |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------|
| . ¶ Ilkon oþer gan faste assaille,                     |     |                |
| . & Parys biheld þeir bataille;                        |     |                |
| . þey foughte so longe, <sup>4</sup> hit was a wonder, |     | one day,       |
| . Bot at þe laste þey zede a sonder.                   | 484 |                |
| . An oþer day he com ageyn,                            |     | two days,      |
| . & foughte to-gydere, þys boles tweyn;                |     |                |
| . So foughte þei mani daies longe,                     |     | many days;     |
| . ffelenous <sup>5</sup> batailles & fol stronge.      | 488 |                |
| . Paris seide, "Now schal y se                         |     | and Paris      |
| . "Whilk is worthi to haue þe gre,                     |     |                |
| . " & whilk of hem maistri schal haue,                 |     | resolves to    |
| . "To coroune hym y vouche hit saue." <sup>6</sup>     | 492 | crown the      |
| . ¶ A day þei foughte fol felonlike,                   |     | conqueror.     |
| . & stalworly <sup>7</sup> to-gyder gon stryke;        |     |                |
| . So longe þey foughte, þat atte <sup>8</sup> laste    |     | At last the    |
| . þe bole of Troye doun was caste.                     | 496 | Trojan bull    |
|                                                        |     | is beaten, and |

<sup>1</sup> in.<sup>2</sup> hardy knyght & wys.<sup>3</sup> as þis Paris.<sup>4</sup> þai faught so long.<sup>5</sup> felons.<sup>6</sup> vouchsaue.<sup>7</sup> stalworþely.<sup>8</sup> long þai faught at þe.



Paris gives the  
Grecian bull  
the crown.

Three witches,  
called ladies,  
see this bull-  
fight,

Juno, Pallas,  
and Venus,

and begin to  
argue which of  
them is fairest.

They agree to  
refer the ques-  
tion to Paris.

. When Parys saugh his bole doun,  
. þe bole of Grece he gaf þe croun ;  
. & þat was gret curtesye,  
. To gyue þe bole þe maistríe, 500  
. & late hym gon corouned quit<sup>1</sup>  
. þat hadde ydon his bole despit.  
. þere biside þre wicches ware,  
. Ladies were cald, & in þe eyr dide fare; 504  
. þyse þre stoden & byheld<sup>2</sup>  
. þe boles bataille in þe feld,  
. & praised mikel sire Paris  
. þat he gaf þat<sup>3</sup> bole þe pris ; 508  
. þey seide he was a man of skyl  
. þat gaf þe dom as fel þer til ;  
. ffor he þat was þe pris worþy,  
. He corouned hym,<sup>4</sup> and gaf þe maistri. 512  
. þyse þre leuedies were of might ;  
. þe principale,<sup>5</sup> Iuno scheo hight ;  
. þat oper Pallas, þe þrydde Venus,  
. Alle þre leuedies highten<sup>6</sup> þus. 516  
. Iuno, scheo was gyuere of myght,  
. Pallas gaf wysdam & right,  
. Dame Venus, sche<sup>7</sup> gaf loue til man.  
. Bytwyxt<sup>8</sup> þise þre a strif bigan, 520  
. Whilk of hem<sup>9</sup> were fayrest :  
. At Paris dom þei wolde<sup>10</sup> hit kest.  
. Dame Iuno seide, “ hit am y ; ”  
. þat oper seid, “ nay truely ! ”<sup>11</sup> 524  
. “ To Paris dom we graunten alle,  
. “ þe whilk of vs fairest schal falle.”

<sup>1</sup> quite.

<sup>2</sup> þe þre stode & behelde.

<sup>3</sup> þe.

<sup>4</sup> he crouned.

<sup>5</sup> þat mast was

<sup>6</sup> ladyes hight

<sup>7</sup> scho.

<sup>8</sup> betuex.

<sup>9</sup> þam.

<sup>10</sup> dome þai wald.

<sup>11</sup> certanly.



¶ De consilio Iuno et adulacione sua.

|                                                   |     |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------|
| . Dame Iuno seide hure auys,                      |     |                  |
| . "We schal don hit vpon <sup>1</sup> Parys,      | 528 |                  |
| . "& he schal ben oure <sup>2</sup> domes man."   |     |                  |
| . þe opere <sup>3</sup> seide, "We graunte þan."  |     |                  |
| . "Now," sche <sup>4</sup> seide "we graunten al; |     |                  |
| . "Go we now & make a bal,                        | 532 | They'll make a   |
| . "& gyue we hit <sup>5</sup> Parys alle þre,     |     | ball, and ask    |
| . "And preye we hym for specialte                 |     | Paris to give it |
| . "To gyue hit hure þat semes best,               |     | to the fairest   |
| . "Of vs þre whilk ys <sup>6</sup> fairest."      | 536 | of them,         |
| . þys ilke conseil þey toke til <sup>7</sup> pay; |     |                  |
| . Whan hit schold be þey sette a day.             |     | on a certain     |

day.

¶ Lege per totum vltorius.

|                                                         |                 |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| . Hereþ <sup>8</sup> now of a quynte wyle, <sup>9</sup> | [leaf 2, back.] |                  |
| . How eche of þo þoughte oper gyle. <sup>10</sup>       | 540             |                  |
| . Ar þat day com þat þey set,                           |                 | Before that      |
| . Iuno wiþ sire Parys met:                              |                 | day Juno         |
| . "Paris," scheo seyþ, "y schal ȝow <sup>11</sup> seye  |                 | tells Paris      |
| . "A priuete by-twixte vs beye: <sup>12</sup>           | 544             |                  |
| . "We þre ladies han <sup>13</sup> ordeyned so          |                 | what they ladies |
| . "pat alle þre schulle come þe to,                     |                 | are going to do, |
| . "& take þe a bal, & preye þe                          |                 |                  |
| . "To gyue hit þe fairest of vs þre;                    | 548             |                  |
| . "& wham þou gyue <sup>14</sup> hit, ys oure deuys,    |                 |                  |
| . "Scheo schal <sup>15</sup> for euere bere þe prys.    |                 |                  |

<sup>1</sup> *satt do it on.*

<sup>2</sup> *he satt oure.*

<sup>3</sup> *þat oper.*

<sup>4</sup> *scho.*

<sup>5</sup> *& gyf it.*

<sup>6</sup> *þre to be.*

<sup>7</sup> *to.*

<sup>8</sup> *Here.*

<sup>9</sup> *quante gyle.*

<sup>10</sup> *how alle þre thocht a wyle.*

<sup>11</sup> *scho said .I. satt þe.*

<sup>12</sup> *tueye.*

<sup>13</sup> *haf.*

<sup>14</sup> *whom þou gyffes.*

<sup>15</sup> *scho satt.*



and prays him  
to give her the  
ball;

then she'll set  
him above all  
in Troy.

She gone,  
Pallas prays  
him too for the  
ball,

and promises  
him wisdom  
over all.

Last comes  
Venus, tells  
him

she is coming  
to be judged by  
him,

and if he'll give  
her the ball,  
she'll give him  
the fairest lady  
alive.

. " & ȝif y myghte biseke þe so,  
 . " þou woldest<sup>1</sup> gyue hit me, Iuno; 552  
 . " I schal þe<sup>2</sup> graunte þorow my power,  
 . " In Troye schold neuere<sup>3</sup> be þy per."  
 . Parys seide, "dame, graunt mercy!  
 . Right as þou wilt, al so wil y."<sup>4</sup> 556  
 . Whan scheo was gon, cam Pallas  
 . ffor þat same þat Iuno was;  
 . Scheo preied Parys, als scheo had seyð,  
 . þat þe bal were til hure y-leyd: 560  
 . "Of wysdam y schal gyue þe grace  
 . " Ouer alle oper in ilk a place."  
 . Parys seide, þat was curteys,  
 . "Hit may be, lady, ȝyt as þou seys." 564  
 . ¶ Whan scheo was gon, cam dame Venus,<sup>6</sup>  
 . & to Parys scheo seide<sup>7</sup> al þus:  
 . "Parys," scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> "we ladies are  
 . " pre in gret þought & in care; 568  
 . " & þou may bate al þat gilt<sup>8</sup>  
 . " Of vs alle ȝif þat þou wylt.  
 . " Y am," scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> "on of þo  
 . " þat ys in þought to þe to go. 572  
 . " A day we set to þe to come,  
 . " ffor to stonde al at þy dome;  
 . " A bal," scheo seide,<sup>7</sup> "we schul<sup>9</sup> þe brynge,  
 . " & preie þe vpon alle þynge 576  
 . " þou gyue hit hure þat fairest semes,  
 . " ffor þy dom vs alle quemes.  
 . " & ȝif þou gyue hit me, Parys,  
 . " I schal<sup>9</sup> þe gyue a loue of pris, 580  
 . " þe fairest lady þat now lyues,  
 . " ffor þe bal, ȝif<sup>10</sup> þou hit me gyues."

<sup>1</sup> wild.

<sup>2</sup> I satt.

<sup>3</sup> ne suld.

<sup>4</sup> als þou wilt þan witt .I.

<sup>5</sup> to hir layd.

<sup>6</sup> com Venus.

<sup>7</sup> scho said.

<sup>8</sup> abate þat gylte.

<sup>9</sup> satt.

<sup>10</sup> &. [leaf 4, back.]



|                                                          |     |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------------------|
| . ¶ Parys þoughte, & stod þen stille ;                   |     | Paris thinks,     |
| . To þat loue turnd al his wille ;                       | 584 |                   |
| . He seide, "Iuno hyghte <sup>1</sup> me poer ;          |     | he cares not for  |
| . " þerof," he seid, "ys no mester ;                     |     | power             |
| . " Kynges <sup>2</sup> sone y am, & lord schal be ;     |     | (being a king's   |
| . " Poer ynow schal come to me.                          | 588 | son),             |
| . " & Pallas highte me gret wysdam ;                     |     | nor wisdom        |
| . " In Troye nis wyser þan y am ; <sup>3</sup>           |     | (there's no       |
| . " Of þyse gyftes ys no ned ;                           |     | wiser than he     |
| . " To loue þat lady ys al my sped."                     | 592 | in Troy) ;        |
| . To þat gift his herte gaf al :                         |     | love is his need. |
| . " Venus," he saide, "þou getes þe bal                  |     |                   |
| . " ȝyf þou me hold þat þou hast het, <sup>4</sup>       |     | So he promises    |
| . " þou getest <sup>5</sup> þe bal at ȝoure day set."    | 596 | the ball to       |
| . þey graunted boþe atter <sup>6</sup> pay,              |     | Venus.            |
| . & com alle þre at þer day,                             |     |                   |
| . & bytok <sup>7</sup> Parys þe bal ;                    |     | On the day        |
| . At his dom þey stoden <sup>8</sup> al.                 | 600 | fixed the three   |
| . Parys tok þe bal in his hand : <sup>9</sup>            |     | witches come.     |
| . " So faire ladies ar none lyuand ; <sup>10</sup>       |     |                   |
| . " Bot me þynkes <sup>11</sup> of ȝow þre               |     |                   |
| . " Dame Venus semes fairest to be.                      | 604 | Paris decides     |
| . " Haue here þe bal, dame Venus ;                       |     |                   |
| . " ffairrest to be, me þynkeþ ryght <sup>12</sup> þus." |     | that Venus is     |
| . þys lady Venus was al glad,                            |     | the fairest, and  |
| . þe opere <sup>13</sup> were for wrayth al mad ;        | 608 | gives her the     |
| . Venus held <sup>14</sup> wip hym certeyn,              |     | ball.             |
| . þe opere boþe were hym ageyn ;                         |     |                   |
| . Poer & wysdam he forsok ;                              |     | The others are    |
| . & womman loue, þer-til he tok.                         | 612 | mad with rage.    |

<sup>1</sup> hett.<sup>2</sup> kyng.<sup>3</sup> wisere of troie es ne yan .I. am.<sup>4</sup> kalde þat þou has hette.<sup>5</sup> getes.<sup>6</sup> at þer.<sup>7</sup> betaght.<sup>8</sup> þai stode.<sup>9</sup> in hande.<sup>10</sup> ere non lyffande.<sup>11</sup> thynk.<sup>12</sup> thynk reght.<sup>13</sup> toþer.<sup>14</sup> was.



Venus tells  
Paris to provide  
furs, jewels,  
purple and fine  
linen ;  
to take a ship

with a fine bed  
in it covered  
with cloths of  
gold,

go to Greece,  
land where the  
queen is,

and she'll yearn  
to see his wares;  
but he's not to  
show them un-  
less she'll go on  
board ;

and that she'll  
do,

for woman  
craves what  
man forbids  
her.

. ¶ Dame Venus seide to<sup>1</sup> sire Parys,  
 . " pou schalt don at myn auys:<sup>2</sup>  
 . " Puruey þe," scheo seide, " veir & grys,  
 . " ffaire iueles, & pourpre<sup>3</sup> & bys ; 616  
 . " Do dight a schip wip sail & ore  
 . " Ryght as þou a marchaund wore ;  
 . " Of alle queyntise þat þou may se,  
 . " Haue<sup>4</sup> vn-to þy schip wyþ þe ; 620  
 . " Do make þerinne a fol fair bed,<sup>5</sup>  
 . " Wip clopes of gold hit be al<sup>6</sup> spred ;  
 . " þy schip wipoute be fol fair<sup>7</sup> dight,  
 . " Lykyng to þat lauedy<sup>8</sup> sight. 624  
 . " þerinne<sup>9</sup> to Grece schalt<sup>10</sup> þou wende ;  
 . " In an hauene schalt<sup>10</sup> þou lende  
 . " þer þe kyng ys, & þe Quene ;  
 . " & whan scheo haþ þe schip al<sup>11</sup> sene, 628  
 . " Scheo schal ʒerne<sup>12</sup> on alle wyse  
 . " ffor to se þy marchaundise ;  
 . " Bot loke þou schewe non of þo,  
 . " Bot scheo wile in to þy schip<sup>13</sup> go ; 632  
 . " & whan scheo heres þat tydyng,<sup>14</sup>  
 . " Scheo schal praie ful faste<sup>15</sup> þe kyng  
 . " To gyue hire leue to se þy ware,  
 . " To bye þerof þat so riche are. 636  
 . " <sup>16</sup>Loke þou schewe noman nought  
 . " Til þat sche first be hider brought,<sup>16</sup>  
 . " ffor out of wyt wommen<sup>17</sup> ʒernes  
 . " þat men forbedes hure, & wernes. 640

<sup>1</sup> said titt.

<sup>2</sup> satt do at my deuys.

<sup>3</sup> purpure.

<sup>4</sup> haf.

<sup>5</sup> a full fayre bedde.

<sup>6</sup> gold be it att.

<sup>7</sup> full faire.

<sup>8</sup> likand to þat lady.

<sup>9</sup> MS. þerime.

<sup>10</sup> satt.

<sup>11</sup> scho has þi schippe.

<sup>12</sup> Scho satt ʒern.

<sup>13</sup> in to schippe.

<sup>14</sup> tiding.

<sup>15</sup> Scho satt pray full fast.

<sup>16-16</sup> luke þou schew no man nought  
of þe

bot he witt in to þe schippe go.

<sup>17</sup> witte woman.



- .“ & whan scheo his brought vnto<sup>1</sup> þy schip,  
 .“ By þe hand redy þou hure kyp,<sup>2</sup>  
 .“ & curteysly þat scheo be led,  
 .“ & set hure faire opo<sup>5</sup> þy bed; 644  
 .“ Do cortine hit al aboute  
 .“ þat scheo se nought wyþynne ne<sup>4</sup> wyþoute,  
 .“ & whan scheo ys on þy bed set,  
 .“ Loke wel þat þy schip be get; 648  
 .“ Lat non come vnder þy telde  
 .“ Mo þan þou may lightly welde;  
 .“ Loke þy schip be<sup>5</sup> vnfest,  
 .“ & þy folk be al<sup>6</sup> prest; 652  
 .“ And what þynge þat sche wil craue,  
 .“ Do hit hure redy for to<sup>7</sup> haue,  
 .“ þat scheo tende to no þynge elles  
 .“ Bot til þat ware þat þou hure selles. 656  
 .“ Whan redy ys þyn apparail,  
 .“ Lat þy men haue vp þe sayl,<sup>8</sup>  
 .“ & loke<sup>9</sup> þou be to myle or þre  
 .“ Ar scheo wite<sup>10</sup> wyþynne þe se; 660  
 .“ & do þenne þat lady to wyte  
 .“ How þy iueles wyl hure syte.”  
 . Parys dide as Venus kende,  
 . & dighte þe schip,—wel he<sup>11</sup> wende,— 664  
 . Wyþ alle queintyse þat was<sup>12</sup> gay,  
 . & aryued vp<sup>3</sup> þer þe kinge lay.  
 . Menlaus highte þe kynge;  
 . He sente to wyte what maner þynge 668  
 . Was in þe schip for to selle.  
 .“ Riche iueles,” þey gan him telle,
- Then he's to  
 take her by the  
 hand,  
 set her on the  
 bed,  
 curtain it all  
 round,  
 then cast off  
 the ship,—  
 let the queen  
 have every-  
 thing she wants,  
 that she may  
 attend to  
 nothing else,  
 hoist up the  
 sails,—  
 and then let her  
 know how his  
 jewels will suit  
 her.  
 Paris does as  
 Venus tells him,  
 fits out his ship,  
 and lands where  
 Menelaus is.  
 He asks what  
 Paris has to sell:  
 Rich jewels, *in*  
 the ship, not

<sup>1</sup> *bot when is broght in to.*<sup>2</sup> *kippe.*<sup>3</sup> *on.*<sup>4</sup> *scho se no thyng.*<sup>5</sup> *it be.*<sup>6</sup> *att.*<sup>7</sup> *redy to.*<sup>8</sup> *þat þi meñ haf vp þi saile.*<sup>9</sup> *at.*<sup>10</sup> *Or scho (no wite).*<sup>11</sup> *his schippe wele .I.* [leaf 5.]<sup>12</sup> *were.*<sup>13</sup> *vp omitted.*



|                         |                                                   |     |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| out of it.              | . " Bot non ne mighte for gold ne <sup>1</sup> fe |     |
|                         | . " Out of þe schip gete ought to se."            | 672 |
| Helen                   | . þat herde telle þe quene Heleyne.               |     |
|                         | . Nyght & day sche dide <sup>2</sup> hire peyne,  |     |
|                         | . Of þe kyng to haue grauntyse                    |     |
|                         | . To se þat ylke marchaundyse.                    | 676 |
| gets leave to see them, | . What wyþ wel oþer <sup>3</sup> wyþ wo,          |     |
|                         | . Leue scheo gat <sup>4</sup> þyder to go.        |     |

¶ Exe de Raptu Helene Regine Grece.

|                                                  |                                                         |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| and goes on board.                               | . Vnto þe schip was scheo brought :                     |     |
| Paris                                            | . Parys þe [duk] <sup>5</sup> forgat he nought          | 680 |
|                                                  | . þat he ne dide as Venus bad.                          |     |
|                                                  | . ffor þe quene comynge he was fol glad ;               |     |
|                                                  | . ffaire iueles forth þey drowe, <sup>7</sup>           |     |
| shows her fair jewels ;                          | . & schewed þe <sup>8</sup> lady right ynowe ;          | 684 |
|                                                  | . & whyles þei richesse bifore hure caste,              |     |
| his men hoist the sail,                          | . þer sayl þey drow vp by þe maste.                     |     |
|                                                  | . þys lady Heleyne gaf no tent,                         |     |
|                                                  | . Me non of hures, how þe schip out went ;              | 688 |
| and when they are two or three miles from land,  | . Wyþynne a þrowe, to <sup>9</sup> mile or þre          |     |
|                                                  | . Was þe schip wyþynne þe se.                           |     |
|                                                  | . ¶ Whan þey weren fro þe lond,                         |     |
| Paris welcomes Helen ;                           | . Parys tok þe quene by þe hond :                       | 692 |
|                                                  | . " Welcome," he saide, <sup>10</sup> " art þou to me ! |     |
|                                                  | . " ffor þe cam y <sup>11</sup> to þys contre ;         |     |
|                                                  | . " Now <sup>12</sup> y haue þe, mykel is my ioie,      |     |
| and tells her her beauty shall rejoyce all Troy. | . " py fairehede schal mende <sup>13</sup> al Troye ;   | 696 |

<sup>1</sup> no.<sup>2</sup> scho did.<sup>3</sup> wele or.<sup>4</sup> scho gate.<sup>5</sup> duke.<sup>6</sup> þe quene com in his herte was glad.<sup>7</sup> þai droghe.<sup>8</sup> þat.<sup>9</sup> tuo.<sup>10</sup> Welcom Heleyne.<sup>11</sup> I com.<sup>12</sup> ffor.<sup>13</sup> satt amend.



- . " þou were me gyuen;<sup>1</sup> þat gyft y haue;  
 . " Al my trauaille, y vouche hit saue."  
 . Y kan nought sey of þat leuedy  
 . Wheþer scheo was glad or sory;<sup>2</sup> 700 If Helen is not  
 . Bot whan hure lord þe kyng hit wist, sorry,  
 . Ioye to make him ne lyst; Menelaus is.  
 . After his barons alle he sent  
 . & schewede hem how þat<sup>3</sup> he was schent; 704 He sends for  
 . ' þat a schip of Troye was comen, his barons,  
 . þe quene þorow treson þey<sup>4</sup> nomen.' tells them how  
 . Whan þei alle wiste þys<sup>5</sup> grete despit, his queen has  
 . Wip o wille þey seyde fol tyt, 708 been stolen  
 . þei scholde neuere reste ne lende from him;  
 . To struye<sup>6</sup> Troye wyþouten ende. to destroy Troy  
 . Here-fore bigan þe sorewe and peyne, for ever.  
 . þe slaughtre of Troye, for þys Heleyne; 712  
 . þys<sup>7</sup> slaughter was yn bataille seer,  
 . & lasted<sup>8</sup> two & twenty ȝer The strife lasts  
 . Bytwyxtē þe Troiens & þe Gregeys, [leaf 3, col. 2.] twenty-two  
 . Als þe stories wytnesses & seys. 716 years.  
 . At a batalle þat þey set,<sup>9</sup> The last battle  
 . Troye & Grece at ones met,  
 . At which<sup>10</sup> bataille þe Troiens lees,  
 . & fledde fro þat mykel prees. 720  
 . þat<sup>11</sup> mighte fle, fledde ay-whore,<sup>11</sup>  
 . & Troye destruyed for euere more. the Trojans  
 . Al þe werd<sup>12</sup> makes ȝyt menyngē lose,  
 . How Troye was struyed for þys þynge; 724 and Troy is  
 . Clerkes wyse yn boke hit wrot, destroyed,  
 . þorow whiche wrytyngē wel alle hit wot<sup>13</sup>; as wise clerks  
 write.

<sup>1</sup> was gyfē.<sup>2</sup> whedire scho were or sary.<sup>3</sup> þam how.<sup>4</sup> has.<sup>5</sup> þe.<sup>6</sup> destroye.<sup>7</sup> þe.<sup>8</sup> Lastand.<sup>9</sup> at ones Troie & Grece þai mette.<sup>10</sup> þat.<sup>11</sup> fled aschore.<sup>12</sup> world.<sup>13</sup> þorghe þer wrytyng we it wote.



|                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
|                                                      | . þey write <sup>1</sup> þe names of þe kynges<br>. & of alle þe <sup>2</sup> oþer lordynges,<br>. Whilke were men of most honour,<br>. þat fledde fro þe <sup>2</sup> grete stour.                                                                                                                                 | 728 |
| Duke Eneas<br>flees,                                 | A gret lord of Troye þer was,<br>Men calde duk Eneas;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 732 |
| with his son<br>Askaneus,                            | ffor <sup>3</sup> þat grete slaughter he fled,<br>Hys sone Askaneus wiþ hym led;<br>Sone ne doughter had he namo<br>Whan he fledde þe cite fro;                                                                                                                                                                     | 736 |
| leaving his wife<br>Creusa behind.                   | In þe slaughtre a-monge þe pres,<br>Hys wyf Creusa, he hure les. <sup>4</sup><br>. þys Eneas fledde him self to saue,<br>. Hys sones lif & his to haue; <sup>5</sup>                                                                                                                                                | 740 |
| Eneas firs out<br>twenty ships,                      | Wyþ mikel vitaille & tresor good<br>He charged twenty schipes on flood.<br>He dwelte longe in þe se,<br>& many perille <sup>6</sup> ascapede he.                                                                                                                                                                    | 744 |
| and lands in<br>Italy<br>(where Rome<br>now stands), | Wyþ alle þe wo þat he gan dreye,<br>He cam to þe lond of Ytalye.<br>( <sup>7</sup> Italye was kalled þenne<br>þe land þat Rome now standes ynne: <sup>7</sup><br>Of Rome þat ilke tyme was nought,<br>Ne longe after was hit wrought.)<br>Eneas þat had al þat trauaille,<br>What in se <sup>8</sup> & in bataille, | 748 |
|                                                      | Atte laste he gan aryue<br>In Ytalye, a lond plentyue.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 752 |
| by the water of<br>Tiber.                            | <sup>9</sup> By þe water of Tyber land þey nome,<br>By whilk water now standeþ Rome. <sup>9</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 756 |

<sup>1</sup> wrote.<sup>2</sup> þat. [Geoffrey and Wace begin.]<sup>3</sup> ffro.<sup>4</sup> Wace, p. 5, l. 85-89.<sup>5</sup> withouten ouþer ȝoman or  
knaue.<sup>6</sup> perille omitted.<sup>7-7</sup> Ytalie was þaȝ þe name

þat land þer now men Rome ame.

<sup>8</sup> in þe se. [leaf 5, back.]<sup>9-9</sup> þe water hate Tiber þer þai  
londe nome

be þat water standes Rome.



## De Rege Italye siue Latinorum.

- þe kyng of þe land, Latyn he<sup>1</sup> hight,  
 A riche man, & mykel of myght,  
 & hadde<sup>2</sup> ynow his lond to welde,  
 Bot þat he was smyten in-to<sup>3</sup> elde. 760  
 He worschiped muche<sup>4</sup> sire Eneas,  
 & fayn of hys comynge was,  
 & seide, 'ȝyf he wolde leue stille,  
 He wolde<sup>5</sup> gyue hym land at wyllle.' 764  
 Latynes þe kyng, he<sup>6</sup> had non eyr  
 Bote a maide<sup>7</sup> swythe fayr;  
 pys damysele highte Lauyne.  
 þe kyng seyde, "Scheo schal<sup>8</sup> be þyne; 768  
 " I wyle þat [þou]<sup>9</sup> after myn endynge [lf. 3, bk.]  
 " My doughter wedde, & be þou<sup>10</sup> kyng."  
 Bot þer-til graunted nought þe quen;  
 .Scheo wold þat an oþer had[de]<sup>11</sup> ben. 772  
 .ffor he dide nought as wold<sup>12</sup> his wyfe,  
 þerfore ros a newe strife:  
 ¶ þer biside a riche man,  
 Turnus he highte, lord of Tuskan; 776  
 pys Turnus hadde yloued<sup>13</sup> Lauyne,  
 & herde seye þat þe kyng Latyne  
 Had gyuen his doughter sire Eneas,  
 And hadde enuye þat hit so was, 780  
 ffor Turnus had loued hure longe ar hee,  
 & hadde grauntise<sup>14</sup> his wif to be;

Latinus the  
king

honours Eneas

and offers him  
land,

and his only  
daughter  
Lavinia, so that  
after his death  
Eneas may be  
king.

But Turnus,  
lord of Tuscany,  
who has long  
loved Lavinia,

<sup>1</sup> he omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Rychesse.

<sup>3</sup> in.

<sup>4</sup> mykett.

<sup>5</sup> witt.

<sup>6</sup> Latyn þe kyng.

<sup>7</sup> madeñ.

<sup>8</sup> sho satt.

<sup>9</sup> þou.

<sup>10</sup> þe.

<sup>11</sup> scho þat anoþer had.

<sup>12</sup> als wald.

<sup>13</sup> had lufed.

<sup>14</sup> grauntise had.



|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| challenges<br>Eneas to fight<br>for her.                                       | He bed his body, his ouer myght,<br>Wyþ Eneas al-one to fyght.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 784 |
| Eneas kills<br>Turnus,<br>weds Lavinia,<br>s king,                             | . Sire Eneas was þer-of fayn,<br>þey faught <sup>1</sup> togyder, Turnus was slayn,<br>Eneas wedded þe <sup>2</sup> mayden ȝynge;<br>þen was scheo quen, & he <sup>3</sup> was kyng.<br>þanne fond <sup>4</sup> he non þat hym noyed,<br>. Ne nought of his lond destruyed;<br>Sipen he wedded Lauyne his wyfe,<br>He held þe lond wyþouten strife. | 788 |
| and reigns in<br>peace.                                                        | In pes foure ȝer he regned wel;<br>Wyþynne þe ȝeres he made a castel,<br>& gaf hit name þorow euery <sup>5</sup> toun<br>After dame Lauyne, Lauyoun.                                                                                                                                                                                                | 792 |
| He builds a<br>castle,<br>and calls it<br>Lavioune.                            | In þe ferþe ȝer, last of his lyf,<br>Of hym conceiued Lauyne his wyf;<br>& er þe child fel to be born,<br>Sire Eneas was ded byforn. <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 796 |
| Lavinia con-<br>ceives,<br>but Eneas dies<br>before the birth<br>of her child, | When Lauynes <sup>7</sup> tyme was fulfyld,<br>Of hure was born (as <i>grace</i> hit wild,)<br>A knaue child, men kald him Syluius;<br>Hys to-name was Pollynus. <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                                       | 800 |
| Silvius Polly-<br>nius.                                                        | Askaneus, Eneas oper sone<br>þat com wyþ him, (as ȝe wel mone,) <sup>9</sup><br>After his fader þe lond he tooke,<br>. His brother Syluius he dide hit <sup>10</sup> looke,                                                                                                                                                                         | 804 |
| Ascanius                                                                       | . Syluius <sup>11</sup> his half brother was,<br>. Gete of his ffader kyng Eneas.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 808 |
| succeeds Eneas,                                                                | Askaneus dide make a citee,<br>þe name Albe þan <sup>12</sup> gaf hit he;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 812 |
| builds a city,<br>Alba,                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |

<sup>1</sup> *smyte.*<sup>2</sup> *þat.*<sup>3</sup> *he.* Lamb. MS. *scheo.*<sup>4</sup> *Sipen fand.*<sup>5</sup> *thorgh ilka.* [leaf 5, back, col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> *ore was Eneas dede beforne.*<sup>7</sup> *Lauine.*<sup>8</sup> *Postomius*, Wace, p. 5, l. 80;  
*Enéam*, MS. du Roy, 7515<sup>3.3.</sup> Colb.,  
*ib.*<sup>9</sup> *I gan ȝow mone.*<sup>10</sup> *to.*<sup>11</sup> *Silui.*<sup>12</sup> *þan* omitted.



- Askaneus let dame Lauyne take<sup>1</sup>  
 [þe castell þat Eneas did make;]  
 & al þat lond þat fel þer-til,  
 Dame Lauyne held hit at hire wyl. 816  
 þe mawmet þat Eneas brought fro Troye,  
 In Lauyon he sette hem<sup>2</sup> wyþ ioy;  
 Sythen com Askaneus his sone,  
 Brought þem tyl<sup>3</sup> Albe þer he gan wone; 820  
 & þer-inne hadde þey neuere rest,  
 ffor o þe morn þe[y]<sup>4</sup> were ageyn al prest  
 At þe castel of Lauyon,  
 & wold<sup>5</sup> nought dwelle in Albe toun:<sup>6</sup> 824  
 He ne wiste, ne was certeyn, [leaf 3, back, col. 2.]  
 On<sup>7</sup> what nanere þey come ageyn.  
 He regned foure & þrytty ȝer  
 In pes wyþouten wo & wer. 828  
 Whan Askaneus made<sup>8</sup> his endynge,  
 Syluy his broþer regned kyng,  
 þat was born of dame Lauyne,  
 þe heritage he hadde in lyne. 832  
 ¶ A sone þen had Askaneus  
 His brother, highte Sysillius.<sup>9</sup>  
 pys ylke childe Sysilly  
 Loued Lauynes nece, & lay hure by— 836  
 & sche sone wax wiþ childe—  
 . Als yonge men do þat ben wylde.  
 ¶ þe kyng dide his clerke<sup>10</sup> calle,  
 & bad hem loke þer bokes<sup>11</sup> alle, 840
- and removes  
Eneas's Trojan  
gods from  
Lavyon to  
Alba; but they  
won't stop  
there,  
and go back to  
Lavyon every  
morning.
- Ascanius  
reigns thirty-  
four years,  
and is suc-  
ceeded by  
Silvius.
- Ascanius's son,  
Sysillius,
- lies by Lavinia's  
niece,
- (as wild young  
men will,)  
and Silvius  
asks what will  
come of the  
child.

<sup>1</sup> *dame take.* The next line is from P.

<sup>2</sup> *sett þam.*

<sup>3</sup> *to.*

<sup>4</sup> *þe morn þai.*

<sup>5</sup> *wilde.*

<sup>6</sup> *Albe his toun.*

<sup>7</sup> *In.*

<sup>8</sup> *did.*

<sup>9</sup> *his name was Sisillius.* [leaf 6.]

*Qui estoit només Silvius :*

*Le nom à son oncle porta,*

*Mais poi vesqui, et poi dura.*

Wace, p. 6, l. 112-114.

<sup>10</sup> *clerkes.*

<sup>11</sup> *bad þam cast lotes.*



**Hic natus  
est Brutus.**

“He'll kill his  
father and  
mother,  
leave the land,

and come to  
great honour.”

His mother  
dies in child-  
birth, her boy  
is named  
Brutus,  
and when he is  
fifteen

he accidentally  
shoots his  
father,

and then for  
fear runs away  
to Greece,  
where he finds  
the folk of Troy  
in servage

‘What schold of þat child bycome,<sup>1</sup>  
. Good or wykke,<sup>2</sup> what maner dome.’  
Pey seide, ‘þey founde (als þeym was wo,)  
ffader & moder scholde he<sup>3</sup> sloo, 844  
& out of londe go for þat chaunce,  
And siþen come to god cheuysance;  
Passe he scholde mani<sup>4</sup> a stour,  
& syþen come to<sup>5</sup> gret honour.’ 848  
þey founde syþen, als þey seyde,  
þat of his burþe<sup>6</sup> his moder deide;  
His moder deide al so swiþe;  
þe child lyuede; þey were al bliþe. 852  
Brutus, þus his name þey teld,  
Whan he was of fiftene ȝer<sup>7</sup> eld,  
His ffader & he to wode þey went,  
. To venerye he gaf his tent; 856  
An herde of hertes sone þey met,  
At a triste<sup>8</sup> to schete, Brutus was set;  
He auysed hym opon an hert,—  
. Hys ffader passed bytwixt ouerthwert,— 860  
& wyþ þat schote his ffader he slow;  
Al vnwylland þat draught he drow.<sup>9</sup>  
. Whan Brutus sey<sup>10</sup> hys ffader ded,  
. He nyste what was best to red;<sup>11</sup> 864  
ffor deol & drede away he nam  
Tyl Grece fro when his fader cam;<sup>12</sup>  
þe folk of Troye þer he fond,  
þat lyuede in seruage y þe lond.<sup>13</sup> 868  
Elenum, Pryamyes<sup>14</sup> sone,

<sup>1</sup> childe com.

<sup>2</sup> itt.

<sup>3</sup> he suld.

<sup>4</sup> mony.

<sup>5</sup> titt.

<sup>6</sup> when he was born.

<sup>7</sup> was fiften ȝere.

<sup>8</sup> at triste.

<sup>9</sup> bot his willand not it drouh.

<sup>10</sup> sawe.

<sup>11</sup> best rede.

<sup>12</sup> vntitt þe londe of Grece he cam.

<sup>13</sup> in þat londe.

<sup>14</sup> Priami.



. Wyþ sext þowsand þer gan<sup>1</sup> wone,  
 & ȝyt mo lordynges ynowe,  
 þat [þe]<sup>2</sup> Gregeys to seruage drowe, 872 to the Greeks  
 . þat Pyrrus held in his truage. under Pyrrus.  
 . Achilles sone was þenne of age.

Brutus was þer bot a þrowe, Brutus soon  
 þat many his name gon wel<sup>3</sup> knowe. 876  
 ffor his grete<sup>4</sup> hardynesse,  
 ffor curtesye & for largesse,  
 Mykel louede hym his owen kynde,  
 & oþer til hym were ful mynde. 880  
 Grete gyftes þey gon hym<sup>5</sup> gyue,  
 & seyde, “ȝyf we myght frely lyue,  
 “ Ouer vs alle we wolde<sup>6</sup> þe make [leaf 4.] who say that  
 “ Kyng,<sup>7</sup> ȝyf þou wost<sup>8</sup> vndertake. 884 they’ll make  
 “ Oure folk ys waxen for þe maystri, him their king  
 “ & stalworthe are, & right<sup>9</sup> hardy:  
 “ ȝyf we had on þat we dredde,  
 “ þat vs in-til<sup>10</sup> bataille ledde, 888 if he’ll lead  
 “ & mayntened vs, & lered al so them to battle,  
 “ What in bataille we scholden do,  
 “ Syker scholde he haue<sup>11</sup> al oure seruage  
 “ To ffredom brynge,<sup>12</sup> or a-suwage. 892 and win them  
 “ Seuen<sup>13</sup> þousand now we are freedom:  
 “ Of knyghtes<sup>14</sup> to bataille ȝare, they are 7000  
 “ Wypoute seriauntz & oþer pytaille<sup>15</sup> strong in  
 “ þat ar nought for to sette in taille. 896 knights, besides  
 “ ȝyf þou wilt vnder-take þys þynge, footmen not  
 “ We wyl þe make our alder kyng,<sup>16</sup> worth count-  
 ing.

<sup>1</sup> *gañ he.*<sup>2</sup> *þe.*<sup>3</sup> *his name manyon gañ.*<sup>4</sup> *mykett.*<sup>5</sup> *gyftes forto.*<sup>6</sup> *att witt.*<sup>7</sup> *duc, Wace, p. 10, l. 182.*<sup>8</sup> *wild.*<sup>9</sup> *futt.*<sup>10</sup> *unto.*<sup>11</sup> *I trowe he suld.*<sup>12</sup> *bringe. Lamb MS. kyng.*<sup>13</sup> See “sext,” l. 870, above. (*six*,  
Wace, p. 10, l. 177.)<sup>14</sup> *knyghtes redy.*<sup>15</sup> *sergeantes & oþer pedale.*<sup>16</sup> *duc. Wace, p. 10, l. 182.*



|                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
|                                                                                                | . " & at þy biddynge we wyl bowe:<br>" Doute þe nought, we are ynowe;"                                                                                                               | 900 |
| Meanwhile<br>Assarakus is<br>born,                                                             | . Als þey til hym spek often <sup>1</sup> þus,<br>A bacheler men calde Assarakus<br>Was born y þe lond of Grece;<br>Of þat blod he hadde a spece,                                    | 904 |
| half Greek,                                                                                    | ffor his ffader was Gregeys,<br>Hys moder of Troye, þe stori seys;                                                                                                                   |     |
| half Trojan,                                                                                   | . Hys ffader was a lordynge,<br>. þe most of þe lond saue þe kynge,                                                                                                                  | 908 |
|                                                                                                | And gat hym opon bastardie<br>. By on of Troye in rybaudie;<br>. & for he gat hym on his rage,                                                                                       |     |
| and a bastard.                                                                                 | He gaf hym in heritage<br>pre casteles þat weren gode,<br>. Tyl his clopynge & his fode.                                                                                             | 912 |
| His father<br>gives him three<br>castles,<br>which his<br>brothers try<br>to take from<br>him. | Hys brethren wold han <sup>2</sup> reft hit hym,<br>Bot he bar hym so stout & grym; <sup>3</sup><br>ffor þe Trogens wiþ hym helde,<br>þe boldeloker <sup>4</sup> bar vp his schelde, | 916 |
| But the Tro-<br>jans help him,                                                                 | ffor he was on þat wolde þem saue,<br>& at his castles recet to <sup>5</sup> haue.                                                                                                   | 920 |
|                                                                                                | Wyþ his conseil & hys socour<br>Made þey Brutus þeyr gouernour. <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                         |     |
| choose Brutus<br>king, who                                                                     | <b>B</b> rutus sey <sup>7</sup> & vnderstod<br>Hys folk was alle strong & god,                                                                                                       | 924 |
|                                                                                                | . And hym self wel of myght<br>. þeym for to fende & to <sup>8</sup> fight.                                                                                                          |     |
| victuals the<br>castle, and<br>gathers all the<br>Trojans into it.                             | He dide enforce <sup>9</sup> þe casteles <sup>10</sup> wel;<br>Hys folk he warned ilk a del,                                                                                         | 928 |

<sup>1</sup> *titt spak oft.*<sup>2</sup> *his breþer wild haf.*<sup>3</sup> *brym.* [leaf 6, back.]<sup>4</sup> *boldelyer.*<sup>5</sup> *castett rescet. ? retet, Lamb. MS.*<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. adds—

&amp; with his witt &amp; his lokyng

Was sir Brutus chosen kyng.

<sup>7</sup> *sawe.*<sup>8</sup> *þam forto defende in.*<sup>9</sup> *did force.*



& bad hem to þe casteles<sup>1</sup> drawe,  
 . þo þat were of Troyes lawe,—  
 Men & wymen & children<sup>2</sup> ylkone  
 . þat to hym hadde mad þer mone—  
 & þider scholde þer godes<sup>3</sup> lede,  
 . Vntil þo casteles<sup>4</sup> for doute & drede.  
 . Whan þey hadde þer godes lad,  
 . Byside þe casteles busked<sup>5</sup> & spred,  
 . & Brutus saugh his men wel dyght  
 . All redy vnto þe fyght,  
 Brutus dide write a bref,  
 Vnto sire Pandras, kyng & chef;  
 pys ys þe lettre<sup>6</sup> þat he sent,  
 þe latyn, y vnderstonde,<sup>7</sup> þus ment :

932

936

[leaf 4, col. 2.] a letter, saying,

940

When Brutus  
 sees that all is  
 right,  
 and his men  
 ready for  
 battle,  
 he sends king  
 Pandras

¶ *Epistola Bruti ad Regem Grecorum.*

“ For þe schame & þe outrage  
 “ F þat ys don þe noble lynage  
 “ Of kyng Dardan, our auncessour,  
 “ At meschef ys in deshonor,  
 “ In cheytifte longe haue<sup>8</sup> þey leyn,  
 “ Bot now þey hope to come ageyn;  
 “ Wip<sup>9</sup> o wille alle haue þey spoken,  
 “ In o conseil alle ar þey loken—  
 “ <sup>10</sup>& wyþ þeym alle y am leued—  
 “ Me to haue to þer heued;<sup>10</sup>  
 “ I sende to þe þer alder sawe,  
 “ þat to þe wode þey wil hem drawe;  
 “ þer ys hem leuere lyue yn wo,  
 “ In wyldernesse wyþ bestes go,

944 “ The outraged  
 descendants of  
 Dardanus

948 have long  
 been slaves,  
 but now mean  
 to be free.

952 They have  
 chosen Brutus  
 to be their  
 king,

956 and will rather  
 live free with  
 beasts in the  
 wilderness,

<sup>1</sup> *castell.*

<sup>2</sup> *childere.*

<sup>3</sup> *þer godes þidere suld þei.*

<sup>4</sup> *vnto þe castell.*

<sup>5</sup> *castell bussed.*

<sup>6</sup> *brefe.*

<sup>7</sup> *þat latyn vndrestode.*

<sup>8</sup> *caytifte long haf.*

<sup>9</sup> *In.*

<sup>10-10</sup> *Me to haf vnto þer heued.*

*& with þam all I am beleued.*



than in thral-  
dom have  
plenty in  
Greece.

It is their  
nature to have  
freedom,  
and they'll  
fight for it.

Henceforward  
then, Pandras,  
set them free."

King Pandras  
wonders at the  
demand,

summons his  
lords, and

tells them that  
the Trojans  
have rebelled.

He raises an  
army,

but Brutus lies  
in ambush  
with 3,000 men,

" ffor to haue þer wille fre,<sup>1</sup>  
" þan in þraldam haue plente;  
" No maugre þou þeym cone  
" paw þey wolde<sup>2</sup> in fredom wone; 960  
" Hit ys þer kynde fredom to haue;  
" <sup>3</sup> ffor þat whylom was <sup>3</sup> lord, now ys he knaue.  
" Merueille þe nought ȝyf<sup>4</sup> þey haue grace,  
" ffraunchise & fredom to purchace, 964  
" ffor ilk man wolde—ȝyf he<sup>5</sup> myght—  
" In fredom lyue, als hit ys<sup>6</sup> ryght.  
" þerfore þey pray þe wiþ gode wille—  
" And y comaunde for drede of ylle— 968  
" þat heþen forward þou graunte hem fre,  
" & namore<sup>7</sup> in þy seruage be.  
" Sire kyng, we aske<sup>8</sup> þe bot skyle;  
" Graunt vs to go wher þat<sup>9</sup> we wyle." 972

Whan þe kyng had herd<sup>10</sup> þys writ,  
Hym merueilled out of wyt  
þat þe Trogens were risen on heighte,  
þat þey wolde ben fre oþer feyghte.<sup>11</sup> 976  
He dide swythe make somons  
ffor alle his erles and barons,  
& ffor his broþer sire Antygon,  
Sire Anacleton, & oþer on; 980  
He telde hem þey of Troye were rysen,  
& þoughte to make hem alle agrisen.  
¶ Whan Brutus wiste al þer bost,  
þat þe kyng purueyed an host, 984  
Byforn y þe kynges weye  
Brutus did hym enbusche<sup>12</sup> & leye  
Wiþ þre þousand armed & mo,

<sup>1</sup> ffor haf witt þer fre.

<sup>2</sup> þat þe witt.

<sup>3-3</sup> þat owe be.

<sup>4</sup> ne merueitt þe if.

<sup>5</sup> ilk wild be at þer.

<sup>6</sup> to lif as.

<sup>7</sup> no more.

<sup>8</sup> Sire we ask.

<sup>9</sup> go where.

<sup>10</sup> kyng herde.

<sup>11</sup> þei wild be fre or þei wild feght.

<sup>12</sup> busse.



þer<sup>1</sup> kyng Pandras wende sauely go. 988  
 Bot Brutus ros of his enbuschement,<sup>2</sup> attacks  
 & slow al þat he myghte hent; Pandras,  
 þe Gregeys schadden<sup>3</sup> sone asonder;  
 þey were vnarmed, hit was no wonder; 992  
 Intil a water highte<sup>4</sup> Akalon, drives many  
 þyder in flowe<sup>5</sup> many on, Greeks into the  
 And drenkled<sup>6</sup> þere a wel gret frape; [leaf 4, back.] water Akalon,  
 þe opere he closed, [t]hey<sup>7</sup> myghte nought skape;  
 Many were drenkled,<sup>6</sup> and mo were slayn, 997 slays more, and  
 þe kyng þer fledde wiþ<sup>8</sup> gret payn. Pandras flees.

## De bello inter Brutum &amp; Regem Grecorum.

þe kynges broþer Antygonus, His brother  
 He sey þe chaunce fel on þem þus; 1000 Antigonus  
 His folk he relyed<sup>9</sup> hym to, collects his  
 .ffor to assay eft what þey might do;<sup>10</sup> men, and  
 .“Schamely,” he sais, “ar we desconfit!”  
 .“Lat hem nought passe fro vs so quit.” 1004  
 Whan þey were to-gyder y-comen,  
 Ageyn þe Trogens boldely þey nomen;<sup>11</sup> attacks the  
 þanne bigan a scharp bataille; Trojans,  
 Egrelly þe parties gonne assaille 1008  
 Wiþ bowe & spere, &<sup>12</sup> swerdes dynt;  
 Bot atte þe laste<sup>13</sup> þe Gregeys tynt.  
 At þat metyng (among ylkon) who take many  
 Taken was sire Antygon, 1012 Greeks  
 prisoners.

<sup>1</sup> þe.<sup>2</sup> bussement.<sup>3</sup> schad.<sup>4</sup> hate.<sup>5</sup> þei fled.<sup>6</sup> dronkend.<sup>7</sup> þei.<sup>8</sup> kyng fled with full. [leaf 7.]<sup>9</sup> relied þam.<sup>10</sup> & seid fraist zitt what we may do.<sup>11</sup> MS. nonen.<sup>12</sup> with lance with.<sup>13</sup> so scharpe þei com.



|                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                    | . & an oper, <sup>1</sup> sire Anacletoun.<br>& best of hem <sup>2</sup> were born doun :<br>pyse two prisons, <sup>3</sup> Brutus þem led ;<br>. Of þeym of Grece, fewe <sup>4</sup> þer fledde.                            | 1016 |
| Pandras                                                                                            | Pandras þe kyng had sorw in sight <sup>5</sup><br>pat he was so al desconfit,<br>& þat his brother taken was ;<br>He com ageyn into þat pas,                                                                                 | 1020 |
| gets more help,<br>and comes<br>again to the<br>ambush,<br>but Brutus is<br>safe in his<br>castle, | & wende haue founde Brutus þore,—<br>Help he hadde, & purueyed more,—<br>Bot Brutus was til his castles <sup>6</sup> gon <sup>7</sup><br>Wip Antygo & Anacleton ; <sup>8</sup>                                               | 1024 |
| where Pandras<br>hastes to<br>besiege him,                                                         | He warnysched hem wip men of armes,<br>. ffor he dredde deseite & harmes.<br>. Whon þe kyng fond hym þer nought,<br>To bisege þe castel he þought ;                                                                          | 1028 |
|                                                                                                    | . Vnto þe sege he hym hastede<br>. His purueaunce he wold were wastede ;<br>Berfreys dide make to gyue assaut<br>. pat Brutus mought falle y þe <sup>9</sup> faut ;                                                          | 1032 |
| and assault him<br>with man-<br>gonels.<br>Brutus's men<br>shoot with<br>arbalists,<br>cast trees, | To mangeneles <sup>10</sup> he dide make stones,<br>Wip þer assaut to casten alle at ones.<br>þey wyþynne stode in karneles,<br>Wyþ arblastes <sup>11</sup> schotten ageyn quarels,<br>& <sup>12</sup> grete tres ful vnryde | 1036 |

<sup>1</sup> & a lord.<sup>2</sup> & þe most of þam.<sup>3</sup> þe to preson. Wace has *Cals* (*ceux*) *ammena Brutus a soi*, p. 16, l. 305.<sup>4</sup> *fō*.<sup>5</sup> & site.<sup>6</sup> to his castell.<sup>7</sup> *Si mist le siège à Parantin.**Ce quida que Brutus i fust**Et ses prisons mis i éust ;**Mais il fu el boscage entrés**Et ses prisons i a menées.*

Wace, p. 16, l. 310–15.

For *Parantin* the MS. de Ste-Genev. reads *Paladin*, which may be “*Palantenus*, a little town of which Pausanias and Xenophon have spoken.” Le Roux de Lincy, *ib.*<sup>8</sup> *Anacletun & Antigone.*<sup>9</sup> with.<sup>10</sup> *magnels.*<sup>11</sup> *alblastes.*<sup>12</sup> þe.



- þey caste agein on ylk a side;  
 Enginours þey hadde wyþynne<sup>1</sup> ynowe,  
<sup>2</sup> At þeym wyþouten ageyn to þrowe,<sup>2</sup> 1040  
 þat non dyrste comen<sup>3</sup> þe wal ney,  
 . Bot for drede hel[d] þeym a drey<sup>2</sup>;  
 þey casten<sup>4</sup> wyldfyr wiþ<sup>5</sup> engynes. and burn their  
 Brent þer bretaxkes, ropes, & lynes, 1044 besiegers'  
 Cables, cordes, tymber þer was.<sup>6</sup> engines with  
 . Who was þen wo bot<sup>7</sup> kyng Pandras? wild fire,  
 Bot he<sup>8</sup> saw hit myghte nought vaille, till Pandras's  
 þeyr assaut ne þeyr trauaylle; 1048 attack is  
 He drow hym þepen, & gaf hym<sup>9</sup> place,[lf. 4, bk. col. 2.] repulsed.  
 & bygan faste to manace;  
 He dyde make for fens a dyk  
 Aboute þe castel a gret stryk, 1052 Pandras then  
 & closed yn al Brutes host, digs a ditch  
 . þat non myght skape by no<sup>10</sup> cost. all round  
 þe kyng dide ȝyt pale hit<sup>11</sup> efte; Brutus's host,  
 Bot þre entres, non<sup>12</sup> was left. 1056 so that no one  
 þe kyng dide so wel loke þo, can get out.  
 . þat non of hem myghte passe hem<sup>13</sup> fro  
 . To do Brutus no suwaute,<sup>14</sup>  
 . So wel was loked ylkan<sup>15</sup> entre. 1060

¶ De obsidione Bruti per Regem Grecorum.

- þe sege was hard to þeym wyþynne, Brutus's men  
 & þey wyþoute myghte nought wynne, are hard  
 Ne nought ne schold, of ful fer<sup>16</sup> longe, pressed,

<sup>1</sup> had þei with þam.  
<sup>2-2</sup> þat þei without agayn þam  
 throwe. [leaf 7, col. 2.]  
<sup>3</sup> MS. comem.  
<sup>4</sup> kast.  
<sup>5</sup> ? MS. wiȝ.  
<sup>6</sup> Tot l'ont mis em poldre et en  
 cendre. Wace, p. 17, l. 335.  
<sup>7</sup> was wo bot þe.

<sup>8</sup> The kyng.  
<sup>9</sup> þien & gaf þam.  
<sup>10</sup> ascape at.  
<sup>11</sup> did it palace ȝitt.  
<sup>12</sup> nouht.  
<sup>13</sup> hym.  
<sup>14</sup> suate.  
<sup>15</sup> ilk.  
<sup>16</sup> of fult.



|                                                              |                                                   |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                              | zyf hit ne were for longer stronge ;              | 1064 |
|                                                              | þe faute þey dredde comynge byforn, <sup>1</sup>  |      |
| having little<br>corn, and ask<br>him what they<br>shall do. | þe host was mykel, & lite <sup>2</sup> had corn ; |      |
|                                                              | þey asked Brutes of conseil,                      |      |
|                                                              | What þey schold do for more vitail :              | 1068 |
|                                                              | “Conseile vs er hit be goon,                      |      |
|                                                              | “Hit ys to <sup>3</sup> late whan we haue non,    |      |
|                                                              | “Whan we haue nough[t] <sup>4</sup> vs to fede,   |      |
|                                                              | “þe castel most we zelde <sup>5</sup> nede.”      | 1072 |
|                                                              | þus þey seide, þe men were wyse,                  |      |
| He thinks of a<br>plan,                                      | & Brutus bypoughte hym of queintise :             |      |
|                                                              | Queyntise bihouede <sup>6</sup> hym nedly þenke,  |      |
|                                                              | þat his enemy schold waite <sup>7</sup> a blenk ; | 1076 |
|                                                              | & mykel peril byhoues hym haue,                   |      |
|                                                              | þat auntres hym his frend to saue.                |      |
|                                                              | Brutus had yn his prison                          |      |
|                                                              | Antygon & Anacleton ;                             | 1080 |
|                                                              | Brutes tok hym by þe top,                         |      |
|                                                              | & seide, “Hedles schal þou hop <sup>8</sup> !     |      |
|                                                              | “Bot þou do als y þe seye,                        |      |
|                                                              | “Of myn hand[e] schalt þou deye, <sup>9</sup>     | 1084 |
|                                                              | “Boþe þe kynges broþer and þou ;                  |      |
|                                                              | “& boþe myght þou saue now.” <sup>10</sup>        |      |
|                                                              | “Sire,” he seide, “do ȝour wille !                |      |
|                                                              | “How <sup>11</sup> mygh[t] y vs saue fro ylle,    | 1088 |
|                                                              | “Sey me, sire, on what manere ;                   |      |
|                                                              | “& ȝyf y may, y wol ȝow here.”                    |      |
|                                                              | Brutus seyde, “þou schalt <sup>12</sup> go,       |      |
| if he'll go to<br>the Grecian<br>sentinels,                  | “Alone to nyght, wypouten mo, <sup>13</sup>       | 1092 |

<sup>1</sup> *Defaut þei dred comand afor.*<sup>2</sup> *litett.*<sup>3</sup> *full.*<sup>4</sup> *haf non.*<sup>5</sup> *vs zelde.*<sup>6</sup> *behoues.*<sup>7</sup> *salt wate.* The next two lines are omitted in P.<sup>8</sup> *hedeles salt þou hoppe.*<sup>9</sup> *Mal cuivert, fait il, jà morras.*

Wace, p. 19, l. 375.

<sup>10</sup> *may þou saue ȝow.* [leaf 7, back.]<sup>11</sup> In the Lambeth MS. *Bot ȝyf y* are dotted under for omission, and *how* is written over.<sup>12</sup> *salt.*<sup>13</sup> *To-nyght at bedtyme without me.*



- " To þeym þat loke þat on<sup>1</sup> entre,  
 " & sey til hem als y sey þe:  
 " Sey þou hast stolen þe kynges brother  
 " Out of prison, & non oper;  
 " In to þe wode þou hast<sup>2</sup> hym led,  
 " Bot ferrer may<sup>3</sup> þou nought, for dred,  
 " ffor þo men þat þe wode loke,  
 " þat hym ne þe þey ouertoke;  
 " Bot ilkon, bid hem come wip þe,  
 " þat noman byhinde be;  
 " & we schul be busched<sup>4</sup> þer biside,  
 " & ȝyf y may, þey schol<sup>5</sup> abyde  
 " þat þey ne go nought vs to wrye,  
 " Ne [nought] desturble me my weye."  
 Anacletus graunted wel,  
 . ȝyf Brutus wold be tryst<sup>6</sup> as stel  
 þat his lyf he wolde<sup>7</sup> hym saue.  
 Brutus dide hym sykernesse haue.  
 . Anacletus, forþ he went,  
 . & dide als Brutus had hym sent.  
  
 At bed-tyme, when men were in<sup>8</sup> rest,  
 Brutus wip his folk was<sup>9</sup> prest,  
 & wel armed wente þer weye  
 þer he knew by o valeye.<sup>10</sup>  
 In þe wode bisides þat entre  
 He busched hem in parties þre.  
 When al were busched, man & stede,  
 Anacletus bygan<sup>11</sup> hym spede,  
 & com to þem þat kepte þe pas,  
 . & seide, fro Brutus stolen he was.

1096

tell them he has  
rescued the  
king's brother,

1100

and ask them  
to fetch him  
from the wood,  
(while Brutus  
lies in ambush  
and seizes  
their post.)

1104

[leaf 5.]

1118

Anacletus  
agrees to this.

1112

Brutus puts  
his men

1116

in ambush  
in a valley  
in three  
divisions,

1120

and Anacletus  
goes to the  
Grecians who  
keep the pass,<sup>1</sup> þe ton.<sup>2</sup> has.<sup>3</sup> & farþere myght.<sup>4</sup> satt be bussed.<sup>5</sup> satt.<sup>6</sup> were treste.<sup>7</sup> wild.<sup>8</sup> to.<sup>9</sup> att.<sup>10</sup> þer he had purueied in a valeie.<sup>11</sup> he gan.



|                                                               |                                                                                            |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                               | Alle þey kende <sup>1</sup> hym þat þer were,<br>& asked hym how he com þere ;             | 1124 |
|                                                               | Sire Antigon, þe kynges broþer,<br>þey askede ȝif <sup>2</sup> he lyuede als oþer.         |      |
| tells them he<br>has hidden<br>Antigonus in<br>the wood,      | He seide, "þe kynges brother & y<br>" Ar skaped out fol queyntely ;                        | 1128 |
|                                                               | " In þe wode y haue hym hid<br>" ffor sight of men, ȝyf so bityd,                          |      |
|                                                               | " ȝyf ony had perseyued vs<br>" & lad vs <sup>3</sup> a-geyn til Brutus ;                  | 1132 |
|                                                               | " Bot alone dar he nought go,<br>" perfore come y after mo ;                               |      |
|                                                               | " þe gyues aboute his fet þey rynge,<br>" & alone dar y <sup>4</sup> hym nought brynge ;   | 1136 |
| and they must<br>come there and<br>fetch him.                 | " Comes wyþ me, y schal ȝow lede<br>" þer he ys, & has gret drede."                        |      |
| The Grecians<br>believe this, and<br>rush off to the<br>wood, | þey trowed hym, þat he soþ seyde,<br>& schet forthe al in a breyd, <sup>5</sup>            | 1140 |
| past Brutus's<br>ambush.                                      | In to þe wode alle on a route,<br>þey þoughte <sup>6</sup> of no treson ne doute.          |      |
|                                                               | Anacletus forþ þem led<br>Tyl Brutus folk, þer þey wer spred ;                             | 1144 |
| Brutus sur-<br>rounds them,<br>and kills every<br>man.        | & Brutus perseyued al þer pryde, <sup>7</sup><br>& bylapped hem on ylk a <sup>8</sup> side |      |
|                                                               | So þat non ne myghte skape,<br>Bot al wor flayd <sup>9</sup> at o frape ;                  | 1148 |
|                                                               | Com neuere non of þo a-geyn<br>þat myghte þem warne, knyght ne swayn.                      |      |

<sup>1</sup> knew.<sup>2</sup> where.<sup>3</sup> & led.<sup>4</sup> & I alon dar.<sup>5</sup> att a braid.<sup>6</sup> & thouth.<sup>7</sup> tide.<sup>8</sup> umbilapped þam oñ ilk.<sup>9</sup> were slone.



*De capcione Regis Grecorum per Anacletum.*

þen parted Brutus his host in þre,  
 & sette þem alle in certeynte,  
 How priuely þey schold[e]<sup>1</sup> go  
 Wypoute noise, wypoute wo,  
 Neyþer byhynde ne byforn,

“ Ne smite nought noman<sup>2</sup> born,

“ Tyl y come þer þe kyng lys,

“ & men wyþ me of god auys.

“ & whan y am at his paupyloun,

“ þen schal y blowe<sup>3</sup> a gret soun,

“ Myn horn þat ze wel knowe,

“ A blast to ȝow y schal blowe.

“ <sup>4</sup>þen spares non, bot sles on fast

“ (When þat y haue blowe þat blaste,) <sup>4</sup>

“ Slepung, wakyng,<sup>5</sup> þat ze may fynde,

“ þat ys of þe Gregeys kynde.”

When þat Brutus his horn blew,

Hys men hit herde þat hit wel<sup>6</sup> knew;

þen spared þey non, bot slow al doun;

On & oþer, erl & baroun,

þey slowe þem alle right at þer wille,

On slepe þey founden hem fol stille;

Hadde þey<sup>7</sup> no grace ne pouste

To armen þem, neyþer<sup>8</sup> to fle.

Byhinde, bifore, on þeym þei cam,

Vneþes any a-wey þer nam;

ȝyf ani a-scaped þorow a<sup>9</sup> chaunce,

ȝit bifel þem as foule a chaunce;<sup>10</sup>

1152 He then divides  
his host into  
three,

and orders all  
to go quietly  
through the  
enemy's camp

1156

till he reaches  
the king's

[leaf 5, col. 2.] pavilion;

1160

then he,  
Brutus, will  
blow a blast on  
his horn,

and his men  
are to kill  
every one of  
Greekish kind  
they can find.

1164

1168 This is done;

1172

1176 all the Greeks  
are slain,

<sup>1</sup> *sulde.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *nomam.*

<sup>3</sup> *I satt blawe.*

<sup>4-4</sup> & whan *I haf blowen a blaste,*  
*Spares non bot slo att faste.*

<sup>5</sup> *Slepad wakand.*

<sup>6</sup> & *wel it.*

<sup>7</sup> *had.* [leaf 8.]

<sup>8</sup> *ne.*

<sup>9</sup> *thorgh.*

<sup>10</sup> *it sett þam a foule vengeance.*



42 PANDRAS IS TAKEN.—ARE THE TROJANS TO STAY OR GO ?

|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| or fall from<br>rocks,                                | Of <sup>1</sup> grete roches þey fulle al doun,<br>. & al fur <sup>2</sup> -frusched bak & croun,                                                            | 1180 |
| or are<br>drowned ;                                   | Oper þey were drowned <sup>3</sup> in watres depe,<br>. Vneþes myghte ony þem <sup>4</sup> kepe.                                                             |      |
| king Pandras<br>is taken<br>prisoner,                 | <b>B</b> rutes tok þe kyng Pandras<br>& al þat in his paulyon was.                                                                                           | 1184 |
|                                                       | Wypoute ani kynes ylle<br>Vnto þe morn he held hem stille.<br>At morn y <sup>5</sup> þe sonne rysynge,<br>Brutus led Pandras þe kyng                         | 1188 |
| and put in<br>hold,                                   | Vntil his <sup>7</sup> castel, his owen hold,<br>& dide hym kepe wiþ knyghtes bold.                                                                          |      |
| and his treasure<br>is distributed<br>by Brutus.      | Syþen tok Brutus al þe tresour<br>þat he had wonnen <sup>7</sup> yn þat stour,<br>& gaf his knyghte largely,<br>. & als til oper fol corteysly. <sup>8</sup> | 1192 |
|                                                       | þat oper <sup>9</sup> day, conseil he tok<br>Amanges <sup>10</sup> þe commune, & bad hem lok<br>What were to done of kyng Pandras,                           | 1197 |
| Next day<br>Brutus asks<br>his commons                | þat in his prison holden was,<br>Wheþer þey redden hym for to slo, <sup>11</sup><br>Oper quytlly let hym go :                                                | 1200 |
| whether<br>Pandras is to<br>be killed or<br>set free. | “ Conseilles wel now alle of þys,<br>“ þat non ne seye þat y do mys.”                                                                                        |      |
| Some advise                                           | Many on seyde þeir auys,<br>Of on & oper þat weren wys :                                                                                                     | 1204 |
|                                                       | þys conseyl was ofte an honde, <sup>12</sup><br>To take partie of þe londe, <sup>13</sup><br>& euere haue hit in heritage<br>ffirely wypouten seruage,       | 1208 |
| that they shall<br>settle in<br>Pandras's land;       |                                                                                                                                                              |      |

<sup>1</sup> On.

<sup>2</sup> att to-.

<sup>3</sup> Or were dronkend.

<sup>4</sup> couth any þam.

<sup>5</sup> In þe mornynge at.

<sup>6</sup> Vnto þe.

<sup>7</sup> won.

<sup>8</sup> & oper yerof had curtasy.

<sup>9</sup> þe toþer.

<sup>10</sup> thorgh.

<sup>11</sup> MS. flo. P. has red hym forto slo.

<sup>12</sup> oñ hand.

<sup>13</sup> a partie of þe land.



- & to haue acquitaunce  
 Of þe barons for alle chaunce.  
 Oper seye,<sup>1</sup> þat þer ware,  
 “ þem were bettere elle<sup>2</sup> whare; 1212 others that  
 they shall go  
 elsewhere.  
 “ Aske we leue at þe kynge, [leaf 5, back.]  
 “ & go we seke vs oper wonynge  
 “ Wyp oure children<sup>3</sup> & oure wyues;  
 “ ffor þo<sup>4</sup> þat hates, alday striues.” 1216  
 pyse to skyles forþ þey kest,<sup>5</sup>  
 Whylk to take were þe best.  
 ¶ A knyght vp styrte als þey spek þus— Membricius  
 His name was sire Membricius— 1220 counsels them  
 “ Alle þe reson<sup>6</sup> ze haue forþ brought,  
 “ þe beste of alle ne se ze<sup>7</sup> nought;  
 “ Sertes, þys were our most profit:  
 “ Wip loue & leue he queþe<sup>8</sup> vs quyt, 1224 to go away,  
 getting ships  
 and food from  
 Pandras,  
 “ & gyue vs shipes in to wende,  
 “ & of his vitaille,<sup>9</sup> als he ys hende,  
 “ & oper þyng þat we haue nede,  
 “ To chargen hem wip vs to lede, 1228  
 “ & til oure lord Brutus, our kynge,  
 “ Ignogyn his doughter zynge. and his  
 daughter  
 Ignogyn for  
 Brutus,  
 “ Lete vs þenne go do<sup>10</sup> our beste,  
 “ & seke vs land opoñ<sup>11</sup> to rest; 1232  
 “ ffor zif we dwelle on þeym<sup>12</sup> here,  
 “ We be þeym neuere lef<sup>13</sup> ne dere;  
 “ What we dide ones, þey schold wel<sup>14</sup> þenk, as the Greeks  
 will never like  
 them,  
 remembering  
 “ & wait<sup>15</sup> vs wyp a wykked blenk; 1236  
 “ Schal we neuere rightly haue pees,

<sup>1</sup> *seid.*<sup>2</sup> *elles.* [leaf 8, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> *our childere.*<sup>4</sup> *þi.*<sup>5</sup> *þis tuo skilles forth þei cast.*<sup>6</sup> *resons.*<sup>7</sup> *alle scie ze.*<sup>8</sup> *quede.*<sup>9</sup> *& of vitaille.*<sup>10</sup> *þan.*<sup>11</sup> *londoñ.*<sup>12</sup> *with þam.*<sup>13</sup> *leue.*<sup>14</sup> *þat we did now þan satt þei.*<sup>15</sup> *wate.*



the woe the  
Trojans have  
wrought them,  
and the men  
they have slain:  
“Be sure the  
Greeks will  
revenge this:

from old sores  
come grievous  
wounds.

They must  
increase,  
we decrease;  
and if they get  
a chance,  
they'll kill  
every Trojan.”

All agree to  
follow Mem-  
bricius's advice.

They fetch  
Pandras,

“Bot wait<sup>1</sup> vs wyþ som wykked res.  
“Gret ferly ne were hit nought,  
“ffor mykel wo we haue þem wrought, 1240  
“ffor we han slayn of þer kynde  
“þat we myghte eyþer take<sup>2</sup> or fynde;  
“þerfore syker mot ȝe be,  
“Whan þey se tyme, or haue pouste, 1244  
“þys bale wil þey eft vs brewe,  
“Oure olde skapes<sup>3</sup> þey wille make newe;  
“& þus men seys, & ofte ys founde,  
“Of old sor comeþ greuous wounde. 1248  
“Non of vs alle—wel y wene—  
“þat we naue don hem treye & tene;  
“þer frendes þorow vs han þey lorn,  
“Or þer godes a-wey han born, 1252  
“& þo þat lyuen,<sup>4</sup> þat now ar left,  
“Vengaunce on vs þey wyl seke eft;  
“ffor þey wil<sup>5</sup> waxe & we schal<sup>5</sup> wanye;  
“When we ben fewe,<sup>6</sup> þey schol<sup>5</sup> be manye;  
“ȝyf we ought falle, & þey ought ryse, 1257  
“þey schul<sup>5</sup> til vs do<sup>7</sup> swylk iustise  
“þat alle our Troiens ilkon schold<sup>5</sup> deye.  
“þerfore y rede ȝow, chese þe w[e]ye,<sup>8</sup> 1260  
“ȝyf þat oure kyng þerto wyl rede;  
“& elles gos our kynde<sup>9</sup> to dede.”  
þen cried þey alle, & speke at ones,  
“<sup>10</sup>Sire Membryce says wel ffor þe nones! 1264  
“At þys conseil consente we alle;  
“<sup>11</sup>No bettere for ne mai byfalle.<sup>10</sup>”  
þe kyng þey broughte forþ anon, [leaf 5, back, col. 2.]  
And his broþer sire Antygon, 1268

<sup>1</sup> wate.

<sup>2</sup> myght ouertake.

<sup>3</sup> mysdedis.

<sup>4</sup> lyf.

<sup>5</sup> satt. [leaf 8, back.]

<sup>6</sup> be fo.

<sup>7</sup> be.

<sup>8</sup> ȝe chese þe weie.

<sup>9</sup> L. has kyng; P. kynde.

<sup>10-10</sup> Bien dit, bien dit, ce dient tuit.

Wace, p. 28, l. 560.

<sup>11</sup> Non better for vs may fatt.



|                                                   |      |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|
| & askede hym leue fo[r] to go                     |      | and ask him      |
| Wipouten any more wo;                             |      |                  |
| þey asked hym what þey wold haue,                 |      | for all they     |
| & ȝif he vouched on þem saue,                     | 1272 | want,            |
| & his doughter to be þer quen,                    |      | and for his      |
| Als hit <sup>1</sup> was ordeyned hem bytwen.     |      | daughter.        |
| þen sey þe kyng <sup>2</sup> þer myght was more   |      | Pandras sees he  |
| þan his was; þat dred he sore.                    | 1276 |                  |
| He graunted hem ylk a del                         |      | must give way:   |
| To gon at þer wyllle wel: <sup>3</sup>            |      |                  |
| " At ȝoure wille ȝe me <sup>4</sup> haue,         |      |                  |
| " & my doughter ȝe me <sup>4</sup> craue;         | 1280 |                  |
| " Y se y may non oper <sup>5</sup> do,            |      |                  |
| " Myn enemy most y gyue hure <sup>6</sup> to;     |      |                  |
| " <sup>7</sup> My moste fo & my feloun            |      | he promises      |
| " Schal haue my doughter to warisoun.             | 1284 | his daughter,    |
| " Bot of o þyng ys my ioie, <sup>7</sup>          |      |                  |
| " He ys þe doughtiest man of Troye,               |      |                  |
| " & comen of þe nobleste blod:                    |      |                  |
| " þat now gladeþ most my mod. <sup>8</sup>        | 1288 |                  |
| " I graunte ȝow schipes ȝour folk to lede,        |      | ships, and food. |
| " & vitailles þat ȝe haue nede,                   |      |                  |
| " Wel more þan ys ȝoure deuise,                   |      |                  |
| " ȝyf þat þys <sup>9</sup> lond may hit suffise." | 1292 |                  |
| ¶ þen sente þe kyng <sup>10</sup> his messegers   |      | Pandras sends    |
| Vntil þe hauenes & costes sers, <sup>11</sup>     |      |                  |
| þat alle þe schipes on water myght saille         |      | for ships        |
| Schuld ben brought tyl o ryuaille,                | 1296 |                  |
| þere þey schold chese þe beste,                   |      | for the Trojans  |
| þat weren most oper strengeste. <sup>12</sup>     |      | to choose from,  |

<sup>1</sup> þat.<sup>2</sup> þe kyng sawe.<sup>3</sup> þare awen wille.<sup>4</sup> may.<sup>5</sup> no noþer.<sup>6</sup> bos me gyf hir.<sup>7-7</sup> Omitted in P.<sup>8</sup> þat me gladdes most in mode.<sup>9</sup> if at þe.<sup>10</sup> The kyng sent.<sup>11</sup> in costestes seres.<sup>12</sup> or strangest. [leaf 8, back, col. 2.]



|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and they soon<br>provision them.                           | When þey had chosen at þer pay,<br>þey charged þey[m] fro day to <sup>1</sup> day,<br>& of þe beste in ylk a <sup>2</sup> contre<br>þey ledde to schip[pe] <sup>3</sup> gret plente. | 1300 |
| Pandras gives<br>his daughter<br>in marriage to<br>Brutus, | þe kyng dide his doughter brynge,<br>& gaf hure Brutus in weddyng,<br>And dide hym bettere in <sup>4</sup> alle wyse<br>þan Brutus asked, or any of hyse;                            | 1304 |
| and presents<br>gifts to the<br>knights.                   | ffor alle þat þer were, <sup>5</sup> baroun & knyght,<br>þey geuen hym after þer myght. <sup>6</sup>                                                                                 | 1308 |

¶ *Recessus Troianorum de terra Grecorum.*

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                   |                   |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| The Trojans                              | When þe Troianes were al dight<br>Wyþ seyl vpon þe mast vpright, <sup>7</sup><br>. Wip anker & ore, & oper ware,<br>. & were al redy for to fare, | 1312              |
| set sail                                 | . When þe wynd was wel þem lent,<br>. þey toke þer leue, & forþ þey went.<br>. When þey were redy to saille;                                      |                   |
| in 304 ships,                            | pre hundred schipes þer was in taille, <sup>8</sup><br>& foure mo, þe story seys,<br>When þey departed fro þe Gregeys.                            | 1316              |
| and after two<br>days                    | Two dayes þey sailled, & two nyght,<br>þat lond ne hauene reche þey ne myght; <sup>9</sup><br>þe þrydde day in þe euen tyde,                      | 1320<br>[leaf 5.] |
| arrive at<br>Leogise,<br>a waste island, | In Leogise þey gon to <sup>10</sup> ride.<br>Leogyse, þat ys <sup>11</sup> an ilde;<br>þat tyme was hit wast & wylde;                             | 1324              |

<sup>1</sup> charged þam day be.

<sup>2</sup> ilk.

<sup>3</sup> led to schippe.

<sup>4</sup> oñ.

<sup>5</sup> For ilkan.

<sup>6</sup> had gyft of hym after his ryght.

<sup>7</sup> vp oñ mast oñ hyght.

<sup>8</sup> þei were be tale.

<sup>9</sup> þei myght.

<sup>10</sup> gañ.

<sup>11</sup> þañ es.



|                                                     |                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Man ne woman, non þey fond,                         | uninhabited                                                             |
| ffor outlandes hadden <sup>1</sup> wasted þat lond, |                                                                         |
| & þe godes a-wey had born.                          |                                                                         |
| Bot bukke <sup>2</sup> & do, & hert wyþ horn,       | 1328 except by deer,                                                    |
| In þat ilde þey founde ynowe                        |                                                                         |
| þat þey slowe, & to þe schip <sup>3</sup> drowe,    | of which the<br>Trojans kill<br>great store.                            |
| & stored þem wel of venyson                         |                                                                         |
| þat lasted hem a long seson.                        | 1332                                                                    |
| Als þey wente þorough þat contre,                   | Then they<br>come                                                       |
| þey come vntil <sup>4</sup> a wast cite,            |                                                                         |
| & founde þer-inne a temple stande,                  | on a temple<br>where the mis-<br>believing folk<br>once wor-<br>shipped |
| . þat whilom þe folk mys-lyuande                    | 1336                                                                    |
| . Worschiped þer-inne Maumetry,—                    | Diana in the<br>likeness of a<br>woman,                                 |
| Dyane in lyknesse of o lefdy; <sup>5</sup> —        |                                                                         |
| Wyþ man <sup>6</sup> lyknesse þe fend dide take,    | 1340                                                                    |
| In þat liknesse þe folk dide make                   | and made an<br>image of her                                             |
| . An ymage, & worschiped þat same.                  |                                                                         |
| Dyane was þe <sup>7</sup> ffendes name,             |                                                                         |
| In þys temple stod yn a gage <sup>8</sup>           |                                                                         |
| Swich an Erlyk man <sup>9</sup> ymage;              | 1344                                                                    |
| þe folk þat hadde þer recet, <sup>10</sup>          |                                                                         |
| Leued on þat ylke <sup>11</sup> Maumet;             |                                                                         |
| þat fend telde þem mykel þynge                      | which foretold<br>things to keep<br>the people in<br>unbelief.          |
| To holden hem yn mys-leuyngne.                      | 1348                                                                    |
| On fele maners scho scheweid hem syngne,            |                                                                         |
| perfore whilom þey held hure dygne.                 |                                                                         |
| . To Brutus þenne <sup>12</sup> was hit told,       | This is told to<br>Brutus,                                              |
| . How yn a temple þat was old                       | 1352                                                                    |
| . ffond þey an ymage                                |                                                                         |
| . þat whilom hadde gret seruage                     |                                                                         |

<sup>1</sup> *had.*  
<sup>2</sup> *buk.*  
<sup>3</sup> *to schippe.*  
<sup>4</sup> *þei vnto.*  
<sup>5</sup> *a ladie.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Womañ.* I keep *Wyþ man* in  
the text on account of the earthly  
“*man*” in l. 1344.

<sup>7</sup> *þat.* [leaf 9.]  
<sup>8</sup> *stode a cage.*  
<sup>9</sup> *suilk a maner like an.*  
<sup>10</sup> MS. *retet.* (*Fr. recet.*)  
<sup>11</sup> *oñ þat.*  
<sup>12</sup> *þañ.*



- . Of þe folk þat þer was wone,  
& þe tokene ȝit wil we mone. 1356
- and he takes  
12 of his peers  
and a priest,  
Sir Gerion,  
goes in to the  
image  
with a cup of  
hind's milk,  
and wine,  
and asks Diana  
what good land  
he and his may  
live in in peace.
- Brutes tok twelue of his peres,  
Eldest, and of faire maneres,  
& a prest of þer lawe,  
Sire Gerion, als seiþ þe sawe. 1360
- Brutes alone to þe ymage gan<sup>1</sup> loute,  
& alle þe opere leften<sup>2</sup> wyþoute ;  
In his right hand, whan he com yn,  
He broughte a coppe wyþ<sup>3</sup> milk & wyn 1364  
þat milked was of a whit hynde ;  
Bysoughte Diane wyþ hertly<sup>4</sup> mynde  
Scheo wolde hym schewe som certein þynge  
In word, oper elles oper<sup>5</sup> toknynges, 1368  
What good land he myghte wone ynne,  
In pes, he, & al his kynne :  
. Ouyde witnesseþ<sup>6</sup> hit, & seys  
. þat hit is non oper weys : 1372

¶ *Diua potens nemorum, terror siluestribus apris,*  
*Cui licet* [?].<sup>7</sup>

- He prays nine  
times,  
kneels nine  
times,  
circles the altar  
and kisses it  
nine times,  
throws the  
milk in the  
fire,
- Nyne tymes he made hys<sup>8</sup> preyere  
Wyþ softe wordes &<sup>9</sup> symple chere,  
. Wiþ nyne knelynges byfore þe auter, [leaf 6, col. 2.]  
. Als scheo was a god<sup>10</sup> of power ; 1376  
Nyne syþe<sup>11</sup> he ȝede aboute,  
& kiste þe auter, & gan hit loute.  
þe milk þat he abouten bar,  
In a fyr he caste hit þar ; 1380

<sup>1</sup> Brutus gan þe ymage.<sup>2</sup> he alone þei left.<sup>3</sup> of.<sup>4</sup> He souht Diane with herte-fult.<sup>5</sup> worde or oper.<sup>6</sup> witnes.<sup>7</sup> licet [?] amfractus.<sup>8</sup> þis.<sup>9</sup> soft wordes in.<sup>10</sup> was godes. P. transposes this line and the line above it.<sup>11</sup> siþes.



Afterward,—þus we fynde,—  
 He tok þe skyn of þat<sup>1</sup> hynde,  
 & spredde hit þer on þe grounde,  
 & slepte þeron a wel god stounde.

spreads the  
hind's skin on  
the floor,

1384 sleeps on it,

### ¶ De Visione Bruty.

Brutus hym þoughte,<sup>2</sup> when he was leyd,  
 Diane com to hym & seyð:  
 " Ouer ffrance, toward þe west,  
 " Is an Ilde, on of þe best;  
 " ffol lykyng<sup>3</sup> ys þer wonyng,  
 " & plentiuous of ylka þyng;  
 " ffruit to bere, god ys þat<sup>4</sup> lond;  
 " þe Geauntz haue hit now in hond;  
 " Albion ys now þe name,  
 " þorow þe schal hit haue oþer fame,  
 " þer schal þou gynne a newe Troye,  
 " Til al þy kynde<sup>5</sup> newe ioye,  
 " & þe kynde þat comes of þe,  
 " þorow al þe werld worschipd schul be;  
 " & þat Ilde þou hast of<sup>6</sup> herd,  
 " Wip se on alle halue ys sperd."<sup>7</sup>

and dreams  
that Diana  
tells him to go  
beyond France  
to a pleasant  
isle,

1388

1392 then in the  
giants' hands,  
even Albion,

1396 and there make  
a new Troy,

and beget a  
renowned race.

1400

Brutus ros, & vp hym set,  
 He þoughte on hys drem þat he met,  
 & þanked Dyane hure gode wille;  
 And ȝyf scheo myghte his drem fu[l]fulle,<sup>8</sup>  
 þat he myghte þat Ilde take,  
 In hure name he scholde do make  
 A temple god, an<sup>9</sup> ymage hende,  
 & worschipe hit<sup>10</sup> til his lyues ende.

Brutus

vows to build  
in the Isle

1408 a temple and  
image to Diana.

<sup>1</sup> þe.

<sup>2</sup> Brutus thought. [leaf 9, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> wele likand.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þer.

<sup>5</sup> to att þi kyne.

<sup>6</sup> þat þou has.

<sup>7</sup> MS. spred; P. has on ilk half  
is sperde.

<sup>8</sup> fulfille.

<sup>9</sup> &.

<sup>10</sup> hir.



|                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                     |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| He tells his<br>friends his<br>dream.                                                                         | He telde <sup>1</sup> his drem sire Gerion,<br>& til þise <sup>2</sup> oþer twelue ylkon.                                                           |                 |
| They take to<br>their ships,<br>sail off,                                                                     | So glad þey were, forth þey ȝode<br>Til þer schipes þat were on flode;                                                                              | 1412            |
|                                                                                                               | þeir seilles drowe þey right on hey, <sup>3</sup><br>Byfore þe wynd faste þey fleȝ; <sup>4</sup><br>. Vmwhile west, vmwhile est, <sup>5</sup>       |                 |
| and are driven                                                                                                | þer <sup>6</sup> schipes driuen in many tempest;                                                                                                    | 1416            |
|                                                                                                               | . What wyþ wele, what wiþ wo,<br>þe þrittyþe day, <sup>7</sup> lesse ne mo,<br>In-to þe se of Aufryke                                               |                 |
| into the sea of<br>Africa.                                                                                    | þey comen, <sup>8</sup> & passed a gret stryke,                                                                                                     | 1420            |
| They pass the<br>ake of<br>Salynes,                                                                           | A low <sup>9</sup> water of Salynes,<br>& oþer Loughes of Phylestynes, <sup>10</sup>                                                                |                 |
| and Rusticia-<br>dan;                                                                                         | þe grete Lough of Rusticiadan, <sup>11</sup><br>Bitwyxte þe hilles of Dazaran, <sup>12</sup>                                                        | 1424            |
| and between<br>the hills of<br>Dazaran are<br>attacked by<br>robbers, but<br>fight their way<br>through them. | þey mette robbours of outlandes;<br>þorow þem <sup>13</sup> þey passed wyþ dint of handes,<br>ffor þey gon hem faste for to <sup>14</sup> assaille; |                 |
|                                                                                                               | þe Trogens passede al þeir bataille,                                                                                                                | 1428            |
|                                                                                                               | And tok <sup>15</sup> þer vitaille ylk a del                                                                                                        | [leaf 6, back.] |
|                                                                                                               | þat þey were stored of <sup>16</sup> so wel.<br>þey passede þe water of Maluan, <sup>17</sup>                                                       |                 |
| The Trojans<br>land at Mauri-<br>tania,                                                                       | & aryuede y þe lond of Maurytan,<br>þer þey come vnto þe lond,<br>& tok þe vitaille þat þey fond. <sup>18</sup>                                     | 1432            |

<sup>1</sup> & tolde.<sup>2</sup> to þe.<sup>3</sup> reght hie.<sup>4</sup> with þe wynd gan þei flie.<sup>5</sup> est vmwhile west.<sup>6</sup> ere.<sup>7</sup> In thritty daies. en trois jors, MS. du Roi, No. 27; en trente jors, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb., Wace, p. 34, note b.<sup>8</sup> com.<sup>9</sup> A lough of.<sup>10</sup> Et les Auteus as Philistins, Wace. C'est un port d'Afrique, appelé Autels des Philènes (Philenorum

Aræ). De Lincy from Michaud, p. 35.

<sup>11</sup> Rusciadan, Wace. Rusicada est une ancienne ville d'Afrique, située en Numidie, près du fleuve Thapsa. De Lincy, p. 35.<sup>12</sup> montaignes d'Azaré, Wace. Montes Azariæ: De Lincy, p. 35.<sup>13</sup> þorgh.<sup>14</sup> þam fast.<sup>15</sup> had.<sup>16</sup> of stored.<sup>17</sup> Now Muluya: De Lincy, p. 36.<sup>18</sup> londe . . fonde.



ffro þat o se vntil þat oþer  
 þey robbede alle on & oþer; 1436 plunder,  
 þey charget al þat þey myght lede,  
 Set vp þer sayl, & forþ þey ȝede. and sail

¶ *Transfretauerunt versus Hyspanniam & ibi inuen-*  
*erunt Coryneum.*

Wyþ alle þer schipes & al þer pres  
 þey comen to þe Merkes<sup>1</sup> of Erkules; 1440 to the bounds  
 . Ercoles was so doughti<sup>2</sup> man, of Hercules,  
 . Out of Troye þider he cam  
 . By se: als he wan by londe,  
 A piler of bras þer þey fonde, 1444 where he had  
 þat he dide sette for honour, set up a pillar  
 þat he was þider conquerrou. of brass in his  
 þer fond þey Nykeres<sup>3</sup> þat myry song, Here they find  
 Out of þe weye to turne hem<sup>4</sup> wrong, 1448 Sirens, who  
 . Or to<sup>5</sup> forgete þer schip to stere, sing to turn  
 þorow þer song þat þey schold here.<sup>6</sup> them wrong,  
 So ar þo Nykeres faste<sup>7</sup> aboute and who try  
 To brynge schipmen þer hit ys<sup>8</sup> doute, 1452 to lead shipmen  
 . To som swelw<sup>9</sup> to turne or steke, to some whirl-  
 Oþer a-geyn roches to breke; pool  
 þerfore hit ys a gret peril, or rock.  
 Schipmen for to liste<sup>10</sup> þer tyl. 1456

<sup>1</sup> MS. *comem.* *com to markes.*

<sup>2</sup> *was douhty a.*

<sup>3</sup> *Nikers.*

*Seraines sont monstre de mer,*

*Des ciés poent femes sambler;*

*Poisson sunt del nombril aval.*

Wace, p. 37, l. 735.

P. inserts after song,—

þat drecched þam ferly long.

In þe west see es þer wonynge ;

*As women mery þei synge*

*& þo þat listen to þer song/*

<sup>4</sup> *þer weie þei turne.*

<sup>5</sup> *þei.*

<sup>6</sup> *for þer songe þat þei here.*

<sup>7</sup> *nykeres fast.*

<sup>8</sup> *it es.*

<sup>9</sup> *suelhu* (swallow).

<sup>10</sup> *to listene.*



But the Trojans  
do not listen  
to them,

and sail on  
to Spain,  
where they  
find folk of  
Trojan race,

whose leader is  
Corineus,

who offer to go  
with them,  
and do sail in  
their company

þe Trogens knewe<sup>1</sup> þer song wel,  
þey lystned to þem neuere a del;  
þey had herd tellen þer byforen<sup>2</sup>  
How schipes had ben wyþ hem forloren.<sup>3</sup> 1460  
Wyþ peyne þey passede at þat tyde,<sup>4</sup>  
Vpon Spayne þer flete gan ryde,  
þer<sup>5</sup> þey fond at o ryuage  
Gret folk of þe Troiens<sup>6</sup> lynage, 1464  
þat on of þer auncessour<sup>7</sup>  
ffled fro Troye out of þe stour,  
Als þey dide ilk a man  
Whan þey of Grece to Troye cam.<sup>8</sup> 1468  
Coryneus highte þeir ledere,  
& meintened hym<sup>9</sup> in pes & were.  
He was a man als a Geaunt,  
Tyl hym þey drowe alle<sup>10</sup> to waraunt. 1472  
þys Coryneus, he hadde gret ioie  
When þey<sup>11</sup> wyste þey were of Troye;  
To Brutes men þey were<sup>12</sup> ful meke,  
& asked ȝyf þey ȝede lond to seke, 1476  
þat þey myghte fynde til þeir<sup>13</sup> prow;  
þey seyde, "We wole wenden<sup>14</sup> wiþ ȝow."  
So Coryneus & his partie  
Wente forth in Brutes compaignie.<sup>15</sup> 1480  
¶ Whan þeyr fflote wyþ al þer wayne [lf. 6, bk., col. 2.]  
Turnede fro þe lond of Spaigne,

<sup>1</sup> þe Troiens knew.

<sup>2</sup> tell befor.

<sup>3</sup> scippes were for þam lorn.

<sup>4</sup> l. 756-64 of Wace are not translated.

<sup>5</sup> MS. þat. þer, P.

<sup>6</sup> of troie.

<sup>7</sup> Que Anthénor, un des barons,  
Wace, l. 776, p. 38.

<sup>8</sup> troie wañ.

<sup>9</sup> he mantend þam.

<sup>10</sup> as.

<sup>11</sup> he. (L. he altered to þey.)

<sup>12</sup> he was.

<sup>13</sup> mot fynd vnto þer: and puts  
this line after the next.

<sup>14</sup> wiþ wend.

<sup>15</sup> P. adds—

Brutus luffed wele Corineus  
a frende of hym for sir brutus.



|                                                          |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| On þeyr right hand toward Peyto,                         | towards Poitou.  |
| þe wynd to þat half bar hem to <sup>2</sup> ;            | 1484             |
| pore þe se receiues Leyre,                               | All reach the    |
| Alle þe fflote com wyþ gret eyre.—                       | mouth of the     |
| .Leyre rennes þorow many contre,                         | Loire.           |
| .And euere <sup>3</sup> he metes wiþ þe se.—             | 1488             |
| .Boþe þer fflute gon þer dwelle <sup>4</sup>             |                  |
| .Seuen daye, fullyke <sup>5</sup> to telle.              | After seven      |
| Out of þe schipes þey wente grete route,                 | days they land,  |
| & spredde þe contre alle aboute.                         | 1492             |
| Goffar was kyng of Peyters; <sup>6</sup>                 | and Goffar,      |
| He sente knyghtes & squiers                              | king of Poitou,  |
| To waite <sup>7</sup> who made on hym pres,              | sends            |
| & wheþer þey soughte werre oþer <sup>8</sup> pees :      | 1496             |
| Numbert he highte, þat bar message,                      | Numbert to ask   |
| ffor he knew diuerse langage.                            | who they are.    |
| <b>C</b> orineus was go for <sup>9</sup> to chace,       | Numbert finds    |
| . Venison to take of grace ;                             | 1500 Corineus,   |
| Wyþ hym were two hundred <sup>10</sup> men               | hunting,         |
| To serche aboute in feld & fen.                          |                  |
| Wyþ Numbert mette Coryneus,                              | and asks him by  |
| & Numbert spak til hym right þus :                       | 1504 whose leave |
| “ By whas <sup>11</sup> leue & whas <sup>11</sup> warant | he kills the     |
| “ Are ȝe here alle chasand ? <sup>12</sup>               | king's deer,     |
| “ & by whas conseil are ȝe <sup>13</sup> here            |                  |
| “ ffor to destruye þe kynges dere ?                      | 1508             |
| “ He[re] ne scholde ȝe make <sup>14</sup> chace          |                  |
| “ Bot þorow me or þe kynges grace ;                      | against the      |
| “ & þe kyng forbed ilkon                                 | king's express   |
| “ þat noman scholde take her non.                        | command.         |
|                                                          | 1512             |

<sup>1</sup> *perto.*

<sup>2</sup> *bare þam so.*

3 per.

<sup>1</sup> þer flotes boþe þer gan duelle.

<sup>s</sup> *days fully.*

<sup>6</sup> *per ters.*

7 witt.

8 *OT.*

<sup>9</sup> *was gone.*

<sup>10</sup> trois cens. Wace, l. 812.

<sup>11</sup> *whos.* [leaf 10.]

<sup>12</sup> *chasant.*

<sup>13</sup> & be whos rede ere.

<sup>14</sup> *suld ze mak no.*



|                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                                                                              | “ How dar ȝe do sylk <sup>1</sup> a þyng<br>“ Wypouten leue of þe kyng?”                                                                                                                                                                                       |                          |
|                                                                              | ¶ Corineus spak al so hym <sup>2</sup> þought:                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                          |
| Corineus says<br>he cares<br>nothing for<br>Goffar<br>or his mes-<br>senger. | “ Of ȝour kyng ne wite we nought;<br>“ ffor hym ne wol <sup>3</sup> we leue to do,<br>“ Ne for his bode come hym to ;<br>“ We knowe þe for no messeger, <sup>4</sup><br>“ Ne hym self, þey <sup>5</sup> he were her.”                                          | 1516<br><br><br><br>1520 |
| Numbert<br>shoots at<br>Corineus, who<br>dodges,                             | Numberte sone his bowe bent,<br>& schet <sup>6</sup> ; bot Corineus bleynt. <sup>7</sup><br>Corineus was wroþ, y trowe ;<br>He sesede Numbertes bowe,                                                                                                          | <br><br><br>1524         |
| and kills Num-<br>bert.                                                      | & brak his bowe on his heued: <sup>8</sup><br>His felawes fledde, & lefte hym ded, <sup>9</sup><br>And wenten to telle <sup>10</sup> kyng Goffar<br>How men a-wey his venison bar ;<br>& ilkaday þey telde <sup>11</sup> hym how<br>þat Coryneus Numbert slow. | <br><br><br>1528         |

¶ *Bellum inter Goffar & Troianos.*

|                               |                                                                                                                                |      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Goffar swears<br>vengeance.   | Goffar swor he schold <sup>12</sup> hym venge:<br>Of mikel folk he made a renge                                                | 1532 |
| Brutus orders                 | ffor to falle <sup>13</sup> on Brutes ost ;<br>& Brutus aspied on <sup>14</sup> what cost,<br>& sente vntil his flute on flod, |      |
| his non-fighters<br>on board, | þat raskayl <sup>15</sup> to þe schip al ȝoð,                                                                                  | 1536 |

<sup>1</sup> *suylk.*<sup>2</sup> *as he.*<sup>3</sup> *witt.*<sup>4</sup> *messengere.*<sup>5</sup> *þof.*<sup>6</sup> *schotte.*<sup>7</sup> *glent.*<sup>8</sup> *Parmi le chief tant l'embati  
Que la cervelle en expandi.*

Wace, l. 833-4.

<sup>9</sup> *fled & dede hym leued.*<sup>10</sup> *& ȝede & talde.*<sup>11</sup> *Ilka dele þei tolde.*<sup>12</sup> *suore he suld.*<sup>13</sup> *com.*<sup>14</sup> *spied be.*<sup>15</sup> *þat þare rescaile. (ringaille,  
Wace, l. 846.)*



And *per* vitaille wyþ hem lede [leaf 7.]  
 Tyl þey wyste how þey schold<sup>1</sup> spede:  
 " Ne comes nought<sup>2</sup> out, y ȝow forbede,  
 " Tyl þat y come, for doute & drede." 1540  
 Hys men of armes þat wiþ hym war,<sup>3</sup> and with his  
 þey went a-geyn þe<sup>4</sup> kyng Goffar. men of arms  
 per hostes sone to-gydere mette, attacks Goffar.  
 Wyþ spere & swerd<sup>5</sup> to-gedere sette; 1544  
 þe Peyteuynes wel on þeym sought,  
 þe Trogens stode, þey<sup>6</sup> failled nought,  
 þey stoden wel a gret party, Victory is  
 Non wyste ho schold haue þe<sup>7</sup> maystri. 1548 doubtful,  
 Coryneus for tene wax al wod<sup>8</sup> till Corineus  
 þat þe Peyteuyns so wel stod.  
 Out of þe reнге he ȝede biside,  
 & ches him folk þat dirste abyde,<sup>9</sup> 1552 with some  
 & trauersed þe Peyteuynes bataille. staying men  
 þenne bygan þey mykel<sup>10</sup> to faille; traverses the  
 þorow þe<sup>11</sup> host he made hem weye, enemy's line,  
 On ilk a side he dide þem deye. 1556 and they give  
 Corineus *per* his swerd he lees;<sup>12</sup> way.  
 An ax he wan sone yn<sup>13</sup> þat pres, Corineus loses  
 (As auenture fel, hit cam til<sup>14</sup> hande,) his sword, but  
 Agaynes þat mought *per*<sup>15</sup> noman stande, 1560 seizes an axe,  
 . Neyþer<sup>16</sup> byhynde ne byforn;  
 þat he ouer-rought,<sup>17</sup> þe lif was lorn. and kills every  
 þe Peyteuines stode & byhelde one he hits.  
 How Coryneus faught in þe felde; 1564

<sup>1</sup> *he suld.*<sup>2</sup> *com not.*<sup>3</sup> *was.*<sup>4</sup> *ageyn to.* [leaf 10, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *with dynt of launce.*<sup>6</sup> *&.*<sup>7</sup> *who suld haf.*<sup>8</sup> *wex*<sup>9</sup> *durst wele bide.*<sup>10</sup> *for.*<sup>11</sup> *þorgh þer.*<sup>12</sup> *suerde les.*<sup>13</sup> *wan in att.*<sup>14</sup> *was it com to.*<sup>15</sup> *ageyn þat mot.*<sup>16</sup> *noþer.*<sup>17</sup> *ouertok.*



|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| All flee before him.                                                           | . þey saye <sup>1</sup> his grete hardinesse,<br>& his strokes þat were ay fresche; <sup>2</sup><br>. Byfore hym, euerylkon þey fleyghe, <sup>3</sup><br>. ffor drede of his hand to deye. <sup>4</sup>                                                                                                                                                    | 1468         |
| He taunts them;<br>"False folk, flee ye for me alone?<br>Turn again and fight! | . Whan he sey þat þey turned <sup>5</sup> bak,<br>He folewed fast, <sup>6</sup> & to þem spak:<br>" ffalse folk! why fle ze?<br>" fle ze alle for drede of <sup>7</sup> me?<br>" I am al one, Coryneus,<br>" & for me one ze fle <sup>8</sup> þus!<br>" Turn a-geyn! what haue ze þought? <sup>9</sup><br>" ffende ȝour lond, & fles <sup>10</sup> nought! | 1572<br>1576 |
| I am alone."<br>Swerd and                                                      | . " Turn a-gayn, & comes blyue,<br>" By two, by þre, by foure or fyue,<br>" & fend ȝour land as men hardy;<br>" þer folewes non bot onelyk y!" <sup>11</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                               | 1580         |
| 200 knights turn on Corineus,                                                  | ¶ Swerd, <sup>12</sup> a knyght of þe kynges host,<br>Herde his pride & his bost;<br>Wip two hundred knyghtes & swayn<br>On Coryneus <sup>13</sup> turned ageyn;                                                                                                                                                                                           | 1584         |
| who splits<br>Sword in two with his axe.                                       | On alle halue abouten <sup>14</sup> hym þey ȝede,<br>. Bot he ne fled hem <sup>15</sup> for no drede;<br>Wyp þat ax he hym bywent,<br>Sire Swerd <sup>16</sup> a strok he lent,<br>Wip þat strok his body clef,<br>. In-to þe erthe his ax dref.<br>þe oper alle had no foyssoun <sup>17</sup><br>þan had <sup>18</sup> þe lomb ageyn þe lyoun.            | 1588<br>1592 |

<sup>1</sup> saw.<sup>2</sup> strokes were euer fresse.<sup>3</sup> fleih.<sup>4</sup> ageyn hym nouht non ne deiþ.<sup>5</sup> sawe þat þei gaf.<sup>6</sup> þam.<sup>7</sup> att only for.<sup>8</sup> on ze fle att.<sup>9</sup> souht.<sup>10</sup> fle; and omits the next two lines.<sup>11</sup> ȝow folowes non bot only I.<sup>12</sup> Suard.<sup>13</sup> Corrine.<sup>14</sup> half about.<sup>15</sup> he fled þam nouht. [lf. 10, bk.]<sup>16</sup> sir Suhard.<sup>17</sup> fozon. (desfension, Wace, l. 913.)<sup>18</sup> þaṇ.



- penne cam Brutes y<sup>1</sup> þat stounde, [leaf 7, col. 2.] Brutus kills  
 Many on he slow & leide<sup>2</sup> to ground; many,  
 . Wip þe Trogens was no feyntise,  
 Bot Swerd<sup>3</sup> was slayn, & alle hyse; 1596 and all the  
 . Vneþes ascaped þe kyng wip<sup>4</sup> chaunce, Poitevins are  
 He ȝed to seke<sup>5</sup> hym help in ffraunce;— slain.  
 . Hit highte nought Fraunce, þe name was Galle, Goffar seeks  
 . Galle hit was cald þat tyme of alle;<sup>6</sup>— 1600 help in France.  
 þe twelue dosze-peres of pris The Douze-  
 departed þe lond in twelf partys; pairs  
 Ilkon of þes, Goffare þey hight, promise to  
 7 ' Wyp þe Troiens for hym to fight, 1604 fight for him,  
 & do þem alle to fle þe lond,  
 Or do þem deye wip dint of hond.'<sup>7</sup>  
 Goffar þanked þem alle twelue,  
 & ilkon gadered an ost<sup>8</sup> hym selue. 1608 and each  
 collects his  
 Brutus & hys men of Troye, host.  
 B ffor þeyr wynnynge þey mad<sup>9</sup> gret ioye, Brutus and his  
 & desconfyted<sup>10</sup> þeyr enemys; Trojans  
 A castel þey dide make<sup>11</sup> of pris 1612 build a castle  
 In þe contre als þey nam;  
 On a fair hil þey rested þam,<sup>12</sup> on a hill,  
 A castel þey maden to haue rescet,<sup>13</sup>  
 Byfor hand was þer non set,<sup>14</sup> 1616  
 Toun ne castel þat non may wyten;<sup>15</sup>  
 Bot als yn olde story ys wryten,  
 þorow þat makynge þat þey dide same,  
 Tours hadde þey gyuen hit þe<sup>16</sup> name; 1620 and call it  
 Tours.

<sup>1</sup> Brutus com in.<sup>2</sup> slouh & leid.<sup>3</sup> Suhard.<sup>4</sup> scaped þe kyng o.<sup>5</sup> ȝede & souht.<sup>6</sup> was it called þat tyme att.<sup>7</sup> A vengier de ses anemis, Wace,  
l. 928.<sup>8</sup> gedred oste.<sup>9</sup> wynnynge made.<sup>10</sup> discomfite had.<sup>11</sup> did mak.<sup>12</sup> & cam.<sup>13</sup> mad to haf rescette. (Fr. recet,  
lieu de defense et de retraite. Lat.  
receptus.)<sup>14</sup> ore was þer non sette.<sup>15</sup> no man witten.<sup>16</sup> had gynnynge þerof &.



|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Two days after<br>it is pro-<br>visioned,                                           | Tours was cald, <sup>1</sup> þat wyde ys kynd,<br>þorow a knyght a ded <sup>2</sup> bytyd.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |      |
| Goffar comes<br>to assault it                                                       | When þe castel was mad & set, <sup>3</sup><br>& þer godes þerto yfet, <sup>4</sup><br>Bot two dayes <sup>5</sup> sithen <sup>6</sup> hit was dight,<br>Com Goffar wiþ alle his myghte,<br>On þe Troiens to gyue bataille,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 1624 |
| and appeals to<br>his men                                                           | . & þer castel þey gonne <sup>7</sup> assaille,<br>Bot whan þe kyng saw þat hil,<br>Tyl <sup>8</sup> his men he seide his skyl:<br>“ Lo! þey haue y-mad <sup>9</sup> a Tour<br>“ ffor to abesen our <sup>10</sup> honour.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 1628 |
| and lords<br>to attack it at<br>once.                                               | “ Sorewe in herte wil me slo<br>“ Bot y be venget or þey go!<br>“ þerfore, lordes, y preye <sup>11</sup> ȝow alle,<br>“ Helpes now þat hit may falle.<br>“ Arme vs swyþe al redy,<br>“ Assaille we þem doughtyly!”<br>þey armed þeym alle, baron & knyght, <sup>12</sup><br>In twelue <sup>13</sup> batailles redy to fyght;<br>To gyue assaut, al wer þey bone. <sup>14</sup><br>þey of þe castel com on ful <sup>15</sup> sone,<br>& smyten <sup>16</sup> to-gyder al so smert<br>Wyþ ful egre wyl of hert. | 1632 |
| They form in<br>twelve bat-<br>talions.<br>The Trojans<br>sally from the<br>castle, | pat bataille was nought a lyte, <sup>17</sup><br>So felonly þey gon <sup>18</sup> to smyte;<br>At þassemble, in <sup>19</sup> þe fi[r]ste tyde<br>þe Troiens had þe bettere side;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1640 |
|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 1644 |
|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 1648 |

<sup>1</sup> *Toures called.*<sup>2</sup> *þat dede.*<sup>3</sup> *made & sette.*<sup>4</sup> *fette.*<sup>5</sup> *Douse jors.* Wace, l. 947.<sup>6</sup> *sen.*<sup>7</sup> *gan.*<sup>8</sup> *To.* [leaf 10, back, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> *haf mad.*<sup>10</sup> *abate myn.*<sup>11</sup> *lordes pray.*<sup>12</sup> P. transposes this line and the next.<sup>13</sup> *deus*, MS. du Roi, 27; *douse*, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>, Colb. Wace, p. 47.<sup>14</sup> *þei were alle boune.*<sup>15</sup> *com out.*<sup>16</sup> *þei smyte.*<sup>17</sup> *þer was bataile of no lite.*<sup>18</sup> *þai gan.*<sup>19</sup> *In þer strokes at.*



- ffor vnto twey<sup>1</sup> þousand or mo  
 þe Troiiens slown<sup>2</sup> sone of þo.  
 . þo twelue batailles þe Troiens brak,  
 & dide þe ffrensche arere hem<sup>3</sup> bak. 1652  
 þe ffrankysch þenne cast<sup>4</sup> a cry, [leaf 7, back.] who then call  
 þerfore men drowe to þeym ney,<sup>5</sup> up more men,  
 & stode ageyn, & smyten<sup>6</sup> sore,  
 & þeir folk wax<sup>7</sup> ay more, 1656  
 þey come ay fresche, & stoden wel,  
 & drof<sup>8</sup> þe Troiens to þer castel.  
 þen had þe ffrankysche<sup>9</sup> þe fairer ende,  
 þat ded hem wyþ force a-geyn<sup>10</sup> to wende;<sup>11</sup>  
 Alle a<sup>12</sup> day þey held hem fight 1661  
 Tyl hem failled dayes<sup>13</sup> lyght;  
 . þey wyþ-drowen, to<sup>14</sup> logges þey ȝede,  
 . þe nyght was come, þey moste<sup>15</sup> nede. 1664  
 þe Troiens þat had ben yn turpel,<sup>16</sup>  
 At midnight tok þey<sup>17</sup> conseil,  
 þat Coryneus out scholde<sup>18</sup> go  
 Wip his owen ost, & no<sup>19</sup> mo, 1668  
 & busche hym in<sup>20</sup> a wode byside:  
 “ þe frankisch ost ȝe schul<sup>21</sup> here bide,  
 “ & whan þer ost ys al<sup>22</sup> comen,  
 . “ & ȝe haue<sup>23</sup> a-geyn þem nomen, 1672  
 . “ þan<sup>24</sup> schol<sup>25</sup> þey se þat ȝe ar fo,  
 . “ þey schol<sup>25</sup> nought drede on ȝow to go.  
 so that their  
 fewness may  
 tempt the  
 French to  
 attack them.

<sup>1</sup> in tuo. L. has an old *w* and a modern *el* (*wel*) after *ffor*.

<sup>2</sup> *slouh*.

<sup>3</sup> *did þe frankes go*.

<sup>4</sup> *frankes þan kest*.

<sup>5</sup> *foreyn men drouh þam nehi*.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *snyten*.

<sup>7</sup> *wex*.

<sup>8</sup> *drofe*.

<sup>9</sup> *frankes*.

<sup>10</sup> MS. *ageym*.

<sup>11</sup> *with force agayn did þam wend*.

<sup>12</sup> *þat*. <sup>13</sup> *day*.

<sup>14</sup> *withdrouh titt*.

<sup>15</sup> *com nere þei most*.

<sup>16</sup> *tirpett*. [*trépel*, (trepidatio,) Wace, l. 981, p. 48.]

<sup>17</sup> *þer*.

<sup>18</sup> *suld*.

<sup>19</sup> *oper*.

<sup>20</sup> *busse in*.

<sup>21</sup> *frankes ost ȝe satt*.

<sup>22</sup> *be alle*. [leaf 11.]

<sup>23</sup> *be*.

<sup>24</sup> MS. *þ'an*. *þen*, P.

<sup>25</sup> *satt*.



|                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Brutus will<br>then take them<br>in rear, and<br>conquer them.                                               | . " & take non auisement,<br>" ffor ȝe ar fewe, <sup>1</sup> þey schol <sup>2</sup> nought tent, 1676<br>" & ȝe schal <sup>2</sup> abate ȝow hardely,<br>" ffor atte here <sup>3</sup> bak y come redy;<br>" þe maistrie schal <sup>2</sup> oures be,<br>" ffor coward elles hald þou <sup>4</sup> me." 1680                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Accordingly,<br>Corineus at<br>daybreak goes<br>into ambush,                                                 | Coryneus he dighte hem ȝerne,<br>& went out at þe day[e] sterne, <sup>5</sup><br>& busched þem on a rowe<br>þat þe Frensche moughte þem <sup>6</sup> nought knowe.<br>þe Peyteuyns comen atte morwen <sup>7</sup> tyde, 1685<br>þe Troiens a-geyn þem gon ride<br>Turynus a knyght, Brutus <sup>8</sup> cosyn,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| and attacks the<br>Poitevins when<br>they come out.<br>Turnus rides<br>right through<br>the Poitevin<br>host | . He parted þe host of [þe] Peyteuyn, 1688<br>. & rod þer host al þorow out,<br>. Might noman <sup>9</sup> bere his strokes stout;<br>. Merueyloslike <sup>10</sup> was he hardy,<br>foolhardily, . His hardinesse was foly; 1692<br>In al þe host ne hadde he pere,<br>Of no strengthe þat men myght <sup>11</sup> here,<br>(Bot þe geaunt, sire Coryne, <sup>12</sup><br>ȝit was he al so <sup>13</sup> strong as he :) 1696<br>He triste to <sup>14</sup> mykel on his myght;<br>Ouer fer he ȝede on hem <sup>15</sup> to fight:<br>He had slayn, þe story seys, |
| and too far,<br>till he has slain<br>600 men.                                                                | . Six hundred Peyteuyns & Fraunceys; 1700<br>Sipen com alle þe frankische route,<br>& closed hym yn al aboute.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Then he is<br>surrounded                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

<sup>1</sup> ȝe ere.<sup>2</sup> saȝt.<sup>3</sup> at þer.<sup>4</sup> hold ȝe.<sup>5</sup> al coc cantant. Wace, l. 995.<sup>6</sup> frankisse kouth þam.<sup>7</sup> com at þe morn.<sup>8</sup> brutus is written above Coryneus dotted out. ("un niès Bruti," Wace, l. 1004.) brutus, P.<sup>9</sup> mot non.<sup>10</sup> Meruelly.<sup>11</sup> mot.<sup>12</sup> Corrine. (Fors Corinéus solement, Wace, l. 1010.)<sup>13</sup> als.<sup>14</sup> trost hym.<sup>15</sup> þam.



De occisitione Turnij, & edificacione castri de  
Toures in Turonia.

|                                                          |                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Er þan ouer cam <sup>1</sup> Coryneus,                   |                               |
| Er <sup>2</sup> was he slayn, þis knyght Turnus.         | 1704 and slain.               |
| . Right to ded <sup>3</sup> as he was kast,              |                               |
| Brutus hasted <sup>4</sup> hym ferly fast,               | Brutus carries                |
| And tok þe body fro þeym alle                            | the corpse                    |
| [leaf 7, back, col. 2.]                                  |                               |
| . Er he of his hors gan falle,                           | 1708                          |
| . And bar hit vp vntil his tour,                         | to his tower,                 |
| þer was he beryed wyþ <sup>5</sup> honour.               |                               |
| ffor loue of Turnus, þat gode knyght,                    |                               |
| Toures in Tureyne now hit hight; <sup>6</sup>            | 1712                          |
| & after Toures þat ilke cite,                            |                               |
| Tureyne hat <sup>7</sup> al þat contre.                  |                               |
| Brutus retorned to þat <sup>8</sup> fyght,               | and returns to                |
| And Coryneus halp wiþ al <sup>9</sup> his myght;         | the fight.                    |
| þe ffrankische host was al <sup>10</sup> by-twene,       | 1716                          |
| Bytwyxt þeym to <sup>11</sup> þey made al clene          | Corineus and                  |
| Of ffrankische & of Peyteuyns;                           | he make a                     |
| . þey leye in dykes & in kynes,                          | 1720                          |
| þey soughten how <sup>12</sup> þey mought hem hyde,      | clean sweep of                |
| In bataille woltey <sup>13</sup> no lenger byde.         | the Franks and                |
|                                                          | Poitevins,                    |
| . Whan al was fled, & [þe] <sup>14</sup> feld was playn, |                               |
| Brutus turned his folk <sup>15</sup> a-geyn;             | 1724 then return to           |
| Ilkon to þer castel went,                                | the castle,                   |
| & þen þey helde <sup>16</sup> a parlement.               | hold a parlia-<br>ment there, |

<sup>1</sup> Or euer com.

<sup>2</sup> ore.

<sup>3</sup> dede.

<sup>4</sup> abatid.

<sup>5</sup> for.

<sup>6</sup> Tours hes now þe name right.

<sup>7</sup> Turoyne hate [was called].

<sup>8</sup> com ageyn to þe.

<sup>9</sup> halpe at.

<sup>10</sup> þam.

<sup>11</sup> tuo.

<sup>12</sup> To what stedes.

<sup>13</sup> to bataile wild þei.

<sup>14</sup> & þe.

<sup>15</sup> oste.

<sup>16</sup> þer þei held.



|                                         |                                                |      |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                         | per parlement, þys was þe ende,                |      |
|                                         | “Euerylkon to schip schold wende,              | 1728 |
|                                         | “ & drawe per vitaille to þe se,               |      |
| and resolve to<br>leave the<br>country. | “ & weyue al þat ilk <sup>1</sup> contre.”     |      |
|                                         | When þey had don as y ȝow seye,                |      |
|                                         | þey set vp seyl, & went <sup>2</sup> per weye; | 1732 |
| They sail to                            | þey seyled boþe day & <sup>3</sup> nyght,      |      |
|                                         | . þat neuere striken, bot ay vpright,          |      |
|                                         | Til <sup>4</sup> þey aryved—as our book seys—  |      |
| Dartmouth,                              | In Dertemuithe at <sup>5</sup> Toteneys.       | 1736 |

¶ Hic primo Brutus intrauit Albion cum suo nauigio  
apud Toteneys.

|                                               |                                                     |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                               | Al holyke <sup>6</sup> com per flote                |      |
|                                               | In Dertemuthe, at o <sup>7</sup> schote;            |      |
| in the isle that<br>Diana promised<br>Brutus, | þat ys þe Ilde þat dame Dyane                       |      |
|                                               | Hyght <sup>8</sup> Brutus & his kynde alane.        | 1740 |
|                                               | Out of þe schip þey com tyl land                    |      |
|                                               | Wiþ mykel ioie, y vnderstand,                       |      |
|                                               | When þey wyste þat þey were set                     |      |
| even Albion,                                  | To wone per Diane had þem het,                      | 1744 |
|                                               | . In þat Ilde of Albyon,                            |      |
|                                               | & þenked per godes euerilkon.                       |      |
|                                               | . þat ylke tyme was nought late,—                   |      |
|                                               | . fful longe hit ys, <sup>9</sup> as seyþ þe date,— |      |
| in 1200 B.C.                                  | . þat tyme þat <sup>10</sup> Brutes aryued her,     | 1748 |
|                                               | . A þousand & two hunded ȝer,                       |      |

<sup>1</sup> *att* þat.

<sup>2</sup> *furth*.

<sup>3</sup> *sailed day & on þe*.

<sup>4</sup> *to*.

<sup>5</sup> *Dertmuthe in*.

<sup>6</sup> *Att holy*.

<sup>7</sup> *a*.

<sup>8</sup> *hete*.

<sup>9</sup> *long tyme*.

<sup>10</sup> *þe tyme*.



- .So mykel was hit byforn  
 .Er Iesu was of Marye born. 1752  
 In þat tyme wer here non hauntes  
 Of no men bot of geauntes.  
 (Geaunt ys more þan man;  
 .So seys þe bok, for y ne can; 1756  
 .Lyke men þey ar<sup>1</sup> in flesche & bon;  
 .In my tyme saw y neuere non.  
 .Of membres haue þey<sup>2</sup> liknes  
 .þe lymes alle þat in man ys.) 1760  
 .Twenty geauntz were in þys lond;  
 Of on þe name wryten y fond,  
 Gogmagog, þus was told; [leaf 8.]  
 ffor he was strong, gret, & bold, 1764  
 Gogmagog þus men hym calle;  
 þey seyden<sup>3</sup> he was most of alle.  
 þe Troiens, when þey þe geauntz sawe,  
 Wyþ þer bowes at þeym gon drawe, 1768  
 & also wyþ dart & spere.  
 þe geauntz coupe hem nought<sup>4</sup> were;  
 Vp to þe hilles fro þem þey wend,  
 & left þe Troiens þe pleynd lond. 1772  
 who retreat to the hills.
- A day þe Troiens made þer feste  
 After þe manere of þer geste,  
 Wyþ caroles, trompes, & pypyng,<sup>5</sup>  
 ffor ioie of þer newe wonyng.<sup>6</sup> 1776  
 .Whan þey<sup>7</sup> had karoled alder best,  
 .& ilkon schold han go<sup>8</sup> to rest,  
 So come þe geauntz<sup>9</sup> þat ylke nyght,  
 & on þe Troiens smyte doun ryght. 1780  
 and at night the giants attack them,

<sup>1</sup> *ere.*<sup>2</sup> *haf þe.*<sup>3</sup> *It says.*<sup>4</sup> *couth þam not.*<sup>5</sup> *carols & with oþer glewe.*<sup>6</sup> *wonyng newe.*<sup>7</sup> *as þei.*<sup>8</sup> *suld haf gon.*<sup>9</sup> *vingt gaians, Wace, p. 52, l. 1085.*

See the "twenty," l. 1761 above.



|                                                        |                                                                                               |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| that foul frog<br>Gogmagog<br>leading.                 | fformest was sire Gogmagog,<br>He was most, þat foule froge;                                  |      |
| The giants<br>fight with trees<br>and stones.          | þey faught wyþ trees þat þey vp drowe,—<br>Y can nought seye whilk þey slow,—                 | 1784 |
|                                                        | Oper wepen had þey non,<br>Bot smyten wiþ tres or casten <sup>1</sup> ston.                   |      |
|                                                        | When þey had fought, & went to fle,<br>In to þe hilles a-gayn to be,                          | 1788 |
| The Trojans                                            | þan <sup>2</sup> were þe Troiens þeym bifore,<br>& gaf þem woundes depe & sore,               |      |
| kill most of<br>them,                                  | & slowe þem þe moste part<br>Wiþ spere & bowe, swerd & <sup>3</sup> dart.                     | 1792 |
| and take<br>Gogmagog,                                  | Gogmagog, þe Troiens tok; <sup>4</sup><br>þan saide Brutus 'þat þey schold lok <sup>5</sup>   |      |
| to wrestle with<br>Corineus.                           | ' Wheþer he wer strengere, or Cornyus.' <sup>6</sup><br>. A place to pleye, ordeyned Brutus,— | 1796 |
|                                                        | Corineus was wel of þat graunt <sup>7</sup> —<br>ffor to wrastle wyþ þat geaunt;              |      |
| The wrestling<br>match is held<br>close to the<br>sea. | On a clyf faste <sup>8</sup> by þe se<br>þe wrastlyng was ordeyned <sup>9</sup> to be;        | 1800 |
|                                                        | Alle þey zede, zonge & elde,<br>þat wrastlyng to byhelde.                                     |      |

### ¶ De ludo inter Coryneum & Gogmagogum.

|              |                                                                                   |      |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Corineus     | Coryneus first vp he stirt, <sup>10</sup><br>& wyþ a cloþ his body gyrt;          | 1804 |
| comes first, | Strait in þe flank dide hym lace,<br>& com & stod forth y <sup>11</sup> þe place. |      |

<sup>1</sup> *kast with.*<sup>2</sup> *are.*<sup>3</sup> *with bowe with spere & with.*<sup>4</sup> *toke.*<sup>5</sup> *brutus sayd þat þei suld loke.*<sup>6</sup> *Corineus.*<sup>7</sup> *wele o grante.* [lf. 11, bk., col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> *felde fast.*<sup>9</sup> *set.*<sup>10</sup> *first.*<sup>11</sup> *He com & stode forth in.*



|                                                                 |                   |                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| pen <sup>1</sup> Gogmagog ros vp sone ;                         |                   | then Gog-        |
| He hadde hym dight, & was al bone.                              | 1808              | magog.           |
| þe firste pul so harde <sup>2</sup> was set                     |                   | They wrestle,    |
| þat þeyr brestes to-gyder met ;                                 |                   |                  |
| þeir handes ouer bakkes þey caste, <sup>3</sup>                 |                   |                  |
| Syde to syde was set ful faste ;                                | 1812              |                  |
| þer was turn ageynes turn ; <sup>4</sup>                        |                   | try dodges,      |
| þat waykest was, byhoued spurn. <sup>5</sup>                    |                   |                  |
| ffor-setten byfore, & eke byhynde, <sup>6</sup>                 |                   |                  |
| Wyþ crokes ilkon oþer gan bynde ; <sup>7</sup>                  | 1816              | and clutch       |
| Oft aboute ilk oþer þrew,                                       | [leaf 8, col. 2.] | limbs,           |
| . þe stem stod vp, so þey blew. <sup>8</sup>                    |                   | till they steam. |
| . þey handled boþe sore þer nekkes ;                            |                   |                  |
| . Chynnes, chekes, gef harde <sup>9</sup> chekkes ;             | 1820              | Chins, cheeks,   |
| þeyr teþ gnaisted wiþ nose <sup>10</sup> snore,                 |                   | and heads        |
| Hurtlede hedes set ful sore ;                                   |                   | clash.           |
| Ilk oþer pulled, ilk oþer schok,                                |                   | They pull,       |
| Wiþ fet in fourche <sup>11</sup> ilk oþer tok.                  | 1824              | shake,           |
| Wyþ trip forsetten, <sup>12</sup> ilk oþer to gyle,             |                   | trip,            |
| In lyft in wryþyng þey sayed vmwhile ; <sup>13</sup>            |                   | writhe,          |
| Ilkon fro erthe dide oþer ryse <sup>14</sup>                    |                   | and lift.        |
| Wyþ strengþe more þan wyþ queintise.                            | 1828              |                  |
| Gogmagog proued his strengþe,—                                  |                   | Gogmagog         |
| . Twelue cubyte he was in lengþe, <sup>15</sup> —               |                   |                  |
| In armes Coryneus he laught,                                    |                   | crushes in       |
| & on hym drow so strong a draught                               | 1832              |                  |
| þat þre rybbes <sup>16</sup> brosten <sup>17</sup> in his side, |                   | three of Cori-   |
| & had ner cast him [at] þat tyde.                               |                   | neus's ribs.     |

<sup>1</sup> &.

<sup>2</sup> pulle so hard.

<sup>3</sup> ouer bakkes handes þe cast.

<sup>4</sup> set to turne.

<sup>5</sup> scurn.

<sup>6</sup> Forset befor forset behynd.

<sup>7</sup> oþer bynd.

<sup>8</sup> stode whan þei blewe.

<sup>9</sup> chokes gaf harde.

<sup>10</sup> nese.

<sup>11</sup> fouche.

<sup>12</sup> forset.

<sup>13</sup> MS. *vn while*. P. has *In liste*  
& *wriþyng þei fraist vmwhile*.

<sup>14</sup> *Ilk oþer fro þe erthe did vp rise*.

<sup>15</sup> *Tuelf elbous he was o length*.

<sup>16</sup> *une coste*, MS. du Roi, 27, l. 1160 ; *trois des côtes*, MS. de Ste.-Genev. Y. fol. 10. Wace : *Le Roux de Lincy*, I. 56.

<sup>17</sup> brak.



Corineus

- . þen was Coryneus a-schamed<sup>1</sup>  
 þat he was for þe geaunt<sup>2</sup> lamed; 1836  
 He recouered his strengþe for tene,  
 . Of skape wold he<sup>3</sup> hym no more mene;  
 Wyþ þat<sup>4</sup> þe geaunt [anon] he hente,  
 & in his armes so hym wente 1840  
 þat Gogmagog gan to swowene,  
 & bar hym<sup>5</sup> wyþ þe bank [a]doune;  
 Doun of þe roche he let hym falle—  
 þerfore ffaleys men gon hit calle;<sup>6</sup>— 1844  
 Er he cam<sup>7</sup> doun, was flesche & bon  
 Al to-ryuen fro ston to ston.  
 . A gret þrowe<sup>8</sup> þer he lay ded,  
 þe water of his blod was red. 1848

squeezes Gog-  
 magog till he  
 swoons,  
 then drops him  
 over the rock

still called  
 Falaise, and  
 his mangled  
 body falls  
 into the sea.

**Brutus ordinavit & fecit mancipios per loca.**

Then the  
 Trojans  
 feel comfort-  
 able, build  
 themselves  
 houses, stake  
 out land,  
 and till it.

England was  
 then called  
 Albion;  
 but Brutus  
 names it  
 Britain,

- When þe geauntz were o dawne,  
 þe Troiens hadden na more<sup>9</sup> awe;  
 Tounes, houses, dide þey make,  
 & mesured lond, & dide hit stake 1852  
 . þat ilkon dide his owen<sup>10</sup> knowe;  
 þen tyled þey<sup>11</sup> lond, & dide hit sowe.  
 þat tyme þys lond hight Albyon;  
 When Brutus cam, þat name was gon; 1856  
 . ffor Albion was Brutes wayne,  
 þerfore he dide hit calle Brutayne.  
 When he & hise fro<sup>12</sup> Troye nam,  
 Troiens were called til<sup>13</sup> þey þer cam; 1860

<sup>1</sup> *oschamede.*

<sup>2</sup> *for geant lamede.*

<sup>3</sup> *he wild.*

<sup>4</sup> *All with Ire.* [leaf 12.]

<sup>5</sup> *& bare.*

<sup>6</sup> *þe name ȝit faleise men calle.*

<sup>7</sup> *are he com.*

<sup>8</sup> *a grete þer.*

<sup>9</sup> *had more no.*

<sup>10</sup> *his owen ilk did.*

<sup>11</sup> *þei tilled.*

<sup>12</sup> *his of.*

<sup>13</sup> *to.*



- . After þe Troiens þys name was set,  
 . ffor name of Brutes first highte <sup>1</sup> Bret;  
 . Afterward hit turned eftsones,  
 ffor Brutus folk <sup>2</sup> was cald Brutones. 1864 are called  
 þat name held hit of Bretoun Britons.  
 . Long syþen <sup>3</sup> þe Incarnacion,  
 Til Gormound cam & he[re] <sup>4</sup> gan aryue,  
 þe Brutons away he dide hem <sup>5</sup> dryue. 1868 The name  
 . Vneþe siþen any on <sup>6</sup> ros Briton lasts  
 . þat longe bar any los. till Gormund  
 . þat of his <sup>7</sup> spoken mykel in dede; comes and  
 . Ney atte <sup>8</sup> þe ende ȝe may hit rede. 1872 drives the  
 Britons away.
- Coryneus hadde <sup>9</sup> a god party [leaf 8, back.] Corineus  
 Of þe lond, for he was worþy.  
 . per Corineus dide bataille,  
 . þat contre he tok þat highte Waille; <sup>10</sup> 1876 conquers  
 . Of Corni & Waille, þat was <sup>11</sup> wynnyng, Waille, and  
 Hadde Cornewaille þe name gynny[n]g;  
 . Cornewaille com of Coryneus, calls it Corn-  
 . & Brutayne com of sire Brutus. 1880 waille after  
 Ilkon to þeym <sup>12</sup> per frendes drow, himself.  
 . & bygged lond[e] for þeir prow: The Trojans,  
 ffor stede to stede gon <sup>13</sup> þey wende; now Britons,  
 . per best was, per wolde <sup>14</sup> þey lende, 1884 settle on the  
 & <sup>15</sup> multeplyed, & wel þrof, <sup>16</sup> best lands,  
 . & woxen riche, kant & cof. <sup>17</sup> breed, and  
 In fewe ȝeres <sup>18</sup> al þe kynde wax rich.  
 Of folk, þey woxen <sup>19</sup> mykel mynde. 1888

<sup>1</sup> was.<sup>2</sup> brutus his folk.<sup>3</sup> sen.<sup>4</sup> here.<sup>5</sup> did he.<sup>6</sup> neuer siþen vneþis non.<sup>7</sup> þerof is.<sup>8</sup> nere at.<sup>9</sup> sesed.<sup>10</sup> toke to waile.<sup>11</sup> corn & kataile þat is.<sup>12</sup> Ilkon. [leaf 12, col. 2.]<sup>13</sup> gañ.<sup>14</sup> wild.<sup>15</sup> þei.<sup>16</sup> throfe.<sup>17</sup> wex ryche cante & kofe.<sup>18</sup> a fo ȝers.<sup>19</sup> wex þei.



¶ *Constructio Noue Troie, qui iam dicitur Londonia.*

Brutus

examines all  
the country,and resolves  
to build a new  
city for Troy's  
sake.He finds a  
river, calls it  
Tamyse,  
and declares  
that he will set  
there a new  
city for the  
love of Troy.  
"New Troy"  
shall be its  
name.  
(And it kept  
this name  
long, till it was  
renamed  
Trenouant.Then king Lud  
called it

Brutus byhel[d] þe mountaynes  
 & auised hym o<sup>1</sup> þe playnes,  
 biheld þe wodes, watres,<sup>2</sup> & ffen,  
 . Where esyest wony[n]g were<sup>3</sup> for men ; 1892  
 Als watres ronnen wel, he byheld,  
 & mede wiþ þe eryed feld,<sup>4</sup>  
 . What fruyt he hoped hit wolde bere.  
 His folk wax faste his<sup>5</sup> lond to were, 1896  
 He þoughte in herte he wolde<sup>6</sup> do make  
 A newe biggyng for Troyes<sup>7</sup> sake ;  
 A stede to seche<sup>8</sup> he ȝede to se,  
 Wher he best þoughte,<sup>9</sup> & most ayse. 1900  
 A water he fond, & cald hit Tamyse,  
 . After his langage, þer on his wyse :  
 . " Y schal sette her,<sup>10</sup> oure kynde to ioie,  
 . " A cite for þe loue<sup>11</sup> of Troye ; 1904  
 " ffor Troye was so noble a cite,<sup>12</sup>  
 " Newe Troye þe name schal be."  
 . Newe Troye longe hit hight,  
 . Tyl som men come wiþ<sup>13</sup> langage lyght,— 1908  
 . Schort speche hadde<sup>14</sup> þey in haunt,—  
 & cald Newe Troye, Trenouant.  
 Al ys on, ho<sup>15</sup> so hit knewe,  
 Trenouant & Troye newe ; 1912  
 Troye newe ys Trenouant,  
 Two wordes in on, & non ys<sup>16</sup> want.  
 þen cam<sup>17</sup> a kyng, Lud was his name,

<sup>1</sup> oñ.<sup>2</sup> water.<sup>3</sup> was eyse wonnyng.<sup>4</sup> & þe medew with ardaufelde.<sup>5</sup> fast þe.<sup>6</sup> þouht in his hert he wald.<sup>7</sup> troie.<sup>8</sup> he chese.<sup>9</sup> him thouht best.<sup>10</sup> .I. wiþ here.<sup>11</sup> luf.<sup>12</sup> noble cite.<sup>13</sup> titt quant meñ com of.<sup>14</sup> Schorte speche had.<sup>15</sup> one who.<sup>16</sup> one & nouht is.<sup>17</sup> com.



- & made a gate in þat<sup>1</sup> same ; 1916  
 Kaer Lud þe name laught,<sup>2</sup> Kaer Lud ;  
 . ffor loue of Lud þat hit aught ;<sup>3</sup>  
 . ffor to haue of hym renoun,  
 . Kaer Lud þey calde<sup>4</sup> þe toun. 1920  
 . When Saxons<sup>5</sup> com, þat name ne couthe,— and next the  
 . þer owen speche was best yn mouþe — Saxons called it  
 þey cald hit Ludden & London : Ludden and  
 þus þe name cam eft don,<sup>6</sup> 1924 London.  
 London, on Saxons<sup>7</sup> langage.  
 . Now Englysche holden þate<sup>8</sup> heritage, The English  
 Als men of oþer<sup>9</sup> nations now hold the  
 þat han be here syþ þe Bretons ; 1928 land.  
 As þe<sup>10</sup> names of contres [leaf 8, back, col. 2.] For names of  
 Ben chaunged, & lawes & fees,<sup>11</sup> places change  
 ffro þe firste þat þey were named,  
 Als straunge folk han hider y-samed.<sup>12</sup> 1932 with the  
 ¶ Whan Brutus had set his cite foreign folk  
 & burgeys mad,<sup>13</sup> & gaf þeym fee, that gather in  
 In lawe wysly to welde, them.)  
 & pes to haue in ʒonkþe<sup>14</sup> & elde, 1936  
 He regned ffoure & twenty ʒer Brutus reigns  
 In al Bretaigne fer & ner. 24 years over  
 . Al was Brutaigne, by elde tales, all Britain,  
 . Engelond, Scotlond, & Walys, 1940  
 . þyse þre were þenne<sup>15</sup> al on,  
 . þat erest was cald<sup>16</sup> Albyon ; that was first  
 . Albion highte þyse londes þre, called Albion.  
 . ffor þey ar closed al wiþ þe se. 1944

<sup>1</sup> þe.<sup>2</sup> lauht.<sup>3</sup> MS. lauht. þe toune auht.<sup>4</sup> þei called.<sup>5</sup> whan Sessions.<sup>6</sup> son. [leaf 12, back.]<sup>7</sup> Sesson.<sup>8</sup> Anglis hold þat.<sup>9</sup> Als oþer of.<sup>10</sup> Has ye.<sup>11</sup> Bien changed lawes & fees.<sup>12</sup> outen folk haf hidere samed.<sup>13</sup> set.<sup>14</sup> ʒouth.<sup>15</sup> þan.<sup>16</sup> are was called.



¶ Post decessum Bruty, regnavit Lokerynus filius eius.

Brutus has  
three children,

1. Locrin,
2. Kamber,
3. Albanak,

who, after his  
death,

divide his  
lands.

Locrin chooses  
Logres.

Kamber  
chooses

Kambria

(now called  
Wales, either  
from queen  
Galeas

or duke  
Galon).

Albanak  
chooses

Albania

Brutus had wyþ Ignogyn  
þre childre: þe eldest hight Lokeryn,  
þat oþer,<sup>1</sup> Kamber & Albanak;  
þise lyuede byhynde Brutus bak,  
& buryed hym, his<sup>2</sup> sones þre.

1948

When he was ded in his cite,  
pyse þre brethere in loue & pes  
Parted þe lond, & ilkon ches,  
& held þem payed on<sup>3</sup> þer partys,  
. Als þe þre royames lys.<sup>4</sup>

1952

Lokeryn ches first, he was eldest;  
þys lond of Logres hit fel hym best.  
Logeres hit ys after his name;<sup>5</sup>  
ffor Lokeryn, Logers had hit þe name.<sup>5</sup>

1956

Kamber til his part gan ʒerne  
North west þe water of Seuerne,  
. In length, in brede, als hit [gan]<sup>6</sup> lye,  
& for his name kald hit Kambrie:

1960

Kambrie hit highte, by þo tales,  
þat lond þat now ys cleped Wales<sup>7</sup>;  
& for þe quen dame Galaes,  
ffor loue of hure, þat name þey ches.

1964

Somme now seye<sup>8</sup> for oþer reson  
Galeys was cald, for duk Galon:  
Whylom þys duk was of power,  
& gret renoun hadde fer & ner.

1968

Albanak was ʒongest of alle,  
þe moste wodeland gan hym falle.

1972

Albanak kalde his partie  
After his name, Albanie:

<sup>1</sup> þe toþer.      <sup>2</sup> þise.

<sup>3</sup> & were paied of.

<sup>4</sup> remes lis.

<sup>5</sup> P. omits these two lines.

<sup>6</sup> & brede as it gan.

<sup>7</sup> Att þe lond þat is now Wales.  
Lamb. MS. has Weles.

<sup>8</sup> Som say.



- Albanie highte þat now ys<sup>1</sup> Scotland,  
 . As y schal ȝow telle how y<sup>2</sup> fand: 1976 (now called Scotland,  
 . þe name of Scotlon,<sup>3</sup> þe firste rote *nota.*  
 . Hit was gyuen a mayden Scote; from Scote, the  
 . Scote was ffaraones<sup>4</sup> doughter þe kyng, daughter of  
 . Tyl<sup>5</sup> Scotland was scho wedded ȝynge, 1980 king Pharoah).  
 . And was til<sup>5</sup> hire gyuen, & scheo hit aughte ;  
 . Of hire þe name Scotland laughte.  
 ¶ Numbert,<sup>6</sup> a kyng o Huneys, [leaf 9.] Humbert, a  
 A robbour he was al, hit<sup>7</sup> seys; 1984 king of the  
 He robbed þe ildes alle a-boute; Huns, and a  
 Of lyper<sup>8</sup> men he hadde gret route. robber,  
 . Of Albanye men til<sup>5</sup> hym spak, hears that  
 . þat was a childes<sup>9</sup> Albanak: 1988 Albanak is a  
 Wip Albanak fayn wold he fyght, child,  
 & Albanak faste<sup>10</sup> ageyn hym dight; and attacks  
 Bot Albanak sone þer he slow; and slays him.  
 His folk fledde, & southeward drow, 1992 His folk tell  
 & pleynd þem to sire<sup>11</sup> Lokeryn Locrin, who  
 . How þey ascaped wip mykel pyn.  
 Lokeryn vntil Kamber sent; with Kamber,  
 þey gadered host, & þyder went. 1996 gathers a host,  
 A-gayn þeim com sire Numbert;<sup>6</sup>  
 . Of þeym boþe was he nought ferd.  
 . In an arme of þe se and in an arm  
 . Met þey to-gidere alle þre. 2000 of the sea  
 . þe Bretons were wel mo þan he; attacks Hum-  
 In-to þat water þey dide hem fle;<sup>12</sup> bert,  
 . þey ne ascaped<sup>13</sup> for no thyng and drives him  
 & so þer drenkled<sup>14</sup> Humbert þe kyng. 2004 and his men  
 into the water.

<sup>1</sup> þat is.<sup>2</sup> As I satt telle ȝow who it.<sup>3</sup> Scote.<sup>4</sup> Pharaon.<sup>5</sup> to.<sup>6</sup> Humbert.<sup>7</sup> was it.<sup>8</sup> felon.<sup>9</sup> bot a childe was.<sup>10</sup> herd.<sup>11</sup> plenyd vnto.<sup>12</sup> þe breþer had more powere þen  
he!

In þat water fast gan he fle.

<sup>13</sup> He ascaped nouht.<sup>14</sup> He dronkend þer.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Locrin calls<br>the water<br>Humber.                                                                                                                                                                                                            | ffor Humbert gan <i>per</i> mys-falle,<br>Sire Lokeryn dide <i>þe</i> water calle<br>Humber, after sire Humbert,<br>ffor he dreynthe <i>þerin</i> in apert. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 2008                 |
| Locrin takes<br>out of Hum-<br>bert's ship<br>three maidens,<br>of whom the<br>daughter of<br>the king of<br>Germany,                                                                                                                           | ffro Alemaigne sire Humbert cam,<br><i>þe</i> ildes he robbed al so he nam.<br>Sire Lokeryn tok <i>þat</i> he had reft,<br><i>pre</i> faire maydenes in his schip <sup>2</sup> were left:<br><i>þe</i> kynges doughter of Germyne<br>Was <i>þe</i> fairest of alle <sup>3</sup> <i>þre</i> .<br>Sire Lokery[n] byheld faste <sup>4</sup> <i>þat</i> may,<br>. Scheo was <i>þe</i> fairest til <sup>5</sup> his pay;                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 2012<br>2016         |
| Estrilde, is<br>fairest in his<br>sight.                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Tendrely he dide hure <i>þeme</i> ,<br>Of alle scheo was most til his <sup>6</sup> queme;<br>Estrilde <i>þat</i> maiden hight,<br>Was non so fair in Lokerynes <sup>7</sup> sight.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 2020                 |
| Now Corineus<br>had one<br>daughter,<br><br>Gwendoline,<br><br>and Locrin had<br>agreed to<br>marry her,<br>but for love for<br>Estrilde, would<br>have broken<br>his troth.<br>So Corineus<br>takes an axe,<br><br>looks sternly<br>at Locrin, | Corineus, <i>þit</i> lyued he <i>þo</i> ,<br>He hadde a doughter, & <sup>8</sup> no mo;<br>He had spoken wip Lokeryn<br>To wedde his doughter Gwyndolyn; <sup>9</sup><br>Lokeryn & he were in couenaunt, <sup>10</sup><br>. & <i>þey</i> boþe had mad <i>þe</i> graunt,<br><i>þat</i> , for <i>þe</i> loue of fair Estrilde,<br>Lokeryn haf brokene hit, fayn he wylde. <sup>11</sup><br>Corineus herde hit sone seye:<br><i>þer</i> Lokeryn was, he tok <i>þe</i> weye;<br>An ax in his hand he tok,<br>. On Lokeryn lopliche gan he lok,<br>& angrily til <sup>12</sup> hym he spak,—<br>. Nought bot wrathe <sup>13</sup> his mouþ brak,— | 2024<br>2028<br>2032 |

<sup>1</sup> for he dronkend *þer* in apert.<sup>2</sup> *þe* maydens in his schyppe.<sup>3</sup> *þase*. [leaf 13.]<sup>4</sup> *þened* mykitt.<sup>5</sup> *scho* was fairest vnto.<sup>6</sup> of alle women *scho* mot hym.<sup>7</sup> non fairere in Lokerin.<sup>8</sup> & childere.<sup>9</sup> Guendoline.<sup>10</sup> conaunt.<sup>11</sup> broken it wilde.<sup>12</sup> wrothfully to.<sup>13</sup> ne bot wreth of.



- He seide, " Lokeryn, þou art a fol !  
 " þy selue dightest<sup>1</sup> þe to dol: 2036 says  
 " þy ded of me þen schalt þou haue ; " Locrin,  
 " per-fro noman schal þe saue. you're a fool,  
 and I'll kill you  
 " Why hast<sup>2</sup> þou my doughter forsaken [lf. 9, c. 2.] for forsaking  
 " þat in troupe þow haddest<sup>3</sup> taken? 2040 my girl,  
 Gwendoline.  
 " þat ys þe þank þat þou me cones ! This is your  
 " I hope<sup>4</sup> to wynne þat þou inne<sup>5</sup> wones. thanks !  
 " Y serued þy fader in many nede, I helped to win  
 " & yuel zelde<sup>6</sup> þou me my mede. 2044 your land,  
 " I auntred me in many chaunce I risked my  
 " þy fader Brutus forto auance; life for your  
 " Many strok gaf in many stour father,  
 " To brynge þy fader til his honour; 2048 and was will-  
 " & zit þy self auance y wylde. ing to help  
 " Bot for on þey calle Estrylde, you too:  
 " fforsake[st]<sup>7</sup> my doughter Gwyndolene, but for Estrilde  
 " & dost<sup>8</sup> me despit & tene ! 2052 you forsake my  
 and shame me !  
 " Whil (þou wost)<sup>9</sup> y am on lyue,  
 " Schalt þou haue<sup>10</sup> non oþer wyue !  
 " þou bryngest<sup>11</sup> þe in foul fame,  
 " & dost<sup>8</sup> me gret onoy<sup>12</sup> & schame, 2056 You disgrace  
 her and me."  
 " & my doughter Gwendolyn !"  
 & leyde hand on Lokeryn,  
 & wolde han venged þer<sup>13</sup> his tene,  
 Nadde lordes schoten hem<sup>14</sup> bytwene 2060 Corineus would  
 have killed  
 Locrin, had not  
 some lords  
 separated  
 them,  
 & departed hem<sup>15</sup> o twynne,  
 And preied Cornyus forto blynne.

<sup>1</sup> *dightes.*<sup>2</sup> *haf.*<sup>3</sup> *þou had.*<sup>4</sup> *For holpe ? halpe, P.*<sup>5</sup> *MS. ime.*<sup>6</sup> *ille zeldes.*<sup>7</sup> *Forsakes.* [leaf 13, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> *dos.*<sup>9</sup> *Titt þou wote.*<sup>10</sup> *Satt þou haf.*<sup>11</sup> *bringe.*<sup>12</sup> *me dispite.*<sup>13</sup> *wild haf venged.*<sup>14</sup> *& lordynges schet þam.*<sup>15</sup> *þam.*



¶ *Lokerinus desponsauit hic Gwendolenam.*

and advised  
Locrin to give  
in.

So Locrin  
weds Gwen-  
doline,  
but he keeps  
Estrilde in a  
cellar in  
London  
for seven years,  
and when he  
goes to her,

tells his wife  
that he's going

to sacrifice to  
his gods.

Locrin begets  
on Estrilde a  
fair girl,  
Sabren;

and on Gwen-  
doline a son,  
Madan, whom  
Corineus  
brings up.

After Cori-  
neus's death,  
Locrin

pey conseilled sire Lokeryn:  
He ȝede & wedded Gwyndolyn. 2064

Bot he forgat in none<sup>1</sup> manere  
ffaire Estrilde þat was hym dere:  
In Londone he dide hure kepe  
Vnder erthe<sup>2</sup> in a seler depe; 2068

Estrylde was longe þare,  
Seuen ȝer & somewhat mare.  
When Lokeryn schold til<sup>3</sup> hire go,  
To dwelle wiþ hure a day or to, 2072

Vntil his wyf þen tolde<sup>4</sup> he  
“ þat he schold<sup>5</sup> go in priuete,  
“ & stille make<sup>6</sup> his sacrificise  
“ Til his Godes þer<sup>7</sup> wyþ his seruise; 2076

“ ffor openly ne fel hit<sup>8</sup> nought  
“ To do þat seruise þat he had wrought.”<sup>9</sup>

So longe he pleyed wiþ Estrilde  
þat scheo hadde<sup>10</sup> a mayden childe: 2080  
Sabren hit highte, as whit as<sup>11</sup> glas,  
& fairere þan þe moder was.

Gwyndolene a child<sup>12</sup> had þan,  
A sone<sup>13</sup> þat highte Madan: 2084  
Coryneus hadde hit to loke;  
When tyme was, set hit to boke.

Whan<sup>14</sup> þat Corineus was ded,  
Dame Gwyndolene he misbed;<sup>15</sup> 2088

<sup>1</sup> on no.

<sup>2</sup> þe erth.

<sup>3</sup> suld vnto.

<sup>4</sup> tald.

<sup>5</sup> suld.

<sup>6</sup> stilly mak.

<sup>7</sup> MS. þ<sup>t</sup>. vnto his godes, P.

<sup>8</sup> in.

<sup>9</sup> he wroht.

<sup>10</sup> scho had.

<sup>11</sup> white so.

<sup>12</sup> sone.

<sup>13</sup> childe.

<sup>14</sup> MS. What. Whan, P.

<sup>15</sup> misbede.



- . ffor hure fader dide him tene,  
 He drof away dame Gwyndolene,  
 & tok Estrild[e] til his quene  
 . As dame Gwyndolene had bene. 2092 drives away  
 Gwendoline,  
 and makes  
 Estrilde queen.  
 Scheo sey no bettere myghte auaille,  
 Scho gadered an ost in Cornewaylle;  
 Tyl hure frendes scheo pleyned hyre; [leaf 9, back.]  
 Ageyn Lokeryn þey gon hem<sup>1</sup> atyre 2096  
 Gwendoline  
 gathers a host  
 in Cornwall,  
 Wyþ gret host out of mesure.  
 Vpon a water men calde Esture,  
 In Dorsete-schire, þey mette,  
 & to bataille swyþe þey<sup>2</sup> sette. 2100  
 and gives Loc-  
 rin battle in  
 Dorsetshire.  
 þe kyng was slayn þer wiþ a schote,  
 þe host destruyed<sup>3</sup> ilk a crote;  
 þe quen had þer þe heyer hand,  
 Scheo dide seise al þe land, 2104  
 Gwendoline  
 wins,  
 Scheo did þen take faire Estrilde,  
 & Sabrin þat was hure child,  
 & dide þem yn a water cast;  
 ffor þeym þe name ys roted fast;<sup>4</sup> 2108  
 and drowns  
 Estrilde and  
 Sabren  
 Seuerne hit hight,<sup>5</sup> for þe child Sabren,  
 . ffor þat child þat name we ken:  
 . þat tyme þat þis chaunce fel,  
 . Lyuede þe prophete SAMUEL. 2112  
 Gwendoline  
 Gwyndolene was þen stout,  
 Scheo dide þe folk vntil hire lout:  
 Ten ȝer wiþ Lokeryn had scheo ben,  
 & siþen fiftene wynter, quen. 2116  
 reigns 15 years,  
 When Madan couthe kepe his þyng,  
 In hure lyue was he mad kyng.  
 To Cornewaille sche turnede eft,  
 To kepe þat hure fader left. 2120  
 then gives up  
 her realm to  
 Madan,  
 Madan gat vpon his wyf  
 Madan begets

<sup>1</sup> *gañ þam.* [leaf 13, back.]<sup>2</sup> *batale smertly.*<sup>3</sup> *discomfet.*<sup>4</sup> *rotefast.*<sup>5</sup> *hate.* Robert of Brunne leaves out the Fr. *à Cirecestre en mer descent*, Wace, I. 71, l. 1473, as it is wrong.



|                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Malyn and<br>Membrice,<br>reigns 40 years,<br>and dies.                | Two sones þat ay lyued <sup>1</sup> in strif;<br>Malyn highte þe eldest broþer,<br>Membrice men calde þat oþer.<br>Madan regned fourty ȝer,<br>& left his sones þat lond in wer. <sup>2</sup><br>þyse brethere were euere wrothe,<br>ffor þe lond þey striuen boþe.    | 2124<br><br><br><br><br>2128         |
| Membrice<br><br>kills his brother<br>Malyn, and<br><br>rules alone.    | Membrice for trewes to Malyn sent,<br>In pes to holde a Parlement;<br>Bot Membrice to treson drow,<br>His broþer Malyn priuely he slow;<br>þorow slaughter & þorow treson <sup>3</sup><br>Membrice hadde þe region.                                                    | <br><br><br>2132<br><br><br><br>2136 |
| He destroys all<br>his good men,<br><br>turns Sodomite,                | þys Membrice wax <sup>4</sup> vnkynde,<br>ffordede god men þat he myght <sup>5</sup> fynde,<br>Reften oþer <sup>6</sup> land or lyf,<br>Or forsok <sup>7</sup> his wedded wyf,<br>& haunted synne <sup>8</sup> of Sodome:<br>. Vnkyndely to bestes he com.             | <br><br>2136<br><br><br><br>2140     |
| and after 20<br>years' reign<br><br>is torn to<br>pieces by<br>wolves. | Twenty ȝer þen had <sup>9</sup> he space,<br>& als he went in <sup>10</sup> wode to chace,<br>Many <sup>11</sup> wolues alone he mette;<br>. Also þeues abouten hym þey set, <sup>12</sup><br>Lym fro lym hym al to-rent;<br>& so Membrice to deþe <sup>13</sup> went. | <br><br><br>2144<br><br><br><br>2148 |
| Saul reigned<br>then in Judea.                                         | þen Saul regned in Iudea,<br>. And Eristeus in Lacudemonia. <sup>14</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                              | <br><br>2148                         |
| Ebrauk<br>succeeds<br>Membrice.                                        | <b>E</b> brauk his sone was of age,<br>Had þis lond in heritage.                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <br><br>[leaf 9, back, col. 2.]      |

<sup>1</sup> þat lyued.<sup>2</sup> wehere.<sup>3</sup> & treson.<sup>4</sup> he wax.<sup>5</sup> þe gude men, we.<sup>6</sup> Reft þam ouþer.<sup>7</sup> & forsoke.<sup>8</sup> þe syn.<sup>9</sup> ȝere had.<sup>10</sup> to.<sup>11</sup> With.<sup>12</sup> As deueles þai about hym sette.<sup>13</sup> dede.<sup>14</sup> Dunc estoit Samüel prophètes,

Et Homer ert prisez poëtes.

MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé. Wace, I.  
73, note (b).



- He was a ful noble knyght,  
 A gret nauye he dide hym<sup>1</sup> dight ; 2152  
 He was þe first man of þys lond  
 þat robbed by se oþer by sond.<sup>2</sup>  
 . Wip Cornewaleys he stod to chaunce,  
 pey & he robbed al ffraunce ; 2156  
 pey robbed tresor & vitaille ;  
 Hom in to Bretaigne þen<sup>3</sup> gan pey saille.  
 When he hadde y-now tresour & fe,<sup>4</sup>  
 In þe North he made a cite ; 2160  
 Kaer Ebrak he calde þat toun ;  
 Anoþer, Aclud, vpon Brutoun.  
 Kaer Ebrak first men spak,  
 Syþen men caldyt Eborak ; 2164  
 ffor frankysche speche ys nought so lyk,<sup>5</sup>  
 ffor Eborak pey caldit Euerwyk.  
 Aclud he calde Maidenenes toun,  
 . Carlauerok es now þe renoun ; 2168  
 . Maydeneskastel by þat day,  
 . Wip maydenes had he þer his play.<sup>6</sup>  
 Sexti wynter he regned lyues,<sup>7</sup>  
 & twenty sones had by<sup>8</sup> twenti wyues, 2172  
 & þrytty doughtres by þe same.  
 Of þyse children, lystneþ þer<sup>9</sup> name :
- He is the first  
 British sea-  
 robber,  
 and he plunders  
 France.  
 Then he builds  
 Kaer Ebrac  
 (York) and  
 Aklud (Dum-  
 barton)  
 now Caerlave-  
 rock.  
 Ebrauk reigns  
 60 years,  
 and has 20  
 sons and 30  
 daughters.

<sup>1</sup> *he gert.*<sup>2</sup> *bi see & sond.*<sup>3</sup> *Home to Bretayn.*<sup>4</sup> *had tresore & fees.*<sup>5</sup> *not so like.*

<sup>6</sup> *Mais j'o n'en sai pōr quel raison  
 Li castiax ot nom de Pucèles  
 Plus que de dames, ne d'ancèles  
 Ne me fu dit, ne jo nel di ;  
 Ne jo n'ai mie tot oī,*

*Ne jo n'ai mie tot véu,**Ne demandé, ne retenu.**Mult estourait à home entendre**Qui de tot volroit raison rendre.*

Wace, I. 75, 76, l. 1566-74.

<sup>7</sup> *in lyue.*<sup>8</sup> *he had twenty soñs with.*<sup>9</sup> *of þe sons listen þe.*



¶ *Nomina filiorum & filiarum Regis Eboracy.*

Here are the  
names of the  
20 sons.

¶ Brutes Grenescheld, Margadu,  
Cisillus, Regien, Bladu, 2176  
Moryod, Lagon, Ebolan,<sup>1</sup>  
Kynbar,<sup>2</sup> Spadan, Gaul, Pardan,  
Eldade, Chagus, Cherin,<sup>3</sup> Luwor,  
Lud,<sup>4</sup> Assarak, Buwel, Ector. 2180

And here the  
names of the  
30 daughters.

þise aren þe sonen name ryght;  
Now lystneþ<sup>5</sup> how þe maidones hight:  
¶ þe firste highte Gloyglyn,  
Otyda, Anrar, Nynogyn,<sup>6</sup> 2184

Gardid, Rodan, Gwedian,  
Angart, Gwenlode, Medlan,<sup>7</sup>  
Mayleure, Echab,<sup>8</sup> Tangustel,  
Stadirt, Lambrada,<sup>9</sup> Methael,<sup>10</sup> 2188

Gaat, Etheyn, Neest, Egorgon,<sup>11</sup>  
Gladus, Abren, Langon, Egron,<sup>12</sup>  
Edra, Abalak, & Agnes,<sup>13</sup>  
Anor, Stahad,<sup>14</sup> Angalaes.<sup>15</sup> 2192

Galaes is the  
prettiest,

Anor full of  
courtesy,

Galaes was þe gentilest<sup>16</sup> lady  
þan any of al þe opere<sup>17</sup> nyne & twenty;  
Anor, scheo was ful curteyse,  
& well coupe demeyne richeyse; 2196

<sup>1</sup> *Jagon et Bolloan*, Wace, I. 76, l. 1583.

<sup>2</sup> *Kinkar*, P. [leaf 14.] *Ringar*, Wace, l. 1584.

<sup>3</sup> *Cangu*, *Revi*, ib. l. 1585.

<sup>4</sup> *Rut*, ib. l. 1586.

<sup>5</sup> *Listens*.

<sup>6</sup> P. transposes this line and the next.

<sup>7</sup> Leticlas, Orar, Vinogin,  
Gaudis, Rodan, Guellian,  
Angaint, Gelloe, Meldan.  
Wace, I., 76, l. 1590-92.

<sup>8</sup> Ecub, Wace, l. 1593.

<sup>9</sup> *Kambreda*, P.

<sup>10</sup> Staclud, Rausbreda, Mécabel.  
Wace, l. 1594.

<sup>11</sup> et Gorgon, Wace, l. 1595.

<sup>12</sup> Blagon, Engron, Wace, l. 1596.

<sup>13</sup> Angues, Wace, l. 1597.

<sup>14</sup> Staliad, P.

<sup>15</sup> Stadial, Galves, Wace, l. 1598.

<sup>16</sup> *was gentilere*.

<sup>17</sup> þan þe toþer.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Gloyglyn, sche was eldest,<br>& scheo was of maneres best. <sup>1</sup><br>Alle were þey dight, þyse madenes gent,<br>& in-to Lombardye war sent<br>To þe Kyng Syluy, Latynes <sup>2</sup> sone,<br>To brynge þem <sup>3</sup> to warisone.<br>Al were þey gyuen, als þey ȝode,<br>To þe Troiens men of gode.<br>þe twenty bretheren, als hit seys,<br>To purchasen hem þey <sup>4</sup> wente þer weys;<br>þey dide þem intil Alemaygne,<br>& alle þe lande was þer wayne. | and Gloglyn<br>the best<br>mannered.<br>All 30 are sent<br>to Silvi, in<br>Lombardy,<br><br><br><br>and married to<br>rich Trojans.<br>[leaf 10.] Ebrauk's<br>younger sons<br><br>conquer Ger-<br>many. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 2200<br><br><br><br><br><br>2204<br><br><br><br><br><br>2208                                                                                                                                            |

### ¶ Brutus Grenescheld Rex.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ¶ Brutus Grenescheld, his <sup>5</sup> eldeste sone,<br>In þys lond he lefte to wone;<br>Twelue wynter he regnede here<br>Al in þes & gode manere.<br>¶ He hadde a sone þat hyghte Leyl,<br>He made a toun wip his conseil:<br>Caerlel hit hatte, as men hit seye.<br>Bot Leyl ageyn þat he schold deye,<br>Preyed faste in his elde,<br>ffor his lond he mought nought <sup>6</sup> welde.<br>Ilkon on oper werre sought;<br>ffor doute of hym left þey ryght nought,<br>Ne he couþe be no <sup>7</sup> iustyser:<br>He regned fyue & twenty ȝer. | Brutus Green-<br>shield<br>rules Britain<br>12 years,<br><br><b>Rex leylus.</b><br>and is suc-<br>ceeded by his<br>son Leyle, who<br>builds Carlisle,<br>and who, in<br>his old age,<br><br><br>fails to keep<br>his people in<br>order.<br>He reigns 25<br>years, |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 2212<br><br><br><br><br><br>2216<br><br><br><br><br><br>2220                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> *et plus sénéé*, Wace, I. 77,  
l. 1608.

<sup>2</sup> *Latyn*.

<sup>3</sup> *at bring þam*.

<sup>4</sup> *purchace þam*.

<sup>5</sup> *þe*.

<sup>6</sup> *& his lond couth not*.

<sup>7</sup> *couth no bettir*. [leaf 14, col. 2.]



. ¶ *Nomina prophetarum tempore isto.*

in the days  
of Haggai,  
Amos,  
and Zachariah.

. In his tyme was þe prophete Amos ;  
. And Hyen and Aggos,<sup>1</sup> 2224  
. And þe prophete Sakarye,<sup>2</sup>  
. In þat tyme preched prophecie.  
. He lys<sup>3</sup> at Karlel, as þe stori spak,  
. & Brutes<sup>4</sup> at ȝork biside Eborak 2228

¶ *Rehudybras Rex fecit Wyntonium & Canterburyum & Schefton.*<sup>5</sup>

Rehudibras  
reigns, sets all  
in order,

builds Winchester,  
Canterbury and  
Chester castle,

¶ *Aquila Septonie.*

at which an  
eagle is said to  
have spoken.

After Lleyl regned Rehudybras ;<sup>6</sup>  
To iustice þe folk, fol wys<sup>7</sup> he was ;  
He acorded al his barons  
Pees to holde, &<sup>8</sup> made hem somons ; 2232  
He made Wyncestre & Canterbury,  
& þe castel of Chestebury ;<sup>9</sup>  
Awhileon<sup>10</sup> spak þanne, & prophecied,  
Bot som men seide þat he lyed.<sup>11</sup> 2236  
Rehudybras, in his power,  
He regned nyne & fourty ȝer.<sup>12</sup>

¶ *Bladutus Rex fecit Balneum.*<sup>13</sup>

¶ After þe Kyng Rehudybras,  
Bladut his sone corowned was. 2240

<sup>1</sup> *Hien & Aggeos.*

<sup>2</sup> From Geoff. Mon. Wace (I. 79, l. 1660-4) puts "Solemons, Amos, Aggeus et Johel" in Rehudybras's reign, after l. 2238 here.

<sup>3</sup> *Leyl lygges.*

<sup>4</sup> *Brutus lygges.*

<sup>5</sup> & *Schefton* in another hand.

<sup>6</sup> *Rudhudibras.*

<sup>7</sup> *folk noble.* <sup>8</sup> *he.*

<sup>9</sup> *Chestirschire. (Cestebire, Wace.)*

<sup>10</sup> *egle* inserted by a later hand.

<sup>11</sup> *One spak þer & prophecied Aquile : men sais he lied. P. Uns aigles, MS. du Roi, 27. un ange, MS. de Ste.-Genev. Y. fol. 10. Wace, I. 79. note a.*

<sup>12</sup> *Qarante ans, un mains, réna cil. Wace, I. 79, l. 1657.*

<sup>13</sup> In another hand.



- Bladut dide many maystri,  
 He gaf hym al to nygromaunci;  
 Hote<sup>1</sup> bathe he dide make,  
 ffor mikel god to mannes sake;  
 2244  
 . He dide leye þerin<sup>2</sup> springes,  
 . Tonnes of bras wiþ queynte<sup>3</sup> þynges  
 . þat make þe water euere hot;  
 . What ys þerynne, noman wel wot;  
 2248  
 Bathe, for baþyng, þe name hight;  
 Byside þe baþe a<sup>4</sup> temple he dight,—  
 þe temple name was Mynerue,—  
 þe folk to receyue & to serue;  
 2252  
 A fire<sup>5</sup> he dide make þer-inne,  
 Euere to brenne & neuere to blynne.  
 Bladut wrought many meruaille,  
 . Many god þyng þat ȝit wyl vaylle;<sup>6</sup>  
 2256  
 Atte laste he wolde fleye,  
 [leaf 10, col. 2.] lastly he makes  
 ffeþer-hames he made hym sleye;  
 wings,  
 At Londoñ he tok his flyght,  
 2260  
 & fley as fer as he myght  
 and flies from  
 Vpon a temple sire<sup>7</sup> Appolyn,  
 London,  
 þeron he fel, & m[a]de his fyn;  
 to a temple of  
 . Sire Appolyn so doun hym cast,  
 Apollo,  
 . þat body & bon hit al to-barst:<sup>8</sup>  
 2264  
 Twenty wynter was he kyng,  
 who casts him  
 At Londoñ he mad his endyng.  
 down, and  
 breaks all his  
 bones.

¶ Leyr Rex fecit Leycestre.

- After hym þen regned Leyr,  
 2268  
 þat was his sone & his eyr;  
 Then Bladud's  
 ffourty wynter þen regned he;  
 son, King Lear,  
 reigns,

<sup>1</sup> þe hate.

<sup>2</sup> þer it.

<sup>3</sup> bras quante.

<sup>4</sup> MS. &. P. has a.

<sup>5</sup> ? MS. After. A fire, P.

<sup>6</sup> many a gude þat ȝit auaille.

<sup>7</sup> þe temple of. [leaf 14, back.]

<sup>8</sup> to brast.



|                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and builds on<br>the river Soar,<br>Kaer Leyr,<br>now Leicester.                               | Vpon Sore he made a cite,<br>Kaer Leyr he dide hit calle,<br>Leycestre þe name ys now wip alle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 2272 |
| He has three<br>daughters,<br><br>Gonorille,<br><br>Ragaw, and<br>Gordille.                    | pre doughtres hadde sire Leyr,<br>Mighte he haue non oper eir,<br>þe eldeste highte Gonorille,<br>pat oper Ragaw, <sup>1</sup> þe pryddde Gordylle, <sup>2</sup><br>Bot Gordille, <sup>2</sup> was ʒengest,<br>& hure louede þe fader best.                                                                                  | 2276 |
| When Lear<br>grows old, he<br><br>resolves to<br>divide his lands<br>between his<br>daughters. | Leyr, when he was in elde,<br>His lond fol wel myght he nought welde ;<br>He þoughte his doughtres gyue hosebandes,<br>& twyxten hem parten his landes ;<br>Bot of hem first he þoughte <sup>3</sup> here<br>Which of hem had hym most dere ;<br>He assaied <sup>4</sup> ilk by þeym self one,<br>þe eldest first of ylkone. | 2280 |
| So he asks<br>Gonorylle how<br>much she'd<br>love him if she<br>were his ruler.                | ¶ He com & spak to Gonorylle,<br>“ Doughter, sey me new þy wylle,<br>“ How mykel woldest þou me loue<br>“ ʒyf þou were lady me aboue ? ”<br>Whan swylk a <sup>5</sup> word scheo herde neuene,<br>Scheo swor by þe Godhed of heuene,<br>Wheper scheo were mayden or wyf,<br>Scheo wolde loue <sup>6</sup> hym as hure lyf.   | 2288 |
| “ As my life ! ”                                                                               | “ Doughter,” he seyde, “ graunt mercy !<br>“ Of me þou getes gret curtesy.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 2292 |
| Then Lear asks<br>Ragawe how<br>much she loves<br>him.                                         | ¶ He com & spak vnto Ragawe:<br>“ Doughter, sey me þe soþe sawe :<br>“ How mykel louestou me wyþ wylle ? ”<br>& Ragaw þoughte on <sup>7</sup> Gonorylle,<br>Scheo seide : “ ffader, y loue þe more                                                                                                                           | 2296 |
| “ More than<br>any thing else<br>in this world ! ”                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 2300 |

<sup>1</sup> *Ragau* (but *Ragawe* l. 2297, &c. below.) Wace has *Ragau*.

<sup>2</sup> *Gordille*. (*Cordéille*, Wace.)

<sup>3</sup> *wald he*.

<sup>4</sup> *asked of*.

<sup>5</sup> *whan þat*.

<sup>6</sup> *scho wild luf*.

<sup>7</sup> *thought of*.



- " þan al þat in þys werld euere wore!"  
 " Doughter, þat ys loue ynow;  
 " þat louyng schal be<sup>1</sup> for þy prow." 2304  
 ¶ He com to Gordylle þat was 3ongest;  
 Of boþe þe oþer he loued hure best.  
 Scheo wyste how þat hure systres seyde,  
 Of a gyle hit was a-breyde. 2308  
 " Doughter, how mikel louest<sup>2</sup> þou me?"  
 " ffader," scheo seyde, " y schal sey þe:  
 " Als my fader y haue þe loued,  
 " And euere more schal to be proued."<sup>3</sup> 2312  
 " Ne louest þou<sup>4</sup> me namore, mi dere?"  
 " 3ys, fader, þou lyst<sup>5</sup> & here:  
 " Ryght als þou has, so artow worþy, [leaf 10, back.]  
 " So mykel loue to þe owe y." 2316  
 þat word tok he yuel til<sup>6</sup> herte,  
 He vnderstod hit al ouerþwerte;  
 Scheo seyde nought glosyng til<sup>7</sup> his wille,  
 Als Ragaw dide, & Gonorille; 2320  
 perfore he answerd þus a-geyn:  
 " Of me þe þynkes<sup>8</sup> gret desdeyn,  
 " & hast<sup>9</sup> myn elde in despit;  
 " Of myn for euere þou art quyt; 2324  
 " þou seist nought as þy sistren seis,  
 " þyn answere his nought<sup>10</sup> so curteys;  
 " perfore y schal<sup>11</sup> myn heritage  
 " Gyue þy sistres in mariage; 2328  
 " þey schol<sup>11</sup> depart hit þeym by-twene,  
 " & þou þer-fro [go] quit & clene:  
 " Of þem alle y loued þe mest,<sup>12</sup>  
 " & now y se þou loues me lest!" 2332

Then Lear asks  
Gordylle, whom  
he loves best,

how much she  
loves him,

" As my  
father."

" No more?"

" Yes father,

according to  
your worth."

Lear takes this  
on the cross,

says she

scorns his age,

and that he'll  
divide his  
heritage  
between her  
sisters.

<sup>1</sup> þi lufyng saʒt falle.

<sup>2</sup> lufes.

<sup>3</sup> & euer saʒt to be reproved.

<sup>4</sup> Loues þou.

<sup>5</sup> listen.

<sup>6</sup> itt to.

<sup>7</sup> glosand to.

<sup>8</sup> þink.

<sup>9</sup> has.

<sup>10</sup> of þin answere.

<sup>11</sup> saʒt.

<sup>12</sup> chirest þe maste.



Gordylle leaves  
him,

Gordille wolde namore<sup>1</sup> seye,  
Ne striue ageyn, bot zede hure weye;  
Ne he ne saide namore til hire,  
Bot wente fro hure al in<sup>2</sup> ire. 2336

and he marries  
Gonorille to  
the Scottish  
King,  
and Regawe to  
the Duke of  
Cornwall.

In þys tyme þat þey were wrothe,  
He mariede þe opere doughtres boþe;  
þe kyng of Scotland þat on dide wedde;  
Hennieis<sup>3</sup> of Cornewaille, Ragaw hom ledde;  
þey acorded alle at her pay 2341  
To parte þe lond al by his day.

Gordylle

**D**ame Gordylle wip wrapthe sche went,  
Of many men mikel was by-ment,<sup>4</sup> 2344

has no pro-  
vision made  
for her,

pat sche hadde no warisoun  
Neyþer of rente, lond,<sup>5</sup> ne toun;  
& he forbed hire lord to take  
In his lond, for warison sake; 2348

but sorrows for  
her father's  
wrath more  
than that.

perfore he schamede hure<sup>6</sup> sore;  
& hure ouer-þoughte<sup>7</sup> mykel more  
þe wrapthe of hure fader þe kyng  
Wel more þan any oþer þyng.<sup>8</sup> 2352

The French  
king,  
Aganyppus,  
hears of

¶ Aganyppus, þe kyng of ffraunce,  
Herde speken of Gordylles<sup>9</sup> chaunce,—  
Alle men leyde on hure<sup>10</sup> gret pris  
pat sche was fair, curteys, & wys,— 2356

Gordylle's  
beauty and  
wisdom,

. & þoughte ȝyf<sup>11</sup> he myght hure haue,  
. Al his honour schold sche saue.<sup>12</sup>

and asks Lear  
for her.

He sente messegers to Leyr,  
To wedde his doughter he was in speyr; 2360  
Bot Leyr had nought ȝit forgotten

<sup>1</sup> no more wild.

<sup>2</sup> he went away full of.

<sup>3</sup> Hennis.

<sup>4</sup> was ment.

<sup>5</sup> rent of lond. [leaf 15.]

<sup>6</sup> þerfor aschamed hir so.

<sup>7</sup> hir forþouht.

<sup>8</sup> þaȝ þe tynsett (loss) of oþer  
þyng.

<sup>9</sup> Gordille.

<sup>10</sup> how men said of hir.

<sup>11</sup> he þouht if.

<sup>12</sup> ? MS. haue. P. reads suld scho  
saue.



How lyghtly sche had of hym<sup>1</sup> leten :

Leyr sent hym ageyn to seye,

“ His land was gyuen to his<sup>2</sup> doughtres tweye ;

“ Hure body on hym he vouched saue ; 2365

“ Wip hure nought elles myghte he haue.”

To Leyr he sente ȝut eft ageyn,

& seyde Leyr<sup>3</sup> for certeyn 2368

“ þat he ne askede non oþer þyng,

“ Bot onlike his doughter ȝyng.”

Leyr þen graunted þem also sone ;<sup>4</sup>

Wip hure to wende þey made hem bone ; 2372

To schip þey wente, & vp þe sayl,

þey askede namore<sup>5</sup> apparayl.

Now ys hure falle þe fairest chaunce,[lf. 10, bk., col. 2.]

Gordylle ys mad her<sup>6</sup> quene of ffraunce. 2376

þenne þe<sup>7</sup> men þat kyng Leyr

Had ordeyned to ben his eyr,

þey nolde soffre hym nought to take,

Hys owen propre<sup>8</sup> for to make.

When<sup>9</sup> þe Duk of Cornewaille,

Al þe soup tyl hym gan taylle ;

Manglanus,<sup>10</sup> þe kyng of Scotland,

þe north he tok hit til<sup>11</sup> his hond ; 2384

Leyr was al at þer baundoun,

& þey sette hym to lyuersoun ;<sup>12</sup>

þey sette hym honorable to be,

Wip fourty knyghtes<sup>13</sup> of meygne. 2388

Leyr held hym payed of þat coueinaunt ;<sup>14</sup>

To holde hym þat, þey swore þe graunt.

¶ Wip Menglanus was Leyr þe kyng

Lear says he  
can give no  
land with her,  
but Aganyppus  
may have her  
body.

He accepts this,

and his men  
sail off with

Cordylle, who  
becomes Queen  
of France.

Lear is

dispossessed of  
his land,

but allowed to  
have 40  
knights.

Lear is treated  
well at first,

<sup>1</sup> of him had.

<sup>2</sup> he had gyfen his lond to.

<sup>3</sup> & teld hym.

<sup>4</sup> þam alsone.

<sup>5</sup> asked þei non.

<sup>6</sup> is mad.

<sup>7</sup> Lo þo.

<sup>8</sup> awen propir.

<sup>9</sup> Hewyn.

<sup>10</sup> Meglan.

<sup>11</sup> north toke to.

<sup>12</sup> liuerison.

<sup>13</sup> à cinquante chevaliers, Wace.

<sup>14</sup> was payed of þat conant.



|                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| but then his allowances                                | fful wel <i>serued</i> atte þe comyng; <sup>1</sup><br>Sone afterward þey filledē of <sup>2</sup> Leyre,<br>& dide his liuere for to apeire.                                                                                                                                                                    | 2392 |
| and attendants are cut down.<br>Gonerille complains of | After þe peirement <sup>3</sup> of his liuere,<br>Were abated of his meyne;<br>þe quene, his doughter Gonorille,<br>Hure þoughte most scorn & ille<br>Of þe meyne hure fader held;<br>Gret outrage scheo hit held.                                                                                              | 2396 |
| her father's dotage and his followers,                 | Sche seyde vntil Manglanus,<br>“ ffolyly <sup>4</sup> hold we þis meyne þus,<br>“ þat mykel þyng al day notes;<br>“ & my fader in elde dotes<br>“ To halde <sup>5</sup> swylk a squierye,<br>“ & gret costage in ryotrye.<br>“ þerfore y rede, doþ als y seye,<br>“ Lat somme of hem go <sup>6</sup> þer weye.” | 2404 |
| and sends away 10 of his knights.                      | pen was ordeyned to lesse þer men;<br>Of fourty knyghtes abated <sup>7</sup> ten.<br>pen was sire Leyres rente abated;<br>. He auauused first hure þat hym hated;<br>. Scheo was first married of alle,<br>. And first dide scheo his honour falle.<br>. Alas! to fewe <sup>8</sup> childre men fynde,          | 2408 |
| <b>Nota.</b>                                           | . þat ben to fader & moder kynde!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 2416 |

**De ingratitudine filiarum, & planctu patriseorum, Leyr.**

Lear dislikes this,

Now gynnes Leyr to myslyke;  
“ Sone,” he seyde, “ þey gynne me swyke  
“ firo myn aboue<sup>9</sup> y am put lowe,  
“ & zit scha[l] more<sup>10</sup> wyþynne a þrowe. 2420

<sup>1</sup> *gynnyng*.

<sup>2</sup> *þei filled*.

<sup>3</sup> *After apeyrment*.

<sup>4</sup> *fouly* (? for *fonly*, foolishly).

<sup>5</sup> *hold*.

<sup>6</sup> *som of þise go forth*.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *abyde þe. abatid*, P. (30 are left, see. l. 2428.)

<sup>8</sup> *Allas fo*.

<sup>9</sup> MS. *alone. aboue*, P.

<sup>10</sup> *zit more*.



- “ Myn oþer doughter wyl y proue,  
 “ þey scheo be<sup>1</sup> wroþ to my byhoue;”  
 & dight hym wyþ his apparaille  
 To wende<sup>2</sup> in to Corne-waille.  
 He dwelt nought þer fullyk<sup>3</sup> a ȝer,  
 þat þey ne made hym gret daunger,  
 & lessede his knyghtes &<sup>4</sup> oþer men:  
 Of þritty þey abated ten,  
 And ȝit of twenty abated fyue;  
 þen wold Leyr han ben of lyue;<sup>5</sup>  
 “ Alas!” he seyde, “ y hider cam!  
 “ ffro wycke vntil wors y nam.”  
 To Gonorille a-gayn he ȝede,  
 He wend sche wold heue mended<sup>6</sup> his nede,  
 Haue gyuen hym als scheo hadde<sup>7</sup> byforn,  
 Sche swor by god þat hure leet<sup>8</sup> be born,  
 þat scheo ne wolde, day ne nyght,  
 Halde bot hym & a knyght.
- and resolves to  
 try Regaw.  
 2424 He goes to  
 Cornwall,  
 2428 and there his  
 knights are  
 reduced to 20,  
 and then to 15.  
 [leaf 11.]  
 2432 So he goes  
 back to Gono-  
 rille, thinking  
 she'll give him  
 30 knights  
 again,  
 but she'll only  
 allow him one.
- 2436

### ¶ Lamentacio Regis Leyr.

- þenne bygan Leyr to sorewe,  
 & ment his mone euen & morwe;  
 þe grete richeshe he hadde byforn,  
 Al was a-weye & y-lorn:  
 “ To longe a lyue haue y be,<sup>9</sup>  
 “ þat euere scholdy þys day se!  
 “ Ensamþle of<sup>10</sup> me men may take,  
 “ & warnyng of sibbe,<sup>11</sup> for my sake!
- Lear laments  
 his hard case,  
 2440  
 2444

<sup>1</sup> *what scho is worth.*<sup>2</sup> *& went him.*<sup>3</sup> *had not bene þer fully.*<sup>4</sup> *his.*<sup>5</sup> *De trente homes l'ont mis à dix,**Puis le misrent de dix à cinc.**Wace, p. 91, l. 1946-7.*<sup>6</sup> *wald amend.* [leaf 15, back.]<sup>7</sup> *as he had.*<sup>8</sup> *suore þat god lete hir.*<sup>9</sup> *Now ouer long o lyue haf .I. bene.*<sup>10</sup> *fforbisen bi.*<sup>11</sup> *& warned be.*



|                                                                            |                                                          |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                            | " Y hadde richesse ; now haue y non !                    |      |
| and reproaches<br>Fortune for her<br>changeableness,                       | " My wyt & al myn help <sup>1</sup> ys gon !             | 2448 |
|                                                                            | " Lady ffortune, þou art chaungable ;                    |      |
|                                                                            | " O day art þou neuere stable ;                          |      |
|                                                                            | " No man may of þe affye,                                |      |
| She turns down<br>the high, turns<br>up the low ;                          | " þou turnes hym doun þat er was heye ;                  | 2452 |
|                                                                            | " þat now ys doun, vpward þou turnes ;                   |      |
|                                                                            | " Wyþ þe, nys non þat he ne mournes ;                    |      |
| and honour or<br>dishonour fol-<br>lows her look.                          | " Bot þere þou gyuest þy loue lokyng/,                   |      |
|                                                                            | " He ys worschiped als a kyng ;                          | 2456 |
|                                                                            | " & whom þou turnest þy lokyng fro,                      |      |
|                                                                            | " Sone ys he doune yn sorewe & wo ;                      |      |
|                                                                            | " þe vnkynde þou wilt vp reyse,                          |      |
|                                                                            | " þe kynde þou puttest to meseysey ;                     | 2460 |
|                                                                            | " Wyþ kyng & erl, when þe myslikes,                      |      |
|                                                                            | " þer welþe a-wey to wo þou strykes.                     |      |
|                                                                            | " When y had god <sup>2</sup> & welþe ynow,              |      |
| Lear's friends<br>have gone with<br>his riches ;                           | " þen fondy frende þat to me drow ; <sup>3</sup>         | 2464 |
|                                                                            | " Now pouerte ys put me byforn,                          |      |
|                                                                            | " þat al þer sight fro <sup>4</sup> me ys lorn ;         |      |
|                                                                            | " þer loue schold lange to me <sup>5</sup> þorow ryght,  |      |
|                                                                            | " þat schewe me of loue <sup>6</sup> semblaunt ne syght. |      |
| his ill-fortune<br>began when he<br>blamed Gor-<br>dylle for her<br>truth, | " Dame fortune, þy louely lok                            | 2469 |
|                                                                            | " & þy gode wille fro me þou tok,                        |      |
|                                                                            | " When y blamed my doughter ȝyng,                        |      |
|                                                                            | " & gaf no kepe til hure kennyng/,                       | 2472 |
|                                                                            | " þat seyde me soþ apertely :                            |      |
|                                                                            | " ' Als y had, so was y worthy,                          |      |
|                                                                            | " ' And also mykel scheo loued me : '                    |      |
|                                                                            | " Scheo seide bettere þan y couþ se ;                    | 2476 |
|                                                                            | " Hure word noþyng y ne vndestod,                        |      |
| and was angry<br>with her.                                                 | " But mad me wroþ : y couþe no god,                      |      |

<sup>1</sup> & my *happe*. P. omits the next fourteen lines, which are, however, in Wace (p. 92-3), and are taken more or less from Boethius, *de Consolatione*.

<sup>2</sup> *gold*.

<sup>3</sup> *my frendes vnto me fast drouh*.

<sup>4</sup> *of*.

<sup>5</sup> *suld longe to*.

<sup>6</sup> *þei mak of luf*.



- " Y parceyued nought what was hure tent,  
 " Bot now fele y wel what scheo ment; 2480  
 " Y fele hit we[l] þe soþe hit endes;  
 " Whyder may y now to seke my<sup>1</sup> frendes?  
 " ȝyf y seke hure for any frame,  
 " þey sche me weyue, scheo nys<sup>2</sup> to blame,  
 " ffor y defended hure my lond, 2485  
 " Ne nought hure gaf, ne hure<sup>3</sup> ne fond:  
 " Napeles, hure wol y seke, Nevertheless  
 " Y fond hure euere god and meke; [leaf 11, col. 2.] he (Lear) will  
 " Wisdam sche has me ytaught, 2489 seek her,  
 " Wysdam schal make hure wiþ me saught;  
 " ȝyf y may nought bryng hure þerto,  
 " Wors þan þe opere may sche nought do; 2492  
 " Scheo seyde<sup>4</sup> a þyng y scha[l] now proue,  
 " ' Als hure ffader scheo wolde me loue;' for she pro-  
 " & als scheo seyde, proue schal y mised to love  
 " Hire kyndenesse & hure curtesy." 2496 him as a father.

- When Leyr had longe sore syked, Lear  
 Hys mone ment, & myslyked;  
 He dighte hym, als of chaunce,  
 Right ouer þe se forþ into<sup>5</sup> ffraunce. 2500 sails to France,  
 Vp at Calays<sup>6</sup> he hauene<sup>7</sup> hent, lands at Calais,  
 To þe quene priuely he sent; and sends to  
 At a cite he abod, tell Gordylle  
 Whyle a man his<sup>8</sup> message rod, 2504  
 & telde þe quene al hys cas,  
 And how he vp aryued was;  
 How hys doughtres had wyþ hym wrought,  
 . Al his meschef, furgat [he]<sup>9</sup> nought. 2508 all his mis-  
 fortunes.

<sup>1</sup> may I to seke me.<sup>2</sup> & scho me weyue scho nes.<sup>3</sup> Ne nouht I gaf hir. [lf. 15, bk., col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> He said.<sup>5</sup> & ouer þe se he ferde to.<sup>6</sup> Chaus, MS. du Roi, 27; Kaleis,

MS. Cot. Vitel. A. x.; Chain, MS.

de Ste. Gen. Y. fo. 10; Wace, p. 95.

<sup>7</sup> At haleis vp heuen he.<sup>8</sup> titt a man þe.<sup>9</sup> mischefe forgate he.



## ¶ De gratitudine Gordylle.

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Gordille                                                                      | Gordille, when sche wyste þe pleynt,<br>. Hure faire colour gan wex al <sup>1</sup> feynt                                                                     |      |
| sends all she<br>has to her<br>father, tells<br>him to dress,<br>come to her, | Al þat scheo had yn hure power,<br>Scheo bitaught hit þe messeger,                                                                                            | 2512 |
| and then warn<br>the King of his<br>coming.                                   | & bad hym go hym forte atyre<br>Wyp honour, to come & speke wip hire;<br>“ Bot byforn sendes <sup>2</sup> my lord þe kyng,<br>“ & warne hym of his comyng.”   | 2516 |
| Lear apparels<br>himself fitly,                                               | þe messenger spedde hym swyþe,<br>& broughte Leyr tydyng blyue;<br>Vntyl anoper cyte he zede,<br>& dight hym al þat hym was nede.                             | 2520 |
| and announces<br>his arrival to<br>the King of<br>France,                     | When he was dight at hys wylle,<br>To þe kyng he sent, & to Gordylle,<br>þat he was ryued y þat contre,<br>To speken þe kyng, & his doughter se.              | 2524 |
| who welcomes<br>him,                                                          | . ¶ When he wyst þat Leyr schold come,<br>Agaynes hym ful faire þey nome,<br>& fair receyues hym afor <sup>3</sup> þe quen<br>Als a man he hadde nought seen: | 2528 |
| and orders<br>honour to be<br>paid to him.                                    | He comaunded yn hys kynedam<br>To worschipe hym where þat he cam.<br>When he had dwelled longe space,<br>& telde how his doughtres dide him chace,            | 2532 |
| King Aga-<br>nyppus also<br>takes up Lear's<br>cause,                         | Sire Aganyppus was curteys;<br>He samned an ost of his ffraunceys,<br>& comen wyþ Leyr ouer þe se                                                             |      |
| lands with an<br>army in<br>Britain,                                          | To helpe to wynne a-gayn his fe.<br>Cordille wip hure fader went,                                                                                             | 2536 |
| and makes Lear<br>king again.                                                 | . Wyp leue of hure lord his host had sent.<br>þe dukes sone byforn hem þey fond,<br>þey slowe þem boþe, & wonne þe lond.<br>þre zer after was he kyng,        | 2540 |

<sup>1</sup> gan all to.<sup>2</sup> bifornhand send.<sup>3</sup> for. [leaf 16.]



|                                                  |      |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------|
| In ful seysyne made <sup>1</sup> hys endyng ;    |      | In three years              |
| Dame Gordylle he made his heyr ;                 |      | Lear dies,                  |
| In Leycestre sche leyde hure fader Leyr,         | 2544 | (making Gordylle his heir), |
| In a temple solempnely ;                         |      | and is buried               |
| pe temple highte temple Iany.                    |      | in Leicester.               |
| Sone after fel pe chaunce <sup>2</sup> þus,      |      |                             |
| Deide hure lord Aganyppus.                       |      |                             |
| In hure wydewehod sche had pe honur              |      |                             |
| . ffyue 3er als conquerrou. <sup>3</sup>         |      |                             |
| Hire two sistres had two sones ;                 |      |                             |
| . How þey dide, pe story mones :                 | 2552 |                             |
| . Gonoriffes sone highte Mongan, <sup>4</sup>    |      |                             |
| . þat oper Condage, a noble man.                 |      |                             |
| When þys Morgan and þys Condage <sup>5</sup>     |      |                             |
| . Waxen were, & of age,                          | 2556 |                             |
| To Gordylle þey gaf bataille.                    |      |                             |
| & scheo ageyn dyde hem trauaille.                |      |                             |
| ffirst were þey boþe ouercomen,                  |      |                             |
| & at pe laste Gordille was <sup>6</sup> nomen,   | 2560 |                             |
| And held hire longe in þer prison,               |      |                             |
| ffor hure <sup>7</sup> myght go no raunson.      |      |                             |
| When no raunson myght for hure <sup>7</sup> go,  |      |                             |
| Hure <sup>7</sup> self for sorewe dide sche slo. | 2564 |                             |

In three years  
Lear dies,  
(making Gordylle his heir),  
and is buried  
in Leicester.

[leaf 11, back.] Then Aganyppus dies,  
and Gordylle  
reigns 5 years,

till her two  
nephews,  
Morgan and  
Condage,

take her, and  
keep her in  
prison

till she slays  
herself.

¶ *Exe fratres diuiderunt regnum.*

|                                          |      |               |
|------------------------------------------|------|---------------|
| Wha[n] þat Condage & Morgan <sup>8</sup> |      | Condage takes |
| Of Gordylle þus pe land wan,             |      | Northumbria ; |
| Condage tok (als hym þoughte best)       |      |               |
| Ouer Humber þe Northwest.                | 2568 |               |

<sup>1</sup> *plenere seisen.*

<sup>2</sup> *þat chance fell.*

<sup>3</sup> Not in MS. du Roi, 27 ; but four other French MSS. have " Puis a " cinq ans tenu l'onor." Wace, p. 98.

<sup>4</sup> *Gonoriff soñ hight Morgan.*

<sup>5</sup> Cinedagius, Wace, p. 98, l. 2108.

<sup>6</sup> *þei.*

<sup>7</sup> *hir.*

<sup>8</sup> *Margan* (like Wace and Geoffrey, and henceforth to line 2599.)



Morgan, the  
South.

penne Morgan þe South ches,  
&<sup>1</sup> two ȝer þey helde þe lond yn pes;  
Bot Couetyse þat neuere restes,  
Venym amonges men hit kestes. 2572

But soon  
Morgan is in-  
cited by evil  
fellows

Morgan hadde enuiose felawes,  
þat wyckedly seyde til hym sawes;  
þem were leuere werre þan pes.  
He lystned hem, & þat he ches. 2576

to seize his  
cousin's land.

þus þey seyde vntil Morgan,  
" þat<sup>2</sup> þow art eldest, & baldest man,  
" & hast<sup>3</sup> bot half, & ȝit þe leste;  
" & he ys ȝongest, & hap<sup>4</sup> þe meste, 2580  
" And þat ys al þyn owen gylt.  
" þou may haue hit al ȝyf þat þou wilt;  
" To ride, ȝyf þat þou wile bygynne,  
" & al<sup>5</sup> þe lond[e] myght þou wynne; 2584  
" þou getest<sup>6</sup> folk wyþoute noumbre  
" To sese þe londe by-ȝonde Humber.  
" ȝyf þou bygynne forto ryde,  
" Condage schal nought þe abyde." 2588

He crosses the  
Humber, and  
burns and robs.  
Condage calls  
out his host,

and Morgan  
flees

Morgan dide atte her<sup>7</sup> conseil  
& wroughte hym self to wroþer haylle;  
He passed Humber, destruyed þe lond,  
Brente & robbed al þat he fond. 2592

into Wales.

Condage  
follows,

¶ Condage herde hit sone seye;  
He dighte his host to stoppe hys weye  
Morgan herd telle þat Condage  
Com wiþ gret host & outrage; 2596  
He turned bak, & gan to fle  
South, fro contre to contre.  
ffer yn to Walys fled Morgan;  
& Condage folewed, & hym ouer-ran. 2600

<sup>1</sup> *bot.* [leaf 16, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *þat* left out.

<sup>3</sup> *has.*

<sup>4</sup> *he ȝongere & has.*

<sup>5</sup> *all.*

<sup>6</sup> *getis.*

<sup>7</sup> *did after.*



¶ De morte Morgan *per* contumeliam.

And *per* yn Walys Morgan slow. [leaf 11, back, col. 2.] slays Morgan,  
 porow hit hap *pat* *pe* name now, Nota.  
 " Clow Morgan " <sup>1</sup> ys now *pe* name,  
 ffor Morgan deide in *pat* same. 2604

¶ Condageus Rex.

pen had al, sire Condage, and rules  
*pe* lond holyk <sup>2</sup> in heritage ; Britain 30  
 prytty wynter was he kyng, years,  
 In *pes* he made his endyng. 2608

¶ De prophetis & Romulo.

Ysayas.

¶ In his tyme was Isaye, while Isaiah  
 & preched *penne* *pe* prophecie ; and Hosea  
 . & *pe* prophete Osee, prophesy,  
 . Y *pat* tyme *pan* <sup>3</sup> lyuede he ; 2612  
 And *pe* Emperour Romulus and Romulus  
 & his bro<sup>per</sup> sire Remus, and Remus  
 pyse two brethere made Rome, build Rome.  
 . *per* holy chirche gyueþ *pe* <sup>4</sup> dome ; 2616  
 . pre hundred zer & foure score So England had  
 . & seuentene, þus fer <sup>5</sup> byfore kings 397  
 . Regned kynges y þis landes years  
 . Ar Rome wer set *per* hit now standes. 2620 before Rome  
was built.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *Marge* ; that is, Margate in Kent! says de Lincy. *Wace*, i. 100.  
<sup>2</sup> *holy*.

<sup>3</sup> *pat tyme*. [leaf 16, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *kirk gifes his*.

<sup>5</sup> *fett*. [Not in Geoffrey.]



### ¶ Ryual Rex.

Then Condage's  
son, Ryual,  
reigns ;

and in his time  
it rains blood,

and there is a  
plague of flies.

After þe kynges tyme<sup>1</sup> Condage,  
Ryual his sone tok<sup>2</sup> þe heritage.  
pre dayes in his [tyme] reyned blod—  
Y ne wot why, ne vndestod,— 2624  
& wox so mykel mynde of flies,  
Men deide by gates<sup>3</sup> & by styes :  
Alle men hadde þerof gret drede  
Tyl hit sesede & ouer zede. 2628

### ¶ Gargustius Rex.

Then reign  
Gargustius.

Cycyllius,

Lago,

and Garbodian,  
whose two sons,

Ferrex and  
Porrex,  
are ever at  
strife

After þe kynges tyme Ryual,  
Gargustius<sup>4</sup> his sone had al ;  
After þis<sup>5</sup> Cargustius,  
Regned his sone CYCYLLIUS ; Rex 2632  
& after þe kyng Cycilly,  
Was Lago kyng, his cosyn ney ;<sup>6</sup> Rex  
After Lago was Kynmar<sup>7</sup> kyng, Rex  
Cysillies sone, & had þe þynge. 2636  
After Kynmare regned þan  
Hys sone, þat highte Garbodian.<sup>8</sup> Rex  
Garbodyan<sup>8</sup> had two sones,  
fful enemys, þat zit men<sup>9</sup> mones ; 2640  
þe eldest he hight sire fferreus,  
þat oper men calde Porreus ;  
Might þer neuere pes be þeym bytwene  
In non acord, bot euere tene. 2644

<sup>1</sup> þis kyng.

<sup>2</sup> held.

<sup>3</sup> bi strete.

<sup>4</sup> Gurgustius, P. and Wace.

<sup>5</sup> þis, P. his sone, Lam.

<sup>6</sup> kyng cosyn gurgusti.

<sup>7</sup> Rimar, Wace, p. 102, l. 2184 :  
Kinmarcus, Geoffrey.

<sup>8</sup> Gorbodian (Gorbodiabo, Wace.)

<sup>9</sup> of.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pe while <sup>1</sup> þer fader was on lyue,<br>ffor þe royalme gon þey to stryue;<br><sup>2</sup> Al þus þey ferde wiþ gret enuye,<br>Whilk scholde haue þe seignurie. <sup>2</sup><br>Porrex was 3ongest, <sup>3</sup> & most felon,<br>His þought was ay vpon treson<br>Where-þorow he moughte <sup>4</sup> his broþer slo.<br>þat oþer herd þat, dide hym to go <sup>5</sup> [leaf 12.]<br>fforþ in to ffraunce, for doute of gyle.<br>þe king Syward he serued a while,<br>& gadered þer god <sup>6</sup> party;<br>Wiþ schipes com ouer baldely,<br>& til his broþer gaf bataille,<br>And deyde sone, hit myght nought vaille,<br>Bot at þe firste was he slayn,<br>& al his folk, knyght & swayn.<br>Iudon, þer <sup>7</sup> moder, herde wel how<br>þat þe ton þat oþe[r] <sup>8</sup> slow;<br>Scheo louede mykel þe slayn broþer,<br>& dedlyk <sup>9</sup> hated sche þat oþer;<br>. ffor als vnkyndely as þey wrought,<br>. þerfore vnkyndenesse <sup>10</sup> sche þought.<br>A nyght hure sone to bedde was gon,<br>On hym com his moder Iudon;<br>Ilk of hure maydones, a knyf she bar,<br>Porrex þrote a two sche schar,<br>And on peces hym al to-hewe; <sup>11</sup><br>Swylk a vengauce noman knewe:<br>Longe was spoken of þis <sup>12</sup> chaunce, | 2648 for the mastery.<br>Porrex is<br>treacherous;<br><br>2652 so Ferrex goes<br>away to France,<br><br>2656 where he gets a<br>party together,<br>and invades<br><br>2660 England,<br>but he and all<br>his are slain.<br>When Iudon,<br>the mother of<br>Ferrex, whom<br>she loved, hears<br>2664 of his death,<br><br>2668 she goes at<br>night to her son<br>Porrex's bed,<br><br>and cuts his<br>throat in two,<br>and him all to<br>2672 pieces. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *towhils.*

<sup>2-2</sup> not in P.

<sup>3</sup> *eldest* (wrongly; see line 2642.)

<sup>4</sup> *þer þorh he thouht.*

<sup>5</sup> En France oltre mer s'enfui.

*Wace, p. 103.*

<sup>6</sup> *a.*

<sup>7</sup> *his.* (Luclon lor mere, *Wace* :  
Widen, *Geoffrey.*)

<sup>8</sup> *þe toþer.*

<sup>9</sup> *dedely.*

<sup>10</sup> *an vnkynes.*

<sup>11</sup> MS. *alto hewe.* P. better, *all to hewe.*

<sup>12</sup> *men spak of þat.*



Of Iudon<sup>1</sup> & of hure vengauunce.  
 ¶ When þyse breþer þus werre bygon,<sup>2</sup>  
 Eyr of blod was þer non 2676  
 þat oughte haue<sup>3</sup> þe heritage,  
 Was þer non left of ryght lynage;  
 Bot to ffyue kynges þey lefte<sup>4</sup> þe lond,  
 the land falls 2680  
 to five kings,  
 who fight for  
 forty years  
 þat fourty wynter þe werre fond;  
 Ilk of þem þat most was of myght,<sup>5</sup>  
 Bynam þat oper of his right;<sup>6</sup>  
 lawlessly.  
 Mesure ne lawe, ne held no man,  
 Bot whoso myghte, of oper wan; 2684  
 þat rycchest were, most bar þem stout,  
 In loue ne in lawe<sup>7</sup> wold non of hem lout.

### ¶ Diuisio regni.

þat tyme in Scotlond regned Stater;  
 In Logers was þe kyng Pyncer;<sup>8</sup> 2688  
 Rudak was kyng of Walsche men;  
 & Cornewaille had þe duk Cloten.  
 Cloten of kynde was next of alle  
 Cloten, duke of 2692  
 Cornwall, is  
 the nearest in  
 blood,  
 To wham þe heritage sholde falle;  
 Bot for þe oper were most of myght,  
 þey gaf nought of al his ryght.  
 and his son,  
 þys duk Cloten hadde a child,  
 A doughti bacheler & a wyld; 2696  
 þat tyme was he man most worþy,  
 & ffayr waxen, & wel an hey;  
 Doughty  
 Donwal,  
 "Donwal doughti"<sup>9</sup> was his name,  
 Of curtesey had he þe fame, 2700

<sup>1</sup> *Luclon*, Wace, p. 104.

<sup>2</sup> *were gon*.

<sup>3</sup> *myght haf*.

<sup>4</sup> *titt fyue kynges*.

<sup>5</sup> *mast myght*.

<sup>6</sup> *þe powere of his myght*.

<sup>7</sup> *In lawe ne luf*.

<sup>8</sup> *Piguer*, Wace, l. 2250, p. 105.

<sup>9</sup> *Donvalomolinus*, Wace; *Done-*  
*walmolus*, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3-3</sup>, Colb.  
 ib. *Dunwallo Molmutius*, Geof-  
 frey.



Ouer þeym alle passed his power ;  
 ffor first he slow þe kyng Pyncer,  
 & seysed þe lond til his byhoue.  
 Vpon Stater ȝit wolde he proue ;  
 Wyþ force of armes he gan to ride,  
 Stater & Rudak he þought to byde.  
 Rudak & Stater herde so<sup>1</sup> seye,  
 þey swore to-gydere on hym to deye.

slays the king  
 of Logers,  
 2704 and then re-  
 solves to  
 attack Stater,  
 king of Scot-  
 land, and  
 Rudak, king of  
 2708 Wales ;

¶ *Respice Donwalem Conquestorem.* [leaf 12, col. 2.]

Ageyn Donwal þey broughte þer host,  
 . In to halues,<sup>2</sup> by diuerse cost ;  
 Rudak of Walys had þat o<sup>3</sup> syde ;  
 Toward þe northe Stater gan ride ;  
 þey brente & slowe, nought wolde þey spare,  
 Of castel & toun þey made bare.  
 Donwal<sup>4</sup> herde his lond þey wasted,  
 He dighte his host, & to þem hasted ;  
 He mette wiþ hem, and dide hem stande,—  
 þey were in feld þritty housande ;  
 Gret noise at her samny[n]g was,<sup>5</sup>  
 Wiþ trompe & taber, & horn of bras,<sup>5</sup>—  
 & grete strokes, & sore sette,  
 Wer gyuen when þey to-gedere mette,  
 Helm þorow smyten, & many a scheld,<sup>5</sup>  
 Many a knyght was feld in feld,<sup>5</sup>  
 Of many hauberks was hewen þe maille.<sup>5</sup>  
 Longe þey stode, & gaf bataille ;<sup>5</sup>  
 Non wyste ho scholde haue<sup>6</sup> þe maystri,  
 þe parties were boþe so doughti.  
 Donewal was werreour god,  
 Hym ouerþoughte<sup>7</sup> þey so wel stod ;

but they, in-  
 stead, invade  
 him,  
 2712  
 and ravage  
 his land.  
 2716 Donwal  
 marches to  
 meet them,  
 2720  
 and a fierce  
 fight follows,  
 2724  
 with doubtful  
 result,  
 2728 til the artful  
 Donwal

<sup>1</sup> son.

<sup>2</sup> *two parties.*

<sup>3</sup> *þe to.*

<sup>4</sup> Donvale, *Wace.*

<sup>5</sup> P. omits these lines.

<sup>6</sup> *wist who suld haf.*

<sup>7</sup> *forþouht.*



picks out 600  
of his tried  
men,

arms them  
like their  
enemies,

takes them into  
the enemies'  
lines,

as part of their  
host,

gets close to  
the kings, and

suddenly slays  
both of them  
(Rudak and  
Stater).

Then his men  
resume their  
own arms,  
join their  
own host,

Sex hundred of hyse he coled<sup>1</sup> out  
pat proued were, hardy & stout; 2732  
. He dide þer armes al doun leye  
. Pryuely biside þe weye,  
& armed þem on alle manere  
Als here enemis armes were, 2736  
. þer scheldes toke, helm & gleyue,  
. þeyr enemyes forto deseyue.  
. þey diden alle at his auys,  
. & toke þe armes of þere enemis<sup>2</sup> 2740  
. pat leyen dede, wyþ here<sup>3</sup> queyntise,  
. & dight hem on her enemys wyse.  
Donewal saide, "comes alle wyþ me,  
" & þider as y go, so schol<sup>4</sup> ze." 2744  
þey zede spiande her & þer  
In what bataille þe kynges wer;  
When þay wyste alle at ones,  
Trauersed þem for þe nones 2748  
Als þey had ben of<sup>5</sup> þeyr party,  
& syde by side ryden hym by;<sup>6</sup>  
. þe kynges to þem gaue no tent,  
. Bot forþ in here bataille went. 2752  
"Haue at!" seyð Donwal, "now ys leyser!"<sup>7</sup>  
& seysede Rudak & Stater,  
& boþe at ones þeym lyghtly slow,  
& of þat pres þem smartly drow, 2756  
& caste þer armes of, þe vnknowen,<sup>8</sup>  
And armede hem eft wyþ here owen.  
When þey hadde þer armes nomen,  
And to þer host ageyn were comen, 2760

<sup>1</sup> *weled he.* (*Cole*, cull, *L. colligere*; *wele*, Old Icel. *velga*; O. H. Germ. *wellen*, choose: Stratmann.)

<sup>2</sup> *of armes of his.*

<sup>3</sup> & *att þer.*

<sup>4</sup> *saþ.*

<sup>5</sup> *on.* [leaf 17, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> þam *bie.*

<sup>7</sup> Puis s'eseria : férés, férés  
[strike]. Wace, p. 107.

<sup>8</sup> *vnknawen . . . . awen.*



- ffaste þey fullen opo þem<sup>1</sup> alle,  
 þat sone þer force gan doun falle ;  
 þat oper side stod nought<sup>2</sup> in stour,  
 ffor þey had lost<sup>3</sup> þer gouernour ;  
 þey fledde to wode & to mountaynes,  
 ffor slayn were þeyr cheuentaynes.  
 Whan Donewal hadde þe maistrīe,  
 Hys pes he dide hit sette & crye,  
 þat so god pes was neuere or,  
 Ne þerafter schal namor.<sup>4</sup>  
 A coroune of gold he dyde hym make,  
 Swylk on neuere for kynges sake  
 Was in Bretaigne wrought byforn,  
 Ne on kynges heued set ne born.  
 He stabled swylk pes & gryth,  
 & wyþ his sel confermed<sup>5</sup> wyþ,  
 þat ylka temple & ilk cite  
 Schold haue & holde<sup>6</sup> þys dignite,  
 þat ȝif a man had don trespas,  
 Robbed, or slayn, or oper cas,  
 ȝyf he tyl a temple cam  
 . Er men hym wiþ handes nam,<sup>7</sup>  
 Or to a cite go þan his weye,  
 Non yuel scholde men til hym eft seye ;<sup>8</sup>  
 & also to hem þat<sup>9</sup> at plowes ȝede,  
 ȝyf any man dede hem yuel dede,<sup>10</sup>—  
 Oper til<sup>11</sup> market ȝyf on schold go,  
 ȝyf men dide hem any wo,  
 Hit was teld<sup>12</sup> for felonye,  
 & worþy was<sup>13</sup> þer-fore to deye.
- and put the  
 enemy to flight.  
 2764  
 [leaf 12, back.] Donwal then  
 establishes a  
 firm peace,  
 2768  
 has a grand  
 crown of gold  
 made for him,  
 2772  
 and ordains  
 2776  
 that if a culprit  
 can escape to  
 any temple or  
 city  
 2780  
 before he is  
 caught,  
 2784  
 he shall go  
 quit.  
 Also, that any  
 injury to an  
 agriculturist  
 2788  
 shall be felony,  
 and punished  
 with death.

<sup>1</sup> folowed oñ þam.<sup>2</sup> stoute (bad reading).<sup>3</sup> tynt.<sup>4</sup> neuer more.<sup>5</sup> confermed it.<sup>6</sup> suld haf & hald. 7 MS. nan.<sup>8</sup> of itt suld no man to him say.<sup>9</sup> to þat (qui as carues, Wace).<sup>10</sup> did ille dede.<sup>11</sup> or to. [leaf 17, back.]<sup>12</sup> told.<sup>13</sup> were.



Donwal dies at  
London, after  
40 years reign,

ffourty wynter was he kyng;  
At Londoñ he made his endyng; 2792  
A temple þere dide he make  
ffor þe pes & concordes sake;  
In þat temple mad for þat pes  
Was he leyd, & þere he ches. 2796  
Of hym were two noble sones,  
Als þe story of þem mones:  
and his sons  
Belyn and  
Brenne suc-  
ceed him.

Belyn þe eldest, þat oper Brenne;  
Donewal þer fader, God y bykenne. 2800

¶ *Diuisio Regni inter Belynum & Brennum.*

Brenne holds  
all Northum-  
bria,  
up to Caithness,  
of Belyn,  
and is to do  
homage for it.

Belyn has the  
rest of England,  
and Wales;  
and for five  
years they  
live in peace.  
But strife and  
covetousness

Nota,  
rise alway in  
the North,  
as the common  
saw is.

Belyn and Brenne parted þe lond  
On þys manere, als y hit fond:  
Brenne schold of Belyn holde  
His lond, fro Humber northward he tolde; 2804  
Ilk del in-tyl Katenesse<sup>1</sup>  
Held Brenne of Belyn, more ne lesse;  
Seruise schold he do þer fore,  
He & hyse for euere more. 2808  
Belyn held til his partie,  
Logers,<sup>2</sup> Wales, & Cornubye.  
So þey helden hit<sup>3</sup> fyue ȝer  
In pes & in faire maner; 2812  
Bot contek & couetyse  
Out of þe north wyl alwey<sup>4</sup> ryse,  
ffor þus men seide by elde<sup>5</sup> dawe,  
& ȝit hit ys a comun sawe: 2816  
“ Souþerne<sup>6</sup> der gos Northward,  
“ & Norþerne<sup>7</sup> werre to þe south ys hard;

<sup>1</sup> *Belyn lete brenne of him holde  
fro humber north his lond he tolde  
Ilk a dele vnto Cathenesse.*

<sup>2</sup> *Londres, Wace.*

<sup>3</sup> *held it.*

<sup>4</sup> *wilt algate.*

<sup>5</sup> *be olde.*

<sup>6</sup> *sothron.*

<sup>7</sup> *northren.*



- . " Bot norþern<sup>1</sup> der & souþern<sup>2</sup> werre,  
 . " Non dredeþ, oþer þey come nought nerre ;  
 . " Bot norþerne [werre]<sup>3</sup> þat ys þe doute, 2821  
 . " & southern<sup>4</sup> der þe norþ dos loute."  
 In Brennes tyme, als ȝe may here, [leaf 12, bk., col. 2.] And in  
 Hit ferde in þys ilke manere ; 2824 Brenne's time  
 Abouten Brenne were lozengeours,  
 Bakbiteres & werreours : he has liars  
 On was þer þat ful euele spak one of whom  
 To whette Brenne to reyse kontak ;<sup>5</sup> 2828 tries to stir up  
 pus he spak al wip tresoun :— strife,  
 . Y gyue swyche<sup>6</sup> Crystes malisoun !— and says,—  
 Christ curse  
 him !—

¶ Respice verba detractorys.

- " We haue merueille in oure þought—  
 " Bot non to þe dar sey ryght nought— 2832 " We wonder  
 " þat of so gret an heritage,  
 " þat long & brod ys in passage,  
 " þat þy fader hadde in his baillye,  
 " & hast þerof so litel partie ! 2836 that of so great  
 a heritage as  
 your father  
 held, you have  
 so little,  
 " And ȝit, als litel as þow has,  
 " pou schalt<sup>7</sup> hym serue at alle cas !  
 " Wiltow holde longe<sup>8</sup> þat wyse,  
 " To serue þy broþer in alle seruise ? 2840 and have to  
 serve your  
 brother for it.  
 " Artow þral or bastard,  
 " Or more vyl or more coward,<sup>9</sup>  
 " þat pou schalt<sup>7</sup> do hym þer-fore homage,  
 " & art of þe same parage ? 2844 thus to do him  
 homage ?  
 " þe ffader hym gat, he gat þe,  
 " & of o moder born ar<sup>10</sup> ȝe.

<sup>1</sup> sothron.

<sup>2</sup> northren.

<sup>3</sup> northern were.

<sup>4</sup> souhren.

<sup>5</sup> One þer was þat wikly spake  
 bituex þe breþer raised contake.

<sup>6</sup> gyf suylk. [leaf 17, back, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> satt.

<sup>8</sup> witt þou hald.

<sup>9</sup> cuhard.

<sup>10</sup> er.



|                                                                          |                                                                     |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Why is Belyn<br>to be your<br>lord?                                      | " Sythen ze boþe breþere are,                                       |      |
|                                                                          | " & of o ffader & moder ware,                                       | 2848 |
|                                                                          | " Wherefore has Belyn, & why,                                       |      |
|                                                                          | " Of þe & þyne swych seygnury? <sup>1</sup>                         |      |
|                                                                          | " Brest a two þat ilke <sup>2</sup> bond,                           |      |
| Belyn once<br>chose the best<br>share:<br>now, let the<br>strongest win. | " Do hym no seruise for þy lond!                                    | 2852 |
|                                                                          | " ffor no lord holdeþ <sup>3</sup> þe, Belyn,                       |      |
|                                                                          | " Namore schaltow holde <sup>4</sup> hym for þyn.                   |      |
|                                                                          | " Trowe til vs & oure consayl!                                      |      |
|                                                                          | " To þy worschipe hit wole auayl!                                   | 2856 |
| You are the<br>braver,<br>as we know,<br>by your killing<br>Duke Cenflo. | " To non of þy vasselage                                            |      |
|                                                                          | " Ne seye we neuere do suche outrage!                               |      |
|                                                                          | " þorow whas <sup>5</sup> queyntyse, & þorow whas <sup>5</sup> art, |      |
|                                                                          | " Ches Belyn hym þe beste part?                                     | 2860 |
|                                                                          | " þer falles non oper chesyng to;                                   |      |
| Seize all<br>Belyn's lands.                                              | " Bot most schal haue, þat most <sup>6</sup> may do.                |      |
|                                                                          | " More artow worth, & more hardy!                                   |      |
|                                                                          | " þat haue we sen fol certeynly                                     | 2864 |
|                                                                          | " When þou slowe þe Duk Cenflo <sup>7</sup>                         |      |
|                                                                          | " þat al Morine langede <sup>8</sup> to,                            |      |
|                                                                          | " þat al Scotland wolde haue wasted;                                |      |
|                                                                          | " þy doughtinesse to deþe hym hasted.                               | 2868 |
|                                                                          | " I trowe of þys þou þoughte byforn,                                |      |
|                                                                          | " Bot priuely þou hast hit boren,                                   |      |
|                                                                          | " þat we ne scholde mynge <sup>9</sup> for drede.                   |      |
|                                                                          | " Now [we] rede, þow <sup>10</sup> do hit in dede,                  | 2872 |
|                                                                          | " And forto <sup>11</sup> wyne hit ilkadel.                         |      |
|                                                                          | " Doute þe nought, þou may ful wel,                                 |      |
|                                                                          | " ffor we ne schulle <sup>12</sup> þe neuere faille,                |      |
|                                                                          | " þe while we lyue & mowe <sup>13</sup> trauaylle,                  | 2876 |

<sup>1</sup> *suylk sengnori.*<sup>2</sup> *Brist it þat þou with þe.*<sup>3</sup> *ffor lord ne holdes.*<sup>4</sup> *no more saẗt þou hald.*<sup>5</sup> *whos.*<sup>6</sup> *Mast saẗt haf þat mast.*<sup>7</sup> *Césio . . . . Moriane, Wace.*<sup>8</sup> *longed.*<sup>9</sup> *suld nempe it.* [leaf 19.]<sup>10</sup> *we þe.*<sup>11</sup> *fond to.*<sup>12</sup> *saẗt.*<sup>13</sup> *untill we lyf & may.*



- “ ȝyf þou ne trowest<sup>1</sup> þat we þe seye,  
 “ Do þe ouer vntil Norweye, [leaf 13.]  
 “ And þe kynges doughter þou take;  
 “ þy party may þou þe bettere make. 2880  
 “ Haue þou Norweye & Scotland,  
 “ & vs alle vnto þyn hand;  
 “ Agaynes no land schuldestow wende,<sup>2</sup>  
 “ þat þou ne gete þe fairere ende; 2884  
 “ Ne Belyn durste þe nought<sup>3</sup> abide  
 “ ȝyf þou ageyn hym woldest<sup>4</sup> ride.  
 “ ȝyf þou haue y-þought<sup>5</sup> make þy bone,  
 “ Go by tyme, & come right sone, 2888  
 “ Al by þe syde of Myrreyue,  
 “ þat Belyn no þyng aparseyue.  
 “ Perauenture he wolde hym greue  
 “ ȝyf þou wyf toke wyþoute leue, 2892  
 “ Or oper wyse men wold<sup>6</sup> hym seye  
 “ þat þou haddest<sup>7</sup> of hym non eye.”  
 On þis wyse conseilled þey hym so,  
 & Brenne trusted<sup>8</sup> þer conceille to: 2896  
 He passed in Norweye, he gan aryue,<sup>9</sup>  
 & asked þe kynges doughter to wyue.  
 þe kynges name was Alfynge,  
 He graunted Brenne al his askynges, 2900  
 Holyk<sup>10</sup> Bretaygne for to wyne,  
 When he wolde his werre bygynne.  
  
 Often tydyng to Belyn was brought,  
 Whider Brenne ȝede, & what he sought;  
 Belyn had þanne suspencion 2905  
 þat for felonye was hit don,

If you think  
your army is  
not strong  
enough, marry  
the king of  
Norway's  
daughter,  
and he'll help  
you.

Belyn will  
never stand  
against you.

Go to Norway  
at once,

unknown to  
Belyn.”

Brenne con-  
sents, goes to  
Norway,

and gets king  
Alfynge's  
daughter, and  
help.

Belyn is told  
of Brenne's  
doings,

<sup>1</sup> *trowe.*

<sup>2</sup> *suld þou wend.*

<sup>3</sup> *neuer.*

<sup>4</sup> *wille.*

<sup>5</sup> *þouht.*

<sup>6</sup> *wald.*

<sup>7</sup> *had.*

<sup>8</sup> *triste.*

<sup>9</sup> *passed ouer in Norway gan ryue.*

<sup>10</sup> *holy.*



|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| resolves to be<br>even with him,                                           | & þoughte he scholde <sup>1</sup> wyþynne a whyle<br>His owen deseite hym self bygile:                                                                                                          | 2908 |
| and meet trick<br>by trick.                                                | . He seyde, "on stelpe he sekis hym pray;<br>" Hit schal nought helpe, ȝyf þat y may;<br>" Ne schal nought Brenne bede me trypet <sup>2</sup><br>" þat y ne schal turne hym wiþ a forset." 2912 |      |
| So he seizes<br>Northumber-<br>land,                                       | Belyn seysede Northhumberland,<br>Boþe castel & toun tok in-to his hand;<br>Alle þat were Brennes byforn,                                                                                       |      |
| stores the<br>castles with<br>corn and men,                                | ffor werre he storede <sup>3</sup> þem wyþ corn,<br>& folk ynow to þeym dide sende, <sup>4</sup><br>Agaynes Brenne þem forto defende.                                                           | 2916 |
| and himself<br>occupies the<br>seashore, to<br>oppose Brenne's<br>landing. | Hym seluen ȝede wiþ an ost,<br>& rengede by þe se <sup>5</sup> cost;                                                                                                                            | 2920 |
| Brenne hears<br>of this,                                                   | Hauen to aryue <sup>6</sup> þey hym wyþsette,<br>Bot þorow bataille oper barette.                                                                                                               |      |
| and sets sail<br>with his wife.                                            | ¶ Tyl Brenne men broughte broð <sup>7</sup> tydyng<br>þat Belyn had sesed his þyng/.                                                                                                            | 2924 |
|                                                                            | He hadde his wyf, & was al ȝare<br>Wyþ fair folk in flod to fare.<br>Lyþerly lyked þat lady gent;                                                                                               |      |
| But she has<br>long loved                                                  | Sche wepede <sup>8</sup> weddyng, & mykel hit ment,<br>ffor scheo had loued longe byfore                                                                                                        | 2929 |
| the king of<br>Denmark,                                                    | þe kyng of Denmark, er Bren com þore; <sup>9</sup><br>& þe kyng had loued hyre,<br>Longe scheo was of his desire.                                                                               | 2932 |
| Goodlak, and<br>writes to him,                                             | þe kyng of Denmark highte Goodlak, <sup>10</sup><br>Scheo sent hym a lettre þat þus spak/:                                                                                                      |      |
| [leaf 13, col. 2.]                                                         | . "Longe haue y loued þe kyng of Denmark/;<br>" þat loue is loken & leyd in ark;                                                                                                                | 2936 |
|                                                                            | " An vncoup on of fer schal fonge <sup>11</sup><br>" py loue þat þou hast loued so longe;                                                                                                       |      |
| praying him to<br>rescue her.                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |

<sup>1</sup> *suld.*<sup>2</sup> *treget* (from *trans* and *jactare*).<sup>3</sup> *stroyed.* [leaf 18, col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> *to þam he send.*<sup>5</sup> *seis.*<sup>6</sup> *Hauen & lond.*<sup>7</sup> *broth* (1. hasty, fierce; 2. direful).<sup>8</sup> *scho wepe.*<sup>9</sup> *or brenne com þore.*<sup>10</sup> *Gullake* (*Gurlac*, *Wace*).<sup>11</sup> *MS. fonde. P. has satt fong.*



- " & bot þou come, rescours to make,  
 " Neuere in armes schalt þou<sup>1</sup> me take." 2940  
 Whan Goodlak wyste, his herte gan<sup>2</sup> drede      Goodlak  
 þat Brenne a-wey his lef schold<sup>3</sup> lede.  
 He dide samne al his flet,      collects his  
 & Brenne & he in se þey<sup>4</sup> met. 2944      fleet, attacks  
                                                                  Brenne's,  
 When boþe fflutes come at a frosche,<sup>5</sup>  
 þe fyrste hortlyng<sup>6</sup> gaf a gret crusche;  
 Ende til ende, syde by<sup>7</sup> side;  
 þe heyest of bord, best fel<sup>8</sup> his tyde. 2948  
 ffaste þey foughte boþe fflutes,  
 . Persed schipes wip arblast schutes;  
 . Wyp ax & swerd ilk oþer on hew,  
 In to þe water ouer bord þey þrew; 2952  
 On boþe parties were þey goode,  
 Bote þe Daneys best þey stode,  
 . Speres & darts þykke þay schote,  
 & persed þorow-out Brennes fflote. 2956      routs it; and  
                                                                  Brenne flees.  
 Brenne fledde, als<sup>9</sup> desconfit,  
 & Goodlak seysede a schip fol tyt.      Goodlak  
                                                                  carries off  
 As auenture fel, þat schip he wan  
 þat scheo was inne, Brennes lemman. 2960      his love;  
 Whan he hadde wonnen<sup>10</sup> þat he sought,  
 Of al þat oþer gaf he nought;  
 & Brenne fledde wip sayl & ore;  
 His wyf he les, þat playned he sore. 2964      and so Brenne  
                                                                  loses his wife.  
  
 When Goodlak hadde þat may in hande,      But as Goodlak  
     He ʒerned faste to þe lande.      is sailing home  
 Als he seyled his lond toward,      with Alfynge's  
     List of a chaunce þat hym fel hard: 2968      daughter,

<sup>1</sup> *satt.*<sup>2</sup> *was.*<sup>3</sup> *wyf suld.*<sup>4</sup> *see gan.*<sup>5</sup> *at frusse.*<sup>6</sup> *hurtyng.*<sup>7</sup> *to.*<sup>8</sup> *burde best fett.*<sup>9</sup> *ʒ was.* [leaf 18, back.]<sup>10</sup> *won.*



|                                                      |                                                                                                                             |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| a storm rises,                                       | In þe se a storm hym <sup>1</sup> grew,<br>þe water rored, þe wynd vp blew,<br>. þundred, reyned, lemed <sup>2</sup> lyght, |                  |
| [* MS. myght.]                                       | þe sky wax blak as hit were nyght * ;                                                                                       | 2972             |
|                                                      | þe se gan fighte, þe wawes ros,<br>þe streme woxe, & þem agros ; <sup>3</sup>                                               |                  |
| the ships are in<br>danger,                          | þeir schipes alle in peril were,<br>Ropes, borde, broste ay where ;                                                         | 2976             |
|                                                      | Mast & sayl, doun hit lused, <sup>4</sup><br>Cordes, kables, casteles, tofrusched : <sup>5</sup> —                          |                  |
|                                                      | . To knowe þer names y am al wyl,<br>. Al þat þer was was in peryl.—                                                        | 2980             |
| and get dis-<br>persed.                              | þer flute sone was al to-spred,<br>& into diuerse londes fled ;                                                             |                  |
| The tempest<br>lasts five days,                      | ffyue daye atte þe leste<br>Lasted thenne þat <sup>6</sup> tempeste.                                                        | 2984             |
| and after it<br>Goodlak lands                        | Gutlak had þre schipes, & <sup>7</sup> mo,<br>. Wip hem he skaped in peyne & wo,                                            |                  |
| in England.                                          | & aryued vp in þys londe,<br>& fayn he was þat hap he fonde,                                                                | 2988             |
|                                                      | Bot for þe loue of his lemman<br>. þat in þe tempest wax al wan ;                                                           |                  |
|                                                      | He ne wyste what lond ne port<br>He was aryued, for mys-confort ;                                                           | 2992             |
|                                                      | Bot þo þat kepte þe se side,                                                                                                | [leaf 13, back.] |
|                                                      | . & seye þe schipes til haue[n] glyde, <sup>8</sup><br>Godlak þey toke, wyþ þat may <sup>9</sup> gent ;                     |                  |
| He and his love<br>are taken, and<br>given to Belyn, | Tyl Belyn of hem þey made present ;                                                                                         | 2996             |
|                                                      | & alle hyse men wyþ hym þey tok,<br>& Belyn dede þem alle to lok,                                                           |                  |
| who prisons<br>them till he                          | zyf he wayted, <sup>10</sup> what tyme or whenne,                                                                           |                  |
| hears tidings of<br>Brenne.                          | þat he myght here tydyng of Brenne.                                                                                         | 3000             |

<sup>1</sup> *it.*<sup>2</sup> *leuende.*<sup>3</sup> *stremes wex & þam at gros.*<sup>4</sup> *lused.*<sup>5</sup> *kastels frussed.*<sup>6</sup> *þan þat grete.*<sup>7</sup> *& no (cinq nes, Wace, p. 120).*<sup>8</sup> *to hauen ride.*<sup>9</sup> *þei toke Gutlak þat may so.*<sup>10</sup> *For waited.*



þo þat were take wyþ þe mayden,  
 Vnto Belyn þe soþe sayden,  
 Ilka del how Brenne had wrought,  
 & þe kyng of Norway sought,  
 & how þat Godlak had hym met  
 Vpon þe se wyþ strong baret.

These, their  
 companions tell  
 Belyn.

3004

¶ *De applicacione Brenne, & de bello inter fratres.*

**B**renne wolde nought longe abide,  
 His flute he gadered on ilka side,  
 Aryued vp in Albanye  
 Wyþ gret force of god<sup>1</sup> nauye;  
 He sente to Belyn messegers,  
 Of worthy<sup>2</sup> knyghtes & squiers,  
 Preynge<sup>3</sup> forto deliuere his wyf  
 & his casteles, & bate alle st[r]yf;  
 And bot he wolde zelde þeym on haste,  
 More of his he wolde waste.  
 Belyn gaf nought of his manace,  
 Bot þoughte he scholde ȝit don<sup>4</sup> him chace,  
 & sent hym bode by his men bolde,  
 " þat he had taken, þat wolde he holde;  
 " ffor his praieres<sup>5</sup> noþyng wolde do,  
 " Ne for his loue namore þan so."  
 Hys folk were al redy &<sup>6</sup> dight  
 Agaynes Brenne for to fyght:  
 Bysyde a wode at<sup>7</sup> Kalenters  
 Mette þe breþere wyþ here baners;  
 Eyþer oþer mykel þey<sup>8</sup> hated,  
 þe felonloker<sup>9</sup> þey hem abated;

Brenne gathers  
 his fleet,

3008

lands in Scot-  
 land,

and demands

3012

his wife and  
 castles from  
 Belyn.

3016

Belyn

refuses them,

3020

and marches  
 against Brenne.

3024

They meet  
 near the forest  
 of Galtres (in  
 the North  
 Riding of  
 Yorkshire).

3028

<sup>1</sup> & gode.

<sup>2</sup> *Meñ of gode.*

<sup>3</sup> *Praied him.*

<sup>4</sup> *suld ȝit.*

<sup>5</sup> *prayng.*

<sup>6</sup> *folk redied & aȝt.*

<sup>7</sup> *hate.*

<sup>8</sup> *þe tone þe toþer mykett.*

<sup>9</sup> *Fersliere.*



A fierce battle  
follows ;

the Norse-  
men are put to  
flight,

and 2,000 slain  
in the pursuit.

Brenne, with

twelve com-  
rades only sur-  
viving,  
escapes to  
France.

Brenne takes  
refuge in  
France.

Belyn asks his  
Parliament

what is to be  
done with  
Goodlak ?

Dartes til oper þey schotte ful faste,  
Grete stones wyþ slynges caste,  
Scharpe launces þorow scheldes smot,  
& brighte swerdes þorow helmes bot ; 3032  
Sone<sup>1</sup> by nekkes þey sesede sore  
Wyþ knyues smyten to deþ<sup>2</sup> ay-whore,  
þorow heued & þrote, breste & bak,  
ffruschte to-gidere, þat nekkes brak/. 3036  
þe Bretons bolded styfly to stande,  
& nought þe norþerne, bot were fleande ;<sup>3</sup>  
To flyght<sup>4</sup> þey fledde, ilk bataille seer,  
& Belyn folewede, & neyghed hem ner ; 3040  
Two þousand fle yng he þer slow,<sup>5</sup>  
Als þey vntil þer schipes drow.  
Brenne, þat made most þat wo,  
Wyþ peyne he skaped þe slaughtre fro ; 3044  
Vneþes he skaped, þe<sup>6</sup> hauene he hent ;  
His twelfte<sup>7</sup> & he, to se þey went ;  
Alle he les bote þo twelue,  
To ffraunce he wente wyþ hem hym selue. 3048  
ffyftene þousand slayn were told,<sup>8</sup> [leaf 13, back, col. 2.]  
Wyþoute prisoners þat were in hold.<sup>9</sup>

Whan al þis wo was brought til ende,  
& Brenne in-til ffraunce gan wende,<sup>10</sup> 3052  
Belyn vntil ȝork he went,  
& þere he held his parlement.  
He askede his barons, and spak,  
“ What scholde be don of sire Guthlak ? ” 3056  
Gutlak byforn sent to Belyn,<sup>11</sup>  
Out of prison þer he lay<sup>12</sup> yn,

<sup>1</sup> Som.

<sup>2</sup> smyte togidere.

<sup>3</sup> þe norþeren nouhted ay fleand.

<sup>4</sup> flote. [leaf 19.]

<sup>5</sup> Thousandz hundrethes fleand he  
slough.

<sup>6</sup> vneþis a schip in hauē.

<sup>7</sup> tuelf.

<sup>8</sup> MS. cold. P. were þor told.

<sup>9</sup> of men slayn without in hold.

<sup>10</sup> lende.

<sup>11</sup> sent Belyn.

<sup>12</sup> was.



- “ pat of Belyn he wolde<sup>1</sup> holde  
 “ Al his honour, ȝif þat he wolde,  
 “ Denmark his lond, quyt & cler,  
 “ And gyuen<sup>2</sup> hym truwege ilka ȝer;  
 “ Syker þerof he wolde hym make,  
 “ Wyþ bond,<sup>3</sup> & god ostage to take;  
 “ Wyþy<sup>4</sup> he myghte lede safly  
 “ His lemman, wypouten vyleny.”  
 Belyn had fol gret desyr  
 To haue truwege of his enpir.  
 porough leue of þe parlement,  
 Gutlak & his lemman went,  
 When he had sworn & don omage,  
 & bondes mad,<sup>5</sup> & gyuen hostage,  
 To Belyn to halde þer couenaunt,<sup>6</sup>  
 fforto wende he hadde þe graunt.  
 Gutlak, to go, sone he was ȝare,  
 Wyþ schip vntil his lond to fare.<sup>7</sup>
- Belyn held wel þenne his honour,  
 & wysly was god governour;  
 He louede pes wyþ al<sup>8</sup> hys myght,  
 & pesyble men held he to ryght.  
 Hys lond Bretayne he went<sup>9</sup> þorow-out,  
 & ilka countre biheld about;  
 Byheld þe wodes, watres, & fen,  
 & no passage fond he mad<sup>10</sup> for men,  
 Ne heye strete þorow no contre,  
 Neyþer to burgh ne to cyte.
- Goodlak offers  
 to hold Den-  
 mark of Belyn,  
 and pay tribute  
 for it,  
 if Belyn will  
 give him up his  
 wife.  
 Goodlak's offer  
 is accepted,  
 and he sails to  
 Denmark.  
 Belyn rules  
 Britain well;  
 finds out the  
 wants of each  
 county, and

<sup>1</sup> wild he.<sup>2</sup> gyf.<sup>3</sup> treuh.<sup>4</sup> with þi (with that, so that).<sup>5</sup> Whan had don his homage  
othe suorn.<sup>6</sup> conant.<sup>7</sup> Manning should have translated  
Wace's*Sa mie en a à soi menée,**Que par sa paine acatée.*

i. 125, l. 2643-4.

<sup>8</sup> pes at.<sup>9</sup> ȝode. [leaf 19, col. 2.]<sup>10</sup> no passage was maked.



builds bridges,  
and causeways  
or high roads ;

1. The Fosse,

from Totness  
to Caithness ;

2. Ikenild  
street,  
from South-  
ampton  
to Menia, now  
St. David's ;

and proclaims  
safety for all  
travellers.

Brenne, mean-  
time,

serves the king  
of France,

and is greatly  
liked,

porow myres, hylles, & vales,

He made brugges & causes,<sup>1</sup>

Heye stretes for comun passage,

Brugges ouer watres dide he stage :

pe firste he made, he cald hyt "ffosse ;"

porow-out þys londe hit goþ til Scosse ;

Hit bygynnes atte Toteneys,

& endeþ þenne at Cateneyes.<sup>2</sup>

An oper strete þan ordeyned he :

ffro Souþ-haumpton oþon<sup>3</sup> þe se,

To Mene yn Walys, (Seint Dauies now hight,) 3096

. Ikenyldestrete reches ful ryght :<sup>4</sup>

Two causes ouer þe lond in lengþe & brede,<sup>5</sup>

pat men ouerthwert in passage zede. 3100

When þey were maked als he ches,

He comaunded till alle haue pees ;

Alle schold haue<sup>6</sup> pees & fredam

pat in his stretes zede or cam ; 3104

& zyf hit were any of hyse

pat for-dyde his ffraunchise,

fforfeted schold ben al his þyng,

. & hym self<sup>7</sup> taken til þe kyng. 3108

**B**renne þat was gon in to ffraunce,

Hym schamed sore of his chaunce

. pat hit<sup>8</sup> was so wyde yspred

pat his lemman was a-wey led. 3112

Hym self & his twelf felawes

Serued þe kyng zeres & dawes ;

Knyght he was, curteys & wys,

Oueral he hadde los & pris ; 3116

[leaf 14.]

<sup>1</sup> cauceiz.

<sup>2</sup> endes vnto catheneis.

<sup>3</sup> at Southampton vpon.

<sup>4</sup> & gos to Weles to seynt dauy  
þe toun hight Menne þat tyme  
redy.

<sup>5</sup> tuo kaucez ouer þe lond o brede.

<sup>6</sup> suld haf.

<sup>7</sup> His body.

<sup>8</sup> MS. his. P. has it.



- What ony knyght hadde to þer<sup>1</sup> lyuere,  
 His was largest, for he was fre;  
 Mykel was he preysed of prowesse, and praised.  
 & ful wel loued for his largesse; 3120  
 . He coupe mykel<sup>2</sup> of curtesy,  
 . & faire hym bar, as man worþy.  
 When his los was þorow ronnen,  
 & in þe lond his pris hadde wonnen, 3124  
 Wip wham he made any soiour,  
 He preyed for help & for socour  
 ffor to conquere his heritage,  
 þat Belyn reftym<sup>3</sup> wip outrage; 3128  
 &<sup>4</sup> zede to Burgoyne, to Duk Segwyn,  
 . Bysought hym of help ageyns Belyn.  
 þe Duk louede his compaignie,  
 & gaf hym of his tresorie. 3132  
 Brenne was yn speche curteys,  
 & konnyng<sup>5</sup> knyght by many weys;  
 He coupe of chas<sup>6</sup> & of ryuere,  
 Inow of game of here<sup>7</sup> manere; 3136  
 Gentil of body, wyþ fair visage,  
 . He semed a man of hey parage,  
 . & was plesaunt & seruisable.  
 þe Duk was riche wyþoute fable,<sup>8</sup> 3140  
 & of his body had non heyr  
 Bot a mayde ferly feyr.  
 Inough sche hadde þat tyme of elde,  
 þat scheo myght take a lord to welde; 3144  
 He spak louely, wysly, & stille.  
 & serued þe Duk at al his wylle,

<sup>1</sup> *Whan any knyght toke his.*<sup>2</sup> *couth Inouh.*<sup>3</sup> *held.* [leaf 19, back.]<sup>4</sup> *he.*<sup>5</sup> *a konand knyght on.*<sup>6</sup> *wod.*<sup>7</sup> *gamen on oþer.*<sup>8</sup> *he was meke to serve and briche  
 & þe duke was noble riche.*



|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                         | & wel hym payed alle his dedes,<br>& oueral wel he spedde his nedes.                                                                                                                               | 3148               |
| his daughter,<br>and the heir-<br>ship of his<br>duchy. | þe Duk his doughter gaf hym to wyue,<br>To haue þe Duche after his lyue.<br>þen þoughte þe Duk, þat hym fel feir<br>þat God had sent hym suche on til heyr. <sup>1</sup>                           | 3152               |
|                                                         | . Brenne obeysed hym curteysly,<br>& seide "Sire Duk, graunt mercy!"<br>Al men <sup>2</sup> hym louede, & held hym dere,<br>Ech man hym payed wel his <sup>3</sup> manere.                         | 3156               |
| Soon duke<br>Segwyn dies,                               | ffel þanne wyþynne þe twelf-monþ <sup>4</sup> ende,<br>Swyche a grace God gan hym sende,<br>þat he deyde, þe Duk Segwyn.                                                                           |                    |
| Brenne suc-<br>ceeds to the<br>duchy of Bur-<br>goyne,  | Of al þe Duche, Brenne tok seysyn;<br>Hys barons þat louede hym wel byfore,<br>After louede hym mykel more;<br>Wel louede hym ilka Burgyloun,<br>& knyghtes of þeyr <sup>5</sup> nacioun;          | 3160<br>3164       |
|                                                         | He hadde þe lond wyþ al þe <sup>6</sup> rente,<br>And a ʒong lady <sup>7</sup> fair & gente.<br>In al his welþe <sup>8</sup> forgat he nought                                                      | [leaf 14, col. 2.] |
|                                                         | How Belyn hadde wyþ hym wrought,<br>& held þe londes þat his schold be;<br>Bot whan he sey his tyme eyse,<br>He sent for knyghtes & squiers,<br>ffrendes he soughte, & waged <sup>9</sup> souders; | 3168<br>3172       |
| collects a great<br>host,                               | Wyþ gret ost cam til Normandie,<br>& purueyde þer a gret nauye.                                                                                                                                    |                    |
| raises a navy<br>in Normandy,                           | Whan hit was <sup>10</sup> tyme, had wynd at wille<br>He passed þe se wypouten ylle.                                                                                                               | 3176               |
| and invades<br>England.                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                    |

<sup>1</sup> saue þis he had þe speire  
þat god gaf him a son titt heire.

<sup>2</sup> þei.

<sup>3</sup> & he þam paied on att.

<sup>4</sup> not was it siþen a tuelmoth.

<sup>5</sup> oper. [leaf 19, back, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> lond Inouh &.

<sup>7</sup> & ʒeng lemman.

<sup>8</sup> þis weth.

<sup>9</sup> hired.

<sup>10</sup> he sawe.



Belyn herde wel þat he cam ;  
 Wyþ folk ynogh ageyns hym nam ;  
 þer bataylles assembled wyþynne a lite,  
 & redy were almost to fyghte.

Belyn is ready  
 3180 to fight Brenne,

¶ De Humilitate Tonewenne, matris Belyni & Brenni.

|                                                                  |      |                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------------|
| So com þeyr moder, dame Tonewenne,                               |      | but their old     |
| þat bar boþe Belyn & Brenne,                                     |      | mother, Tone-     |
| Bytwyxt þer hostes, tremblyng <sup>1</sup> for drede ;           |      | wenne, totters    |
| ffol old scheo was, haltyng scheo ȝede ;                         | 3184 | up between the    |
| Ouer al scheo asked where was Brenne.                            |      | hosts,            |
| Atte þe laste, men gan hure kenne ;                              |      |                   |
| . & Brenne herd seye þat hit was sche ;                          |      |                   |
| . He saide " Moder, welcome be ȝe ! "                            | 3188 |                   |
| Hure armes aboute his nekke sche <sup>2</sup> cast,—             |      | casts her arms    |
| . Boþe osten wondred þer-ate <sup>3</sup> fast,—                 |      | round Brenne's    |
| Vntil hure girdel hure cloþes sche rent ;                        |      | neck,             |
| Naked byfore þe host sche went ; <sup>4</sup>                    | 3192 | rends her         |
| Vntil Brenne gretynge <sup>5</sup> sche spak,                    |      | clothes,          |
| . Hur fynGRES sche wrast, þe blod out brak,                      |      | wrings her        |
| Sche tremblede & sykede inderly, <sup>6</sup>                    |      | fingers till they |
| . Handes & face brest <sup>7</sup> al bloody : <sup>8</sup>      | 3196 | bleed,            |
| . " Dere child ! " sche seid, <sup>9</sup> " wher hastow ben ? " |      | and appeals to    |
| . " Now þanky God y haue þe sen ! "                              |      | Brenne to stay    |
| . " Sone, " sche seide, " list now to me, "                      |      | the strife :      |
| . " & do als y schal conceille þe. "                             | 3200 | " Son,            |
| . " Lo, here þe pappes þat þou on sok ! "                        |      | here are the      |
| . " pyse armes hit arn <sup>10</sup> þat þe bylok ! "            |      | paps that you     |
|                                                                  |      | sucked,           |

<sup>1</sup> *trembland . . . . haltand.*

<sup>2</sup> *hals* [neck] *scho.*

<sup>3</sup> *þe osten biheld þam.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ses mamèles li mostra nues,  
 Flestres, et vielles, et pelues.  
 Wace, i. 132, l. 2769-70.*

<sup>5</sup> *gretand.*

<sup>6</sup> *sighed inerly.*

<sup>7</sup> *handes face breste.*

<sup>8</sup> Mistaken translation of Wace's  
*" Carele soglotoit [sobbed] forment, "*  
*i. 132. l. 2773.*

<sup>9</sup> *Dere son.*

<sup>10</sup> *armes ere.*



here is the  
womb that bore  
you and your  
brother.

Think on my  
pain in giving  
you birth: add  
not to it.

Lay down your  
arms !

Bring not  
strangers to  
slay us !

Let us live in  
peace !

You began the  
wrong,

“ Here ys þe wombe ȝe boþe ynne ware !  
 “ þys body ȝow bar wiþ wo & kare ! 3204  
 “ Y am sche þat for ȝow kneled !  
 “ Now þenk o þat sorwe þat y þenne feled !  
 “ Ley now<sup>1</sup> no sorewe me more byforn,  
 “ ffor hym þat let ȝow of me be born ! 3208  
 “ Ley doun þyn armes, me forto saue !  
 “ Wylle nought þat y for þe dep<sup>2</sup> haue !  
 “ pou mysdost, þat pou now fandest<sup>3</sup>  
 “ To brynge straungers of outlandes<sup>4</sup> 3212  
 “ Vs forto robben & to<sup>5</sup> slo !  
 “ Rest þe ! let þy mod ouer go !<sup>6</sup>  
 “ pou hast namo breþere in wold ;  
 “ þy fader ys ded,<sup>7</sup> þy moder ys old ; 3216  
 “ Suffre, for no þyng in lyue,  
 “ þy pore frendes a-way to dryue !  
 “ pou scholdest vs presente & gyue,  
 “ & helpe vs alle in pes to lyue ; 3220  
 “ Bot now þou comest to reue vs our [socour],<sup>8</sup>  
 “ þat scholdest ben oure mayntenour.  
 “ Lef folye ! & y vndertake,<sup>9</sup>  
 “ ȝyf þou on hym wilt pleynte make, 3224  
 “ And y fynde he haue þe gylt, [leaf 14, back.]  
 “ He schal amenden right als þou wilt ;  
 “ Bot ȝyf þou seist he dide þe fle,  
 “ I seye nay ; witnesse on þe !<sup>10</sup> 3228  
 “ ffyrst þou bygonne al yn wrong ;  
 “ So al þe folye ys on þe longe,  
 “ þe firste folye & yuele<sup>11</sup> dedes.  
 “ When þou intil Norway ȝedes, 3232

<sup>1</sup> *Schew.* [leaf 20.]

<sup>2</sup> *dede.*

<sup>3</sup> *fondes.*

<sup>4</sup> *aliens of vnkouth londes.*

<sup>5</sup> *vs forto.*

<sup>6</sup> *þin owen demeyns to wirke wo.*

<sup>7</sup> *dede is þi fadere.*

<sup>8</sup> *socoure.*

<sup>9</sup> *do þis foly now to slake.*

<sup>10</sup> *þe wrong is in þe.*

<sup>11</sup> *in alle.*



|                                                       |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| “ Wyf to take, wypouten leue, <sup>1</sup>            |                                      |
| “ pat schewede þou mentest hym to <sup>2</sup> greue, |                                      |
| “ & broughtest Norn men hym tasaille : <sup>3</sup>   | you brought<br>Northmen to           |
| “ perfore þou lostest þy <sup>4</sup> bataille ;      | 3236 attack Belyn !                  |
| “ þy blame ys now ȝyt fol grym,                       | And now you                          |
| “ pat swiche <sup>5</sup> an host bryngest on hym     |                                      |
| “ & schapest <sup>6</sup> oure desherytysoun,         | plot our de-                         |
| “ & þys londes <sup>7</sup> destruccioun !            | 3240 struction !                     |
| “ So mykel yuel wold he nought þe, <sup>8</sup>       |                                      |
| “ Al-þey his power so mykel <sup>9</sup> myght be.    |                                      |
| “ Brenne, sone ! what þenkest þou ?                   | Son !                                |
| “ Com til acord now for þy prow !                     | 3244 Be at one with<br>thy brother ; |
| “ Ley doun þy swerd, do wey þy scheld,                |                                      |
| “ Wypdraw þy folk out of þe feld ;                    |                                      |
| “ & sek þe pes, for <sup>10</sup> charite !           | seek peace !”                        |
| “ þe same schal he do to þe.”                         | 3248                                 |

|                                                      |      |                 |
|------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| Brenne hure preyere vnderstod ;                      |      | Brenne con-     |
| ffor loue of hure changed his mod ;                  |      | sents, for love |
| His helm, his hauberk, he dide vnlace ;              |      | of his mother,  |
| . Al bar-heued, wyþ open face,                       | 3252 | unarms,         |
| Cam he wiþ his moder Tonewenne,                      |      |                 |
| & also dide <sup>11</sup> Belyn to Brenne :          |      |                 |
| peyr moder dide hem to-gedere kysse.                 |      | and kisses his  |
| . ffor þat saughtlyng was mykel blisse ;             | 3256 | brother Belyn.  |
| More of wrath was þer nought spoken ;                |      |                 |
| ffor <sup>12</sup> loue in armes ilk oþer þey loken. |      | They embrace,   |
| Al þus þen ended <sup>13</sup> þe breþere wratþe,    |      |                 |
| þer tene turned to game & glathe.                    | 3260 |                 |
| ffro þepen <sup>14</sup> to Londone þey went,        |      | go to London,   |

<sup>1</sup> *his leue.*

<sup>2</sup> you wild him.

<sup>3</sup> *brouht þe north him to assaile.*

<sup>4</sup> þou sped nouht at þat.

<sup>5</sup> *suylk* . . . , brings.

<sup>6</sup> *pat is titt.*

7 & to bi lond.

<sup>s</sup> *itt wild he not þe.*

<sup>9</sup> if his powere so wele.

<sup>10</sup> & seke pe pour.

<sup>11</sup> þe same did. [leaf 20, col. 2.]

12 *with.*

<sup>13</sup> *busgate endid.*

14 bien.



and agree to  
invade France.

& þer þey helde a parlement;  
Of þeyr parlement was þe ende,  
To wynne ffraunce wolde þey wende. 3264

They gather  
their hosts,

Belyn dide somone his Bretons,  
& Brenne hap<sup>1</sup> alle his Burgylons.  
By tyme & terme þat þey had set,  
Boþe osten atte hauene met, 3268

sail to France,

& schiped ouer into ffraunce;  
To wynne hit, þey hoped was her chaunce.<sup>2</sup>  
By-twyxt hem was þen a batille don:  
þe force of ffraunce fel ful son, 3272

win the first  
battle,

þe force of ffraunce fel ful son,  
þey durede nought to fighte in feld;  
þe breþere dide hem to þeym ȝeld;  
seize castles,  
and gain all  
France.

Casteles þey sesede fer & ner,  
& wonne alle ffraunce<sup>3</sup> wyþynne a ȝer. 3276

Then they re-  
solve to conquer  
Rome.

When al þe folk were atter<sup>4</sup> dome,  
þey seide þey wolde wende to Rome,  
And leue non þat þey fond,  
Bot ȝyf þey helde of þeym þer lond. 3280

They collect  
men,

þey sente aboute to diuerse costes,  
Of doughti folk þey gadered hostes  
for to wynne pris & prow; [leaf 14, back, col. 2.]  
cross the Alps,  
take Turin,  
Leghorn, and  
all Lombardy,

þey passed þe Mountaynes of Moun Gow;<sup>5</sup> 3284  
Taurynus þey toke, & Iuerye,  
& alle þe Cytes of Lombardye,  
Vrceles, Pauye, & Tremoygne,<sup>6</sup>  
Melan, Plesence, & grete Boloyne; 3288  
þey passed þe water of Tauron,  
& þe hul of Mount Bardon;

<sup>1</sup> P. omits *hap*.

<sup>2</sup> þe lond to wyn awnterd þer  
chance.

<sup>3</sup> *wan þam all*.

<sup>4</sup> *was at þer*.

<sup>5</sup> Mon Giu, *Wace*. "Mons Jovis,

"montagne qui separe la Savoie de  
"l'Italie: *le grand Saint-Bernard*."

De Lincy's *Wace*, i. 138.

<sup>6</sup> Vécialz . . Crémone.

*Wace*, i. 188.



- pey robbed þorow al Tuskane,  
 . & al ouer rod, & þorow ran. 3292 ravage Tus-  
 Als þey ryfled<sup>1</sup> landes ay whore, cany,  
 Rome þey neighed ay þe more. and draw near  
 Romayns dredden hem for to deye, Rome.  
 ffor þo tydynges þat þey herd seye; 3296 The Romans  
 . Al day of passande men þey herd, dread the Bri-  
 . þe two breþere wonnen al þe werd. tons.  
 þey of Rome had chosen þat 3er  
 Two noble men of gret power, 3300 The two Roman  
 þat þey scholde, when þey had nede, chiefs,  
 þer folk vntil bataille lede,  
 & saue þer landes, holde þem to ryght,  
 . ffor doughtiest þey were in fyght: 3304  
 Sire Procenna, þat on hight so,  
 þat oper men calde sire Galbao;<sup>2</sup>  
 þyse to<sup>3</sup> were þeyr conseillours,  
 & speke vnto þe senatours 3308 ask the Senate  
 " What þey wolde, how hadde þey tight, whether they'll  
 " þeyr cite zelde, or stande to fyght." yield or fight.  
 þe Sene seide þey were affrayed, The Senate say  
 . Non hem wypstod, bot þorow alle strayed: 3312 they can't with-  
 " Wip swilk to fighte, we haue non host, stand the Bri-  
 . " ffor þey han folk wyp þe most; tons,  
 " & 3yf we myghte oure pes haue,  
 " þorough mekenesse oure gode<sup>4</sup> saue, 3316  
 . " & oure seluen at here pes lyue,  
 " Gold & seluer we wolde þem gyue.  
 " Ouer þat, þey schul haue truage,  
 " To passe & do vs non vtrage; 3320  
 . " ffor strong hit were for oure cite  
 . " To be destruyed, & al þe contre."  
 . In al þer drede, & al þer dome,

<sup>1</sup> *robbed*. [leaf 20, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *Gabao*. Gabius, *Wace*, l. 2930.

<sup>3</sup> *tuo*.

<sup>4</sup> *godes*.



|                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                          |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                                                                                              | . þe breþere come & byseget <sup>1</sup> Rome.                                                                                                           | 3324       |
| This is done;                                                                                | þorow comun assent of þe senatours,<br>þey presented <sup>2</sup> þe breþere gret tresours;<br>& to be in here auowery, <sup>3</sup>                     |            |
|                                                                                              | Truage þey graunted hem for þy.                                                                                                                          | 3328       |
| and Belyn and<br>Brenne take<br>hostage of the<br>Romans,—<br>20 children of<br>high birth,— | þe breþere tok of þem hostage;<br>Twenty childre of þe beste lynage<br>& of þe richest of al þe toun,<br>þey presented <sup>2</sup> hem as for raunson : | 3332       |
|                                                                                              | þus was þe pes bytwixt hem graunted,<br>Bot lytel þrowe <sup>4</sup> þey hit haunted.                                                                    |            |
| and then draw<br>off to fight the<br>Alemans.                                                | <b>B</b> elyn & Brenne remued <sup>5</sup> þer host,<br>By Lombardye þey wente þe cost,                                                                  | 3336       |
|                                                                                              | To werren opon þe Alemauntz, <sup>6</sup><br>& take truage of þe remenauntz. <sup>7</sup>                                                                |            |
| But the Romans<br>rise against<br>them,                                                      | þey were letted by þe <sup>8</sup> Romainys,<br>þat couenaunt breke; rise þeym a-geyns;                                                                  | 3340       |
|                                                                                              | & proue þey wolde þeir hardinesse,<br>And seide þey wolde do more pruesse.                                                                               |            |
|                                                                                              | þey send for knyghtes oueral aboute,                                                                                                                     | [leaf 15.] |
|                                                                                              | & gaderet <sup>9</sup> ost gret & stoute,                                                                                                                | 3344       |
|                                                                                              | Wel armed in ilke a conreye; <sup>10</sup>                                                                                                               |            |
| think to catch<br>them in the<br>mountains,                                                  | After þe breþere þey tok þeir weye;<br>On þem þey þowte to smyte al fresse,<br>Ithe Mountaingnes to holdem at destresse, <sup>11</sup>                   | 3348       |
|                                                                                              | þat non of hem scholde namore come<br>Of þo breþere eft <sup>12</sup> to Rome.                                                                           |            |
| and call on the<br>Alemans                                                                   | þey sente messages on þer partye,<br>In to Alemayne, <sup>13</sup> þe breþere to spie,                                                                   | 3352       |

<sup>1</sup> *seged*.<sup>2</sup> *present*.<sup>3</sup> *þer auowri*.<sup>4</sup> *while*. [leaf 20, back, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *remoued*.<sup>6</sup> The *m* has 4 strokes in the MS.<sup>7</sup> *heue trewage at Remanans*.<sup>8</sup> *destorbled þorgh*.<sup>9</sup> MS. *gaderest*. P. reads *gadred*.<sup>10</sup> *armed were in att conrey*.<sup>11</sup> *hald þam at stresse*.<sup>12</sup> ? MS. *est*. *oste*, P.<sup>13</sup> *vnto þe almayns*.



pat ilka pas þey scholde<sup>1</sup> so wayte,  
 Ithe Mountz holden hem so straitte,  
 zyf þey schold<sup>1</sup> passe on eyþer syde, to help in  
 Wyþ force þey schold<sup>1</sup> hem ouer ryde. 3356

Al þus on ilk a side þey ros,  
To haue þe breþere host in clos;  
& atter passyng in to þe mount,  
þe Alemauntz schold<sup>1</sup> ben in þer frount; 3360  
þorow force of þer god ordynaunce,  
þey schold<sup>1</sup> nought passe þorow<sup>2</sup> no chaunce.

When Belyn perseyued þe ffelonye,  
 þey conſeilled on þer partie  
 þat Brenne ſcholde<sup>1</sup> turne a-gayn  
 To wyþſtande þe hoſt Romain,  
 And Belyn ſcholde<sup>1</sup> on his ſide  
 Agayns þe hoſt of Alemauntz ryde ;

3364 But Belyn and Brenne agree to divide ;  
 Brenne going againſt the Romans,  
 and Belyn  
 3368 againſt the Germans.

When Romainys wyste Bren schold<sup>1</sup> come,  
 pey toke þe wey<sup>3</sup> agayn to Rome,  
 pat Brenne schold<sup>1</sup> neighe Rome no ner,  
 & þe breþere a sondre fer.

The Romans  
 retreat, to  
 separate Brenne  
 from Belyn,

3372

porow a spye Belyn herde seye,  
 & taughte Brenne a geyner weye;  
 To trauersen hem al ouer þere score,  
 & passe þe Romainys wel byfore.  
 þey chose gyours þe contre knew,

3376

But Brenne  
 marches round  
 the Romans'  
 flank,

To lede þem wye trist & trew, 3380  
 & brynge þem wel to þat strete  
 þer þeym byhoued Romainys mete.  
 þey iourneyed<sup>4</sup> boþe dayes & nyght  
 Al so stille as þey myght, 3384



|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| reaches the<br>pass of Moun-<br>gow, [the St.<br>Bernard, p. 116]<br>before them, | Wypoute noise, cry, or how, <sup>1</sup><br>Vntil þe entre of Moun-<br>. & when þey were in þe valeye,<br>. þer ledere seide, "þys ys þeir weye!<br>. " By þys þey come, hit is certeyn;<br>. " Oper wey haue þey non ageyn." <sup>2</sup>                                                 | 3388 |
| and in full<br>moonlight                                                          | To þat passage þey come at nyght;<br>T þe mone schon ful <sup>3</sup> faire & bright;<br>Brenne bad þem ber ham [al] pryue,<br>Wip-oute noyse, til tyme schold <sup>4</sup> be.<br>Sone after cam þe Romaines route;<br>Of non þey hadde drede ne doute.                                   | 3392 |
| meets them,<br>who suspected<br>no foe.                                           | . By þe mone þat so lyght schon, <sup>5</sup><br>. þey spedde hem faste swythe to gon.<br>Atte passage glyfte þey þer eyene; <sup>6</sup><br>Agayns þe mone sawe þey schyne                                                                                                                | 3396 |
| The Britons<br>dash on the<br>Romans,                                             | Helmes, hauberkes, scheldes vp-lyfte. [leaf 15, col. 2.]<br>. þenne were þe Romainys al a-glyfte: <sup>7</sup><br>þe Bretons hadde þe Romay[n]s byden;<br>Al so swyþe þey to þem ryden;<br>Brenne þem boldede, bad þem wel smyte, <sup>8</sup><br>. "ffelleþ þour fos þat wolde þou byte!" | 3400 |
| who give way,                                                                     | Oueral þe Bretons þeym <sup>9</sup> assailed;<br>þe Romainys route fel & failed;<br>þey nadde no tome for to fle,<br>Ne place to huyden hem <sup>10</sup> priue.                                                                                                                           | 3404 |
| and are<br>slaughtered                                                            | þe Bretons bowaylled þeym, <sup>11</sup> & hew;<br>. In buskes, bankes, doun þeym þrew;<br>þe slaughtre lasted al þat nyght,<br>Til hit sprang þe dayes lyght;                                                                                                                             | 3408 |
| all that night                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 3412 |

<sup>1</sup> noyse or any crie.<sup>2</sup> non oper may þei gayne.<sup>3</sup> schane.<sup>4</sup> to tyme.<sup>5</sup> þat bright schone.<sup>6</sup> þei glift Ine.<sup>7</sup> oglift.<sup>8</sup> MS. snyte.<sup>9</sup> þe bretons ouer att halfe þam.<sup>10</sup> ne to tapise in stede.<sup>11</sup> bouweld þam.



- & al þat day afterward,  
 Vntil þe nyght, was bataille hard. 3416 and all next  
 þe nyght departed þem o sunder:  
 . þat any askaped, hit was a wonder.  
 þat oþer day in þe morwen tyde,  
 Toward Brenne, Belyn gan ryde;— 3420 Then Belyn  
 . ffer from his broþer wold he nought<sup>1</sup> go,  
 . What chaunce so bytidde of mo;—  
 & Brenne þat byfore nam,  
 Abod [þer] vntil Belyn cam. 3424 joins Brenne,  
 When þey were to-gyder comen,  
 Boþe vntil Rome nomen,  
 & byseged<sup>2</sup> hit aboute,—  
 & þey of Rome were ful stoute,— 3428 and they march  
 On alle sides þey sette engyns,  
 . Als Brenne ordeyned,<sup>3</sup> & belyns.  
 Mynours þey hadde ynowe, & sleye,  
 þe wal to perce<sup>4</sup> & vndermye. 3432 They set miners  
 . þo wyþynne deffended hem wel,  
 . At þat tyme lostey nought<sup>5</sup> a del;  
 Wyþ arblastes schoten quarels vnryde,  
 Inow men broughte, & leide by syde; 3436  
 Wyþ grete stones þey hem affrayed.  
 þe Romainys were nought desmayed,  
 þey launced darte, bowes drowe,  
 ffele þey felde, & manye slowe. 3440 but the Romans  
 þe breþere leften þer assaut al,  
 & persed no þyng of þe wal.  
 Longe lastede þat ilk distaunce,  
 To þe breþere gret noyaunce; 3444 Then Belyn  
 Galewes dide þe breþere reнге;  
 Of þer blod þey wol þeym venge;  
 þe galewes þey reysed vp ful heye,— hang all the  
 Roman host-

<sup>1</sup> *ne wild he.* [leaf 21, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *MS. byseded. P. biseged.*

<sup>3</sup> *at brenne ordenance.*

<sup>4</sup> *hole.*

<sup>5</sup> *les not.*



ages in sight of  
their parents.

þe Romainys wel myght hem se wyþ eye,— 3448  
& hongeden alle <sup>1</sup> þer hostagers,  
Burgeyses sones, lordes peres.  
þat kynde, y trowe, had sorewe & wo,  
To schames deþ þat saw hem go. 3452

¶ De Subuersione fratrum.

The Romans  
swear revenge,

Alle olyke <sup>2</sup> þer fore were wroþ,  
& alle seide, & swore þer oþ,  
In pes ne schold þey passe quyt,  
Bot þey wer wroken <sup>3</sup> on þat despit. 3456

and on the day  
that Prosenna  
and Gabao

On þyse men tristed þe Romainys þo,  
On Prosenna & on sire Gabao,  
ffor þyse wer gon to Lumbardye [leaf 15, back, col. 1.]  
To procure Rome more partye. 3460

have promised  
to return with  
help,

After þeyn <sup>4</sup> abyden þe Romainys ;  
A day to come þey sette certayns ;  
þat day was ner of þer comyng,

the Romans

þe Romainys þat day mad þer samnyng, <sup>5</sup> 3464  
& ber hem ful egrely <sup>6</sup> & stout ;

sally out,  
and fall on  
Belyn and  
Brenne,

þey armede hem, & isseden <sup>7</sup> out,  
& oþe breþere faste þey sought,  
& þey ageyn ne spared hem nought. 3468

who are also  
attacked by

Als þey foughten best in stour,  
Com her chefteyns wyþ more <sup>8</sup> socour ;  
Oþe breþere þey fullen alle on a res : <sup>9</sup>  
þan were þey boþe in hard destres ; <sup>10</sup> 3472

Prosenna's and  
Gabao's men.

þe Romainys vpon þe oþer partz,  
þat oþer side, Poyles & Lombartz,  
& felde <sup>11</sup> fele of þe Burgoylons,

<sup>1</sup> *hanged ilkon.*

<sup>2</sup> *only.*

<sup>3</sup> *venged.*

<sup>4</sup> *þam.* [leaf 21, back.]

<sup>5</sup> *samenyng.*

<sup>6</sup> *& were right full egre.*

<sup>7</sup> *issued.*

<sup>8</sup> *com þe tuo men with att þer.*

<sup>9</sup> *Vpon þe breþer & ilkon fresse.*

<sup>10</sup> *þe breþer in hard stresse.*

<sup>11</sup> *fellid.*



- & calde þem "cowardz! hore sons! 3476 The Romans  
 " We schol<sup>1</sup> ȝow do drynke ȝour owen blod, upbraid the  
 " & spare oure water of Tyber<sup>2</sup> flod! Britons  
 " On þys half Moun Gow, what do ȝe,  
 " Vs to chalange of vur fe? 3480  
 " & þat ȝe henge our children heye, for hanging  
 " þat vilenye ȝe schulle<sup>1</sup> abyē! their children,  
 " To ȝow was hit an yuel<sup>3</sup> conseil;  
 " þat schul ȝe fele to<sup>4</sup> wroþer hayl." 3484  
 Wip suche vmbreides þey hem<sup>5</sup> missayde,  
 & grete strokes vpon þeym leyde; and attack  
 Obak<sup>6</sup> a-geyn [þey] dide þem go, them fiercely.  
 & dide þem braye & crye for wo. 3488
- B**elyn & Brenne were al dysmayed  
 þat þe Romainys so þem affrayed;  
 þe Bretons sawe þer syde ȝede lowe,  
 þey rempede<sup>7</sup> þem to reste a þrowe; 3492 The Britons  
 In þer restyng þey gan hem mene, suffer, and re-  
 A parlement made þem bitwene, treat,  
 & gadered þer folk a-geyn to fyght, They re-ar-  
 Armed hem newe, & renged hem right, 3496 range their  
 In sere batailles set þeym a sondres, men,  
 Boþe by þousands & by hundreds, in batallions,  
 Of þe hardiest & defensables,  
 Made þey Mayster<sup>8</sup> Conestables, 3500 under the  
 & bad hem in þer bataille holde, bravest of their  
 þat non fro oper schold flitte ne folde. leaders,  
<sup>9</sup> [beside were set to þer socoure, with orders to  
 archers to maynten þam in stoure; 3504 keep their for-  
 þe alblasters on þe toper side, mation,

<sup>1</sup> *sallt*.<sup>2</sup> *in þe*.<sup>3</sup> *it was a wikke*.<sup>4</sup> *ȝe sall se full*.<sup>5</sup> *suylk vpbraid þei þam*.<sup>6</sup> MS. *Olak*. P. *obak*.<sup>7</sup> *runethed* or *rimethed*.<sup>8</sup> & þer maistres &. [lf. 21, bk., col. 2.]  
 ont fait maistres et. *Wace*, i.150, l.  
 3168.<sup>9-1</sup> Lines 3503-8 are from the Petyt  
 MS., translating *Wace*, lines 3174-8,  
 vol. i., p. 150-1 of De Lincy's ed.  
 P. has not lines, 3509-10.



|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                     | ilkon for oper better to bide.<br>doun on fote þe moste gan light<br>on fote þei renged þam to fight.] <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                           | 3508 |
| to put the<br>strongest in<br>front,                | þo þat were strong, hardy, & wyght,<br>fformest þey were set to fyght;<br>þey bere þe launces vp and doun,                                                                                                                                                    |      |
| and let none<br>press before the<br>others,         | On þe manere of a scheltroun; <sup>2</sup><br>& non for wele ne for wo<br>Ne scholde byforen <sup>3</sup> oper go,<br>Ne go swyþer þan softe <sup>4</sup> paas,                                                                                               | 3512 |
| but all hold and<br>move together.                  | At ones to smyte, as comeþ þe cas; <sup>5</sup><br>& non schold baldere þan oper be,                                                                                                                                                                          | 3516 |
| Then the                                            | Ne noman [schold] fro oper fle.<br>When þey had set ilk a bataille,                                                                                                                                                                                           |      |
| trumpets ring<br>out, and the<br>fight begins.      | On what manere þey schold assaille,<br>Trompe blewe, & greyles <sup>6</sup> ronge,<br>On boþe parties þer batailles <sup>7</sup> sprong.                                                                                                                      | 3520 |
|                                                     | On ilka side were strokes ynowe, [leaf 15, back, col. 2.]<br>Speres dide þem <sup>8</sup> breste & bowe;                                                                                                                                                      | 3524 |
|                                                     | . After þe speres þat þey <sup>9</sup> set, <sup>10</sup><br>. Syþen wiþ swerd & knyf þey met;<br>Ilk oper on ran ilk oper to styke;                                                                                                                          |      |
| Many are slain.                                     | . Vpon þe dede zede þe quyke.<br>Al to telle hit, nought y ne can,                                                                                                                                                                                            | 3528 |
| The Britons<br>must either<br>fight well or<br>die. | Bot loren was þer many a man;<br>. þe Bretons seye non oper weye,<br>. þey most wel fyghte, oper elles deye; <sup>11</sup><br>. Oper al to wynne, or al to lese,<br>. þat on of þo byhoued hem chese.<br>. þe best fyghters ber <sup>12</sup> forth þe brest, | 3532 |

<sup>2</sup> cheltroun.<sup>3</sup> suld forþer þan.<sup>4</sup> a.<sup>5</sup> whan com a kas. en la grant  
presse, el tas [heap, mass]: Wace,  
i. 151, l. 3184.<sup>6</sup> greilles.<sup>7</sup> to batale.<sup>8</sup> lances did þei.<sup>9</sup> MS. sey.<sup>10</sup> after lances þat þei sette.<sup>11</sup> þer behoued þam lyue or deie.<sup>12</sup> bare.



- . Archers & arblastars þem next;<sup>1</sup> 3536  
 . þe Myle[ne]rs & þe Centaynes<sup>2</sup>  
 . ffolewed faste on þo Romaines;  
 . Sire Galbao,<sup>3</sup> þer gouernour,  
 . He bated hym o þe Bretons stour; 3540  
 . Bot slayn was sire Galbao,<sup>3</sup> kill Galbao,  
 . þat al þer trist was vnto;  
 . & <sup>4</sup> Prosenna was brought right<sup>5</sup> doun, take Prosenna,  
 . On hem þe Bretons wonne þe toun; 3544  
 . Prosenna þey tok a[l] quyk;<sup>6</sup>  
 . þey persed þe Romainys bataille þyk, break the  
 . & al þer force doun þey slow, Roman line,  
 . & to þe cite faste þey drow. 3548 kill their men,  
 . þe toun might þey defende namore, and seize the  
 . þe cheftayns were slayn þat þer wore; city.  
 . þe breþere come vntil þe cite,  
 . & founde þer-inne richesse plente. 3552  
 . Belyn gaf Brenne al þe empyre,  
 . And he was Enperour & sire;  
 . þe folk of hym þey had gret doute,  
 . His fomen þorow force dide þem aloute,<sup>7</sup> 3556  
 . [Long he regned Emperoure<sup>8</sup>]  
 . þat neuere dirst Romain stire in his stour.<sup>9</sup>

- B**elyn to Bretayne þen gan turne, comes back to  
 . He wold no lengere þer sojourne; 3560 Britain,  
 . & when he com vntil þis lond,  
 . þe olde cites þat he fond, rebuilds the old  
 . He closed þem, & mad hem newe, cities;  
 . þe walles he reisede trist & trewe. 3564  
 . In Walys he dide make a toun;  
 . Kaerusik<sup>10</sup> he caldit on bretoun, and in Wales  
 . builds Kaer-  
 . usk,

<sup>1</sup> *nete.*<sup>2</sup> *Milleners & centeners.*<sup>3</sup> *Gabao.*<sup>4</sup> *þat.* [leaf 22.]<sup>5</sup> *was born.*<sup>6</sup> *all quike.*<sup>7</sup> *did he loute.*<sup>8</sup> From the Petyt MS.<sup>9</sup> *romeyn durst stir him stoure.*<sup>10</sup> *kaerusk.*



|                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | ffor hit stande <sup>1</sup> vpon Vsk,<br>A water þat rennes by bank & busk;                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 3568                 |
| afterwards<br>called Kaer-<br>legion,<br>because the<br>Romans<br>wintered<br>there when they<br>came to collect<br>their tribute.                                                    | Sipen men caldit Kaer-legion :<br>List now what was þe enchesoun. <sup>2</sup><br>Whylon <sup>3</sup> Romayns had þis lond<br>In þer demeynes, in þer hond;                                                                                                                                                | 3572                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | Whan Romayns com for þer truage,<br>At Kaerusk <sup>4</sup> þey helde hostage,<br>& þere þey made most dwellynge,<br>ffor þer was gret ese of mikel þyng;                                                                                                                                                  | 3576                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | At Kaerusk <sup>4</sup> in Clamorkan, <sup>5</sup><br>In wynter þey dwelt þer, ilkaman;<br>& for þey had so longe þer hold,<br>Kaer-legion þe name was told.                                                                                                                                               | 3580                 |
| Then came folk<br>who liked short<br>words,<br>and they cut<br>Kaerlegion<br>down to<br>Carlyon ;<br>but Legion<br>means the 6660,<br>Romans who<br>came there to<br>collect tribute. | Com after, men of diuerse <sup>6</sup> language,<br>þat schortly to speken haue in <sup>7</sup> vsage,<br>And schorted hit wyþ name & soun,<br>And afterward kaldyt Carlyon ; <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                 | [leaf 16.]<br>3584   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                       | Bot legion ys noumbre of folk þat wex,<br>Sex þousand, sex hundred, sexti & sex ;<br>þus many alwey fro Rome com, <sup>9</sup><br>þat ay for truwege to Carlyon nom. <sup>10</sup>                                                                                                                         | 3588                 |
| Then Belyn<br><br>returns to Lon-<br>don,<br><br>builds a gate<br><br>with a tower<br>over it,                                                                                        | Whan Belyn Carlion had set,<br>þe walles he reysed, & folk to fet ;<br>To Londone þenne tok he þe way,<br>And þer he dwelled many a day.<br>þer dide he a <sup>11</sup> gate by-gynne,<br>Ouer þe water, þer schipes come ynne ;<br>& ouer þat gate he made a tour,<br>þer-inne he held [ful] long soiour. | 3592<br><br><br>3596 |

<sup>1</sup> *it standes.*<sup>2</sup> *why þe encheson.*<sup>3</sup> *whilom.*<sup>4</sup> *kaerusk.*<sup>5</sup> *clamorgan.*<sup>6</sup> *Com diuers men of þer.*<sup>7</sup> *schorte to speke haf.*<sup>8</sup> *brak þe word to kaerlioun.*

[leaf 22, col. 2.]

<sup>9</sup> *euer fro Rome cam.*<sup>10</sup> *ay vnto kaerlion nam.*<sup>11</sup> *MS. &. P. a.*



|                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| He reysed <sup>1</sup> alle his fader lawes,<br>& dide þem holde by his dawes ;<br>Dom he gaf wysly & right,<br>Trowþ held he wel wip <sup>2</sup> al his myght.   | rules wisely,<br>3600                          |
| Mykel pleynte was in his tyme,<br>On no mannes more may men <sup>3</sup> ryme ;<br>Longe he lyuede, longe <sup>4</sup> to welde,<br>& faire he ended in his elde ; | and dies at a<br>good old age.<br>3604         |
| ffor of þat gate þat Belyn aught,<br>Of Belyn [þen] þe name hit laught ;<br>Longe men caldit <sup>5</sup> til now late,<br>After Belyn, Belynes gate ;             | His gate is<br>called Belyn's<br>Gate,<br>3608 |
| . þorow schort langage, y tolde er how<br>Byllyngesgate men calle hit now.                                                                                         | or Billingsgate.                               |

¶ *Hic moriebatur nobilus Belynus.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ¶ Whan he was ded, sire Belyn,<br>þe people for hym hadde sorwe & pyn ;<br>ffor manye a man fol sore gret<br>þat day þat he ys lyf for-let.<br>þey dide make for his honur<br>A barel of gold of his tresour,<br>& brente his body, flesche & bon,<br>Ipe barel of gold þey leid ilkon ;<br>. More worschip þem þought hit so,<br>. þan his body in erthe to do. | His people<br>lament him,<br>3612                                        |
| When þe barel was al dight,<br>. & wel y-burnuscht fair & <sup>6</sup> bryght,<br>Vp yþe Tour þey made a stage,<br>& heye it henge bifore <sup>7</sup> þe passage,<br>þat alle þat passed, more & lasse,<br>Schold preyse <sup>8</sup> Belyn for his prowesse.                                                                                                   | burn his body,<br>and put the<br>ashes in a gold<br>barrel,<br>3616      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | which they<br>hang up in the<br>Tower<br>for honour to<br>Belyn.<br>3624 |

<sup>1</sup> raised.

<sup>2</sup> at.

<sup>3</sup> of no man more may we.

<sup>4</sup> þe lond.

<sup>5</sup> called.

<sup>6</sup> barred all & burnessid.

<sup>7</sup> & hang it befor.

<sup>8</sup> Praised. [leaf 22, back.]



## ¶ Gurgoynt Rex.

Gurgoint suc-  
ceeds Belyn,

and rules well.

The Danes stop  
paying their  
tribute,

[leaf 16, col. 2.]

so he invades  
and beats them,

kills their king,

takes hostages  
from them, and  
sails homeward.  
Near the Ork-  
neys  
he meets 30  
ships

under Pantalius,

After Belyn, Gurgoint his sone  
Hadde þe heritage þorow<sup>1</sup> resone. 3628

Gurgoynt Beretruk, þus was his name;  
Of gret godnesse he bar þe<sup>2</sup> fame;  
Pes to loke, & ryght to holde,  
He lykned his ffader, Belyn þe bolde. 3632

þat Belyn left, he heldit wel;  
Noiaunce had he neuere a del,  
Bot þe Daneys,<sup>3</sup> þey forsok  
To gyue truage þat Belyn tok. 3636

Gurgoynt þoughte he hadde ryght þer-ynne,  
His truwage he wolde al gate wynne;  
His host he gadered, & schipes<sup>4</sup> did come;  
þey set vp sail, & forþ þey nome. 3640

To bataille þey samnde, boþe partys,  
Bot Gurgoynt wan þer sone þe pris;<sup>5</sup>  
Hym self yn bataille slow þe kynge,  
& tok homage of ilka lordynge; 3644  
& his truwage dide restore,  
Als his fader had hit byfore.

When he had take of hem ostage,  
Gurgoynt forþ went on his viage: 3648

He passed forþ by Orkeneye;  
pritty schipes he mette in weye,  
Charged wyþ folk<sup>6</sup> & wyþ vitaille,  
Bot þey ne wyste whider to saille; 3652

Pantalius, þer maister hight,  
þat mayntende hem, & held to ryght.  
Gurgoynt asked what men þey were,  
& what þey soughte, & why come þere. 3656

<sup>1</sup> *be.*

<sup>2</sup> *a man of gode þerof had.*

MS. *Dameys*. P. has *danes*.

<sup>4</sup> *he gadred schippes.*

<sup>5</sup> P. wrongly transposes this line  
and the one above it.

<sup>6</sup> *Charged full.*



- Pantalius spak ful curteysly.
- " We ar men of pes, sekyng auowery,
- " Wey-farende men þat wolde haue gryþ;
- " We aske þe leue to speke þe wyþ." 3660
- þe kyng ne wolde no pes<sup>1</sup> breke,  
Wyþ loue he gaf hem leue to speke.  
He saide, " We ar men of diuerse lynage,  
" Exiled of Spayne, comen by þys ryuage, 3664
- " ȝyf þat we any stede fond,
- " On to reste, a certeyn lond.
- " ffor oper half ȝer<sup>2</sup> þus haue we went;
- " Hunger, þurst, cold, haþ vs schent; 3668
- " Many a cost haue we þorow sought;
- " Lond on to lende, ne fond we nought;
- " & we ar alle onoyed þer fore,
- " ffor oure trauaille & grete lore. 3672
- " Bot, lord, ȝyf hit were ȝour wylle,
- " Suffre vs to reste on þy londe stille!
- " Seruise þer fore we wole þe do;
- " þy men bycome, ȝyf þou wilt so." 3676
- Bot Gorgoynt wolde þem nought graunt  
Of his to haue a remenaunt;  
Nought for þy he gaf hem conseil  
Toward Irlond to sette þer sayl; 3680
- & of his schipes he lente þem tweye,  
To techen hem þe ryghte weye.—
- ¶ Irlond þat tyme was bygged no þynge  
Wyþ hous<sup>3</sup> ne toun, ne man wonynge.— 3684
- So longe þey sailled, þe se þorow ronne,  
þat algate to Irlond þey wonne;
- þey stryken sayl, & anker cast,
- Vp to lande þey ȝede ryght fast; 3688
- Al þey founde wast<sup>4</sup> & wylde.
- who says that  
they are  
wanderers
- banished from  
Spain, and  
seeking land to  
settle in;
- but none have  
they found:
- will Gurgoynt  
let them settle  
in his land?
- Gurgoynt re-  
fuses,
- and tells them  
to go to Ire-  
land,
- which was then  
uninhabited.
- The Spaniards  
sail there,
- land,

<sup>1</sup> *Pes wild nouht þe kyng.*<sup>2</sup> *a ȝere & half. An et demie,*  
*Wace i. 159, l. 3337.*<sup>3</sup> *londes.* [leaf 22, back, col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> *att fond þei wildernes.*



|                |                                              |      |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------|------|
|                | . þey spredde hem aboute in ilkan ylde ;     |      |
| plough, build, | Sone þey maden eryl <sup>1</sup> feld,       |      |
|                | þey logged hem, & tymber <sup>2</sup> teld ; | 3692 |
| and multiply,  | þer folk wax faste, & fostred more,          |      |
|                | & tyled þe lond aboute ay whore.             |      |

¶ *Pantalyus primus Rex Hibernie.* [lf. 16, bk., col. 1.]

|                                                       |                                                    |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------|
| and make Pantalius the first king of Ireland.         | Pantalius, þey maden hym kyng ;                    |      |
|                                                       | . In Irlond þen made he <sup>3</sup> first wonyng. | 3696 |
|                                                       | When Gurgoynt had þem þider ysent,                 |      |
| Gurgoynt comes back to Britain, and dies in 30 years. | Hom vntil his lond he went ;                       |      |
|                                                       | . þritty ȝer in þys lyf gan lende ;                |      |
|                                                       | At Kerlyoun he made hys ende.                      | 3700 |

¶ *Gwyntelyn Rex, cuius vxor Marciena Sapiens fuit.*

|                                  |                                                          |      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Gwyntelyn succeeds ;             | Whan Gurgoynt hadde don his fyn,                         |      |
|                                  | Regned <sup>4</sup> his sone Gwyntelyn ;                 |      |
| and his wife Marcyne             | A god man was for þe maystrie,                           |      |
|                                  | & his wyf highte dame Marcyne.                           | 3704 |
| is wise, and makes the           | Dame Marcyne was mikel of <sup>5</sup> pris ;            |      |
|                                  | Of landes lawe scheo was ful wys ;                       |      |
|                                  | Scheo studyed faste to make þe lawe.                     |      |
|                                  | . ffor hure þey caldyt by þat dawe,                      | 3708 |
| law Marcyne,                     | In Bretons tyme, als y wene,                             |      |
|                                  | þey calde þat lawe Marcyne.                              |      |
|                                  | ffro kyng to kyng þat lawe men wrot,                     |      |
| or Marchenlage, which still pre- | . & Englysche kynges ȝit hit wot ;                       | 3712 |
|                                  | Marchenlage, þe Englisch hit calde ;                     |      |
|                                  | . In eyghte <sup>6</sup> schires þat lawe ȝit men halde, |      |

<sup>1</sup> *mad ardaue.*

<sup>2</sup> *timbred.*

<sup>3</sup> *ireland mad he.*

<sup>4</sup> *after him com.*

<sup>5</sup> *in.*

<sup>6</sup> *auht.* [leaf 23.]



. Gloucestre, Chestre, Warewyk, Oxenford, vails in eight  
 . Hereforde, Wynchestre,<sup>1</sup> Schropschire, Stafford. English shires.  
 And Gwyntelyn & Marcyen, 3717  
 A knaue child hadden þem bytwen.

### ¶ Syluyus Rex.

¶ Syluius his name þey told,  
 & er he were seuen ȝer old, 3720  
 Deyde his fader: þat tyme here Gwyntelyn  
 He regned namore bot ten ȝere. dies.  
 After Gwyntelyns deces,  
 Kepte Marcyen þe lond yn pes; 3724  
 & when þat he was wel of elde, His widow  
 þat he coupe þe londes welde, reigns till her  
 Scheo hym dide coroune kyng;— boy  
 . Y telde ȝow his regne in alle<sup>2</sup> þynge;— 3728  
 Stalworth he was, yn armes<sup>3</sup> bone; Sylvius is  
 Bot after his fader he deyde<sup>4</sup> sone. crowned;  
 but he dies  
 soon,

### ¶ Kynmar Rex.

þenne com his heir, Kynmar, her,<sup>5</sup>  
 . & regned<sup>6</sup> on & twenty ȝer. 3732  
 DANEUS his broþer þen hadde<sup>7</sup> þe lond; and is suc-  
 . Ten ȝer he regned, wyþ werre he fond. Rex. ceeded by Kyn-  
 mar, and he  
 by Daneus,

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. rightly substi-  
 tutes *Wircester* for this:—

*Gloucester. Wircester. Herford.*  
*Werwik.*

*Oxenford. Schropschire. Chester.*  
*staford.*

<sup>2</sup> & he regned in att þe.

<sup>3</sup> was tiff.

<sup>4</sup> die.

<sup>5</sup> *Kymare his sonne his heire was*  
*here.*

<sup>6</sup> he lyued.

<sup>7</sup> siþen had.



¶ De Morpydeo Rege Bastardo.

whose bastard  
son, Morpydus,

a wrathful man,  
conquers the  
land.

When angered,  
he will kill any  
man ;

but when not  
angry, he is  
very good,

liberal,

gracious,  
and meek.

The duke of  
Morreve in-  
vades Northum-  
berland.

Morpidus at-  
tacks and kills  
him,

þys Daneus hadde on bastardie <sup>1</sup>  
A sone þat wan hit wyþ maistrie ; 3736

Morpydus, <sup>2</sup> hit seys he hight ;  
He was a merueillous <sup>3</sup> mody knyght.  
þorow hardynesse wan hit of chaunce ;  
Egreliche <sup>4</sup> he tok vengeance, 3740

Hys ire, when hit on hym ran,  
ffor nought wold <sup>5</sup> he slo no man <sup>6</sup> ;  
ffor loue wold <sup>5</sup> he noman spare,  
þe <sup>7</sup> whyles þat his wrathe ware. 3744

In al þe regne ne was þer non  
So fair of vertues als he on.  
Hys body was gent, & fair of vis ;  
Til alle he gaf gyftes of pris ; 3748

Out of mesure þen was he large, [leaf 16, back, col. 2.]  
Tresour to holde ne made he charge.

þe <sup>7</sup> while his ire was a-weye,  
Al wold <sup>5</sup> he do þat men wold <sup>5</sup> seye, 3752

. & also meke was as a child,  
. Tyl þat his wrap wax <sup>8</sup> on hym wyld.

In Morpidus tyme þat was so stout,  
þe duk of Morreue robbed a-bout ; 3756

Northumberland gan he waste ;  
& Morpydus til hym gan haste,  
And angerly <sup>9</sup> gan hym assaille,  
& þer hym slow in pleyn bataille. 3760

þus seide men, & zit mes seys, <sup>10</sup>  
þat hit was proued (y not what weys)

<sup>1</sup> *bascardie*. The second scribe  
of P. writes from here to l. 3965.  
See *qwen*, l. 3881, note.

<sup>2</sup> *Morwidus*. *Morbidus* in l. 3755 ;  
*Morpidus* in l. 3758, 3763, &c.

<sup>3</sup> *Ouer mesure was he*.

<sup>4</sup> *Irouslík*.

<sup>5</sup> *wild*.

<sup>6</sup> *a man*.

<sup>7</sup> *To*.

<sup>8</sup> *Bot whan his wrathe was*.

<sup>9</sup> *egrelike*. [leaf 23, col. 2.]

<sup>10</sup> *& zit sais*.



- þat Morpidus slow mo men,<sup>1</sup> alone,  
 þan alle his host[e] dide ilkone.  
 When he had slayn al þat he myght,  
 & was al wery more to fyght,  
 þe bodies<sup>2</sup> he dide brenne of þo,  
 Er his grete ire myght ouer go.  
 þe<sup>3</sup> tyme þat he was best in elde,  
 & stalwordest hym self to welde,  
 A best com out of þe Irysche se  
 & destruyed al þe contre;  
 An hydous best was hit by sight,  
 'Monstre Maryne' men seide hit hight;  
 & som men caldit 'Marebellew,'<sup>4</sup>  
 So wonderful best no man þer knew.  
 (Swylk calle men 'Monstre,' als y fynde,  
 . þat lymes hauen<sup>5</sup> out of kynde;  
 . þat hauen<sup>5</sup> lymes more or lesse,  
 . 'Monstre' men seis þat swilkon ysse.)<sup>6</sup>  
 . 'Marebellow'<sup>7</sup> ys þe se hound:  
 . I not wheþer hit suiymmes<sup>8</sup> or is atte ground.  
 Was non þat wonede by þe se syde,  
 þat durste for þat best abyde;  
 Man & best he swelwed & et<sup>9</sup>;  
 þat he ouertok, on<sup>10</sup> lyue ne let.  
 ¶ Morpidus herde þerof gret cry;  
 Hys herte was bold & euere<sup>11</sup> hardy,  
 On himself he affyed so,  
 Allone, þe best he zede hym to,  
 & faught wyþ hym,—hit was folye  
 On hym self so mykel forto affie;<sup>12</sup>—
- 3764 and slays more  
men than all  
his host does.  
 3768 He burns the  
bodies of his  
foes.  
In his time  
 3772 comes out of  
the Irish sea  
a hideous  
marine monster,  
or Marebellew,  
 3776  
 3780  
 3784 that eats every  
one it gets hold  
of.  
Morpidus  
 3788  
 3792 boldly goes  
against the  
monster,

<sup>1</sup> *sleu me.*<sup>2</sup> "All alive," says Wace, l. 3463.<sup>3</sup> *Be.*<sup>4</sup> *marine bélue*, Wace, i. 166.  
Lat. *belua maritima*, *De Lincy*, ib.<sup>5</sup> *has.*<sup>6</sup> *es.*<sup>7</sup> *Mare Bellu.*<sup>8</sup> ? MS. *smymmes*. *suimmes*, P.<sup>9</sup> *ete . . lect.*<sup>10</sup> *of.*<sup>11</sup> *ouer.*<sup>12</sup> *mikil affie.*



|                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| attacks it with a<br>spear,            | Hym self alone <sup>1</sup> þe best assailed,<br>Gret hardynesse hym non <sup>2</sup> ne failled;<br>Wyp spere first he til hym schet; <sup>3</sup><br>& wounded hym þat was so gret.        | 3796 |
| and then a<br>sword.                   | Whan he had schoten, & til hym cast,<br>þenne wyp swerd hew on hym fast.<br>Ouer neygh he cam in þat fyghtyng:                                                                               |      |
| The monster<br>swallows Mor-<br>pidus, | He gaped wyde, & swelwed <sup>4</sup> þe kyng.<br><sup>5</sup> [þus gate deid sir Morpidus;<br>So did þe best þat swalud him <i>thus</i> .] <sup>5</sup><br>ffor þe kyng men made gret mone, | 3800 |
| but is killed it-<br>self.             | þe bestes dep confortd ilkone.                                                                                                                                                               | 3804 |

## ¶ Gorbodyan rex.

|                                                    |                                                                                                                                          |                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Of Morpidus's<br>five sons,                        | Morpydus hadde sones fyue,<br>& alle þey leftym byhinde alyue. <sup>6</sup><br>Gorbodyan, fairest of flour,<br>& Argayl, & sire Elydour, | 3808               |
|                                                    | Iugenes, <sup>7</sup> & sire Perodour,<br>. Alle fyue were kynges of honur.                                                              |                    |
| Gorbodian suc-<br>ceeds him, a<br>true, wise, man, | Gorbodian was flour & pris,<br>He was trewe, feyghtful, <sup>8</sup> & wys;<br>Neuere kyng wyp so mykel loue                             | [leaf 17.]<br>3812 |
| loving truth,                                      | Ouer no lond regned <sup>9</sup> aboue,<br>Neuere louede he no lye, <sup>10</sup><br>No dide men wrong, lowe ne heye. <sup>11</sup>      | 3816               |
| and doing<br>right.                                | He was kyng ful mesurable,<br>To don alle right he was ful stable; <sup>12</sup><br>Loue & pes his tyme was ryf;                         |                    |

<sup>1</sup> *Al on him self.*<sup>2</sup> *Hardines of hert.*<sup>3</sup> *launce first he to him scet.*  
[leaf 23, back.]<sup>4</sup> *opind his mouth & sualhid.*<sup>5-5</sup> From the Petyt MS.<sup>6</sup> *all left be-hind him on liue.*<sup>7</sup> Vigenius, *Galf. Mon.* i. 18.<sup>8</sup> *rihtfull.*<sup>9</sup> *Ouer lond ne folk ne was.*<sup>10</sup> *witand he ne leih.*<sup>11</sup> *dide wronge to man þat deith.*<sup>12</sup> P. wrongly omits this line.



Ten ȝer he lyuede þer inne his lyf.  
In Trenouante þer he lys,  
His broþer hym leyde at his deuis.

3820 He reigns 10  
years,

### ¶ Argayl Rex.

Argayl, þat next hym was born,  
Was kyng as he had be byforn.  
Wykkedly þen gan hym falle,  
ffor he discorded wyþ hem alle;  
þe godmen he abesed<sup>1</sup> mykel,  
& auaunsed þo þat were swykel;  
þe tresor þey hadden, he it hem reft;  
He loued wel lyes;<sup>2</sup> þe soþes he left;  
Trowe men ne louede he nought;  
Glad was he whan wo was wrought.  
þe barons conseilled þeym bytwene;  
þe lond þey refte hym quyt & clene.

3824 and is suc-  
ceeded by his  
bad brother  
Argayl,

3828 who puts down  
the good, lifts  
up the deceitful,  
  
and loves lies.

3832  
  
His barons turn  
him out,

### ¶ Elydourus Rex.

þenne corouned þey sire Elydour,  
Man of pite & of socour.  
Argail, þat was dryuen out,  
He ȝede to prynces ouer al about  
ffor help to haue his regne ageyn;  
Bot his trauaille was al in veyn,  
Non wolde helpe restore his perd;  
þen lyued he ffyue ȝer in pouert.  
Sone afte[r] þe ffyue ȝeres ende,  
Elydour þorow a wode schold wende,  
ffor to pleye by o ryuer;  
þat wode, men caldit Calduter.<sup>3</sup>

3836 and make his  
brother Eli-  
dour king.  
Argail in vain  
seeks help to  
recover his  
land,

3840

and lives five  
years in  
poverty.

3844

Then he meets  
Elidour,

<sup>1</sup> *abeissed . . . aueanced.*

<sup>2</sup> *Blēpely wild lie.*

<sup>3</sup> *kalamiter.* [leaf 23, back, col. 2.]

Galatère, *Wace*, l. 3570, where  
Brenne fought Belin, p. 107, l. 3025  
above.



|                                                                |                                       |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|
| prays for<br>mercy,<br>which Elidour<br>grants, and then       | Argail þer sire Elydour mette;        |      |
|                                                                | . On knes sire Elydour he grette,     | 3848 |
|                                                                | & asked hym grace & mercy;            |      |
|                                                                | & he hym graunted al redy;            |      |
| takes Argail to<br>Aclud, and<br>keeps him in his<br>own room. | On hym he hadde gret pyte,            |      |
|                                                                | þat in pouerte schold hym se.         | 3852 |
|                                                                | His armes abute his nekke he kast,    |      |
|                                                                | . His grete pouerte he pleyned fast;  |      |
|                                                                | . Whan he had longe ment his mone,    |      |
|                                                                | Tyl Aclud þey wente ilkone;           | 3856 |
|                                                                | In his chaumbre he dide hym be,       |      |
|                                                                | þat non hym wiste bot in pryuate.     |      |
|                                                                | . Hereþ now of sire Elydour,          |      |
|                                                                | . How he dide his broþer gret honour. | 3860 |

### ¶ De pietate Elydory.

|                                                               |                                                                 |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Then Elidour<br>shams illness,<br><br>sends for his<br>barons | ¶ Elydour feyned hym sik to lye,                                |                    |
|                                                               | & seide he hopede <sup>1</sup> forto deye.                      |                    |
|                                                               | After his barons þenne he sent,                                 |                    |
|                                                               | And þey alle til hym went;                                      | 3864               |
| to come and<br>see him,                                       | A day was ordeyned for to be,                                   | [leaf 17, col. 2.] |
|                                                               | þat þey schold visiten <sup>2</sup> hym, & se;                  |                    |
|                                                               | Wypoute noyse til hym schold <sup>3</sup> go,                   |                    |
|                                                               | On alone, wypouten mo,                                          | 3868               |
| and swears<br>them separately                                 | & speke softe & priuely,                                        |                    |
|                                                               | ffor he ne moughte suffre no cri.                               |                    |
|                                                               | Ilkon dide þe kynges wille,                                     |                    |
|                                                               | As þey come yn, þey held hem stille;                            | 3872               |
| to do homage<br>to Argail.                                    | & als þey comen, þe kyng hem tok,                               |                    |
|                                                               | & dide þem sweren on þe bok                                     |                    |
|                                                               | ffor to don Argail homage;                                      |                    |
|                                                               | Were he neuere of so hey parage,                                | 3876               |
|                                                               | Wold he, ne wolde, <sup>4</sup> þat scholde <sup>3</sup> he do, |                    |

<sup>1</sup> *hopid*, expected.<sup>2</sup> *suld viset*.<sup>3</sup> *suld*.<sup>4</sup> *wild he ne wild*.



Oper þe dep schold he<sup>1</sup> go to.  
 þus sonderlypes<sup>2</sup> he dide þem swere,  
 . Tyl Argayl schulde þey faip<sup>3</sup> here. 3880

¶ Deposito Elidoro, Argayl iterum factus est Rex.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When <sup>4</sup> þey had alle sworn an op<br>Tyl Argail, wer hem lef or loþ,<br>Elydour & þey alle went<br>To ʒork, & helde a Parlement.<br>Elydour þer þe coroune leued,<br>And set hit vpon Argailles heued,<br>& seide, "here gyue y þe Argayl<br>"þe coroune of Bretayne holyke al."<br>þan seide men of sire Elydour,<br>þat he of pite was fruyt & flour,<br>þat forsok þe regalte, <sup>5</sup><br>& gaf hit his broþer for pite ;<br>. þerfore in ilka lordes <sup>6</sup> hous<br>Was he cald Elydour Pytous.<br>¶ Argail amended his maners,<br>. & louede his barons, & m[a]de þem pers ; <sup>7</sup><br>Was non of hem so mesurable,<br>Ne of his word so wys & stable ;<br>Alle his wykked tecches he left <sup>8</sup><br>. When [he] had take þe crown <sup>9</sup> eft ;<br>. Alle hym louede þat hym er hated,<br>. ffor alle his vices were abated.<br>Ten ʒer he regned in honour,<br>& syþen <sup>10</sup> fel in a langour,<br>& ended his lif fair & wel :<br>. þey byried hym at Karlel. | <p>They all hold a<br/>         Parliament at<br/>         York.</p> <p>3884</p> <p>Elidour sets his<br/>         crown on Ar-<br/>         gail's head,<br/>         and gives up to<br/>         him the rule of<br/>         Britain.</p> <p>3888</p> <p>3892</p> <p>3896 Argail mends<br/>         his manners,</p> <p>3900 gives up his<br/>         wicked tricks,<br/>         and all men<br/>         love him.</p> <p>3904 He reigns 10<br/>         years,<br/>         dies, and is<br/>         buried at Kar-<br/>         lel.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> Or ye dede be suld.

<sup>2</sup> sunder leps (separately).

<sup>3</sup> To Argaitt suld þei feche þe bere.

<sup>4</sup> Qwen.

<sup>5</sup> regaunte.

<sup>6</sup> lordyng.

<sup>7</sup> his pes.

<sup>8</sup> tecchis left.

<sup>9</sup> whan ke toke ye croune.

<sup>10</sup> syn.



¶ *Iterum elegerunt Elydorum.*

Elidour is  
chosen king,

but his brothers  
Jugens and  
Peredur rebel  
against him,

take him,  
prison him in  
London,

Sire Eliadour eft þey ches,  
þat loued so mikel pite & pes.

3908

Bot Iugens & Perodours  
Agayn hym gonne be<sup>1</sup> werreours;  
Pryuely gadered þey partye,  
& tok hym al wyþ tricherie;  
At Londone þey dide hym in hold,  
In a prison hard & cold.

3912

¶ *De falsitate fratrum.*

and divide his  
land,

Jugens taking  
Northumbria,

and Peredur  
the rest.

In seven years  
Jugens dies  
heirless,  
and Peredur  
has all Britain

till he dies of  
fever.

Then Elidour  
is crowned  
again.

He sets right  
the wrongs  
done by his  
brothers,

Perodour & Iugenes,  
þey parted al þis lond, & ches:  
Iugenes tok, as hym þought best,  
By northen Humber, Est & West.  
Perodour hadde þat oþer partie,  
& in a þrowe al þe seignurye;  
ffor Iugenes lyued bot seuen ȝer,  
Wythouten heyr, quyt & cler.

3916

¶ Perodour gan hit þenne vnderfonge;  
Bot he reioysed hit nought<sup>2</sup> longe,  
ffor þe ffeurynges<sup>3</sup> deþ hym tok;

[leaf 17, back.]

3920

. Wyþ synne hit wan, wiþ sorewe hit fursok.<sup>4</sup>

¶ þen brought þey forthe sire Elydour, **Rex.**  
& corouned hym wyþ honour.

3928

When he had take<sup>5</sup> þe coroun,  
. He dide þat tyme þe folk somoun  
To se þe skapes his breþere had don,  
& amended hem al so son.

3932

Of folyes was he god iustice,  
. He refte nere man his fraunchise;

<sup>1</sup> *him were.*<sup>2</sup> *ne ioyed it neuer.* [leaf 24, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> *ferynges.*<sup>4</sup> *schame for soke.*<sup>5</sup> *þris had he takyn.*



He gaf ensample of alle wysdam,  
 þat helden þe lond, or after hym cam ; 3936  
 Large of herte, of wyllle fre, is generous and  
 He hight Elydour of pyte ; good,  
 In al his tyme hit was hende,<sup>1</sup> dies,  
 In alle godnesse his lyf gan ende ; 3940  
 In Aldeburghe castel was he leyð, and is buried in  
 . 'Klud'<sup>2</sup> þat tyme þe name was seyð. castle.

A fter Elydour of pite, Elidur is suc-  
 A His cosyn hadde þe regalte, 3944 ceeded by  
 þe eldest sone of Gorbodian, Rex. Argail's son,  
 Syþen Argailles sone,<sup>3</sup> þat hight Morgan. Rex. Morgan,  
 þys Morgan was god & meke,  
 His gode wyl was nought to seke ; 3948  
 He was god lord<sup>4</sup> wypouten ylle, a good lord,  
 And alle hym louede wyþ gode wyllle. loved by all.  
 After Morgan, Argailles sone,<sup>3</sup>  
 ꝛ Ermaneus<sup>5</sup> hadde þe regyone. Rex. Him, his bad  
 Eumanus<sup>5</sup> was Morganes broþer, 3953 brother Erma-  
 Bot his maners were alle oþer, neus succeeds,  
 He coupe hym neuere ffrendes gete ;  
 Tyl al he hadde ire & hate,<sup>6</sup> 3956  
 & alle hated hym right sore, and all the peo-  
 ffor he dide ylle to alle þat wore ; ple hate him  
 Ilkon þey found hym vengauce ful, so for his evil  
 Wyþ schrewes he dide hem many yl pul.<sup>7</sup> 3960 doings  
 Six wynter he regned in his lyf,  
 In felonye & in stryf:  
 Alle þe comune seide right þus,  
 . " We haten hym, so doþ he vs." 3964

<sup>1</sup> *att ende*, and leaves out the next line.

<sup>2</sup> *Glud*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Argailessone*.

<sup>4</sup> *Lord titt att*.

<sup>5</sup> *Emmanius*, or *Ennuanius*. En-  
 niaunus, *Geoff. Mon*.

<sup>6</sup> *niht and hete*.

<sup>7</sup> with *yuel men did him manie a  
 putt*.



|                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                |                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| that they drive<br>him out of the<br>land,                                                     | . þer-opon conseilled þey,<br>& dryue hym out of þe lond away ;<br>. þus þey reftym <sup>1</sup> þe kynedam,<br>. & noman wyste whe[re] <sup>2</sup> he bycam. | 3968                   |
| and chose Ju-<br>geneus's son,<br>Yvalon, king.                                                | þenne made þey a parlement,<br>& chosen a kyng þorow alle assent,<br>[þe comon of þe region] <sup>3</sup><br>Iugeneus sone, sire Yualon. <sup>4</sup>          | Rex. 3972              |
| He rules well,                                                                                 | Yualon gaf hym to trauaille,<br>. Al to gode þat myghte auaille ;<br>He dide make many estres,<br>And lykned muche his gode auncestres ;                       | 3976                   |
| but soon dies,                                                                                 | Bot his lyf lasted <sup>5</sup> no stounde, [leaf 17, back, col. 2.]<br>Ouer sone had deþ cast hym to grounde.                                                 |                        |
| and Peredur's<br>son is made<br>king.<br>Then come in<br>succession,<br>Gerunces,<br>Catillus, | When Yualo had mad his endyng,<br>Perodours his sone þey chose kyng.                                                                                           | Rex.                   |
|                                                                                                | After Perodours sone deces,                                                                                                                                    | 3981                   |
|                                                                                                | Was Elydours sone Gerunces ;                                                                                                                                   | Rex.                   |
|                                                                                                | After Gerunces was Catillus ;                                                                                                                                  | Rex.                   |
|                                                                                                | After Catillus was Coyllus ;                                                                                                                                   | Rex.                   |
| Porrex,<br>Cheryn,                                                                             | þenne was Porrex ; & þenne Cheryn,<br>He þat was a drynkere of wyn ;                                                                                           | Reges. 3986            |
|                                                                                                | Ouer mykel drynke he ches ;                                                                                                                                    |                        |
| (a terrible<br>drunkard,                                                                       | Hys ʒougthe al þer-inne he les,                                                                                                                                | 3988                   |
|                                                                                                | In drynke & in dronkenesse,<br>Dide he neuere oþer prowessse.                                                                                                  |                        |
| but his three<br>sons were all<br>kings succes-<br>sively :)                                   | By his wyf had he þre sones,<br>& alle were kynges (þe story mones)                                                                                            | 3992                   |
|                                                                                                | Ilkon were after oþer :                                                                                                                                        |                        |
| Fulgenius,<br>Eldadus,<br>Androcheus.                                                          | ffulgenius was þe eldest broþer ;<br>Eldadus, & Androcheus,<br>þis oþer breþere men caldem <sup>6</sup> þus ;                                                  | Rex.<br>Reges.<br>3996 |

<sup>1</sup> *reft him.* [leaf 24, back.]<sup>2</sup> *where.*<sup>3</sup> *From P.*<sup>4</sup> *Vigenius . . Idrovallo, Geoff. M.*<sup>5</sup> *bot lif was.*<sup>6</sup> *þe toþer breþer called men.*



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lytel while was ilkon kyng,<br>Alle made þey sone þer endyng.<br>Androcheus sone highte Vryan,<br>He regned a ȝer, & deide þan.<br>After Vrian, Elyud men ches;<br>He hadde his tyme þe lond yn pes.<br>After Elyud, Endacius; <sup>1</sup><br>After þan, Doten <sup>2</sup> ; syþen Gurguttus;<br>Syþen was Merian, fayr in chere,<br>He coupe of wode & of ryuere;<br>In alle manere venurye,<br>Hym lyked best swylke maystrie.<br>Ladies bed hym of loue ynow,<br>Bot to non of hem wolde his loue bow,<br>Bot onlyke til his owen wyf;<br>So ended Merian his lyf.<br>After Meryan was Bleludo<br>His sone, & couthe of wode also;<br>Large he was, & gaf bleþely,<br>He spared to <sup>3</sup> non þat was worþy;<br>Alle men hym loued, for he was fre,<br>Erl, baron, & knyght, & oper meyne. | Rex. 4000<br>Rex. 4006<br>Rex. 4008<br>Reges. 4012<br>Rex. 4016 | Then Uryan,<br>Elyud,<br>Endacius,<br>Doten, Gurgut-<br>tus,<br>and Merian,<br>skilful in hunt-<br>ing,<br>and loved by<br>ladies.<br>Then his son<br>Bleludo reigns,<br>a free giver,<br>and loved by<br>all. |
| After þys noble Bleludo<br>Cam Capes,—hys name was so;—<br>After Capes, Oeneus;<br>After Oeneus cam Sysillius;<br>After Sysilly com Glegabret, <sup>4</sup><br>A syngere of þe beste get; <sup>5</sup><br>Of song & of mynstrecye<br>Alle men gaf hym þe maystrie;<br>þe note he coupe of alle layes,<br>Of mynstrecye al þer assayes; <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Rex. 4020<br>Rex. 4024<br>Rex. 4028                             | Then reign<br>Capes,<br>Oeneus,<br>Sysillius,<br>and Glegabret,<br>the best singer                                                                                                                             |

<sup>1</sup> Cledamus, *Geoff. M.* Clédan-  
tius, *Wace*, l. 3737.

<sup>2</sup> Cletonus, *Geoff. M.* Cloten,  
*Wace*, l. 3738.

<sup>3</sup> of.

<sup>4</sup> *Blegabret.*

<sup>5</sup> þat was a syngere of þe get.

<sup>6</sup> & mynstralcie aȝ þe saies.



|                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
|                                                                                    | He coupe so mykel musyk & thume<br>pat þe people [saide <sup>1</sup> ] in his tyme<br>He was þe best <sup>2</sup> of ffythelers,<br>Of iogelours & of sangesters,                                                                                                  | 4032                                   |
| and fiddler of<br>his time ;                                                       | ffor he was euere glad & <sup>3</sup> gamen,<br>ffele in seruise held he samen.<br>Of ioeye & song was his spel ;<br>Was he neyper irous ne <sup>4</sup> fel,                                                                                                      | 4036                                   |
| a gentle man,<br>who lives in<br>melody<br>till he dies.                           | . Bot led his lyf in melodye<br>. Ynto þe tyme pat he schold deye.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | [leaf 18.]                             |
| Next, Archyval<br>is king ;                                                        | After hym was Archyuaul, <sup>5</sup><br>Pesable he was,—God haue ys saul!—                                                                                                                                                                                        | Rex.<br>4040                           |
| then Eldol,<br>with a fool's<br>poll,<br>a lecherous<br>beast,                     | After hym was his sone Eldol ;<br>Hit seys he hadde a folted pol,<br>ffor he was euere lecherous,<br>Of women ouer coueytous.                                                                                                                                      | Rex.<br>4044                           |
|                                                                                    | A gentil womman, where he myght <sup>6</sup> fynde,<br>Were scheo neuere so noble of kynde,<br>Wheper scheo were wedded or nought,<br>His lecherie he wolde haue y-wrought ;                                                                                       | 4048                                   |
| who spares no<br>woman, wedded<br>or single ; for                                  | & for þencheson of his folye,<br>Men hated hym, as was worthie.<br>After Eldolf, þys folted fon,<br>Cam his sone hight Redyon.                                                                                                                                     |                                        |
| which, men<br>hate him.<br>Then reign<br>Redyon,                                   | . Redyon hadde þe kynedam,<br>& after Redyon, Redryk cam ;                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Rex.<br>4053                           |
| Redrik,<br>Famour,<br>Myssel,<br>Pyrchel<br>(who has<br>wonderfully<br>fair hair). | Syþen was ffamour, & kyng Myssel; <sup>7</sup><br>And after hym com kyng Pyrchel:<br>Pyrchel had fair heued wip her,<br>þorow gift of kynde pat was er ; <sup>8</sup><br>Som what was hit fair out of kynde,<br>. pat ʒut of his her <sup>8</sup> write men fynde. | Rex.<br>Reges.<br>Rex.<br>4057<br>4060 |

<sup>1</sup> said.<sup>2</sup> was god.<sup>3</sup> ? for in or to.<sup>4</sup> not irous no.<sup>5</sup> Archmaul, or Archiuaul.<sup>6</sup> if he mot. [leaf 25.]<sup>7</sup> & Famur & Missel, for which  
Geoff. Mon. has "Samuelpenissel,"  
and Wace "rois Phanupenisel," l.  
3799.<sup>8</sup> heire.



|                                          |      |               |
|------------------------------------------|------|---------------|
| After hym cam Caporus ;                  | Rex. | Caporus,      |
| Sypen, his sone Elignellus. <sup>1</sup> | Rex. | Elignellus    |
| pys Elygnellus, fol wys was he,          |      | (a wise man), |
| Man of mesure wel auyse ;                | 4064 |               |
| After hym regned his sone Ely            | Rex. | and Ely,      |
| ffully to-gidere zeres fourty ;          |      |               |
| . A noble man was he, & a wys ;          |      | a noble man,  |
| . ffaire he deyde, & at Castre lys.      | 4068 |               |

¶ Lud Rex.

|                                                 |      |                |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|----------------|
| Helye had pre sones wyghte :                    |      | who has three  |
| pe eldest sone, Lud he highte ;                 |      | sons,          |
| pat oper was Cassibalan ;                       |      | Lud,           |
| pe prydde, Nemny, <sup>2</sup> a doughti man.   | 4072 | Cassibalan,    |
| Lud was eldest, most of age,                    |      | and Nemny.     |
| Hym fel to haue pe heritage ;                   |      | Lud is first   |
| Knyght was he fol god in stour,                 |      | king,          |
| & lyberal man, & vyaundour ; <sup>3</sup>       | 4076 | makes feasts,  |
| Cites & casteles newe dide set ;                |      | builds cities, |
| Of pe olde mad he god recet ; <sup>4</sup>      |      |                |
| He louede Londoñ best of alle,                  |      | puts a wall    |
| perfore vmb-closedit wyþ a <sup>5</sup> walle ; | 4080 | round London,  |
| Manye ar pe clos me <sup>6</sup> se zit stande, |      |                |
| pat Lud dude make, hym <sup>7</sup> lyuande.    |      |                |
| ffor barons & for burgeys sake,                 |      |                |
| Grete stedes til hem dide he make ;             | 4084 |                |
| perfore men seye, & zit men may,                |      |                |
| pat neuere bifore vnto pat day                  |      |                |
| Made kyng byforn so fele cites,                 |      |                |
| Ne castels, ne clos, pat zit men ses.           | 4088 |                |

<sup>1</sup> Cligueillus, *Geoff.* ; Elignellus, *Wace*. MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup> Colb. De Lincy, i. 181, note <sup>a</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *Nenny* (Nennius, *Geoff.* and *Wace*, l. 3812).

<sup>3</sup> & metegift man viandoure. [lf. 25.]

<sup>4</sup> gude rescette.

<sup>5</sup> he closed it about with.

<sup>6</sup> meñ.

<sup>7</sup> whils he was.



|                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| which was first<br>called Treno-<br>vant,                                                       | ¶ Tyl Luddes tyme men held þat haunt,<br>To calle London Trenouant;<br>ffor þe loue of Lud ylk del,<br>þat woned þer longe, & closed hit wel,                     | 4092 |
| then (after Lud)<br>Kaer Lud,                                                                   | . & was of hym so gret renoun;<br>Kaer Lud þer fore men calde þe toun.<br>þenne come opere men were straunge; [lf. 18, col. 2.]                                   |      |
| then London,<br>then (by the<br>Saxons)                                                         | ffor þe Lud, London dide hit chaunge,<br>þenne come Saxoyus, men of Angle,                                                                                        | 4096 |
| Ludden,                                                                                         | . Als þey coupe on þer speche iangle,<br>ffor Kaer-lud caldyt Ludden,<br>þat coupe þey best com on & ken;                                                         | 4100 |
| and (by the<br>Normans)                                                                         | þenne come þe Normaunz & þe Frankisch,<br>Coupe nought com on to calle hit þis;<br>ffor London, Londres þey hit calde;                                            |      |
| Londres.                                                                                        | ʒit Frensche men þat name <sup>1</sup> halde.                                                                                                                     | 4104 |
| (Through<br>foreign kings<br>who've con-<br>quered this<br>land,<br>names have got<br>changed.) | ffor regnyng <sup>2</sup> of kynges straunge,<br>ffor diuerse speche, langage men chaunge,<br>þat han þis lond often ywonnen,<br>. & þorow riden & þorow ronnen,  | 4108 |
|                                                                                                 | & <sup>3</sup> þe names chaunget þer fore;<br>. Som names ar lasse, & som ar more;<br>I hope fo <sup>4</sup> tounes þat now are<br>Hold þer names þat first ware. | 4112 |
| When Lud dies,                                                                                  | When sire Lud, þe gode kyng,                                                                                                                                      |      |
| he is buried by<br>Ludgate.                                                                     | Was ded, & don was <sup>5</sup> his endyng,<br>Byside his gate þey hym leyd,<br>þat, for his name, Ludgate ys seyð:                                               | 4116 |
| He leaves two<br>infant children,                                                               | . He yt made, & he yt aughte,<br>. Lodgate for hym þe name laughte.<br>Of Lud were left two childre ʒyng;<br>Lond to kepe coupe þey no þyng:                      | 4120 |

<sup>1</sup> *oñ frankis ʒit þat name men.*

[leaf 25, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *be remouyng.*<sup>3</sup> *Ere.*<sup>4</sup> MS. *þe*. P. reads *fo*.<sup>5</sup> *& mad.*



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                         |                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| þe eldest hight Androcheus,<br>þat oper men calde Tenuacius. <sup>1</sup><br>Cassibolon was þer em,<br>. þe nexte sibbe of þat tem,<br>He kepte þe childre & þat lond;<br>Men held hym kyng, faire he þem fond;<br>He mayntende þe lond to ryght,<br>He was curteys & doughty knyght;<br>þe folke he coupe wel iustise,<br>Of hem he hadde fair seruise. | <p>4124</p> <p>4128</p> | <p>and their uncle,<br/>Cassibolan,<br/><br/>is made king.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When þe childre were of elde<br>þat þey coupe lordschip welde,<br>In to <sup>2</sup> erldomes he dide þem seyse,<br>. Worschipfoly, al atter ayse.<br>Androcheus hadde, þorow assent,<br>Londoñ, & þe erldom <sup>3</sup> of Kent;<br>þat oper broþer had þe baylle<br>Of þe erldom of Cornewaille.<br>When ilk was sesed in his erldam,<br>þey were cald Erles, whare þey cam.<br>To whyle þe kyng & his cosyns<br>In loue loken ar þer lynes,<br>Richesse þey hadde ynow to wylle,<br>& of no lond dredde þey non ylle,<br>Ne neuere þurt hem haue <sup>4</sup> drad no tyde.<br>. Bot ouerwenyng of herte pride<br>Ros a discord hem bytwene,<br>þat longe in þys londe was sene;<br>. flour hundred ȝer hit lasted, & nyne,<br>. In þis lond þat firste pyne;<br>. Hit bigan, as ȝe may se,<br>. Of Cassibolon & Androche,<br>þorow whilk sorewe þe Romainys wan | <p>4132</p> <p>4136</p> <p>4140</p> <p>4144</p> <p>4148</p> <p>4152</p> | <p>When the chil-<br/>dren come of<br/>age,<br/><br/>he gives Andro-<br/>cheus London<br/>and Kent,<br/>and Tenvacius<br/>Cornwall.<br/><br/>All is happy<br/>while they<br/>agree;<br/><br/>but pride raises<br/>strife between<br/>them, which<br/>lasts 400 years,<br/><br/>and makes Cas-<br/>sibolan pay</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> Tenuantius, *Geoff.* Tenuenci-  
us, *Wace.*  
<sup>2</sup> *tuo.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Erldon.*

<sup>4</sup> *thorte haf.* [leaf 25, back.]



tribute to the  
Romans,

Truage of Cassibolan,

pat myghte nere be wonne<sup>1</sup> byforn, [leaf 18, back.]

. Tyl þer loue þorow pride was lorn; <sup>2</sup> 4156

. Whyle þer loue to-gedere held,

whom they  
always beat be-  
fore.

. Might neuere no Romayn bide þem in feld,

. pat þey ne chased, þorow force of fight,

. Cesar of Rome, & al his myght. 4160

This is how it  
comes about.

. How hit bygan bytwyxt þem bale,

. Listep, & y schal rede þe tale.

### ¶ Exe de Iulio Cesare, Romanorum Inperatore.

In Cassibolan's  
time is Julius  
Cæsar emperor  
of Rome,

In þe tyme of Gassybolan,

Iulius Cesar, a myghty man, 4164

pat tyme was Emperour of Rome.

Of alle knyghtes<sup>3</sup> he bar þe blome,

Of alle þo pat men of<sup>4</sup> herd,

ffor he conquered al þe werd; 4168

and a doughty,  
learned,

Als he was doughti knygt, & god,

In clergie wel he hym vnderstod,

wise,

Of conseil he was man ful wys,

& of manhod he bar þe pris; 4172

and liberal man.

Hys gyftes he gaf largely,

. He wyste to wham hit<sup>5</sup> was worthi;

. ffals & felon he coupe wel knowe;

. þe ouer proude, he held þem lowe. 4176

The Romans  
are masters of  
all lands around  
them,

þe Romayns were þan of pride,

ffor þey hadde wonne on ilka side;

þe londes oueral þem aboute,

. & gauen þeym truage for doute. 4180

but Cæsar  
wants to con-  
quer farther-off  
lands.

When Iulyus had wonne þus þere,

ffurþer he þoughte to conquere;

. Long nold he soioune<sup>6</sup> ne rest,

<sup>1</sup> *mot neuer wyn it.*

<sup>2</sup> P. omits the next four lines.

<sup>3</sup> *of knyghthede.*

<sup>4</sup> *tyme were.*

<sup>5</sup> *whom &.*

<sup>6</sup> *ne wald he soioune.* [lf. 25, bk. cl. 2.]



- . Tyl he had wonnen toward þe west. 4184  
 Hardy Iulius, knyght war & wys,  
 . Preysed of prowessse, of poer had<sup>1</sup> pris ;  
 He gadered hym of knyghte zonge,  
 . Of alle nacions þat speke wyþ tonge, 4188  
 & tok his leue at [þe] Romainys,  
 . To wende fro þem for longe teymes ;<sup>2</sup>  
 . West, he seide he wolde wende,  
 To wynnen to þe wordles ende.<sup>3</sup> 4192
- Whan Iulyus was wel dight ynow, Cæsar wins  
 He passed Burgoyne & Moun Gow.<sup>4</sup>  
 ffyrst he wan al Burgoyne,  
 ffraunce, Nawuarre, & Gascoigne, 4196 all France,  
 Peytowe, Normandye, þe lesse Bretayne ;  
 Syþen went agayn til Ale mayne ; Germany,  
 Alle he wan hit ar he þepen<sup>5</sup> nam,  
 Sipe to Boloyne & to fflaundes he cam, 4200 and Flanders,  
 & al conquered vnto þe se,  
 Al gaf truage to Rome in fe.  
 . Whan al was wonne, wel heldyn<sup>6</sup> payd,  
 . By þe se a day he zede & playd ; 4204  
 Toward þe se his eye<sup>7</sup> gan kest,  
 & faste byheld toward þe west :  
 " What ys zone lond y zonder se,  
 " & what [folk]<sup>8</sup> euere þer may be ? " 4208  
 Men hym tolde hit was a lond  
 þat folk of Troye first[e] fond ;  
 Brutus highte þer firste cheftayn, [leaf 18, back, col. 2.]  
 & after hym hit hatte Bretayn ; 4212  
 þe heires þat of hym ar comen,  
 In heritage þey haue hit nomen.

<sup>1</sup> pruesse powere &.  
<sup>2</sup> to wyne londes lungeteyns (les  
 lontains, Wace, i. 186, l. 3922).  
<sup>3</sup> werldis end.  
<sup>4</sup> Fr. Mon Gius. Lat. Mons Jovis.

<sup>5</sup> þien.  
<sup>6</sup> held him.  
<sup>7</sup> egh.  
<sup>8</sup> folk/.



¶ *Dicta Iulii Inperatoris.*

Cæsar says  
that, as Brutus  
came from  
Æneas,

who held the  
Roman land,

he can of  
course claim  
Britain.

Besides, as

Britain and  
Rome were  
both Belin's,  
he Cæsar, who  
has Rome now,  
can claim  
Britain too.

He'll summon  
the Britons to  
yield;

and if they  
won't, will  
claim their  
land.

So Cæsar  
writes a letter

Iulys answered & seide right þus:  
 “ Wel han y herd of sire Brutus; 4216  
 “ He saide he com of Eneas kynde,  
 “ Bot ryghtly born nought we fynde;  
 “ He com of Eneas, þat held þo landes  
 “ þer Rome our cite now yn standes; 4220  
 “ ȝyf he were born of Eneas kyn,  
 “ þorow kynde y sette chalange þer yn;  
 “ Chalange y wole þat lond þorow ryght,  
 “ þat Eneas kynde gete þorow<sup>1</sup> myght. 4224  
 “ Ys þat lond — loke<sup>2</sup> ȝe me kenne —  
 “ þat bolde Belym was of, & Brenne,  
 “ þat oure cite of Rome wan,  
 “ Oure se[n]e, &<sup>3</sup> destroyed ilkaman? 4228  
 “ Wel schal þey wite, whyle<sup>4</sup> y am her,  
 “ þat Rome ys now of more power!  
 “ & right hit were, & reson hit welde,  
 “ þat þey til vs truage schold ȝelde: 4232  
 “ ȝone ilde was Belynes, & Rome was his;  
 “ Gret skil haue y þenne þorow þys,  
 “ ffor to sette chalange þer-inne,  
 “ þat his lond was, þorow right to wyne. 4236  
 “ By letteres woly hem first somoune,  
 “ To here þer wyl, what þey responce;  
 “ Nought ne woly passe þe se  
 “ Til y wyte how þey answer me. 4240  
 “ ȝyf þey to my pes wille hem chese,  
 “ & ȝeld hit me, þey schol nought lese;  
 “ ȝyf þey ne wol nought bot wyþ stour,  
 “ y dereyne þe lond for our.” 4244  
 þay dide Iulys write a bref,  
 & schewed hem how he was chef,

<sup>1</sup> *had of.* [leaf 26.]

<sup>2</sup> *Es ȝon þat Ilde þat.*

<sup>3</sup> *our seene* (senate).

<sup>4</sup> *witte titt.*



- . & how his kynde fyrst hit wan:  
 . Of Eneas com Brutus, þat man, 4248  
 . & syþen was Belynes heritage;  
 He wold hit wynnen, or take *truage*.  
 þe *lettere* com to Cassibolan,  
 . þat he schold bycome sire Iulyus<sup>1</sup> man. 4252  
 . Cassibolan brak þe seal o sunder;  
 Of *truage* askyng he had wonder;  
 Anoper *lettere* dede he wryte þare, 4256  
 & sent hit ageyn vntil Cesar  
 Al in ire & in tene,  
 & þe *lettere*<sup>2</sup> þus mykel wol mene:

asking for  
Britain or tri-  
bute for it.

Cassibolan

answers it

in wrath,

¶ *Rescripcio Cassibolany ad Inperatorem.*

- ¶ “ Cesar,” he saide, “ we haue meruaille and says,  
 “ & gret desdeyn, wypouten faille, 4260 “ We wonder at  
 “ þat of ȝow Romainys rennes silk los,—  
 “ & to longe hit lastes after hit<sup>3</sup> gos,—  
 “ þat ar of so gret couetyse  
 “ þat non bot ȝe may haue fraunchise; 4264 the covetous-  
 “ And al þe syluer & al þe gold, ness of you  
 “ & alle lynage þat lyuen on mold, Romans, who  
 “ Til ȝoure dom wil ȝe þem drawe; [leaf 19.] have endless  
 “ Wy[p]oute reson, wypoute lawe, 4268 treasure,  
 “ Al þe tresor ȝe drawe ȝow to:  
 “ What wil ȝe þer-wyþ al do?  
 “ & we þat are atte wor[l]des ende, (What can you  
 “ & in an ylde lyue<sup>4</sup> & lende, 4272 do with it all?)  
 “ ȝyt ȝe ne wil<sup>5</sup> passe vs forby and yet  
 “ Wypoute *truage* askyng<sup>6</sup> greuously! want tribute  
 “ & we<sup>7</sup> þat schal & ben<sup>8</sup> ȝour peres, from us who are  
 “ ȝit wolde ȝe make vs truagers! 4276 your equals!

<sup>1</sup> *suld com Iulius þat man.*

<sup>2</sup> *writte.*

<sup>3</sup> *& fer it.*

<sup>4</sup> *lif.* [leaf 26, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *wilt ȝe nouht.*

<sup>6</sup> *bot ȝorgh treuage.*

<sup>7</sup> MS. *were.*

<sup>8</sup> *we þat suld be,*



|                                                             |                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| If you want<br>tribute,                                     | . " perfore, Iulius, ȝyf þou wilt assay,<br>" & of þy comynge <sup>1</sup> sette vs a day,<br>" Y trowe þou schalt fol euele <sup>2</sup> spede. |      |
| come and fight<br>for it.                                   | . " Com on, & proue hit in <sup>3</sup> dede!                                                                                                    | 4280 |
| We have been,                                               | " ffor euere ȝit haue we lyued fre<br>" Y þis lond, bot now for þe,                                                                              |      |
| we will be, free!                                           | " & schul we lyue als <sup>4</sup> frely<br>" As ȝe Romainys; & reson whi:                                                                       | 4284 |
| Like you, we<br>are sprung                                  | " Syn we ar comen alle of o <sup>5</sup> kynde,<br>" & of o rote & of o rynde, <sup>6</sup>                                                      |      |
| from Æneas.                                                 | . " pat ys to seyn, <sup>7</sup> of Eneas,<br>" As frely born as euere þou was.                                                                  | 4288 |
|                                                             | " perfore, ȝyf þou þe bypoughtest<br>" In skil & reson as þou oughtest, <sup>8</sup>                                                             |      |
| You should not<br>want to enslave<br>us.                    | " þou scholde nought put vs to <sup>9</sup> seruage,<br>" Syn we ben of þyn owen <sup>10</sup> lynage;                                           | 4292 |
|                                                             | " We schul be peres to ȝow of Rome,<br>" In alle fredam haue euenly dome.                                                                        |      |
| We wonder at<br>a noble man<br>conceiving<br>such villainy! | " Vs wondreþ at ȝowre nurture of <sup>11</sup> pris,<br>" pat swylke vilenie in þe now lys,                                                      | 4296 |
|                                                             | " In seruage to put vs to!<br>" & we wot nought how we scholde do,<br>" We neuere lered, ne nought wil lere,                                     |      |
|                                                             | " ȝyf þat we may, in none manere.                                                                                                                | 4300 |
| Our kin have<br>never known<br>servage;                     | " Of alle oure kynde, y ne wyste no man<br>" pat couþe of seruage, <sup>12</sup> ne ȝut ne can;                                                  |      |
| neither do we<br>know it.                                   | " Ne we knowe nought on what wyse<br>" We scholde serue seruage seruise.                                                                         | 4304 |
|                                                             | " ffire we ar, so schol we be;<br>" & ȝyf God wyl, we schul <sup>13</sup> for þe!                                                                |      |
| God helping,<br>we'll keep free                             |                                                                                                                                                  |      |

<sup>1</sup> to com titt vs &.<sup>2</sup> suld litell.<sup>3</sup> If þou wild proue it with.<sup>4</sup> we suld life also.<sup>5</sup> for ȝe & we ere att a.<sup>6</sup> comen of a rute & a rynde. Fr.  
orine (origin), Wace, i. 190, l. 4010.<sup>7</sup> for we ere comen.<sup>8</sup> & after skill & reson wrouhtis.<sup>9</sup> þou suld not sette vs in.<sup>10</sup> þat ere of þin awen.<sup>11</sup> Als þou ert Ientitt & of grete.<sup>12</sup> seruise.<sup>13</sup> Cesar.



- “ Wite þou wel by oure answe[re],  
 “ While<sup>1</sup> we may oure seluen were, 4308  
 “ & fende oure lond & oure fraunchise,  
 “ Of vs getestow neuere seruise!  
 “ Ne neuere truage schol we þe gyue;<sup>2</sup>  
 “ þat ys to seye, whiles þat we lyue, 4312 while we live.”  
 “ We wol be fre, & holde honurs,  
 “ As dide byforn our auncessours.”  
 . To Iulius swylk a lettere þey sent; Cæsar then  
 & when Iulius wiste þat entent, 4316  
 þat ȝif he wold haue any truage,  
 Nede byhoued<sup>3</sup> hym make passage,  
 þenne dide he make schipes & barges, prepares a fleet;  
 ffoure score wyþ grete charges,— 4320  
 So grete byfore were neuere for were, [leaf 19, col. 2.]  
 Ne non þat so gret<sup>4</sup> charge myght bere,—  
 Wypouten oþer schipes smale,  
 . þat we nought telde byforn in<sup>5</sup> tale. 4324

### ¶ De nauigio Cesaris.

- ¶ When Iulius Cesar was al redy,  
 To go to schipe þey made a cry; his men go on  
 His folk com in-to schipe right fast, board,  
 & drowe þer saylles vp heye on<sup>6</sup> mast; 4328  
 þen blew þe wynd, and gan hem dryue,  
 At an heuen þey gon vp aryue,<sup>7</sup>  
 þer Temese & þe se to-gydere comen. sail off,  
 Bot er Cesar hadde vp lond ynomen,<sup>8</sup> 4332 and land at  
 þer was sprad by þe se side Thames haven.  
 . ffair folk to fighte, Cesar tabyde:<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *titt.* [leaf 26, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *ne treuage I gyf þe a gyue.*

<sup>3</sup> *nedeli borde.*

<sup>4</sup> *heuy.*

<sup>5</sup> *were not telde of in þat.*

<sup>6</sup> *did drawe þe saile on þe.*

<sup>7</sup> *ryue.*

<sup>8</sup> *þe land had nomen.*

<sup>9</sup> *to bide.*



|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Cassibolan opposes Cæsar at Dover.                             | Cassibola[n] <sup>1</sup> was redy at Douere,                                                                                                                                                               | 4336 |
| His steward, Sir Belin, has summoned the British host:         | . & renged his men by þe ouere; <sup>2</sup><br>Hys styward highte sire Belyn,<br>Of conseil was he god & fyn;<br>He hadde do comen þorow <sup>3</sup> somons<br>On alle <sup>4</sup> half, erles & barons. | 4340 |
| Androcheus with his Londoners,                                 | þe kynges neuews com wyþ gret <sup>5</sup> partie,—<br>To hem he myghte hym well <sup>6</sup> affye,—<br><sup>7</sup> þe eldest highte Androcheus,<br>þat oþer broþer Temuacius;                            | 4344 |
| Tenuacius with his Cornishmen,<br>Nemnius, with his Kentish,   | Androcheus & his Loundreneys, <sup>7</sup><br>Tenuacius wiþ his Cornwaleys,<br>Sire Nemnius, sire of Kanterbire,<br>þe noblest of al þe empire:                                                             | 4348 |
| and the kings of Scotland,<br>North Wales,<br>and South Wales. | þe kynges broþer was Sire Nemny,<br>Androcheus was in his compaigny,<br>. & oþer folk [ful] gret plente.<br>Wyþ osten were þer kynges þre:                                                                  | 4352 |
|                                                                | Erudyonus, þere <sup>8</sup> Scottes kyng,<br>Britalles wyþ al þe Walsche garderynge;<br>Of South Walys com kyng Ignarcet;<br>þyse þre were in [o] <sup>9</sup> bataille set,                               | 4356 |
|                                                                | Wyþ here frewille þyse þre cam<br>ffor to defende þe[r] <sup>10</sup> fredam.<br>Ilkon gaf conseil to go<br>Er þe Romainys were logged mo;                                                                  | 4360 |

<sup>1</sup> Cassibolan.<sup>2</sup> him bi þe ses ouere. (A.-Sax. ofer shore).<sup>3</sup> don com þorgh.<sup>4</sup> ilk.<sup>5</sup> neuoz þe to.<sup>6</sup> on þo tuo he myght.<sup>7-7</sup> Androcheus & his lordynges, londreis.<sup>8</sup> þe. [leaf 26, back, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> a.<sup>10</sup> þar.



¶ *Bellum inter Romanos & Cassibolanum.*

- ¶ Er þey hadde ony recet taken, before they are  
 . þey þoughte þey wolde hem a-wake[n].<sup>1</sup> in fortifications.
- When alle were set in ylka bataille,  
 & schept ho scholde formest assaille,<sup>2</sup> 4364
- Toward þe Romyans faste þey nomen. The Britons  
 Whan Cesar sey þat þey scholde comen, advance.  
 He cried to hys men "armes ȝow!  
 " þe Bretons ar redy, & come right now." 4368 Cæsar calls his  
 Sone were þer bataille<sup>3</sup> to-gedere met, host to arms,  
 & to bataille renget & set: and a fierce  
 and a fierce battle follows.
- <sup>4</sup> [þe parties smert smyten togidre,  
 With scharp suerdes oñ helmes gan glidre. 4372  
 þer schaftes þorgh schoten body & schelde;  
 Many on felt, & many vphelde;  
 Many tome sadiſt & hors ostray,  
 Many doubti knyght doun þer lay;] 4376  
 Many on wounded lay þer to blede,  
 & manyon stode, som fledde for drede;  
 Knyghte<sup>5</sup> iustedede, archers drowe,  
 On boþe parties fol manie þey slowe, 4380 The archers kill  
 þei come so pikke & so smert, [leaf 19, back.] many.  
 & perced brunyes,<sup>6</sup> brest & hert;  
 Wyp wyfles<sup>7</sup> strike, wyp axes hewe,  
 Schuldres, schankes, & hedes, doun hewe;<sup>8</sup> 4384 Axes hew off  
 Alle was strewed þe grene gras limbs and  
 Wyp blod & bowaille<sup>9</sup> & heuedes fresch. heads.  
 fful hard was þer, & moste<sup>10</sup> nede;  
 þe quikyke vpon þe dede ȝede; 4388 The grass is  
 strewed with  
 bowels and  
 heads.

<sup>1</sup> or þei wild hald þam waken.<sup>2</sup> whilk of þam suld formast saile.<sup>3</sup> oſtes.<sup>4</sup> The next six lines are from P.<sup>5</sup> knyghtes.<sup>6</sup> hauberk.<sup>7</sup> (A.-S. *wifel*, arrow, dart, javelin.) *stanes*, P.<sup>8</sup> þe schuldres þe schankes doun threwe.<sup>9</sup> bowes.<sup>10</sup> no ferly was it behoued.



|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Cæsar fights<br>bravely against<br>his foes ; | Vpon þe dede þey stode to fight,<br>& eueryche <sup>1</sup> slow þat he slo myght.<br>Cesar hadde in his bataille<br>Knyghte þat coupe boþe fende & saille ;                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4392 |
| none can stand<br>against him.                | He peyned hym to do þeym wo,<br>& faste he folewede hem for to slo ;<br>Was þer no man <sup>2</sup> þat he smot,<br>þat ful sore on hym ne <sup>3</sup> bot ;                                                                                                                                                                                     | 4396 |
| Nemnius works<br>with Andro-<br>cheus,        | Mighte þer noman lyue no stounde,<br>þat of his swerd[e] laughte <sup>4</sup> wounde.<br>Androcheus com wyþ þo of Kent,<br>& Nemnyus, to-gedere þey went,<br>þey set o þe Romainys a gret <sup>5</sup> partie,<br>& beot hem doun <sup>6</sup> as men hardie,<br>& seide "Turne we vpon Sezar !"<br>& als þey rod, þey were hym <sup>7</sup> war. | 4400 |
| and attacks<br>Cæsar.                         | Nemmyus fyrst ferde in þe stour,<br>& bated hym opon <sup>8</sup> þe emperour,<br>And ful glad was þat he myght<br>Wiþ so noble <sup>9</sup> a lordyng fyght.                                                                                                                                                                                     | 4404 |
| Cæsar                                         | Cesar perseyued þat he cam,<br>A-geyn his scheld a strok <sup>10</sup> vp nam ;<br>Cesars swerd <sup>11</sup> was out ful sone ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 4408 |
| hits Nemnius<br>on the head,                  | Nemny to smyte he was al bone,<br>& Nemny on þe heued he smot ;<br>Hit was trenchaunt, ouer fer hit bot,<br>Bot Nemny bar vp his scheld,<br>His heued a party lowe hit held ; <sup>12</sup>                                                                                                                                                       | 4412 |
| and breaks his<br>crown,                      | ȝit þe strok sank so doun,<br>þorow þe helm he <sup>13</sup> brak his croun ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 4416 |

<sup>1</sup> *alle.*<sup>2</sup> *was it non.* [leaf 27.]<sup>3</sup> *þat ne þe dede sone him bote.*<sup>4</sup> *toke any.*<sup>5</sup> *þei gadred þam a gode.*<sup>6</sup> *batailed þam.*<sup>7</sup> *of him.*<sup>8</sup> *abatid him on.*<sup>9</sup> *grete.*<sup>10</sup> *his stroke his scheld.*<sup>11</sup> *Cesar suerde.*<sup>12</sup> *lowe a parti helde.*<sup>13</sup> *schelde &.*



- Lite failled þat he ne had  
 Clouen þe hed, þe<sup>1</sup> dynt was sad; 4420  
 Bot Nemny bar þe scheld o sker,  
 & Iulius smot his swerd ouer fer, but catches his  
 þat he ne myghte drawe hyt ageyn; sword in Nem-  
 Napeles he dide þerto his peyn, 4424 nius's shield,  
 He drow þe swerd, Nempny þe scheld,  
 Ilkon wel his owen held;  
 Nemny wilde haue turnd & went,  
 Bot Iulius wiþ þe draught hym hent; 4428  
 I hope Iulyus had drawn hit out,  
 Bot Nemnyus fol[k]<sup>2</sup> were egre & stout.  
 Androcheus, Nemnyus neuw,<sup>3</sup> and, for fear of  
 Wyþ hem of Kent dide gret prow; 4432 Androcheus, is  
 On ilka side þey slowe aboute,  
 & Cesar saw hym self in doute, obliged to flee  
 & fro þem fledde in to þe feld, and leave it  
 & lefte his swerd in Nemnyus scheld. 4436 there.  
 Nemny saw of help ynow, Nemnius pulls  
 He turned þe scheld, þe swerd out drow, out Cæsar's  
 & wiþ þat swerd forþ he faught; sword,  
 Bot þo þat þer-wyþ woundes laught, 4440 and kills whom-  
 Myghte þey neuere haue medecyne, [lf. 19, bk., col. 2.] soever he hits  
 Bot to þe deþ by-houed hem<sup>4</sup> pyne. with it,  
 Als he þus faught, þys Nemmyus,  
 He ouer-tok sire Labemnius,<sup>5</sup>— 4444 including La-  
 A lord he was of gret baillye, bemnius, a  
 In Rome he hadde a constablerye,<sup>6</sup>— great lord of  
 Nemnius swilk a strok hym lent, Rome.  
 þat by þe schuldres þe hed of went. 4448  
 How manye þer deide, y may nought ame; Many are  
 Of alle þe fighters y knowe no name; killed.

<sup>1</sup> *Clouen þe borde.*<sup>2</sup> *folk.*<sup>3</sup> *neuow.*<sup>4</sup> *þe dede bod þam.* [leaf. 27, col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> *labennius.* (Labienus, *Geoff.* and *Wace.*)<sup>5</sup> *constablie.* (conestablie, *Wace*, i. 198, l. 4177.)



Night sunders  
the hosts.

Bot þer was manyon doun leyd,  
Wel mo þan any man wrot or seyde, 4452  
& wel mo scholde ȝit þat nyght,  
Had þey nought sondred for faute of lyght.<sup>1</sup>

¶ De fuga Romanorum.

The Romans in  
dismay draw off,

þen com þe nyght, gon was þe day,  
& ilka party ȝede þer way. 4456  
þe Romayns syde was nought payd,  
Logges non hadde, þey were dismayed;  
Wery þey were, & yuel lykande,<sup>2</sup>  
ffor wiþ þe Brutons þey myght<sup>3</sup> nout stande.  
þey toke conseil a-wey to wende, 4461

and sail that  
night to Flan-  
ders,  
to the Britons'  
joy.

No lenger in þys lond to lende;  
ffor þe contre knew þey nought,  
Logge ne recet had þey non wrought; 4464  
To schipe þey wente þat ilke nyght,  
Vntil fflaundes þey fley þer flyght.  
þe Bretons made blisse, ilkon,  
þat þe Romayns were so gon; 4468

But Nemnius

Bot þe kyng made sorewe ynow  
ffor Nemnyus, þat to deþe drow;<sup>4</sup>  
Medicyne myghte non be founde  
þat myghte hele Nemnyus wounde. 4472

dies 15 days  
after, and is  
buried near  
Northgate in  
London,

Of sire Nemny nought elles to seye,  
Bot þe fiftenþe day Nemny gan deye.<sup>5</sup>  
þey buryed hym in a temple gate,  
In Londoñ, atte Northe gate, 4476  
Honurabloker<sup>6</sup> þan an oþer,  
ffor he was þe kynges broþer.

<sup>1</sup> had ne sondred þam & left þer  
fight.

<sup>2</sup> itt likand.

<sup>3</sup> One stroke too many in the m.

<sup>4</sup> Nennius to dede drouh.

<sup>5</sup> he died oñ þe fiftend day.

<sup>6</sup> Honorable more.



- þat swerd he wan of sire Cesar,  
 By hym in graue þey leide hit þar,  
 ffor he was of gret honour,  
 . & he haddyt wonnen y þat stour.  
 þe swerd was of swylk metal,  
 pat who þat wounded were wyþ-al,  
 He ne scholde nought longe lyue  
 ffor medicine men myghte hym gyue.  
 . Why of deþ hit hadde þe gylt,  
 Hit was writen on þe hilt  
 Wyþ lettres of gold, burnusched bryght,  
 pat "Crucia mors" þat swerd hight:  
<sup>1</sup> Hit myghte wel hote "Crucia mors;"  
 Wham hit wounded, hit was ded cors;  
 . & ȝit hit ys seyð y þe Romaunce,  
 . þe enperours swerd was al vengauce.  
 Til þeym of ffraunce cam tidyng tyt,  
 How þe Romayns were desconfit  
 . þorow þe Bretons in pleyñ bataille.  
 þanne mysliked þeym saunz faille,  
 And for cowardes þem selue ches,  
 ffor þey were at [þe]<sup>2</sup> Romayns pes.  
 þey conseilled þem a day certeyn,  
 Vpon Cesar to turne a-geyn;  
 In þer conseil þei seide þus:  
 " Als þe Bretons chased Iulys,  
 " ȝut schul<sup>3</sup> we fonde so to spede,  
 " To do sire Iulius fle for drede.  
 " þe Bretons be nought ȝit so bolde  
 " As we haue ben, [ne] men of tolde,<sup>4</sup>  
 " & so lyghtly dide þem lout!  
 " ȝit schul<sup>3</sup> we fonde to chace hem out.  
 " Hit are ynowe þat first han grace
- De gladio Cesaris.** with Cæsar's sword by his side.  
 4481  
 4484 The sword is the death of whomsoever it wounds,  
 4488 and is called "Crocea Mors."  
 4492  
 4496 When the Gauls hear that the Romans have been defeated,  
 [leaf 20.]  
 4500 they resolve to rebel against them.  
 4504 The Gauls say, that as the Britons  
 4508 are not very bold,  
 and yet can beat Cæsar, so will they,

<sup>1</sup> P. has, for the next three lines,  
 on leaf 27, back,  
 & ȝit men say as sais þe romance.

<sup>2</sup> þe.

<sup>3</sup> ȝit saȝt.

<sup>4</sup> als we ere ne men of tolde.



and put down  
the Roman  
rule.

“ ffor to wynne, & robbe, & chace, 4512  
 “ & sipen turnes *per* praye til pyne;  
 “ Lyghtli þey wynne, lightly þey tyne:  
 “ *per* lordschip ȝit schul we abate,  
 “ ffor alle þe world þey wynne wyþ hate.” 4516  
 þus þey seyde þat þey wold do;  
 & ȝit alday men telle þem so,<sup>1</sup>  
 þat þe Bretons<sup>2</sup> wolde fonde a flyght  
 ffor to felle þe Romayns myght.<sup>3</sup> 4520  
 þat sawe made<sup>4</sup> þeym wylde & wod,  
 & reysed þem more vp in þer mod:  
 But Cæsar soon  
quiets them.

Bot sone þer bost was al in griþ,  
 Whan sire Iulius had spoken hem wyþ. 4524  
 Sire Iulius Cesar was ful queynte,  
 He is cunning,  
can bully  
or crouch,  
Wisdam he coupe, & wordes feynte;  
 A folet coupe he wel adaunte,<sup>5</sup>  
 To proude men *per* wylle graunte. 4528

### ¶ De blandiscione Cesarys.

bribe,  
or be meek.

Wel coupe he paye þe couetous,  
 & wynne<sup>6</sup> þe wille of þe enuyous;  
 & ful wel coupe bere hym meke  
 When his strength<sup>7</sup> was for to seke. 4532  
 He wiste þat þe frenche men<sup>8</sup> were fykel,  
 & how þey forcedem<sup>9</sup> agayn hym mykel;  
 & his men were yuel<sup>10</sup> dight,  
 His men are  
badly off, and  
wounded.  
Wery & wounded al<sup>11</sup> in fight; 4536

<sup>1</sup> teld þam to.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *frensche. bretons*, P. Que  
li Breton mer passeroient, *Wace*,  
l. 4249 (after *Geoffrey*).

<sup>3</sup> *france to help þe romeys to  
fight.*

<sup>4</sup> *mad.*

<sup>5</sup> *a felon* [*Wace*, félon] coupe he  
full wele daunte. [lf. 27, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *He wan.*

<sup>7</sup> *force.*

<sup>8</sup> *wist þe frankis men.*

<sup>9</sup> *forced þem.*

<sup>10</sup> *ille.*

<sup>11</sup> *& weri for-fouhten.*



Leuer hym were in loue þem loute,<sup>1</sup>  
 þan in bataille to ben<sup>2</sup> in doute ;  
 . þe Bretons hadden hasted hem<sup>3</sup> so,  
 . þat tyme in dede myghte þey nought do. 4540  
 . Wyp faire wordes hem to hym drow ;  
 & gaf hem giftes & richesse<sup>4</sup> ynow,—  
 ffor of his giftes he was ful large,  
 . ffor schame þey moughte hym namore charge ;—  
 & more he byhet, þan gyue<sup>5</sup> he myght, 4545  
 þe Bretons to wynne wip force & fight.  
 To pore men he gaf fraunchise,  
 & cleymed þeym quit<sup>6</sup> of þer seruise ; 4548  
 . þo men he hadde flemed<sup>7</sup> þe contre,  
 . To comen ageyn he gaf hem fre,  
 & to haue þer heritage,  
 & restored þeym of here<sup>8</sup> damage. 4552  
 þerfore when þis grete lordynges  
 Seyen Cesar ofre<sup>9</sup> þem swylke þynges—  
 . Gold & syluer atter<sup>10</sup> wille— [leaf 20, col. 2.]  
 In pes þey held hem alle stille. 4556  
 Mikel ys richesse of power !  
 ffor sone had he bated wo & wer,<sup>11</sup>  
 . Sone had he turned wrong to right,  
 . Sone had he blent þe coueytous sight, 4560  
 . Sone made he frend þat er were wrope,  
 . Of Cesar & þe ffrankysche bope ;  
 ffor þo þat hym byforen hated,  
 Wip<sup>12</sup> hys gyftes were alle abated ; 4564

So he speaks  
the Gauls fair,  
and gives them  
great gifts.

He sets free the  
poor,

recalls the  
exiles

to their inherit-  
ance ;

and thus quiets  
the Gauls.

Great is the  
power of  
money !

It turns Cæsar's  
foes to friends,

<sup>1</sup> *luf to loute.*

<sup>2</sup> *com to bataile & be.*

<sup>3</sup> *had þam hasted.*

<sup>4</sup> *giftes riche* ; and leaves out the  
next two lines.

<sup>5</sup> *hette þam if þat.*

<sup>6</sup> *clamé quite, Wace.* Eng. "quit-  
claim."

<sup>7</sup> *þat he had fled.* [Wace, *escil-  
lié*].

<sup>8</sup> *þam þer.*

<sup>9</sup> *sawe Cesar offer.*

<sup>10</sup> *at þer.*

<sup>11</sup> *where* ; and leaves out the next  
two lines, and transposes the two  
next to them.

<sup>12</sup> *for.*



and makes his  
rebels loyal.

Cæsar then gets  
built at Bou-  
logne a wonder-  
ful tower,  
"Ordre ;"

puts his trea-  
sure in it,  
and stays there  
two years

collecting  
money.

Then he makes  
ready

a fleet of 600  
ships,  
and resolves to  
invade Britain.

þat schopen hym yuel<sup>1</sup> & outrage,  
þey diden<sup>2</sup> hym fewte & homage,  
At his conseil for to lende,  
Ageyn þe Bretons ȝyf he wold wende. 4568  
Whan sire Cesar,<sup>3</sup> lord & sire,  
Had pesed & swaged al þer ire,  
He conseilled hym wyþ an engynour,  
& dide hym make a merueyllous tour 4572  
In Boloigne: "Ordre" ys þe name.  
So wrought ys non bot þat same ;  
By-nepen hit is in strange compas ;  
Brod & þykke þe gynnyng was, 4576  
& euere hit nareweþ<sup>4</sup> rysande on heyght,  
& semeþ griller<sup>5</sup> & more streight.  
Selcoupe stages ar þer-ynne,  
Wyndowes cast, coruen wiþ gynne. 4580  
His tresor he leyde þer inne to lok,  
Onlyke þer al þat he toke ;  
& hym self lay in þe tour,  
When he dred hym of<sup>6</sup> his tresour. 4584  
Two ȝer he dwelled þer in ffraunce,  
& dight hit for werre in alle<sup>7</sup> chaunce ;  
He sente to baillifs to gadere hym<sup>8</sup> fees,  
& reisede his truwage of his citees. 4588  
Whan al was gadered on ylk party,  
In Ordre þey leide hit in tresory.  
In two ȝer he dide hym dight,  
& made hym to Brutayne right,<sup>9</sup> 4592  
& dide hym dighte a fflute on flode,  
Sex hundred gret schipes & gode,<sup>10</sup>  
& seide, "ȝit wyly make<sup>11</sup> assay

<sup>1</sup> *compassid foly.*

<sup>2</sup> *mad.*

<sup>3</sup> *Iulius.* [leaf 28.]

<sup>4</sup> *nerewes.*

<sup>5</sup> *grelere* (rougher, sharper).

<sup>6</sup> *for* [de traïson, Wace].

<sup>7</sup> *dighted it for were o.*

<sup>8</sup> *his.*

<sup>9</sup> *vppon þe bretons eftsons to fight.*

<sup>10</sup> *schipes grete & gode.*

<sup>11</sup> *witt mak.*



“ Vpon þe Bretons, spede how<sup>1</sup> y may ; 4596  
 “ Bot ȝif y may conquere Cassibolan,  
 “ Y preise nought elles al þat y er wan ;  
 “ Al my conqueste preise y nought,  
 “ Bot þe Bretons to trewe be brought.” 4600

¶ De subuersione nauigii Cesaris in Tamysia.

|                                                      |                             |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Whan hit was dight, al his flet,                     | Cæsar's fleet,              |
| Wyþ god folk & vitailles set,                        | well equipt,                |
| þe schipes seyled day & nyght                        | sails for the               |
|                                                      | Thames,                     |
| Til þey come in to Temese right. <sup>2</sup>        | 4604                        |
| þus þey wend, þat atte firste tyde                   |                             |
| þer nauye to Londone holy schold <sup>3</sup> ryde ; | to attack Lon-              |
| Alle at ones þe scholde <sup>3</sup> vp saille,      | don.                        |
| & to þe Bretons gyue bataille.                       | 4608                        |
| þe Bretons wist hit wel ynow,                        |                             |
| Bot of þer sleigþe lystneþ now ; <sup>4</sup>        | But the artful              |
| Longe pyles <sup>5</sup> & grete dide þey make ;     | Britons stake               |
| ffaste yn Temese dide þey hem stake,                 | 4612 with piles shod        |
| Euerylkon wyþ iren schod ;                           | [leaf 20, back.] with iron, |
| Ageyn þe schipes stod ilkon <sup>6</sup> od,         | set singly.                 |
| fful wel set, & sykerly ;                            |                             |
| þer myght non wel ascape <sup>7</sup> forby.         | 4616                        |

¶ De bello inter Cesarem & Brutones in Tamysia.

|                                            |                  |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------|
| ¶ Right atte fulle se <sup>8</sup> of flod | Cæsar's ships    |
| Com alle six hundred schipes god ;         | come at full     |
| ¶ Sykerly þey wend haue nomen,             | tide,            |
| ¶ & into Londone at ones comen.            | and make sure    |
|                                            | 4620 of reaching |
|                                            | London ;         |

<sup>1</sup> *if.*

<sup>2</sup> *þei sette vp saille þe schippes kemse*

*þe wynde þam drofe in to temse.*

<sup>3</sup> *suld.*

<sup>4</sup> *bot what þei did listen how.*

<sup>5</sup> *peeles.* [peus ferrés, *Wace*, 4437.]

<sup>6</sup> *ilk an.* [leaf 28.]

<sup>7</sup> *scape.*

<sup>8</sup> *at a folle flowe.*



|                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| but they strike<br>on the piles,<br><br>and sink,                                                                                           | pey ne were wyþynne bot a lite,<br>Or on þe pyles gon þey <sup>1</sup> smyte.<br>per myght men se þat stod on brynke,<br>Schipes in-to þe water synke ;                                                                        | 4624 |
|                                                                                                                                             | pat on vn-to þe toper hurte, <sup>2</sup><br>. þe mastes faste <sup>3</sup> to-gidere burte,<br>& somme ouer-terned, & lay on syde ;<br>Bordes ryuen out holes wyde,                                                           | 4628 |
|                                                                                                                                             | great holes<br>being driven in<br>them,<br>. Ropes ryuereled, & swerued <sup>4</sup> in lyne,<br>. Ilkon dered oper, & dide pyne ;<br>Lond ne hauene myght þey non taken,<br>. So faste on pyles gan þey staken : <sup>5</sup> | 4632 |
| A bad time for<br>them !                                                                                                                    | . In yuel <sup>6</sup> tyme out þey nomen,<br>. Yuel þey ryued þat þider comen ! <sup>7</sup>                                                                                                                                  |      |
| Cæsar                                                                                                                                       | Cesar saw þat grete vnhap,<br>pat in þe water was swylk a trap ;                                                                                                                                                               | 4636 |
|                                                                                                                                             | . Iren-schod was ilka peel,<br>& <sup>8</sup> þoughte þat so was ilka del ;<br>Many of þem turned a-geyn,<br>. & seyde þat wending was in veyn.                                                                                | 4640 |
| orders them to<br>land where and<br>how they can.<br>They do ; and<br>as they are<br>pitching their<br>tents,<br>the Britons<br>attack them | He dide þem alle gon vp to londe,<br>. Man & hors, per þey best fonde ;<br>By bankes vp aboute þey wente,<br>& pyght <sup>9</sup> þeym paulyons & tente.                                                                       | 4644 |
|                                                                                                                                             | Right als þey picched <sup>9</sup> per paulyons,<br>Cam Cassibolan wyþ þe Bretons,<br>. Erles, barons, knyghte, squiers, <sup>10</sup><br>Asperly folle on þe Romayners : <sup>11</sup> —                                      | 4648 |
| fiercely.                                                                                                                                   | His neuew & opere of his <sup>12</sup> kynde,<br>Wyþ alle þe opere þat he myghte <sup>13</sup> fynde,                                                                                                                          |      |

<sup>1</sup> are on þe peles þai gan.<sup>2</sup> hurtle. (hurter, Wace, l. 4347.)<sup>3</sup> falle.<sup>4</sup> reueld suarled.<sup>5</sup> pelis gon þei stake.<sup>6</sup> ille . . nome.<sup>7</sup> Ille þei sailed & þidire come.<sup>8</sup> he.<sup>9</sup> piked.<sup>10</sup> suaynes.<sup>11</sup> fellid on þe romayns.<sup>12</sup> neuoz & his oper.<sup>13</sup> help þat he mot.



- þe kynge asemblede in noble<sup>1</sup> wyse,  
 ffor wiþ þe Bretons was no feyntise:— 4652  
 & at þer logges þer<sup>2</sup> þey hem set,  
 þe Bretons wyþ hem þer þey met.<sup>3</sup>  
 þeyr egre comyng þe Romayns a-boden,  
 A-geyn þe Brutons stifly þey stoden; 4656 The Romans  
stand stifly,  
 Als a wal þe scheltrom held,<sup>4</sup>  
 & ruysed þe Brutons abak<sup>5</sup> in feld.  
 ffirst þe Romayns ful wel stoden,  
 Agayn þe Bretons in bataille zoden,<sup>6</sup> 4660 and at first  
drive back the  
Britons.  
 & fer bakward dide hem go,  
 & manyon slowe, & wroughte wo.  
 þenne was wroþ Cassibolan;  
 ffor tene byfore þem alle he nam,<sup>7</sup> 4664 This angers  
Cassibolan;  
 & bar þe breste on þem by-fore,  
 & after hym þe Bretons gaf<sup>8</sup> bore,  
 & euere was fresche folk comande,  
 And dide þe Romayns ageyn stande. 4668  
 So wyþynne a litel þrowe [leaf 20, back, col. 2.]  
 Men amed þem, & wel hit sowe, brings up fresh  
ones,  
 Two so many Bretons þare  
 As hadde þer Iulius Cesare,<sup>9</sup> 4672  
 & dide þe Romayns a-geyn to fle,  
 & slowe þem, schame was hit to se! and puts the  
Romans to  
flight.

<sup>1</sup> *ascried þam on his.*<sup>2</sup> *as.* [leaf 28, back.]

<sup>3</sup> For the next two lines the Petyt MS. has, on leaf 28, back,—  
*ferweis at þer first comyng.*  
*þer armour herd ye crusse & ryng.*  
*At þer loges þe romeyns biden.*  
*agayn þe bretons stifly riden.*

of which the first two represent the  
 “Dont véissies armes croissir” of  
*Wace*, l. 4366, vol. i. p. 206.

<sup>4</sup> *þer hardynes helde.* (Lor hardi-  
 ment orent por mur, *Wace*, l. 4369.)

<sup>5</sup> *did þe bretons go bak.*<sup>6</sup> *felde zod.*<sup>7</sup> *wan.*<sup>8</sup> *gan.*

<sup>9</sup> Bien se sunt esmé as trois rans  
 De chevalier, tos combatans,  
 Que César n'i ot amené.

*Wace*, i. 206, l. 4377–9.

Britones vero, omni hora affluen-  
 tia suorum augmentati, triplo major-  
 em numerum habebant. *Galf. Mon.*  
 iv. 7 (p. 62, ed. Giles).



¶ De probitate Brutonum.

Cæsar was  
never so cast  
down.

The Britons  
fight like mad.

Cæsar with-  
draws his men  
to their ships,

and is himself  
the last to leave  
the land.

The Romans  
land at Bou-  
logne,  
and stay there  
to recover.

¶ Hardy Cesar, noble kyng,  
pat neuere so bayscht was<sup>1</sup> for no þyng, 4676  
He sey þe force of þe Brutons,  
& hyse to þem hadde no fuysons.<sup>2</sup>  
þe Bretons, as wode, rengede route;  
Of dynt ne dep<sup>3</sup> had þey no doute; 4680  
. þey slowe, & felde, & made þem weye;  
. þey made no force to lyue ne deye.<sup>4</sup>  
. Cesar perceyued þat ful wel,  
He dide turne hys folk ylk del 4684  
A-geyn, & to þer schipes wende;  
Bot hym self lefte til<sup>5</sup> þe last ende,  
A-gayn þe Bretons for<sup>6</sup> to fyght,  
þe whyles<sup>7</sup> his folk to schipe þem dight. 4688  
By þe lond þe schypes did ryde,  
. To kepe his folk at ilka tyde;  
When alle were ynne, & sayl on mast,  
Cesar com yn alder last; 4692  
. & alle þat were of his conrey,  
. Hyed þem faste, & wente<sup>8</sup> þer wey.  
Euene as lyne<sup>9</sup> þe wynd gan dryue;  
At Ordre, his tour, gon þey aryue.<sup>10</sup> 4696  
Cesar soiourned þer ful longe,  
To hele þem þat<sup>11</sup> were wounded stronge,  
& man & hors for to rest,  
And ordeyned for hym what was best. 4700

<sup>1</sup> neuer abaist.

<sup>2</sup> fons (defence, p. 56, l. 1591,  
note 17, above.

<sup>3</sup> dede ne dynt.

<sup>4</sup> or deie.

<sup>5</sup> was in.

<sup>6</sup> to þe bretons.

<sup>7</sup> to whils.

<sup>8</sup> vp with saile & forth. [lf.28,bk.,cl.2.]

<sup>9</sup> als lyn.

<sup>10</sup> did vp ryue. The three lines  
following are in the MS. du Roi 73,  
and the Arsenal 71 (Wace, i. 207),  
though not in the MS. du Roi 27  
that De Liney printed.

<sup>11</sup> hele þat.



|                                                |      |
|------------------------------------------------|------|
| pe kyng of þys lond, <sup>1</sup> Cassibalan,  |      |
| . & þe Bretons ilka man,                       |      |
| Made ioie for þe mykel pris                    |      |
| pat þey had wonnen <sup>2</sup> of Cesar twys. | 4704 |
| þe Romayns, mykel sorewe þey made              |      |
| . pat þe Bretons were so <sup>3</sup> glade;   |      |
| . Cesar & hyse were dismayed,                  |      |
| . Bot þe Bretons were wol payed.               | 4708 |

The Britons re-  
joice at beating  
Cæsar twice,

¶ *Pro Victoria eorum optulerunt solempnem  
sacrificium Diane diis suis.*

|                                                   |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| ffor ioie þey hadden þo batalle wonnen,           |                      |
| & Cesar twyes had ouer-ronnen,                    |                      |
| To God þey highte to make a feste                 |                      |
| Wyþ alle þe comme[n]s lest & meste. <sup>4</sup>  | 4712                 |
| þe day he set of þe sacrificise,                  |                      |
| Hys vow to holde wyþ fair seruise.                |                      |
| Cassibalon sende his messegers                    |                      |
| ffor þe barons, <sup>5</sup> knyghtes, & squiers, | 4716                 |
| Of his demeynes alle þe pytaille <sup>6</sup>     |                      |
| . pat hadde hym serued in bataille,               |                      |
| pat þey scholde <sup>7</sup> alle to London come, |                      |
| . Vp peyne of forfeiture of <sup>8</sup> dome,    | 4720                 |
| . Wyf & child wiþ hem schold <sup>7</sup> lede,   |                      |
| þo þat halp hym in his nede,                      |                      |
| & alle <sup>9</sup> come wiþ herte glad,          |                      |
| In riche atyr, ryght as he bad.                   | 4724                 |
| Man & wyf, & children zonge                       |                      |
| . pat coupe go, & speke wyþ tonge,                | [leaf 21.] All come, |

and resolve to  
hold a great  
feast to God.

Cassibolon  
summons

to London all  
who helped in  
the war,  
as well as their  
wives and  
children.

<sup>1</sup> *kyng douhti kyng.*  
<sup>2</sup> *won.*  
<sup>3</sup> *att* : and leaves out the next four  
lines of verse.  
<sup>4</sup> *comune of þer geste.*

<sup>5</sup> *for barons.*  
<sup>6</sup> *pedaile* (foot-soldiers).  
<sup>7</sup> *suld.*  
<sup>8</sup> *&.*  
<sup>9</sup> *att þei.*



and fair folk  
they are.

Alle þey comen to þe cyte:  
ffairer folk myght no man se;  
& ilkaman after his auenaunt  
Made offrynge, as was his<sup>1</sup> haunt.

4728

§ Exe Sacrificium.

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| The Britons<br>offer up 50,000<br>cows,<br>3,000 hinds,           | § þys feste day þat was so hey,<br>Were offred ffifty <sup>2</sup> þousand ky,<br>& þer-to, þre <sup>3</sup> þousand hyndes,<br>. Wylde walkande by wode lyndes;<br>& an hundred þousand schep;<br>þe noumbre of <sup>4</sup> foules gaf noman kep,<br>. So fele þer were, myght non þem <sup>5</sup> ame,<br>. What of wilde, what of tame.<br>When don was þat sacrefyse,<br>& feste holde in þer beste wyse, <sup>6</sup> | 4732 |
| 100,000 sheep,<br>and birds no<br>end.                            | . Mynstrals bygon to blowe <sup>7</sup> & ryme,<br>. Als þer custume was þat tyme;<br>Knyghtes, squiers, made bourdys,<br>. & hem desgysede in pourpre <sup>8</sup> & bys;<br>& oper bachelers skirmede faste,<br>Wrastlede, lepen, <sup>9</sup> stones caste;<br>. In feld, in toun, in <sup>10</sup> ilka weye,<br>. Ilkon pleide þat he coupe pleye.                                                                      | 4736 |
| Then min-<br>strels play and<br>rhyme;<br>knights                 | When þey hadde alle pleyd at wille,<br>& schold haue ended, & <sup>11</sup> ben al stille,<br>Two wolde skyrmen, as fel þe <sup>12</sup> cas,<br>Sire Huwelyn & Irelgas. <sup>13</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 4740 |
| and others<br>fence, wrestle,<br>and leap;<br><br>everyone plays; |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 4744 |
| Huwelyn and<br>Irelgas fence.                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 4748 |
|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 4752 |

<sup>1</sup> þer.  
<sup>2</sup> was of fourti. (quarante mil,  
Wace, i. 209, l. 4431.)  
<sup>3</sup> þer þritti (trente-millers, Wace.)  
<sup>4</sup> tale af.  
<sup>5</sup> no man.  
<sup>6</sup> P. leaves out this line.  
<sup>7</sup> glewe. [leaf 29.]

<sup>8</sup> in þer quantise of purpure.  
<sup>9</sup> wristled skipped.  
<sup>10</sup> at.  
<sup>11</sup> & suld haf.  
<sup>12</sup> skirme þat com of.  
<sup>13</sup> hereglas (Ireglas in rubric and  
next line).



## ¶ De Infortunio inter Huwelynū &amp; Irelgas.

- Irelgas was þe kynges cosyn ;  
 Androcheus neuwe was Huwelyn.<sup>1</sup>  
 .pyse to-gedere wolde skyrme al gate ;  
 þorow pride of herte son com þer hate, 4756 They get angry,  
 þorow hate þen gan þer<sup>2</sup> wordes ryse bad words are  
 Of boþe parties of yuel<sup>3</sup> assise. spoken ;  
 When ilk had seyð til oþer wough,  
 Wyþ wraþe to smyte, þe egge<sup>4</sup> drough : 4760  
 þorow a meschaunce, y wot hit was, and by ill hap  
 Huwelyn slow þer Irelgas. Huwelyn kills  
 When þe kyng þys chaunce herd seye, Irelgas.  
 þe feste was sturbled &<sup>5</sup> aweye. 4764 Cassibolan  
 ffor þe kyng was ful feloun,  
 & hastyf, vntil vengauce boun,  
 þe kyng seid vntil Androche,  
 & bad hym vp peyne of alle his fe, 4768 demands Irel-  
 Huwelyn, his cosyn, hym<sup>6</sup> for to sende, gas of his uncle  
 þat felonie for to amende, Androcheus,  
 & in his court haue iugement  
 .þorow þe comunes, er þat þey<sup>7</sup> went. 4772 that he may be  
 Androcheus þoughte<sup>8</sup> wyþ herte ful wo : tried.  
 “ ȝif y hym sende, he schal hym slo.”  
 Androcheus sende ageyn ful tyt,  
 & of his court asked respit : 4776 But Andro-  
 “ A lord y am, &<sup>9</sup> court y haue ; cheus refuses to  
 .“ þorow þat wyl y<sup>10</sup> hym dampne or saue. give up Irelgas,  
 “ ȝyf þer be eyþer<sup>11</sup> baron or knyght, [leaf 21, col. 2.] and says he'll  
 “ Pleyneþ hym þer, he schal haue right ; 4780 try him in his  
 own court.

<sup>1</sup> nouwe was *Heulyn*.<sup>2</sup> þorgh þan gan.<sup>3</sup> itt.<sup>4</sup> edge.<sup>5</sup> turbled & mirth.<sup>6</sup> heulyn him.<sup>7</sup> þorgh comon or þei.<sup>8</sup> þouh.<sup>9</sup> a.<sup>10</sup> whilk .I. may.<sup>11</sup> it be ouþer.



.“ & þe souereynte þou takest þe<sup>1</sup> to,  
 .“ Hit schold be myn, & schal<sup>2</sup> be so;  
 .“ þou wost hit<sup>3</sup> ys myn heritage;  
 .“ þou bedes me mys & outrage!” 4784

¶ Rex irascatur versus *Androcheum* nepotem suum.

Cassibolan  
waxes wrath,  
and swears  
he'll pillage  
Andrócheus

and slay  
Huweyln.

So the feast  
ends in strife.

Cassibolan is  
Androcheus's  
uncle,

and yet strives  
daily to ravage  
his land.

When þe kyng herde his answere,  
He swor he scholde <sup>4</sup> on hym were;  
& þat he had, he scholde <sup>4</sup> hym reue,  
Heritage ne nought, hym byleue; 4788  
& Huwelyn schold <sup>4</sup> he slo,  
ffor þat outrage þat [he] had do.<sup>5</sup>  
On þis manere parted <sup>6</sup> þer feste;  
Wip loue bygan, endede wip cheste. 4792  
. Cassibolan was Androcheus eem,  
. Luddes broþer of þat teem.  
. <sup>7</sup> Androcheus was Luddesone, & Temnace,  
. As y forn telde in oþer place.<sup>7</sup> 4796  
. Whan Lud deyde, þey ne coupe  
. Kepe þe lond for þer <sup>8</sup> zouþe;  
. Cassibolan þerfore vndertok  
. þe lond, & hem to kepe & lok; 4800  
. & þorow þe wroþe of þis þynge  
. Made<sup>9</sup> Androche a chalangyng.  
Now ilka day Cassibolan fandis <sup>10</sup>  
To brenne & struye <sup>11</sup> Androcheus landes. 4804

<sup>1</sup> þe courte þat þou bides me.

<sup>2</sup> *suld . . & satt.*

<sup>3</sup> *wote it.* [leaf 29, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> *suld.*

<sup>5</sup> for Ireglas suld he go.

<sup>6</sup> *departed.*

7-7 *Androche & Tenuace*

*lud sons boþe .I. told or space.*

<sup>s</sup> *for ouer.*

<sup>9</sup> *Makis.*

<sup>10</sup> *fondes . . . londes.*

<sup>11</sup> *brenne*.



## ¶ Hic peciit concordiam.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ¶ Androcheus saw his felon wille,<br>pat þe kyng þoughte hym to <sup>1</sup> spille;<br>He sente til hym his messeger,<br>& preyed þe kyng in fair maner,<br>Namore destruye his landes so,<br>Bot make acord bytwyxt hem to;<br>. & preied hym "pat he wolde <sup>2</sup> mone<br>" pat he <sup>3</sup> was his broþer sone,<br>" & heir of al þat heritage<br>" pat þou me reuest wyþ outrage." <sup>4</sup><br>þe kyng was of so felon rees,<br>He ne wolde here of preyere ne <sup>5</sup> pes,<br>. Bot vengauce take for any þyng;<br>. pat falles ful yuel <sup>6</sup> for a kyng.<br>Androcheus saw no bettere bot:<br>" Suffren," he saide, " nede y mot."<br>Hys pleynd londes he let hym haue,<br>Bot his forteletes he dide <sup>7</sup> saue:<br>Wiþ hym to holde he fond noman,<br>So cruel was Cassybalan.<br>ffle ne wold he neuer a del,<br>Ne lese þat he myghte holde wel.<br>Androcheus asked: " What ys to rede? <sup>8</sup><br>" Syn no man dar me helpe for drede,<br>" & help me byhoues haue algate, <sup>9</sup><br>" Nede me dryueþ vntil <sup>10</sup> þe ȝate;<br>" ffor þe kyng assent wil nought<br>" pat y haue þes, als y haue sought. | Androcheus<br><br>sends and asks<br>Cassibolan<br><br>to be at one<br>with him;<br><br>but Cassibolan<br>will not.<br><br>Androcheus<br><br>retires to his<br>fortresses,<br>but can get no<br>allies.<br><br>So he argues,<br>" What can I<br>do?<br>I must have<br>help,<br>as Cassibolan<br>won't make<br>peace. |
| 4808                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4812                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4816                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4824                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4820                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4828                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4832                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

<sup>1</sup> wild him.<sup>2</sup> if he wild it.<sup>3</sup> ha.<sup>4</sup> reues als outerage.<sup>5</sup> he not here his praiere no.<sup>6</sup> vmwhile itt.<sup>7</sup> & his forceletes did.<sup>8</sup> said what is to spede. [lf. 29, bk.]<sup>9</sup> þos haf alle gate.<sup>10</sup> chaces vnto: and then leaves out  
the next four lines.



- Fell his pride, I  
will,
- though I suffer  
for it as well as  
he."
- So Androcheus  
writes to  
Cæsar,
- and says :
- " Sipeu y ne may haue no rest,  
" On oper halue y schal do my best;  
" fful mykel anguisse woldy byde, [leaf 21, back, col. 2.]  
" ffor to felle þe kynges pryde. 4836  
" A folye to do, & fle a wel<sup>1</sup> more,  
" Men haldes þat wysdam<sup>2</sup> & lore;  
" To do a folye, ȝut were hit skyl,  
" ffort[o] lyuere<sup>3</sup> a man fro more peryl; 4840  
" & god hit<sup>4</sup> were to suffre a wo,  
" ffor to venge hym of hys fo.  
" Wel y wot, & haue in hert,  
" þat hit schal vs boþe smert; 4844  
" Bot ȝit me lykes þat greuaunce,  
" ȝif y may take on hym vengauce.  
" What so schal me bytide algate,  
" þe kynges pride y wyl abate; 4848  
" Y may nought elles wyþ hym dele."  
A lettere he wrot, & dide hit sele,  
& sent hit priuely to Cesar,  
Tyl Ordre his tour, for he was þar. 4852  
What he wrot, & þyder sent,  
Y vnderstonde þus þentent :

### ¶ Epistola Androchii ad Cesarem.

- " O wise Cæsar,
- I Androcheus,  
lord of Kent  
and London,  
greet you.
- ¶ " To Cesar, hardy, war, & wys,  
" Whas pruwesse men preise<sup>5</sup> in pris! 4856  
" Of Bretaigne, Androche þe Bretoun,  
" Sire of Kent, lord of London,  
" Sendep þe gretynge, wyþ his god red,  
" þat whilom wylned to þe ded.<sup>6</sup> 4860  
" Cesar ! often haue men seen,

<sup>1</sup> & *slek a.*<sup>2</sup> *hold it wisdom.*<sup>3</sup> *to delyuer.*<sup>4</sup> *wele it.*<sup>5</sup> *whos pruesse men praises.*<sup>6</sup> *to send þe gretynge is my rede,  
whilom to whom .I. desired dede.*



- “ *per* to han<sup>1</sup> hated, & fomen ben,  
 “ *pat* syþen han loued to-gedre wel,  
 . “ *Tristiloker þan* ony stel; <sup>2</sup> 4864  
 “ After hate, loue wyl be,  
 “ & after schame, worschip<sup>3</sup> men se:  
 “ *pus* hit bytides many gate,  
 “ Of somme *per* longe has ben<sup>4</sup> hate. 4868  
 “ Ilk soughte *oper* dep,<sup>5</sup> al *þat* we myght,  
 “ When we met vs<sup>6</sup> in feld to fight;  
 “ Bot so hit fel, to boþe oure prow,  
 “ *pat* neyþer am y slayn, ne þow. 4872  
 “ <sup>7</sup> A-geynes vs bataille hastow nomen,  
 “ & twyes we haue þe ouercomen;  
 “ Bot lef þou wel þis<sup>8</sup> for certeyn,  
 . “ *pat* ȝif þou wilt come<sup>9</sup> eft ageyn, 4876  
 . “ Of Kent ne þertestow<sup>10</sup> fle *pat* cost,  
 . “ *paw*<sup>11</sup> y were þere wyþ al myn host;  
 . “ & þey<sup>11</sup> þe kyng *þat* tyme com þare,  
 . “ Ne þart þe<sup>10</sup> fle for al his fare; <sup>12</sup> 4880  
 “ ffor þorow myn help, & þorow me,  
 “ Has þe kyng do þe twyes fle;<sup>13</sup>  
 “ ffor by me þe land þou lees,  
 “ & for me fledde þy mykel pres. 4884  
 “ *perof* now y repente me sore,  
 “ *pat* y so dide ageyn þe þore;  
 . “ *perfore* by me þou schalt be brought  
 . “ To wynne þe lond, als þou had þought; 4888  
 “ Now me forþynkes *þat* y þe noyed,

Foes often turn  
fast friends.

You and I have  
sought each  
other's death;

4872 but you're still  
alive,

though we've  
beaten you  
twice.

4876 Now, however,  
if you'll invade  
England again,  
I'll help you.

Through me  
the king beat  
you before,

and now I'm  
sorry for it,

and I'll make  
you win the  
land.

<sup>1</sup> *tuo haf.*

<sup>2</sup> *tristeliere þen any.*

<sup>3</sup> & after *wirschip.*

<sup>4</sup> *þat long haf bene in.*

<sup>5</sup> *we souht our dede.*

<sup>6</sup> *we fondid.*

<sup>7</sup> The lines following, down to l.  
4915, are not in De Lincy's MS. du

Roi 27, but are in MS. 73, Cangé.

*Wace*, i. 214-15.

<sup>8</sup> *bot witte þou now.*

<sup>9</sup> *If þou wilt com.*

<sup>10</sup> *thurte þe.*

<sup>11</sup> *þof.*

<sup>12</sup> *here.*

<sup>13</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,—

& þorgh þe dyntes of my honde,  
*defended þe kyng his londe.*



For lately  
Cassibolan has  
got proud,  
and will never  
let me be quiet  
for a day.  
He kills my  
friends,

and wants to  
banish and kill  
me

because I won't  
let him kill my  
nephew.

I'll tell you  
how the strife  
arose :

'At our feast  
in honour of  
beating you,

" & þat þe kyng þe so destruyed ;<sup>1</sup>  
 " ffor syn he haþ boren hym in to proud wyse<sup>2</sup>  
 " Til his barons, & to alle hyse,<sup>3</sup> 4892  
 " And syþen hadde he neuere<sup>4</sup> wille [lf. 21, bk., col. 2.]  
 " In pes me suffre a day be stille ;  
 " My lond to waste he goþ<sup>5</sup> aboute,  
 " My frendes to slo, & dryue þem oute ; 4896  
 " My self he wolde<sup>6</sup> exile & chace,  
 " & slo, als hit ys his manace ;  
 " My God y take witnesse vnto,  
 " Y serued neuere he scholde so do ! 4900  
 " My neuew to deþ he wolde haue<sup>7</sup> demed ;  
 " ffor y wypstodit, he haþ<sup>8</sup> me flemed,  
 " & for y wolde<sup>6</sup> nought do his wylle,  
 " To suffre hym myn neuew spille. 4904  
 " Y schal þe telle how hit bygan  
 " Bytwixt me & Cassibolan :  
 " ffor [þe]<sup>9</sup> honour & for þe pris  
 " þat we hadde ouer-come þe twys, 4908  
 " þe kyng dide þe folk somoun  
 " þorow-out þe lond of ilka toun.  
<sup>10</sup>[" þat alle of valow, moste & leste,  
 " Suld com to London to his feste, 4912  
 " Grace till our God [to] ȝelde  
 " With sacrificise, as lawe wilde.  
 " Graces ȝolden with sacrificise,  
 " Whan we had don our seruise, 4916

<sup>1</sup> of þe destroyed.

<sup>2</sup> for he has born proude þerfore.

<sup>3</sup> to his barons out of score.

<sup>4</sup> siþen with me ne had he.

<sup>5</sup> wendes.

<sup>6</sup> wald.

<sup>7</sup> wild haf.

<sup>8</sup> for þat encheson am I now.

<sup>9</sup> þe.

<sup>10</sup> From the Petyt MS., lf. 30,

which gives a different version of the first part of Androcheus's letter, up to line 4942 here. It follows the Wace MS. du Roi 73, Cangé, to l. 4915, and then the MS. du Roi 27, that De Lincy printed; while Robert of Brunne repeats the account given on page 167, from l. 4753 to l. 4776 above.



“ Diuerse folk in stedes did samen,  
 “ & diuersly plaied þei gamen.]<sup>1</sup>

¶ De infortunio inter Huwelinum & Irelgas.

|                                         |      |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| “ Irelgas was þe kynges cosyn ;         |      |                                                     |
| “ Huwelyn, he was neuew myn :           | 4920 | my nephew<br>fenced with<br>Cassibolan's<br>cousin, |
| “ þyse to-gydere wolde skirme algate ;  |      |                                                     |
| “ þorow proude hertes þer wax hate ;    |      |                                                     |
| “ þorow hate þer gon wordes ryse        |      |                                                     |
| “ On boþe partys, on yuel assise.       | 4924 |                                                     |
| “ Whan ilk had seid oþer wow,           |      |                                                     |
| “ Wip wraþe to smyte, þe egge drow ;    |      |                                                     |
| “ þorow a meschaunce, y wot hit was,    |      | and by ill luck                                     |
| “ Huwelyn slow þer Irelgas.             | 4928 | killed him.                                         |
| “ When þe kyng herde þys seye,          |      |                                                     |
| “ þe feste was trobled, & myrþe a-weye. |      |                                                     |
| “ ffor þe kyng was ful felon,           |      | Cassibolan                                          |
| “ & hastif, vntil vengauce boun,        | 4932 | vowed ven-<br>geance,                               |
| “ þen seid þe kyng vntil me,            |      |                                                     |
| “ Comaundyng, vp peyne of al my fe,     |      | and ordered me                                      |
| “ Huwelyn hym for to sende,             |      | to give up my                                       |
| “ þat ffelonye for to amende,           | 4936 | nephew to be<br>tried in his<br>court.              |

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. continues,—  
*My neuow was þer Heulyn,*  
*& þe kyng had þer a cosyn :*  
*with skirmyng þei bigan to play,*  
*& ilk oþer with word missay.*  
*þe kynges cosyn manaced fast,*  
*& drouh his suerde at him in hast.*  
*My neuow saw þat, & on him*  
*stirte,*  
*held his suerde for doute of hirte :*  
*of trewe men þus .I. it herd,*  
*.bituex þam tuo þus it misferd,*  
*þat þorgh a wond þat he lauhþ þore,*  
*vp ne ras he neuer more ;*

*. oþer wais no man ne wote*  
*. whedire he felle, or he him smote.*  
*þe kyng of þis apechid me,*  
*& comandid oñ att my fe,*  
*‘ þat .I. his body to him sent,*  
*‘ & at his courte take Iugement.’*  
*I. hoped wele he wild him slo ;*  
*þe ton suld for þat oþer go ;*  
*. þerfore .I. doutid him to sende,*  
*I. said .I. had a courte, .I. wende,*  
*& lordeschip, as a man of myght ;*  
*com pleyne him þer, & tak his*  
*right.*



|                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I knew he'd be<br>killed if I did,                                                                           | “ And in his court have iugement<br>“ þorow þe comunes, ar þat þey went.<br>“ þan þought y wyþ herte ful wo,<br>“ zif y hym sende, he scholde hym slo. 4940<br>“ y sende hym ageyn ful tyt,<br>“ & of his court asked respit :                                               |
| and therefore<br>said that my<br>nephew should<br>be tried in my<br>own court,                               | “ ‘ A lord y am, a court y haue,<br>“ ‘ þorow þat wold y hym dampne or saue ;<br>“ ‘ zif hit be eyþer baron or knyght 4945<br>“ ‘ þat pleyneþ hym þere, he shal haue right.<br>“ ‘ þe court þat þou bedes me to,                                                             |
| which was only<br>my right.                                                                                  | “ ‘ Hit schold be myn, & schal be so ; 4948<br>“ ‘ þou wost hit is myn heritage ;<br>“ ‘ þou beodes me mys & outrage.’<br>“ & for y þus agayn-seide hym,                                                                                                                     |
| For this,<br>Cassibolan<br>threatens<br>to slay me.’<br>Wherefore, do<br>you, Cæsar,<br>come and help<br>me, | “ He ys to me þus wroþ <sup>1</sup> & brym, 4952<br>“ & me manaceþ day by day<br>“ To brenne & slo, zyf þat he may.<br>“ Wher-fore, Cesar, y schewe hit þe,<br>“ þat þou my socour ageyn hym be, 4956<br>“ & help me in my wo so harde,<br>“ And com hyder in god forewarde, |
| and I'll guaran-<br>tee you Britain.                                                                         | “ And þorow me schaltow haue <sup>2</sup> Brutayne, [leaf 22.]<br>“ & y þorow þe brought out of <sup>3</sup> payne. 4960<br>“ Ne haue þou non suspicioun<br>“ þat y hit seye for any tresoun :                                                                               |
| Don't mistrust<br>me,                                                                                        | “ Y wolde nought swylk a þyng bygynne,<br>“ Al <sup>4</sup> þys reame for to wynne ; 4964<br>“ Bot com, & make no dwellynge,<br>“ & rescowe me a-geyn þe kyng.                                                                                                               |
| but come at<br>once.                                                                                         | “ ffor þou myshappedest y <sup>5</sup> þe first ende,<br>“ Now schaltow spede er þat þou wende.” 4968                                                                                                                                                                        |
| You shall suc-<br>ceed.”                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

<sup>1</sup> broþe.<sup>2</sup> þorh me saẏt þou haf.<sup>3</sup> & .I. for þe be brouht of.<sup>4</sup> for. [leaf 30, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> If þou spede not in.



- ¶ Cesar herde what he bysought,  
 & streitly turnde hit in his þought,  
 & schewed hit his barons aboute,  
 Wheþer þey heldit certeyn or doute. 4972  
 þer-on þey conseild, þat þer war,  
 þat atte laste seyde Cesar,  
 " þat he ne wolde, for sonde ne sawe,  
 " Put hym in peril ne in awe ; 4976  
 " Ne for no <sup>1</sup> byheste of bost  
 " Wold he so sone sampne <sup>2</sup> his host ;  
 " ffor y haue herd seye fele syþe,  
 " þat faire byhestes makeþ <sup>3</sup> foles blithe." 4980  
 Cesar sent hym bode ageyn,  
 ȝyf he wold hald <sup>4</sup> his word certayn,  
 Sende he scholde hym hostagers,  
 Men of gode, barons, pers, 4984  
 Oper elles wolde he nought com þere  
 Vntil his tyme bettere were.  
 ¶ Androcheus dred hym of treson,  
 þat þe kyng <sup>5</sup> wolde bysege þe toun. 4988  
 His sone Senna til Cesar sent,  
 & þritty oper wyþ hym þey went,  
 Of þe beste þat he might fynde,  
 Next born of his owen kynde. 4992  
 Cesar receiued þem wyþ honour,  
 & dide þem alle in Ordre, <sup>6</sup> his tour.  
 Syn, als sone as he myghte hye,  
 He dighte his host, & god nauye,  
 & priuely aryued vp at Douer, 4996  
 & logged hem by þe cost al ouer. <sup>7</sup>  
 Androcheus com til Cesar þyder,  
 & conseiled þem boþe to-gyder, 5000  
 There Andro-  
 cheus meets  
 him.

<sup>1</sup> *a.*<sup>2</sup> *sone eft samen.*<sup>3</sup> *hotes makes.*<sup>4</sup> *wild holde.*<sup>5</sup> *Cassibolan.*<sup>6</sup> *did þam Odre.*<sup>7</sup> *bi banke & ouere (shore).*



|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                   | How þey schuld wyrke, & on what wyse,<br>Ageyn þe kyng in bataille to rise.<br>Tydynges ronne, þat ouer al <sup>1</sup> reches;<br>Ilk man til oper made þer <sup>2</sup> speches, 5004<br>Til <sup>3</sup> men tolde þe kyng tydant,<br>þat Romayns were aryue on land.<br>þe kyng þeron conseilled sone;<br>On hem to renne, mad hym bone; 5008<br>& in herte had gret meruaille<br>þat þey so so sone broughte hym <sup>4</sup> bataille.—<br>He wende of þeym haue hed no warde,<br>Bot hym fel þer a chek ful harde; <sup>5</sup> — 5012<br>& al so sone as he myght,<br>Toward Douere his host he dight.<br>To Cesar was hit told in hast<br>þat þe kyng was comande fast: 5016<br>Cesar conseilled <sup>6</sup> wiþ Androche,<br>þat he wolde come out <sup>7</sup> of þe cite,<br>And turne a sidenhand o <sup>8</sup> valeye, [leaf 22, col. 2.]<br>& <sup>9</sup> armed, biden hem in þe weye; 5020<br>& arraied þem in rences <sup>10</sup> ryght,<br>& assigned whiche bataille first schold <sup>11</sup> fight.<br>Whan Cesar had arrayed al <sup>12</sup> his host,<br>O <sup>13</sup> þyng he comaunded most: 5024<br>“ þat non scholde, for wele ne wo,<br>“ On fro oper, of renge go;<br>“ Ne non prese to styrte <sup>14</sup> byfore,<br>“ Ne holde byhynde in coward score; 5028<br>“ Bot passe forþ sadlyk, <sup>15</sup> syde by syde, |
| Cassibolan<br>hears of Cæsar's<br>landing,                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| and marches<br>towards Dover.                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Cæsar puts<br>Androcheus<br>and his men in<br>a side valley,                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| and gives his<br>host special<br>orders that<br>none shall<br>break the<br>ranks, |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| but all shall ad-<br>vance steadily<br>side by side                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

<sup>1</sup> *Renoun ran þat ouer.* [lf. 30, bk.]<sup>2</sup> *to ilk a man mad þei.*<sup>3</sup> *speche.*<sup>4</sup> *þei rose so sone eft in.*<sup>5</sup> *chek hasarde* (far better).<sup>6</sup> *conseild.*<sup>7</sup> *he wald out.*<sup>8</sup> *turne sidenen in a.*<sup>9</sup> *att.*<sup>10</sup> *& renge þam redy in ordire.*<sup>11</sup> *whilk aschelle suld formast.*<sup>12</sup> *set att.*<sup>13</sup> *A.*<sup>14</sup> *ne stirte.*<sup>15</sup> *renge þam sadly*



- ' Til þey com þer þey schold<sup>1</sup> abide,  
 ' & stoutly hem þanne o þe bretons auaunce,<sup>2</sup> to the attack.  
 ' & felle þem doun<sup>3</sup> wiþ swerd & launce.' 5032  
 Androcheus enbusched<sup>4</sup> hym pryuely  
 Wyþ fif hundred<sup>5</sup> men armed, redy  
 On þe kyng assaut to make, Cassibolan's  
 By-twyxt hem ȝyf he myghte<sup>6</sup> hym take. 5036 army comes on,  
 Cassibolan on his wey gan spede;  
 . Of non enbuschement<sup>7</sup> tok he hede;  
 . þeyr hostes boþe neighed<sup>8</sup> ȝerne;  
 . & whan þey were<sup>9</sup> nought fro þem ferne, 5040 and as it enters  
 Ouer an hil þen lay his weye; the valley, sees  
 & als he com in to þe valeye, the Romans,  
 He saw þe Romayns fresche y<sup>10</sup> þe feld,  
 Redy enbatailled wiþ spere<sup>11</sup> & scheld. 5044  
 Als sone mad he hym redy, and the battle  
 & loude ascried þem on har<sup>12</sup> cry, begins.  
 & sone þey schoten<sup>13</sup> arewes & dartz Androcheus  
 fful felonyk on boþe partz. 5048 springs from  
 Androcheus, atte firste comynge, his ambush,  
 Of his enbuschement gan he springe;  
 . Al freschely he com on hem<sup>14</sup> ful hot,  
 . & backward vpon þe Bretons smot: 5052  
 . "Ey!" seid þe kyng, "here ys deseit!  
 . "Bytwixt þem to þey holde vs streit!"<sup>15</sup>  
 He ne myghte nought perce þe host Romeyn,  
 Ne he ne myghte turne ageyn; 5056  
 . Byhynde, biforn, he saw peryl.

<sup>1</sup> *untill þei com þei suld.*  
<sup>2</sup> & þan baldely auentour his  
*chance.*  
<sup>3</sup> *resceyue him.*  
<sup>4</sup> *bussed.*  
<sup>5</sup> *cinq mil, Wace, i. 220, l. 4699.*  
<sup>6</sup> *bituex þam if þei mot.*  
<sup>7</sup> *bussement.*

<sup>8</sup> *boþe he neihed.*  
<sup>9</sup> *he was.*  
<sup>10</sup> *spred in.*  
<sup>11</sup> *renged with helme.*  
<sup>12</sup> & discried þam with a. [lf.30,bk.,  
 col. 2.]  
<sup>13</sup> & to schot.  
<sup>14</sup> *fresly on him he com.*  
<sup>15</sup> *I. am holden streite.*



and forces Cassibolan to draw off to a hill on his flank.

O side he trauersed vnto a hil,  
 . So nede hym byhoued, or be in clos.  
 . On boþe sides he saw his foos, 5060  
 He seide hym self þo, he was bitraischt;<sup>1</sup>  
 þen were þe Bretons alle abaischt.

¶ *Hic Cassibolanus se retraxit.*

The Britons fly in disorder

Ilk þat þer myght<sup>2</sup> fle, þey fledde;  
 þat best myght renne, best he<sup>3</sup> spedde; 5064  
 Bettere was fle, þan worse abide,<sup>4</sup>  
 ffor socour þer cam on none<sup>5</sup> syde.

till they reach the hill.  
 Once there, they feel safe,

Vntil a hey hil þey drowe hem to,<sup>6</sup>  
 Bettere wistey nought what for to do;<sup>7</sup> 5068  
 & er þey myghte þat heye hil take,  
 Many a croune men myght se crake.

as each man makes a tree his castle.  
 Cæsar sees that he can't carry the hill by assault,  
 and therefore besieges it closely.

Whan þey hadde þe hil al nomen,  
 peym þoughte þey were til castel comen; 5072  
 Non of þe<sup>8</sup> Romayns durst com hem ney,  
 . Bot held þem fro þe hil a drey.<sup>9</sup>  
 þe hil was strong<sup>10</sup> busked aboute, [leaf 22, bk., col. 1.]  
 þat þe Bretons of Cesar hadde no<sup>11</sup> doute; 5076  
 . ffor eche man tok a tre to stal,  
 As *tristi* as<sup>12</sup> a castel wal.  
 Cesa[r] byheld to þe hilles<sup>13</sup> heyght,  
 þat wyþ non assaut ne wyþ no sleight 5080  
 Mighte he wyne þat forcelet;  
 perfore a sege abute hit set,

<sup>1</sup> *betraist . . . obaist.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ilkon þer mot.* (The next line, after l. 4723, is left out in De Lincey's *Wace*, i. 224, without notice by the editor.)

<sup>3</sup> *þam.*

<sup>4</sup> *es fle þan foly bide.*

<sup>5</sup> *whan socour comes on no.*

<sup>6</sup> *þei fleih.*

<sup>7</sup> *he wist no bettere þat þan deiþ.*

<sup>8</sup> *nomore.*

<sup>9</sup> *nehi . . . drehi.*

<sup>10</sup> *round.*

<sup>11</sup> *had of no man.*

<sup>12</sup> *trostere þan.*

<sup>13</sup> *of þe hill þe.*



|                                                                                                                                                                |      |                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| pat þey ne myghte no-wer <sup>1</sup> aboute,<br>Bot þorow hym, haue issue <sup>2</sup> oute.                                                                  | 5084 |                                                  |
| He dide sette in wardes <sup>3</sup> seers,<br>Knyghte to wachem, <sup>4</sup> & squiers;<br>& also he dide hewe trees,<br>þe styes to stoppe, & þe entres,    | 5088 |                                                  |
| & furgat nought ful lyghtly<br>How þey had chased hym wyþ maistri;<br>& ofte þey telde in þer auys <sup>5</sup><br>How þey bifore had chased hem twys:         | 5092 | his double beating, and resolves to pay it back. |
| “ Now schal y zelde hit, ȝif þat y may,<br>“ Er ȝe departe fro me away!”<br>Alas, hit schold euer so <sup>6</sup> bytyde,<br>So bolde Bretons myght non abide! | 5096 | Sad that the bold Britons must be defeated!      |
| ffor þey had chased twyes þat man<br>pat al þe world þorow bataille wan;<br>& ȝit þey stode stifly, ilkon,<br>Whan þey wiste socur of <sup>7</sup> non,        | 5100 |                                                  |
| ȝit suffrede þei nought for to be nome<br>Of hym þat þey had er ouercome;<br>But Dame ffortune had turned her whel<br>Donward til wo, þat er was wel;          | 5104 | But Fortune had turned her wheel.                |
| ffor þo þat abouen were wond <sup>8</sup> to be,<br>Donward þeym now turneþ sche.                                                                              |      |                                                  |

¶ *Qualiter Brutones iam deuicti sunt per famem.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| pyse Bretons þat were in-clos<br>& byseged wip her fos,<br>Had þey neyþer drynke ne mete,<br>Ne non myght hem purchace ne gete.<br>þey dredde no saut <sup>9</sup> of bataille; | 5108 | The besieged Britons have neither meat nor drink. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                 |      | They fear no fight. But                           |

<sup>1</sup> noure.

<sup>2</sup> þorh þam att passe.

<sup>3</sup> stedes.

<sup>4</sup> waite.

<sup>5</sup> vys. [leaf 31.]

<sup>6</sup> suld so gate.

<sup>7</sup> of socour.

<sup>8</sup> vp were wont.

<sup>9</sup> saut.



|                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                          |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| what can stand<br>against<br>Hunger?     | Bot what may þat help or a-vaille,<br>When of mete ys default?<br>Honger wynnes hit atte firste saut.<br>þer ys no castel so strong idight, <sup>1</sup><br>þat hunger ne wynneþ wyþouten fight; | 5112<br><br><br><br>5116 |
| Hunger wins<br>castles, weapon-<br>less, | Wyþouten wepen or armour,<br>Honger zeldeþ castel & tour.<br>. God castel dredes no power,<br>. Emperour, kyng, ne kayser,                                                                       | <br><br><br>5120         |
| better than any<br>assault.              | . Ne oþer help me haue <sup>2</sup> at nede;<br>. Bot of hunger ys al þe drede.<br>þer force haþ mad manye assayes, <sup>3</sup><br>Honger hit wynnes byn fewe <sup>4</sup> dayes.               | <br><br>5124             |
|                                          | . þre dayes þey were in þat turment,<br>. þat hunger had þeym ner al schent.                                                                                                                     |                          |

¶ Rex misit Androchio pro Misericordia & Auxilio.

|                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                   |              |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Cassibolan                                  | Cassibolan had sorewe in wold,<br>How he mighte ascape þat hold:                                                                                                                  | 5128         |
| sees that he                                | On alle halue he saw Romayns<br>Redy for to do þeym payns;<br>He hadde no force wyþ hem to fyght,<br>& hunger hadde ouer <sup>5</sup> reft þer myght;                             | <br><br>5132 |
| must either<br>yield or die.                | Mykel he dredde Iulius Cesar, [leaf 22, bk., col. 2.]<br>& more þe hunger þat þey had þar.<br>He moste chese on of tweye: <sup>6</sup><br>zelde hym to Cesar, or for hunger deye. | <br><br>5136 |
| He waits two<br>days,                       | Two dayes & two nyghtes til ende<br>Wold he noman biseke ne sende;                                                                                                                |              |
| and on the<br>third sends to<br>Androcheus, | ¶ þe þrydde, he þoughte how best myght be,<br>& sende his sonde til Androche:--                                                                                                   | 5140         |

<sup>1</sup> *It is . . . stalworth dight.*

<sup>2</sup> *men haf.*

<sup>3</sup> *has mad of assais.*

<sup>4</sup> *in fo.*

<sup>5</sup> *nere* [leaf 31, col. 2.] (ses homes  
mate, *Wace*, i. 224, l. 4789).

<sup>6</sup> *of þe tuo þan had he weie.*



- I ne wot ho dide þe message,  
 Wheþer knyght, squier, or page:—  
 “ Androcheus, y sende þe<sup>1</sup> to seye,  
 “ Suffre me nought<sup>2</sup> schamely to deye. 5144  
 . “ þaw y mystok me<sup>3</sup> greuously, says he is sorry  
 . “ I prey þe of me haue þou<sup>4</sup> mercy. for his hasty-  
 “ þaw i dide an hastynesse,<sup>5</sup> ness, prays  
 . “ Y schal hit amende, as<sup>6</sup> his wylle esse. 5148 forgiveness.  
 “ A man schold nought his owen kynde  
 “ Dampne for o defaute, we fynde;  
 “ ffor hit hap ofte be wyst & sen,  
 “ þat wraþe bytwyxt kynde hap ben; 5152  
 . “ Bot whan þer [wraþe]<sup>7</sup> was brought til ende,  
 . “ Syn han þey ben ful feyþful frende.<sup>8</sup>  
 “ I preie þe now, ȝif þy<sup>9</sup> wille be,  
 “ þat þou<sup>10</sup> be now curteys to me; 5156  
 . “ Y biseke þe,<sup>11</sup> þenk on no mysdede, asks Andro-  
 . “ Bot schew me þy<sup>12</sup> kyndenesse in þys nede, cheus to shew  
 “ & saue me now byfore Cesar, him kindness,  
 . “ & euere more eft wol y be war. 5160 and save him  
 “ To þe may neuere falle honour from Cesar.  
 “ ȝyf me bytide a misauentur.”

### ¶ Responcio e contrario.

- Androcheus herde þe kynges pleint,  
 . A þat ner was recreaunt & teynt; 5164 Androcheus at  
 & answered hym al at reburs:<sup>13</sup> first rebuffs  
 . “ Hap now þe kyng nede of my socurs? Cassibolan;  
 “ What, hap my lord herd ought or seen? says,  
 “ What has he  
 seen to change  
 his mood?

<sup>1</sup> him.<sup>2</sup> he suffire me not.<sup>3</sup> .I. haf not serued it.<sup>4</sup> bot .I. pray him of.<sup>5</sup> þof .I. did him a hastifesse.<sup>6</sup> if.      <sup>7</sup> wraþ.<sup>8</sup> has bene full hende.<sup>9</sup> say him if his.<sup>10</sup> he.<sup>11</sup> bid him.<sup>12</sup> schew now.<sup>13</sup> rebours.



|                 |                                                        |            |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                 | " Seue nyght zit ne hap hit ben,                       | 5168       |
| Only 7 days ago | " pat he wolde me exile, & reue                        |            |
| he was going to | " Al my lond, & no þyng leue,                          |            |
| plunder and     | " & þerto þrette me to slo,                            |            |
| kill me !       | " Whare he haue now laten pat mod ouer go.             |            |
|                 | " My lord pat bar hym so ouer <sup>1</sup> stout,      | 5173       |
|                 | " ffor no preiere to loue wolde lout,                  |            |
|                 | " I wiste hit wolde nought <sup>2</sup> falle hym wel, |            |
|                 | " pat was so fers, & <sup>3</sup> ouer cruel.          | 5176       |
|                 | " Wypouten skil were we wroþe,                         |            |
| We shall both   | " & pat schal now repente vs boþe ;                    |            |
| repent it, but  | " Bot alder meste skape wil falle                      |            |
| he'll get the   | " On hym seluen <sup>4</sup> for vs alle ;             | 5180       |
| worst of it.    | " Hit falleþ no kyng to <sup>5</sup> felon res,        |            |
| No king should  | " As lyon in þe tyme of pees,                          |            |
| sham lion in    | " Ne in tyme of werre for to dare,                     |            |
| peace,          | " Ne <sup>6</sup> to fle for drede, as doþ þe hare.    | 5184       |
| and prove hare  | " pat he fled, sire, nought so, <sup>7</sup>           |            |
| in war.         | " Bot his cruelte wil hym fordo ;                      |            |
|                 | " He auaunted hym til vs <sup>8</sup> ilkone,          |            |
| Cassibolan      | " He venquised þe enperour alone ;                     | 5188       |
| bragged that he | " Bot he alone neuere hym ne wan,                      |            |
| beat Cæsar      | " Namore þan dide an oper man ;                        |            |
| alone !         | " Bot þorow me & þorow my knyghtes                     |            |
| No such thing ! | " pat wounded were in many fightes,                    | 5192       |
| I and my        | " And oper pat were al so doughty,                     | [leaf 23.] |
| knights,        | " & wel bettere þan he oper y,                         |            |
| and others      | " þorow þeir dede & oure trauaille                     |            |
| better than he  | " Wan Cassibolan þe bataille.                          | 5196       |
| or I,           | " ffor swylk he made his noble fest,                   |            |
| won the battles | " & seid hit was his owen conquest.                    |            |
| for him ;       | " His barons pat were his peres,                       |            |
| and yet he said | " Of his conqueste were parceners ;                    | 5200       |
| it was his own  |                                                        |            |
| conquest !      |                                                        |            |

<sup>1</sup> are so. [leaf 31, back.]<sup>2</sup> it suld not.<sup>3</sup> pat he bare him.<sup>4</sup> self.<sup>5</sup> it fals no kyng do.<sup>6</sup> ne omitted.<sup>7</sup> fled .I. say not so.<sup>8</sup> auanced him titt his.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |             |                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <p>“ ffor he þat stande wel in stour,<br/>         “ He aughte haue part <sup>1</sup> of þe honour.<br/>         “ þe kyng may wel hym seluen wyte,<br/>         “ By hym alone schal hit nought byte; <sup>2</sup><br/>         “ þo þat halpe hym hit for to wynne,<br/>         “ Wel oughte þey be parceners <sup>3</sup> þer-ynne.</p> | <p>5204</p> | <p>Let him blame himself for what has happened.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

¶ De gratitudine Androchii.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>“ Bot wel am y now venged on hym;<br/>         “ þat now ys meke, þat er was grym.<br/>         “ Now, sipen þat he bisekep <sup>4</sup> me<br/>         “ On hym to haue mercy &amp; pite;<br/>         “ &amp; y schal certes, zif y may spede,<br/>         “ Help hym now in his gret nede.<br/>         “ I may nought elles for no þyng;<br/>         “ He ys myn eem, my lord, my kyng/<br/>         “ I ne may nought faille hym, ne y ne wil!<br/>         “ Syn he hym mekep, y wol <sup>5</sup> do skil:<br/>         “ I am venged on hym y-now;<br/>         “ Now wol y fonde to don his prow.”</p> | <p>5208<br/><br/><br/><br/><br/>5212<br/><br/><br/><br/>5216</p> | <p>Still, now I'm revenged on him.<br/>         The grim man is meek,<br/>         prays me to have pity on him.<br/>         And I will.<br/> <br/>         He's my uncle and king.<br/>         Now he's meek,<br/> <br/>         I'll help him.”</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ Dixit Androcheus Cesary pro pace Cassibolani.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                     |                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>A</b>ndrocheus, wys knyght &amp; war,<br/>         Anon <sup>6</sup> he zede vntil Cesar,<br/>         And on knes byfore hym <sup>7</sup> sette.<br/>         Iulyus Cesar ful faire he grette:<br/>         “ Sire Iulius, þou art a myghti man,<br/>         “ Conquered þou hast Cassibolan!<br/>         “ Vnto þy mercy wol he now come,<br/>         “ &amp; zelde his truage vntil Rome;</p> | <p>5220<br/><br/><br/><br/>5224</p> | <p>So Androcheus goes to Cæsar,<br/> <br/>         tells him that Cassibolan<br/>         offers to pay tribute to Rome;</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *awe haf partie.*

<sup>2</sup> *wite.*

<sup>3</sup> *partinere.*

<sup>4</sup> *sekes.*

<sup>5</sup> *He mekes him .I. witt.* [lf. 31, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *on one.*

<sup>7</sup> MS. injured. P., *him sette.*



|                  |                                                  |      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------|
|                  | " Tak of hym now þat truage,                     |      |
|                  | " Of þe to holde his heritage;                   | 5228 |
|                  | " Wiþ loue let hym now come to þe.               |      |
| and as that was  | " þou askes nought elles of al his fe,           |      |
| all Cæsar        | " Bot onlike of þe to holde;                     |      |
| asked,           | " He hit graunteþ, & y hit wolde.                | 5232 |
|                  | " Iulius, haue of hym mercy!                     |      |
| he should have   | " þy wille to do we ar redy."                    |      |
| mercy, and       | Bot Iulius Cesar wold hym nought here;           |      |
| accept it.       | fful deflike herde he <sup>1</sup> his preyere,  | 5236 |
| Cæsar won't      | & passed forþ as he nought herde;                |      |
| hear Andro-      | Til Androche nought he answerde.                 |      |
| cheus,           | Androcheus had þer-of disdeyn,                   |      |
|                  | þat Cesar tok his preyer in veyn;                | 5240 |
| or answer him.   | He stirt vp wiþ yuel wyllle,                     |      |
|                  | & bad Cesar stonde a whyle <sup>2</sup> stille:  |      |
| But Andro-       | " þis londe ys ȝolden to þy baillye;             |      |
| cheus makes      | " þorow me hastow þe seignurie;                  | 5244 |
| him; says        | " þat y þe hight, y holde couenaunt,             |      |
| "I only pro-     | " & more getes þou nought of graunt.             |      |
| mitted you the   | " þe seignurye of al þenpyre,                    |      |
| seignory of this | " þat may þou haue, as lorde & sire;             | 5248 |
| land.            | " þat þow hast; what wiltow more?                |      |
| That you have;   | " Nolde God <sup>3</sup> þat oper weys wore,     |      |
| but more you     | " þat þou myn eem schost prisone or slo!         |      |
| sha'n't have.    | " Nay, Cesar, so schal hit nought go,            | 5252 |
|                  | " þat he schol <sup>4</sup> be so lyghtly slayn, |      |
|                  | " While þat y haue <sup>5</sup> þat myght & mayn |      |
|                  | " þat hym for dep <sup>6</sup> y may rescuwe!    |      |
|                  | " He is myn eem, & y his neuewe;                 | 5256 |
|                  | " He noriced me, he ys me dere!                  |      |
|                  | " ȝif þou ne wilt my biddyn <sup>7</sup> here,   |      |
|                  | " Y parte fro þe, & haue god day:                |      |

<sup>1</sup> *deftly he herde.*<sup>2</sup> *abide Cesar & stand right.*<sup>3</sup> *god wilt not.*<sup>4</sup> *He salt not.*<sup>5</sup> *till .I. haf.* [leaf 32.]<sup>6</sup> *fro dede.*<sup>7</sup> *If þou ne wilt my praiere.*



- “ Do now til<sup>1</sup> hym al þat þou may ! ” 5260  
 þen cam Cesar forþ, & stod, Cæsar con-  
 . þoughte he was of kynde blod, siders  
 & þat he seide, hit was skyl, that this is but  
 . & he dide his wit þer-til. 5264 reason,  
 . Whan he hadde al cast & þought,  
 He graunted al þat he had sought ;<sup>2</sup> and he agrees  
 Hostages asked þe partys, to it.  
 & þey wer graunted at here auis, 5268 Hostages are  
 And truage þey graunted so, given,  
 As þe lond was taxed to: the tribute  
 pre þousand pound ylka ȝer, fixed at £3,000  
 . At termes so<sup>3</sup> to paye plener ; 5272 a year,  
 . Of alle þe lond gadered & tan.  
 þen brought þey forþ Cassibolan,  
 & diden Cesar & hym kysse: and Cassibolan  
 . ffor þat acord was mykel blisse. 5276 and Cæsar kiss  
 Byfore þis tyme, neuere y ne fond one another.  
 þat any man conquered þis lond.  
 ꝛ þenne returned Cesar wiþ hye  
 To Romeward after his victorie. But never be-  
 . Bot ȝe schul here a wonder þyng<sup>4</sup> 5280 fore was Bri-  
 Cæsar returns  
 to Rome, and

<sup>1</sup> *do þan to.*<sup>2</sup> *bisouht.*<sup>3</sup> *sette.*

<sup>4</sup> This ‘wonder þyng’ in Roman history—an expansion at will of two lines in Geoffrey of Monmouth, lib. iv. § 10, p. 67, ed. Giles—is neither in Wace (i. 230, ed. De Lincy) nor our Petyt MS., though this last (almost like Wace) substitutes for it and lines 5279–80 above, the following lines,—

*till Cesar com & mad conquete  
 . as ȝe haf herd in þis geste.  
 . euen sixty ȝere þis was befor  
 . þat Ihesu Criste was born :  
 . here with att acordes saynt bede ;  
 . þe gestes of Ingland first ȝe rede.*

*Whan att þis was brouht till  
 ende,*

*& fele went to se þer frende,*

<sup>1</sup> þus say þei þat know þe estre,

þat Iulius funded first Excestre.

Excestre it hate, þis skiþt is whi,

þe water hate ex þat rennes þerbi.

till wynter were gon, Cesar gan

bide,

& went home in þe somers tide.

for grete luf & specialte

he toke with him sir Androche,

<sup>1</sup> The next four lines are not in De Lincy’s MS. du Roi 27, but are in the Arsenal MS. 171, B.-L.; and the Ste. Genev. MS. Y., leaf 10. Wace, i. 230.



|                                                                                |                                                            |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| finds that his officers Crassus and Pompey have raised the people against him. | . <i>pat</i> fel in Rome after his wendynge :              |      |
|                                                                                | . He had <i>per</i> mad chef of <i>pe</i> cite             |      |
|                                                                                | . Sire Crassus & sire Pompee ;                             | 5284 |
|                                                                                | . When <i>pey</i> had so al <i>pe</i> maistry <i>per</i> , |      |
|                                                                                | . & he nought returned <i>pe</i> fyfte <i>zer</i> ,        |      |
|                                                                                | . <i>pey</i> racoillede <i>pe</i> Romainys til her wylle,  |      |
|                                                                                | . Ageyn Cesar. <i>pat</i> fel hem ylle ;                   | 5288 |
| He destroys Rome,                                                              | . ffor Iulius destruyde Rome <i>pan</i> ,                  |      |
|                                                                                | . & slow <i>per</i> lord & gentilman ;                     |      |
| slays Crassus,                                                                 | . & Crassus he slow in a <i>tour</i> hey,                  |      |
|                                                                                | . Bot Pompeus skaped, & faste fley.                        | 5292 |
|                                                                                | . fforþ in to Poylle he chased hym wel ;                   |      |
| besieges Pompey in castle Braundys,                                            | . <i>per</i> he bysegged hym in a castel,—                 |      |
|                                                                                | . Braundys hit highte, as men tolde ;—                     |      |
|                                                                                | . Bot <i>pat</i> myghte he nought longe holde,             | 5296 |
|                                                                                | . Bot in-to Egipte <i>pen</i> schiped he,                  |      |
|                                                                                | . ffor wel wend he <i>per</i> siker haue be.               |      |
| and then pursues him to Egypt,                                                 | . Bot Cesar hym suwed yn-to <i>pat</i> contre,             |      |
|                                                                                | . & spak to <i>pe</i> kyng, sire Tholome.                  | 5300 |
|                                                                                | . Wiþ him was sire Pompe y-take ;                          |      |
| where king Tholome                                                             | . Bot for drede of Iulius sake                             |      |
|                                                                                | . He nolde meyntene hym namore,                            |      |
| cuts off his head, and sends it to Cæsar.                                      | . Bot his hed dide smyte of <i>pore</i> ,                  | 5304 |
|                                                                                | . & sentyt Iulius til present ;                            |      |
| Cæsar returns to Rome,                                                         | . & <i>per</i> -wyþ he to Romward went                     |      |
|                                                                                | . In al his moste nobleye. in Rome                         |      |
|                                                                                | . Right yuele <i>pey</i> schope for hym ful sone: 5308     |      |
| but is soon killed by Greffes.                                                 | . His barons wiþ treson dide hym deye,                     |      |
|                                                                                | . Bot Greffes hym mordred for enuye.                       |      |
| Of Cæsar's 2 nephews, Octovian is crowned,                                     | . Twey neuews he hadde, bot sone non, [lf. 23 bk., cl. 1.] |      |
|                                                                                | . <i>pe</i> eldest was cald Octouyon ;                     | 5312 |
| and takes the West,                                                            | . <i>pe</i> Romainys corowned hym saunz faille ;           |      |
|                                                                                | . <i>pen</i> sesed he Braundys & Itail,                    |      |
|                                                                                | . Of Poylle & Grece he tok <i>pauow</i> ,                  |      |

& led with þam men of ostages, | [for the continuation, see note <sup>1</sup>, to  
 . of þis lond þe best lynages. [leaf 32] | line 5334, on the next page].



- . & of alle þe reomes by-ʒonde Moungow. 5316  
 . And al þe Oryent, þat oþer sesed, while the  
 . & tok tys part þat þe oþer leued; younger  
 . Of þritty reomes euery kyng nephew takes  
 . Were enclinaunt til his coronyng. 5320 the East,  
 . Such wraþe bytwixte þe neuews ros sone,  
 . þat wiþ batailles to feld þey come. but Octovian  
 . Octouion þat oþer slow anon, soon kills him.  
 . & his men desconfyted echon. 5324  
 . þen hadde Rome suche renoun Then has Rome  
 . þat al þyng was in here baundon; such renown  
 . þen gaf þey til þe enperrou that they call  
 . A newe name for gret honour, 5328 their Emperor  
 . 'Augustus Cesar' þe calde hym þere, 'Augustus Cæ-  
 . ffor þei ouer alle oþere were; sar,'  
 . & after þat he þat name had, because,  
 . þe Romainys were þe more y-dradd, 5332  
 . ffor þemperour had þen vnder hand he rules the  
 . Al þe werld, boþe se & land.<sup>1</sup> whole world.

<sup>1</sup> For the next 20 lines (5335-5354) the Petyt MS. [leaf 32, col. 2.] follows Wace, and has this passage :

[Seuen ʒere lyued Cassibalan  
 siþen Cesar þis lond wan.  
 to ʒelde þe treuage he was fult  
 mylde,  
 ne he had noþer wife no childe.  
 In ʒorke, far soth, he did his end-  
 yng,  
 & biried [was] þer as a kyng.

**Comes Cornubie factus est rex.**

*Tenuacius* was erle of Cornwaile,  
 had þe regne att in his waile :  
 he was *Androcheus* broþer ;  
 . *Androche* was went, þer was non  
 oþer ;

. bot he regned fult litell space ;  
 he died sone, king *Tenuace*.

**Kimbelinus cepit regnare.**

After sir *Tenuace* fyne,  
 þei crouned his sone *Kymbelyn*.  
 . he was norissed at þe courte of  
*Rome*,  
 he was gode knyght, wiseman in  
 dome.  
 At *Rome*, till *Kymbelyn* was þare,  
 he mad him knygh[t], *Augustus*  
*Cesar*.

ten ʒere he reyned kyng,  
 & in þat ʒere he mad endyng.]

**Ihesus Christus natus est.**

*Ihesus Criste* þat ʒere was born,  
 . so had a prophete tald befor.



Cassibolan

reigns 15 years,  
and dies child-  
less.Tenmace is  
made king ;and after him,  
his son Kym-  
bely,  
whom the Ro-  
mans release  
from paying  
tribute.

Bot Cassibolan was ful ioyous  
 . pat þis werre was ended þus. 5336  
 . ffyftene [zer] after he regned in pes,  
 . Bot no child ne lefte at his deses ;  
 . perfore þe corounede sire Tenmace ;  
 . To gouerne þe reome he hadde grace. 5340  
 Cassibolan was ded, as was pite,  
 & buryed at zork, þe gode cite.  
 . Wip Iulyus went forþ sire Androche,  
 . & his broþer reioisede þe regalte. 5344  
 After cam Kymbely, Tenmace sone,  
 . pat had ful gret grace of Rome ;  
 . Of alle his truage þey relesed hym þer,  
 . While he scholde regne & lyuen her, 5348  
 . So pat he neuere ne payed non <sup>1</sup>  
 . To Rome ne to Octouyon.  
 . He meyntend euere his lond in pes,  
 . & leftyt his sones after his deces. 5352

## De natiuitate Christi.

In his time  
lives Taliessin,who tells the  
Britonsof the birth of  
Christ

from a maid.

In his tyme was here <sup>2</sup> a deuin,  
 His name was called Telesyn ;  
 . He telde þe Bretons many selcoup,  
 . (Al fond þey trewe he seide wyþ mouþ;) 5356  
 . He bad þem "lyue <sup>3</sup> wyþouten errour,  
 " ffor now ys born our saueour !  
 " Now ys vs toward ioie & blys,  
 . " pat of a mayde þis <sup>4</sup> child born ys ! 5360

<sup>1</sup> Wace and Geoffrey say that Kimbalius did pay it.<sup>2</sup> þis lond þan was. (This Taliessin invention is not Geoffrey of Monmouth's. It is not in De Liney's MS. du Roi 27, but is in the<sup>3</sup> MSS. du Roi, 73, Cangé ; de l'Ars.<sup>4</sup> 171, B.-L. ; de Ste. Genev. Y., fol.<sup>5</sup> 10.' Wace, i. 232).<sup>6</sup> leue.<sup>7</sup> Of a maiden a.



“ Al mankynde schal he saue !  
 “ Ihesus, þat name schal he haue.”  
 þis word þat þilk prophete seyde,  
 þe Bretons in herte ful wel hit leyde ; 5364  
 Many a day þat word þey held ;  
 þey fondyt soþ al þat he teld.  
 þer was no folk in al þe werd  
 þat trowed so sone, when þey ought herd 5368  
 Prechen ought of Iesu lawe,  
 . Ne to þe feyþ so sone gon<sup>1</sup> drawe.  
 . þen was þer a þowsand ȝer gon [leaf 23, back, col. 2.]  
 . þat Brutes aryued in Albyon, 5372  
 . & þerto two hundred ȝer<sup>2</sup> mo  
 . Er Kymbelyn to deþ gan go.  
 As longe as he regned her,  
 Wyþ þe Romainys was he dere ; 5376  
 þey asked hym neuere no<sup>3</sup> truage,  
 . Neyþer in his ȝougþe ne in age.<sup>4</sup>  
 ¶ *Christus natus est in tempore Kymbelyny.*

The Britons  
recollect their  
prophet's  
words,

and turn better  
to Jesus's law  
than any other  
folk.

This is 1200  
years after  
Brutus landed  
in Albion.

Kymbelyn  
leaves 2 sons.

The eldest,  
Wyder,

rules Britain.

A bold man he  
is,

and turns out  
the Romans.

Of Kymbelyn to<sup>5</sup> childre left,  
 þat þe Romainys þer truage reft.  
 Wyder, hight þe eldeste broþer ;  
 Arwygar, men calde þat oþer.  
 Sire Wyder hadde þe heritage.  
 A man he was of gret corage,<sup>6</sup>  
 Proud he was, & ouer stout ;  
 þe Romainys nolde he loue<sup>7</sup> ne lout,  
 . Bot whare so euere he hem fond,

<sup>1</sup> wild.

<sup>2</sup> & tuo hundreth sais it. [lf. 32, bk.]

<sup>3</sup> þer.

<sup>4</sup> neuerþeles at terme & stage.

*He ȝalde it curtasly & hende.  
in pes titt his lyues ende.*

<sup>5</sup> tuo.

<sup>6</sup> a douhty knyght in vassalage.

<sup>7</sup> romeyns ne wild he luf.



|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                          |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                       | . He dide hem sone <sup>1</sup> voyde þe lond.                                                                                                                                           | 5388 |
| The Emperor<br>Claudius                               | Claudeus was þan emperour,<br>. Of Rome maister gouernour:                                                                                                                               |      |
| swears by his<br>head that he'll<br>have his tribute. | Scorn hym þought, & swor his heued <sup>2</sup><br>þer truage schold <sup>3</sup> nought so be leued;<br>He scholde <sup>3</sup> haue hit a-geyn ful wel,<br>Deserite Wyder of ylka del. | 5392 |
| He invades<br>Britain,<br>and lands at<br>Porchester, | Of Romainys he gadered an host,<br>& hyed fast til Bretaigne <sup>4</sup> cost.                                                                                                          | 5396 |
| which he tries<br>to take,                            | Hauene he tok at Porcestre—<br>'Kaer Perys' <sup>5</sup> hight þan þat estre,—<br>He wende haue taken þe toun in hast,<br>. Bot he failed of his [t]ast. <sup>6</sup>                    | 5400 |
| and builds a<br>wall to                               | . þan tened Claudius [w]ipal, <sup>7</sup><br>Byfore þe ȝate dide make a wal,<br>. þat no vitaille schuld come til toun:                                                                 |      |
| starve them out:                                      | To enfamyn hem <sup>8</sup> was þencheson.                                                                                                                                               | 5404 |
| But the Britons                                       | Bot Wyder & Arwygarus<br>Wyþ twenty <sup>9</sup> þousand mad hem rescus.                                                                                                                 |      |
| drive the Ro-<br>mans back to<br>their ships.         | Sire Claudius & his partie<br>fledde faste to þer nauye;                                                                                                                                 | 5408 |
| Many battles<br>take place.                           | þe beste Romainys in batailles seer<br>Stoden somme ageyn Wyder,<br>& foughte wyþ hym longe stounde;<br>. Of boþe side ley ded on grounde.                                               | 5412 |
| A noble Ro-<br>man,<br>Hamon,                         | ¶ A Romain þer was, a noble baroun,<br>His name þey calde sire Hamoun,<br>He was þemperores conseilour,<br>A noble knyght he was in stour;                                               | 5416 |
| halts, and sees<br>Wyder's valour,                    | He houed, & byheld sire Wyders,<br>. How he bar hym stout & fers,                                                                                                                        |      |

<sup>1</sup> *alle*.<sup>2</sup> *son cief jura*, *Wace*, l. 5013.<sup>3</sup> *suld*.<sup>4</sup> *suyth vnto þis*.<sup>5</sup> *karepers*.<sup>6</sup> *last* (attempt).<sup>7</sup> *Lamb. MS. perished*. P. has  
with *att*.<sup>8</sup> *famen þam*.<sup>9</sup> *ten*.



- Romayns to felle, Romayns to slo,—  
 . Vnneþe ascaped hym any<sup>1</sup> fro, — 5420  
 How wysly his folk he ledde, and skill.  
 & how in batailles<sup>2</sup> he þem spredde,  
 . Wypouten los slow þe<sup>3</sup> Romayns,  
 . & syn relied his men<sup>4</sup> agayns. 5424  
 He saw wel—weel he mought<sup>5</sup> hit leue,— Hamon sees  
 . þat oper truage wold he no geue, that  
<sup>6</sup>Ne þe Romayns schuldit neuere wyne the Romans  
 Whyle Wyder rengned kyng þer-ynne; <sup>6</sup> 5428 cannot win  
 He þoughte þorow<sup>7</sup> what manere þyng [leaf 24.] while Wyder  
 He myght best slo Wyder þe kyng/. lives.  
 þat ylke noble Hamon Romayn, He schemes to  
 Dispoilled a Breton þat he fond<sup>8</sup> slayn; 5432 kill him;  
 Wyp þe armes of þat Brutoun puts on a dead  
 He armed hym seluen Hamoun, Briton's  
 & went þen o þe Bretons syde: armour,  
 Als þey rod, so gan he ryde.<sup>9</sup> 5436 rides with the  
 [þe]<sup>10</sup> armes deseyued hem ylkadel, Britons,  
 & of þer langage he spak ful wel,— talks to them  
 He had lered at our<sup>11</sup> hostagers in their own  
 þat were at Rome truagers.— tongue,  
 He calde þe Breton by þer name, 5440  
 . & þey answered agayn þe same,<sup>12</sup>  
 Til he cam to þe kyng Wyder,<sup>12</sup> works him-  
 Alwey he neyghed hym ner & ner; 5444 self close to  
 pys Hamon rod ay side by side,<sup>13</sup> king Wyder,  
 . To sle þe kyng his tyme tabide.  
 . þe kyng til hym gaf no tent;

<sup>1</sup> *mot any ascape him.* [leaf 32, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *to bataile.*

<sup>3</sup> *tinseth* [loss] *slouh.*

<sup>4</sup> *eft alied þam wele.*

<sup>5</sup> *till he mot lyue.*

<sup>6-6</sup> Lines 5449-50 omitted in P.

<sup>7</sup> *He þouh.*

<sup>8</sup> *spoiled a Breton þat was.*

<sup>9</sup> P. adds here,—

& þer langage to þam he spak.  
 toward þe kyng þe bataile brak.

<sup>10</sup> MS. *perished.* P., *þe.*

<sup>11</sup> *He lered it at þer.*

<sup>12</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>13</sup> & *þidere he sawe þe kyng ride.*  
 þus *Hamon rode ay side bi side.*



stabs him, and  
then steals  
away.

pat saw Hamoun, a knyf out hent, 5448  
Vnder þarmure þe kyng he styked,  
Priuely fro þem alle he pryked.

¶ De sapientia & prudencia Arwygary.

Arviragus

puts on his  
dead brother's  
cognizance,  
and bids his  
friends take no  
notice of  
Wider's death,

but fight harder  
than ever.

Arviragus joins  
in the battle,

his knights  
break the Ro-  
man line,

and put their  
host to flight.

¶ Arwygarus, his owen broþer,  
Parseyued þat er any oþer, 5452  
& þoughte hit were gret folye  
pere to grede or for to crie.  
He tok þe kynges conisaunce,  
. ffor non scholde perseyue<sup>1</sup> þat chaunce, 5456  
. An bad his priues<sup>2</sup> euer-ylkon,  
. "Nought so hardy make no mon;<sup>3</sup>  
. "ffor wyst our folk we were þus trayscht,  
. "Hit scholde make þem alle abayscht;<sup>4</sup> 5460  
. "Wyste þe Romainys þys chaunce wore,  
. "Hit scholde enforce hem wel þe<sup>5</sup> more.  
. "ȝyf we were bold, now be we baldere,<sup>6</sup>  
. "& y schal vndertake<sup>7</sup> þys were." 5464  
He was wel armed, & on his stede  
. Toward þe<sup>8</sup> bataille he gan hym spede.  
Waster<sup>9</sup> non þat wolde hym feyne  
Whan þey sey þe kynges seigne.<sup>10</sup> 5468  
. So wel he bar hym, & so auster,  
þey wende hit were kyng Wyder.  
. þan myghte men se knyghtes stoute,  
pat perced þorow þe Romainys Route; 5472  
þe Romainys ne moughte to-gedere holde,  
So were þe bretons egre & bolde;  
Syre Claudius wyþ his partie

<sup>1</sup> MS. perseyne.

<sup>2</sup> primes. [leaf 33.]

<sup>3</sup> to mak mone.

<sup>4</sup> traist . . . obaist.

<sup>5</sup> suld aforce þam wele.

<sup>6</sup> ȝe were bolde bes now boldere.

<sup>7</sup> saʃt maynten forþe.

<sup>8</sup> to gyf.

<sup>9</sup> was þer.

<sup>10</sup> sawe þe kynge seyne.



- To þe water fledde wyþ his meynye;<sup>1</sup> 5476  
 þat myghte nought to þe water fle,  
 Vntil a wode þen fledde he.<sup>2</sup>  
 Hamoun, þat þe host al ledde,  
 To þer schypes faste he fledde; 5480 Hamon flees to  
 He spirde after þer enperour, the ships,  
 . Whider-ward he made his retour;  
 Men ynowe til hym gon seye,  
 þat to þe water he tok hys weye. 5484  
 þe kynges broþer Arwygare,  
 . Whider<sup>3</sup> Hamon fledde, he was wel war.  
 Atte water Hamon doun lyght, [leaf 24, col. 2.]  
 Intil a bot Hamon had<sup>4</sup> tyght; 5488  
 Byforn cam Arwygar atte bot;  
 Sire Hamones hed þer of he smot.  
 ffor Hamon lefte þere his heued,  
 þe name of hym þer ys bileued;<sup>5</sup> 5492 off.  
 & for þencheson of þulke<sup>6</sup> Hamoun,  
 ffor hym þe calde þe toun HAMPTOUN:  
 ffor swylke chaunces þat han bytid,<sup>7</sup>  
 Ar names of tounes cald & kyd. 5496  
 From this the  
 town is called  
 Hampton.
- Whan he was fled, þenperour,  
 & Hamon slayn atte retour,  
 . & alle wer dryuen to þat cost,  
 . þe kyng to Wynchestre lad his host. 5500 Arviragus leads  
 . When Arwygar<sup>8</sup> þiderward nam, his men to  
 Claudius ef[t]<sup>9</sup> to londe cam, Winchester,  
 & com a-geyn to Porchestre,  
 & brak þe walles, & brente þe estre: 5504 where Claudius,  
 Al he brente, vp & doun, after landing  
 & chaced men<sup>10</sup> out of þe toun. again, and  
 burning Por-  
 chester,

<sup>1</sup> to þer nauie.

<sup>2</sup> wod fledden he.

<sup>3</sup> how.

<sup>4</sup> him.

<sup>5</sup> is leued.

<sup>6</sup> þat.

<sup>7</sup> for chances þat haf ben tid.

<sup>8</sup> titþ Arwigarus. [leaf 33, col. 2.]

<sup>9</sup> eft.

<sup>10</sup> exilde þe men.



|                                          |                                                       |      |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                          | Byforen hit was a god <sup>1</sup> cite ;             |      |
|                                          | Syn cam hit neuere to þat bounte.                     | 5508 |
|                                          | When he had destruyed þus Porchestre,                 |      |
|                                          | Syþen <sup>2</sup> he wente to Wynchestre ;           |      |
| besieges him.                            | þer-inne he seged Arwygare,                           |      |
|                                          | & alle þat euere wyþ hym ware.                        | 5512 |
|                                          | Gode engyns dide he make,                             |      |
|                                          | þe walles to breke, houses to schake.                 |      |
| Arviragus                                | Arwygar heldyt a vylte,                               |      |
|                                          | So seged in a toun to be,                             | 5516 |
|                                          | . & seide 'he wolde nought þrynnne lye,               |      |
|                                          | . ' To wham-euere happede <sup>3</sup> þe maistrie ;  |      |
|                                          | . ' Eyþer wold <sup>4</sup> he wyne or lese los,      |      |
|                                          | . ' Er he scholde more be halde inclos.' <sup>5</sup> | 5520 |
| comes out into<br>the open,              | He went out in-to þe feld,                            |      |
|                                          | & alle his knyghtes wyþ spere <sup>6</sup> & scheld ; |      |
| and puts his<br>men in battle-<br>array. | He batailled hem vnto þe fight,                       |      |
|                                          | Wyþ archers gode, wel adight ;                        | 5524 |
|                                          | þe mene folk alle y fere                              |      |
|                                          | Were wysly set in god <sup>7</sup> manere.            |      |
|                                          | Bytwyhte þe partys was þer bot lyte                   |      |
|                                          | þat þey ne scholde to-gedere smyte.                   | 5528 |

### ¶ De consilio Sapientum Ciuitatis.

|                                     |                                                |      |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------|
| The men of<br>Winchester            | þe wyseste men of þat cite                     |      |
|                                     | Conseilled hem how best <sup>8</sup> myght be. |      |
| fear losing their<br>goods and men. | Mykel þey dredde þer god to tyne,              |      |
|                                     | & slaughtre of þe folk, þe <sup>9</sup> pyne ; | 5532 |
|                                     | . þey saide, "þe pes were better to haue,      |      |
|                                     | . " Our toun & oure godes to saue,             |      |

<sup>1</sup> noble.<sup>2</sup> þan.<sup>3</sup> who so felt to wyn.<sup>4</sup> ouþer wild.<sup>5</sup> suld more be holden clos.<sup>6</sup> helm.<sup>7</sup> wele sette on gode.<sup>8</sup> if better.<sup>9</sup> &.



- " þen for to lyue in werre & stryf,  
 . " & lese oure godes, & tyne our lyf." 5536  
 þey toke a man of honour,  
 & sent hym to þe Emperour,  
 To wite at hym wheþer þat he ches  
 To haue þe werre oþer þe pees. 5540  
 þemperour seide, als he þought,  
 " Werre to haue wylny<sup>1</sup> nought,  
 " Ne y ne ʒerne nought of ʒoure,  
 " Bot þat Rome haue his honoure;  
 " <sup>2</sup>Ne y ne wilne wyþ no man fight,  
 " So þat Rome mot haue his right."<sup>2</sup>  
 . þey graunted alle at his auis, [leaf 24, back, col. 1.] The Britons  
 . And sworn þe pees in boþe partys. 5548 agree to pay  
 this,

¶ Concordati sunt Inperator & Rex.

- þe Emperour honoured mykel þe kyng,  
 . & profred hym a ful fair þynge:  
 " Sire kyng," he seide, "a doughter y haue,  
 " & on þe y vouche hure saue 5552  
 " ʒyf þou wilt myn owen<sup>3</sup> bycome,  
 " & ʒeld þy<sup>4</sup> truage vntil Rome."  
 Arwygar graunted þer-to,  
 & to þe true<sup>5</sup> ʒeldyng al-so. 5556  
 In Wynchestre were þey hosteld<sup>6</sup> boþe,  
 & frendes, þat er weren wroþe.  
 þemperour to Rome sent  
 ffor Genwys, þat maiden gent. 5560  
 In dwellyng of þis messagers,  
 . þey sampned knyghtes & squyers;  
 Wyþ gret host þey wente þer weye,  
 he and Arviragus conquer

<sup>1</sup> *wild .I.* [leaf 33, back.]

<sup>2-2</sup> P. omits these lines.

<sup>3</sup> *witt myn ow.*

<sup>4</sup> & ʒelde.

<sup>5</sup> *to treuage.*

<sup>6</sup> *were ostiled.*



|                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| the Orkneys,<br>&c.                                                                                                                                   | & wonne þe ilde of <sup>1</sup> Orkeneye,<br>& oþer ildes þat þer ware,<br>. Wyþ help of <sup>2</sup> sire Arwygare.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 5564         |
| Bede says<br>Claudius<br>reigned A.D.<br>64.                                                                                                          | . þis Claudius regned y þat tyme—<br>. As seint Bede seys in his ryme—<br>. Syn Ihesu was born of oure leuedy,<br>. þer fel ȝeres <sup>3</sup> sixe & fourty.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 5568         |
| Genwys ar-<br>rives.                                                                                                                                  | þis messegers þat went to Rome,<br>Y þe somer a-geyn <sup>4</sup> þey come,<br>& broughte þat maiden Genwys,<br>Gentyl of body & fair of vis.<br>. þen cam hom þemperour; <sup>5</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 5572         |
| Arviragus weds<br>her<br>in a vale on the<br>Severn,                                                                                                  | . þan mad þey myrthe in halle & bour. <sup>6</sup><br>To wedde þat may in place auenaunt,<br>þe couenaunt to holde, siker þey <sup>7</sup> graunt,<br>Vpon Seuerne, in o vale<br>þat riche was & ful ese, <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                               | 5576<br>5580 |
| where a town<br>is built in<br>honour of her.<br>And as Clau-<br>dius begets<br>there a son<br>called Gloy,<br>the town is<br>called Glou-<br>cester. | Bytwyxten Ingelond & Wales,—<br>. To telle ȝow þe soþe <sup>9</sup> tales—<br>þat for þe worschip of þat may,<br>A toun þey sette þer þat day.<br><sup>10</sup> þys Emperour gat þer a sone;<br>Of þat child þe name we mone;<br>Gloy he hight y <sup>11</sup> þat estre;<br>¶ And for þat Gloy, hat hit GLOUCESTRE.<br>Arwygar wedded þer Genwys,<br>In Gloucestre, wyþ mykel pris;<br>þer was he corouned, & sche, | 5584<br>5588 |

<sup>1</sup> *wan to Rome att.*<sup>2</sup> *him was.*<sup>3</sup> *þer fele ȝers.*<sup>4</sup> *in þe somores tide.*<sup>5</sup> *þat tyme com þe emperour home.*<sup>6</sup> *mirth þei mad at þer tocome.*<sup>7</sup> *& sikere.*<sup>8</sup> *asasée (ensemencé, fertilisé),*  
*Wace, l. 5191.*<sup>9</sup> *for to mene of þo.*<sup>10</sup> P. inserts here [leaf 33, back,  
col. 2],—*Gloucestre first hight it þus.**for þe emperour sir Claudius.*<sup>11</sup> *hight born in.* (Wace gives a  
prior alternative: because Claudius  
built Gloucester.)



. Noblely wiþ solempnete; 5592  
 & when þe feste was brought til ende,  
 Claudius to Rome ageyn gan wende.

Claudius goes  
 back to Rome.

¶ De aduentu Sancti Petry Apostoly.

I fynde writen, ȝow to teche,  
 pat in Nero tyme seint Peter gan<sup>1</sup> preche. 5596  
 ffro Antyoche þat tyme he cam,  
 porow prechyng brought hit to Cristendam,  
 And was comen right in to<sup>2</sup> Rome,  
 And preched þere of Cristes dome. 5600  
 ¶ Whan gon was sire Claudyus, [leaf 24, back, col. 2.]  
 In Bretayne regned Arwygarus;  
 Of hym self he let right mykel,  
 Bot proud he was, & a party<sup>3</sup> fykel; 5604  
 þe true<sup>4</sup> to Rome gyue he nolde,  
 ffor he dedeyned<sup>5</sup> of hem to holde;  
 þe Romainys þoughte an outrage  
 So for to lese þer truage; 5608  
 ¶ þey senten hyder<sup>6</sup> VASPASYAN,  
 . Maister of Rome was he þan.  
 At Douere wolde he vp a-ryue;  
 þe kyng hit herde, & þyder gan dryue,— 5612  
 . As hit ys founden in<sup>7</sup> Ebru,  
 . Douere þen highte Reptupu,<sup>8</sup>—  
 þer fended he<sup>9</sup> Vaspasian þe lond.  
 þer sailles ageyn on mast þey wond, 5616  
 & seyled by þe landes syde  
 Tyl Toteneys, þer gon þey ride.

(In Nero's time  
 St. Peter, after  
 converting An-  
 tioch,

preaches in  
 Rome.)

Arviragus  
 reigns in  
 Britain,

and refuses to  
 pay tribute to  
 Rome.

Vespasian is  
 sent to subdue  
 Arviragus,

who opposes  
 his landing at  
 Dover;

and so he sails  
 to Totness,

<sup>1</sup> þat tyme ȝede saynt Petir to. (A  
 cel terme, Wace, l. 5214.)

<sup>2</sup> late to.

<sup>3</sup> a partie.

<sup>4</sup> treuage.

<sup>5</sup> he deyned not.

<sup>6</sup> after.

<sup>7</sup> þe Latyn sais .I. wene.

<sup>8</sup> Ritipu.

<sup>9</sup> defended.



|                                               |                                                                                 |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| goes to Oxford,                               | . ffor þy now hit dide hem <sup>1</sup> qued                                    |      |
|                                               | . þat þey hem so þat <sup>2</sup> lond furbed.                                  | 5620 |
|                                               | Til Oxenford <sup>3</sup> þey gon alle ride,<br>To take þe toun y þe euentyde : |      |
| and besieges it<br>for a week,                | . ‘Karphuelgoit’ vpon <sup>4</sup> Bretoun,                                     |      |
|                                               | . On Englische, ‘Oxenford’ þe toun.                                             | 5624 |
|                                               | . þe toun of þeym hadde no doute,<br>Seuenyght þe seged hit wypoute.            |      |
| Arviragus then<br>comes,                      | þe kyng, als sone as he myght,<br>Oste gadred, & þider hym dight ;              | 5628 |
|                                               | Raper ne myghte <sup>5</sup> þider wende ;                                      |      |
|                                               | . Bote atte seue nyghtes <sup>6</sup> ende,<br>He com in a morwe tyde.          |      |
| and a battle<br>follows for the<br>whole day. | Sone þey assembled on boþe <sup>7</sup> syde,                                   | 5632 |
|                                               | ffro morn til euen bataille þey nomen,<br>þat neyþer side was ouercomen ;       |      |
|                                               | At euen þey zeden alle asonder ;<br>Al were þey wery, hit was no wonder.        | 5636 |
| Next day                                      | On þe morn, þo þat were lefte,<br>þey armed hem to bataille efte.               |      |

### ¶ Concordati sunt per Reginam.

|                                                           |                                                                                                                 |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Queen Genwys<br>reconciles the<br>Romans and<br>Britons ; | Bot þe quene, dame Genwys,<br>Sche <sup>8</sup> acorded boþe partys ;                                           | 5640 |
|                                                           | Scheo <sup>8</sup> peyned hure acord to make,<br>ffor loue of þe Romayns sake ;<br>Algate scheo peyned hure so, |      |
|                                                           | Til <sup>9</sup> acord sche <sup>8</sup> brought þem to.<br>Al þe wynter scheo <sup>8</sup> dide þem byde,      | 5644 |

<sup>1</sup> *fond þei non þat did þam.* (Ne trova qui li desfandist, *Wace*, i. 243, l. 5239.

<sup>2</sup> *þam þe.*

<sup>3</sup> *Essecestre, Wace*, l. 5240; *Exeter, Geoffrey*, iv. 16.

<sup>4</sup> *Karpenhuelgoit opon.* [leaf 34.] (In *Geoffrey*, not *Wace*).

<sup>5</sup> *sonere ne mot he.*

<sup>6</sup> *at þe seuen daies.*

<sup>7</sup> *& smyte togidere oñ ilk.*

<sup>8</sup> *scho.*

<sup>9</sup> *þat.*



- Til hit was toward<sup>1</sup> somertyde;  
 . þe pes was take,<sup>2</sup> þe partys swore,  
 . Bot Vaspasian swor first byfore.<sup>3</sup> 5648  
 þe kyng, fro þat ylke day,  
 Al his lyue ȝald Rome þer pay;<sup>4</sup>  
 Hys oþ ne let he neuere falle,  
 Bot ay worschiped Romainys alle, 5652  
 . And wyþ help of Vaspasian  
 . Al Irlonde he wan;<sup>5</sup> and conquers  
 . þe folk, þe lond, he couþe wel loke; Ireland.  
 . At Colchestre he lis,<sup>6</sup> we fynde in boke. 5656  
 . A bok, men calleþ hit Iuuenal,<sup>7</sup> A book, Juve-  
 . Of stories hit spekeþ al, nal, lies  
 . At Gloucestre, þer hit lys,<sup>8</sup> at Gloucester,  
 . And þe quene, dam Genwys. 5660 and so does  
 Queen Genwys.

- M**arius his sone, of Genewys born,  
 Was kyng as his fader byforn.  
 . A myghtful<sup>9</sup> man was Maryus,  
 Of fair speche merueillous; **Marius Rex.**  
 His ffader tyme he was atte Rome 5665  
 Wiþ þe kynde his moder of come.  
 Wel he contened hym in his londe,  
 . þer blessed hym boþ fre & bonde.<sup>10</sup> 5668 and is blest by  
 In Maryus tyme fel þis ferlyk: bond and free.  
 In Scotlond aryued<sup>11</sup> a Peyt, Rodryk. The Pict  
 King Peyt cam out of þe se,<sup>12</sup> Rodryk  
 þat neuere had mercy ne pite;<sup>13</sup> 5672

<sup>1</sup> þe.<sup>2</sup> þe pes þe granted.<sup>3</sup> & *Vespasian to Rome fore*. (Puis  
est à Rome repairiés, *Wace*, l. 5266.)<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out the next four  
lines. Their subject is in *Wace* and  
*Geoffrey*.<sup>5</sup> *Geoffrey* implies this: iv. 16.<sup>6</sup> *gode kyng he was*.<sup>7</sup> *Geoffrey* of Monmouth (iv.xvi.) notices *Juvenal's* mention of  
the famed *Arviragus*, *Sat.* iv. 26.<sup>8</sup> *it sais he lies*.<sup>9</sup> *wilfull*.<sup>10</sup> *þe folk serued him at hand*.<sup>11</sup> *vpryued*. [leaf 34, col. 2.]<sup>12</sup> *fre Cice*. (*Sice*, *Wace*, l. 5286;  
*Scythia*, *Geoffrey*.)<sup>13</sup> *a man he was full of malice*.



|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                           |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| invades and<br>ravages Scot-<br>land.                          | Mykel he loued to robbe & reue,<br>Scotland to waste wold he nought leue.                                                                                                 |      |
| Marius fights                                                  | Als he wente <sup>1</sup> & robbed faste,<br>Maryus mette hym atte laste;                                                                                                 | 5676 |
| and kills him,<br>and in honour<br>of it sets up a<br>stone    | Marius had god folk ynow,<br>& Peyt Rodryk smertly he slow.<br>ffor þat Maryus slow þe Peyht,<br>He dide þer set a ston þorow sleight,                                    | 5680 |
|                                                                | ffor to schewe his prowesse,<br>& forto make þe menyng fresse;<br>ffor in þe ston he dide be wryte,<br>Whar-þorow euery <sup>2</sup> man may wyte;                        | 5684 |
|                                                                | Hit wytnesseþ þe <sup>3</sup> auenture,<br>& telles þe disconfiture,<br>How Marius slow þe Peyt Rodrik;<br>þe ston was set for þat ferlyk:                                | 5688 |
| which is called<br>Westmare,                                   | þo men þat weren, & ȝit <sup>4</sup> are,<br>þey calle þat ston ȝit 'Westmare';<br>. þat contre folk seyen <sup>5</sup> ilkon                                             |      |
| and gives its<br>name to West-<br>moreland.                    | . þat te countre <sup>6</sup> is cald after þe ston;<br>. ¶ ffor þe ston Westmare, WESTMORLAND;<br>. þus in þe Latyn <sup>7</sup> writen y fand.                          | 5692 |
| Marius is ad-<br>vised to settle<br>the Picts in<br>Caithness, | . When þat Rodrik þe Peiht was ded,<br>. Men gaf þe kyng Marius to red,                                                                                                   | 5696 |
| which is waste,<br>and he does so.                             | ' To take þe Peihtes more & lesse,<br>' Deliuere hem a party of Catenesse<br>' To tyle & haue in heritage,<br>' ffor hit was bot wast & sauage.'                          | 5700 |
| But as they<br>want British<br>wives, and are                  | þey herborwed <sup>8</sup> þem þer euery where,<br>In stedes ese, þat best were.<br>Wymen of Bretayne wolde þey haue,<br>Bot þe Bretons vouched nought <sup>9</sup> saue; | 5704 |

<sup>1</sup> ȝed.<sup>2</sup> & for þat writyng.<sup>3</sup> & testemons þat.<sup>4</sup> þat þer woned &.<sup>5</sup> þe men of þat cuntre say.<sup>6</sup> þat it.<sup>7</sup> Geoffrey of Monmouth, book iv.  
chap. xvii.<sup>8</sup> þe herberd.<sup>9</sup> non.



pey dide hem in til Irland,  
 & tok þer wyues at her<sup>1</sup> hand;  
 . Of two<sup>2</sup> kyndes, Iris & Peiht,  
 . Sorewe & tene hit broughte<sup>3</sup> on height. 5708  
 Marius þe kyng, in his lyf her,  
 Lyuede nyne & fourty ȝer;<sup>4</sup>  
 . Buried he was in Salesbury,  
 . þat standes on a playne ful mury. 5712

refused,  
 they go to Ire-  
 land, and take  
 Irish wives.  
 Marius  
 is buried at  
 Salisbury,  
 which stands  
 on a merry  
 plain.

After Marius þan lyuede longe, **Coyl Rex.**  
 Coyl his sone þat land gan fonge;  
 He was norysed y þe toun<sup>5</sup> of Rome;  
 In<sup>6</sup> alle lawes he gaf right dome;  
 pey of Rome louede hym wel,  
 ffor þey hym founde as trewe as stel.  
 Coyl coupe of many queintise,  
 And manie artes of seer<sup>7</sup> wyse;  
 . He was neuere nygon ne nyce, [leaf 25, col. 2.]  
 Ne neuere vsed yuel vice;<sup>8</sup> and is not a  
 . Ten ȝer he regned her al fully;<sup>9</sup> fool, or vicious.  
 . At Norwiche byried ful worþyly.<sup>10</sup> 2724

His son Coyl  
 then reigus,  
 who was  
 brought up in  
 Rome;  
 he is as true  
 as steel,  
 knows many  
 arts,

### Lucius *primus* Rex *Christianus*.

After þis gode kyng Coylus,  
 Regned his sone sire Lucius;  
 He was large & curteys,  
 . And firste Cristen kyng, men seis. 5728  
 Al þis land so fair and fre,<sup>11</sup> and is the first  
 þorow hym was brought to Cristiente. Christian king.

<sup>1</sup> at þer.<sup>2</sup> of þo tu.<sup>3</sup> ire & tene es wele.<sup>4</sup> régna longement, *Wace*, i. 247,  
l. 5322.<sup>5</sup> courte. [leaf 34, back.]<sup>6</sup> of.<sup>7</sup> on sere.<sup>8</sup> non itt vyce.<sup>9</sup> wele & riche.<sup>10</sup> he ligges biried at *Norwiche*.<sup>11</sup> re *Lucius Bretannie*.



|                                               |                                                                  |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| When Lucius<br>hears                          | Whan he herde þe lawe of Crist,                                  |                    |
|                                               | . How in his name [men] <sup>1</sup> were baptist,               | 5732               |
| of Christ's<br>miracles,                      | Of his miracles men spake ryf,                                   |                    |
|                                               | . & of þapostles holy lyf,                                       |                    |
| and how God<br>works for<br>Christians,       | & als how God for þeym wrought                                   |                    |
|                                               | þat to Cristendam wer brought,                                   | 5736               |
| he sends to<br>pope Eleuthe-<br>rius          | He sent þe Pope Eluthere, <b>Papa Euleutherius.</b>              |                    |
|                                               | Bysoughte hym as his fader dere                                  | (In a later hand.) |
| for a man to<br>baptize and<br>teach him.     | To sende hym a man myght hym baptyze,                            |                    |
| The pope<br>thanks God,                       | Of Cristes lawe lere hym þe wyse.                                | 5740               |
|                                               | When þe Pope herde þat tydyng,                                   |                    |
|                                               | He þanked Iesu, heuene kynge,                                    |                    |
|                                               | . þat in his tyme he wolde so wyrche,                            |                    |
|                                               | . Brytaigne to bryng to holy chirche.                            | 5744               |
| and sends two<br>bishops,                     | Two clerkes he sente hider to preche—                            |                    |
|                                               | Bisschopes þe were, þe lawe to teche,—                           |                    |
| Duman and<br>Fagan,                           | þat o <sup>2</sup> clerk highte sire Duman,                      |                    |
|                                               | þat oper men calde Bisschop fagan, <sup>3</sup>                  | 5748               |
| who baptize<br>Lucius and all<br>the Britons, | þyse to bisschopes baptized þe kynge                             |                    |
|                                               | & alle his men <sup>4</sup> at her comyng.                       |                    |
|                                               | þorow þe kyng & his <sup>5</sup> grauntise                       |                    |
|                                               | þey ordeyned þe lawe in <sup>6</sup> right assise ;              | 5752               |
|                                               | þei ordeigned ilka <sup>7</sup> bischop þer se, <sup>8</sup>     |                    |
|                                               | & Erchebischopes abouen hem to be. <sup>9</sup>                  |                    |
| and ordain<br>bishops and<br>archbishops.     | In hys tyme <sup>10</sup> were temples olde,                     |                    |
| They find 28<br>old temples, or<br>flamens,   | . <sup>11</sup> Eyght & twenty flamins <sup>12</sup> men tolde,— | 5756               |
|                                               | . þe Latyn calleþ <sup>13</sup> temple 'flamins,'—               |                    |
|                                               | . Somme of Mahoun, & somme of Appoll[i]ns,                       |                    |

<sup>1</sup> in his men.<sup>2</sup> þe to.<sup>3</sup> Matan, MS. du Roi 27 ; Fagan, MS. du Roi 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb. ; Wace, i. 248. l. 5349. Faganus, *Geoffrey*.<sup>4</sup> meigne.<sup>5</sup> kyng had.<sup>6</sup> as þe lawe is &.<sup>7</sup> MS. illa.<sup>8</sup> Ordeyned þei Archbisshop see. [leaf 34, back, col. 2.]

(Lamb. MS. follows Wace.)

<sup>9</sup> & bisshopes vndere þam to be.<sup>10</sup> þis lond.<sup>11</sup> The eight and twenty flamens are in *Geoffrey* (chap. xix.) but not the next line.<sup>12</sup> grete.<sup>13</sup> sais þe.



- .Somme of Dyane, somme & of Berit.—  
 .Two<sup>1</sup> arche flaminus were þey<sup>2</sup> 3it ; 5760 devoted to Mahoun, Berit, &c.,  
 .At Londone was þer chef flamee,<sup>3</sup> and two arch-flamens at London and York.  
 .& at 3ork þat oper se ;  
 .þe opere flamins in londe ware  
 .Als þe bischopes sees now are. 5764  
 pyse temples of Maumetries  
 þey turned alle fro þer eresyes,  
 & halewode þem,<sup>4</sup> to Cristes werk,  
 .& ordeyned kirkes, prest,<sup>5</sup> & clerk, 5768  
 Landes, rentes, lyght & catel,  
 þat to þo temples langed or<sup>6</sup> fel,  
 & al oper aportynaunce,  
 He gaf hit to þer sustenaunce : 5772  
 .To a dyocise langed a cite,  
 & ordened paroschens<sup>7</sup> for to be. and set parishes to them.  
 .To parsones & to vicaries  
 .Was graunted grete seignuryes. 5776  
 When Bretayne was Cristen al, [leaf 25, back, col. 1.]  
 & þe newe lawe was brought to stal,  
 Ioyful was sire Lucyus,  
 þat sey þe folk al turne<sup>8</sup> þus. 5780  
 In Cristene lawe, als he hym ches,  
 þer-inne he ended in god<sup>9</sup> pes ;  
 At Gloucestre he deide, & þer [he] lys,<sup>10</sup>  
 .& his soule wente to Paradis. 5784  
 .þe date of Crist, men seid þo<sup>11</sup> her,  
 .Was an hundred & fyue<sup>12</sup> & fifty 3er.  
 Wypouten heyr Lucyus ys ded.  
 .þen coupe þe Bretons þer-of no red : 5788

All these temples the Pope's bishops hallow to Christ's work, ordain priests for them, endow them,

Lucius rejoices at the conversion of his land,

dies at Gloucester, and goes to Paradise,

A.D. 155.

<sup>1</sup> Geoffrey makes three : the third at the City of Legions, chap. xix.

<sup>2</sup> þer.

<sup>3</sup> þe arche flame.

<sup>4</sup> halowed þam.

<sup>5</sup> with preste.

<sup>6</sup> longed &.

<sup>7</sup> parisches. (parosces, Wace, l. 5365.)

<sup>8</sup> sawe þe folk turned.

<sup>9</sup> godes.

<sup>10</sup> London he died & þer he lies.

<sup>11</sup> told so.

<sup>12</sup> sex. (sis, Wace, l. 5387.)



|                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Lucius dies<br>heirless ; and<br>the Britons<br>fight as to who<br>shall be king.                                                       | . Wo was hem he hadde non heyr!<br>. To haue a lord þey were in speyr; <sup>1</sup><br>. [þe were bigan omang þam alle,<br>. to whom þe seignorie suld falle.] <sup>2</sup>                                                                                    | 5792 |
| The Romans<br>hear of this,<br>and send Seve-<br>rus, with two<br>legions,                                                              | . ffro lond to la[n]d, fro man to man,<br>¶ Of þat to Rome tydyng ran,<br>pat ded was sire Lucyus,<br>. & þat we werreyed amonge vs. <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                              | 5796 |
|                                                                                                                                         | þey chose Sauer, a senatour, :emperour:<br>& made hym maister & gouernour; <b>Sauerus</b><br>He broughte hider two Legions. <b>Inperator.</b>                                                                                                                  | 5800 |
| who conquers<br>many Britons ;<br><br>but others re-<br>sist him,                                                                       | þe Bretons to þeym were felons ;<br>Sauer werreyed on þem faste,<br>Manye he conquered & caste,<br>& ffele opere hadde disdeyn<br>ffor to halde of any Romain ;                                                                                                | 5804 |
| and he drives<br>them to Scot-<br>land.<br>They choose<br>Fulgence king.<br>He fellows him-<br>self with the<br>Picts and out-<br>laws, | Vmwhile þey faught, vmwhile fleand ;<br>Sauer þey[m] <sup>4</sup> chaced to Scotland.<br>þen chose þe Bretons þeym a kyng: <b>ffulgencius</b><br>¶ ffulgence he highte, a gret lordyng; <b>Rex.</b><br>He felawed hym <sup>5</sup> wyþ þe Peytes, <sup>6</sup> | 5809 |
|                                                                                                                                         | . pat euere were ful of deseites ; <sup>7</sup><br>. Outlandeis þat were ffiledde,<br>. Alle swilk wyþ þeym þey ledde ;                                                                                                                                        | 5812 |
|                                                                                                                                         | In a cowntre þey dide <sup>8</sup> gret schame ;<br>Dene <sup>9</sup> was þenne þer-of þe name.<br>. ffro Scotland in to purlewal, <sup>10</sup><br>. Peytes landes þey telde hit al. <sup>11</sup>                                                            | 5816 |
| and marches<br>south,                                                                                                                   | . ffulgence southewarde hym hasted,<br>. þe lond al aboute was wasted ;                                                                                                                                                                                        |      |

<sup>1</sup> to be þer lord had þei no speire.<sup>2</sup> From the Petyt MS.<sup>3</sup> MS. *he werreyed ageyns.* P.  
reads, *we wered amang.* [leaf 35.]<sup>4</sup> *Seuere þam.*<sup>5</sup> & folowed þam.<sup>6</sup> As Pis se sont acompagné,  
Si se sunt ensamble aloié.*Wace*, i. 251, l. 5412-13.<sup>7</sup> *lese to fehtes.*<sup>8</sup> *cuntre men did.*<sup>9</sup> *Deire.*<sup>10</sup> *vnt Thrilwatt.*<sup>11</sup> *Peihthond þei told it att.*







|                   |                                             |      |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|------|
| besieges York,    | & byseged ȝork al aboute.                   |      |
|                   | Al þe contre til hym gan loute;             | 5852 |
|                   | He sente to grete lordynges,                |      |
| and by gifts in-  | & het & gaf hem riche þynges.               |      |
| duces many        | ffor fair hot, & giftes þat þey tok,        |      |
| British lords to  | pemperour Sauer þey forsok.                 | 5856 |
| forsake Seve-     | Sauer tok hise oper Bretons,                |      |
| rus.              | & asembled <sup>1</sup> his legions;        |      |
| Severus ad-       | Toward ȝork faste þem dight,                |      |
| vances            | To remue <sup>2</sup> hem he hadde tyght.   | 5860 |
| to York ;         | . When þey were comen wyþynne a lyte,       |      |
|                   | þe batailles gonne to-gedere smyte;         |      |
| the armies        | ffellyk þey foughte, for þer was slayn      |      |
| meet;             | . On eyþer syde þeir cheftayn;              | 5864 |
|                   | ffulgence was first feld to grounde,        |      |
| both Fulgence     | & Sauer was slayn on a stounde.             |      |
| and Severus are   | þe Romainys for Sauer bysought,             |      |
| slain.            | So þat his body to ȝork was brought,        | 5868 |
|                   | & biried þer solempnely,                    |      |
| Severus is        | & his oper frendes hym by.                  |      |
| buried at York,   | . <sup>3</sup> þis ilke enperour Sauer      |      |
|                   | . Regned her seuentene ȝer :                | 5872 |
| (having           | . Syn Crist cam <sup>4</sup> of þe vyrgyne, |      |
| reigned here 17   | . Nyne score ȝer euene, & nyne,             |      |
| years,)           |                                             |      |
| A.D. 189.         |                                             |      |
| He leaves two     | Of þys Sauer þat deide þere,                |      |
| sons, 1. Bassian, | Tweye knaue childre were ;                  | 5876 |
| by a British      | þat on men calde Bassian,                   |      |
| wife,             | þat oper had to name Cetan. <sup>5</sup>    |      |
| and 2. Cetan      | Cetan <sup>5</sup> moder was a Romain;      |      |
| (Getan,) by a     | Comen <sup>6</sup> of gode knyght & swayn.  | 5880 |
| Roman wife.       | Bassan was born of a Brette;                |      |
|                   | þe Bretons of hym þe bettere lette.         |      |

<sup>1</sup> *gadred togidere.*<sup>2</sup> *remoue*; and omits the next two lines.<sup>3</sup> Not in Geoffrey either.<sup>4</sup> *was born.*<sup>5</sup> *Gelan.*<sup>6</sup> *of men*; and after l. 5881 repeats lines 5878-9 on leaf 35, back



|                                                       |                    |                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| pe Romyans toke þis ilke Cetan, <sup>1</sup>          |                    | The Romans        |
| & corouned hym, & bycome <sup>2</sup> hys man.        | 5884               | crown Cetan ;     |
| pe Bretons wiþ Bassan helde,                          |                    | the Britons       |
| & of þe roeme highte hym þe schelde.                  |                    | adopt Bassian.    |
| þen ilkon in þer party                                |                    |                   |
| Held wyþ his kynde doughtyly :                        | 5888               |                   |
| Al þus wyþ megge <sup>3</sup> & wiþ monge             |                    | Fights between    |
| Bytwixt hem wax þer werre stronge ;                   |                    | each party take   |
| Ilkon ouer oþer so lange þey <sup>4</sup> ran,        |                    | place,            |
| þat atte laste slayn was Cetan. <sup>5</sup>          | 5892               | till Cetan is     |
| ¶ pe Bretons, eft sonen þey ches                      |                    | slain,            |
| Bassan kyng, & hadde þer pes.                         | <b>Bassan Rex.</b> | and Bassian is    |
| ¶ A ladde was y þys londe, of fame,                   | [leaf 26.]         | made king of      |
| Karaucyus <sup>6</sup> þen was his name ;             | <b>Karaucius</b>   | Britain.          |
| Hardy he was, & ful connyng, <sup>7</sup>             | <b>Maledictus.</b> | A noted lad,      |
| Stalworthe of body, & wel fightyng; <sup>8</sup>      | 5898               | Karausius, is     |
| In many nedes assayed he was ;                        |                    | then in Britain ; |
| Of prowess men preised þys Karas ;                    | 5900               | bold and clever,  |
| Born he was of pouere <sup>9</sup> lynage,            |                    |                   |
| & litel he hadde of heritage.                         |                    | though low-       |
| Gretter & fairer <sup>10</sup> stat he held,          |                    | born and poor ;   |
| þan wolde his rentes, <sup>11</sup> or land in feld ; | 5904               |                   |
| Grete emprises he durst vndertake ;                   |                    | willing to        |
| More louede he þe werre þan þes to make.              |                    | undertake great   |
| I þe se to wende, þenne was doute,                    |                    | enterprises.      |
| Maryners robbed þe ildes aboute ;                     | 5908               | At this time,     |
| Mighte atte hauenes reste ne <sup>12</sup> be,        |                    | pirates           |
| ffor outlandesmen þat come by se.                     |                    | plunder on        |
| Karaucius þenne hym by-bought,                        |                    | sea and land.     |
|                                                       |                    | Karausius pro-    |
|                                                       |                    | poses to the      |
|                                                       |                    | Romans            |

<sup>1</sup> *Gettan.*<sup>2</sup> *com.*<sup>3</sup> þus gate with mengyng. (ensi ot por l'eslection, *Wace*, i. 255, l. 5486.)<sup>4</sup> *algate ilk oþer so long ouer.*<sup>5</sup> *Getan.*<sup>6</sup> Charais, *Wace*. Cp. 'Karas,' below.<sup>7</sup> & conand.<sup>8</sup> *fightand.*<sup>9</sup> *pure.*<sup>10</sup> *fairer & better.*<sup>11</sup> þan he rent had.<sup>12</sup> *duelle no.*



|                                                                                            |                                                                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                            | pe senaturs of Rome he <sup>1</sup> sought,                                          | 5912 |
|                                                                                            | . & tolde hem þat outlandes flet                                                     |      |
|                                                                                            | . Bretaygne alle aboute biset,                                                       |      |
| to clear the sea<br>of these pirates<br>if they'll give<br>him a commis-<br>sion to do it. | & seide "zif ze wil gyue me leue<br>" þe robbours o þe se to greue,                  | 5916 |
|                                                                                            | " & gyue chartre of a-vowerye, <sup>2</sup>                                          |      |
|                                                                                            | " þe se to loke wyþ myn nauie,                                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | " I scholde zow warante zoure <sup>3</sup> truage,                                   |      |
|                                                                                            | " þat non outlandeys scholde make passagè."                                          |      |
| This the Ro-<br>mans give him,<br>under their seal.                                        | pey graunted hym þen leue to haue,                                                   | 5921 |
|                                                                                            | So þat he schulde þer truage saue;                                                   |      |
|                                                                                            | Chartre þey gaf hym wiþ her sel,                                                     |      |
|                                                                                            | . So þat he scholde to þeym beo leel. <sup>4</sup>                                   | 5924 |
| and he departs,                                                                            | Karres his leue atte Romyans <sup>5</sup> nam,                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | & schewed [þe] <sup>6</sup> chartre þer he cam;                                      |      |
| but raises a<br>fleet,                                                                     | Sone <sup>7</sup> gat he hym mariners,                                               |      |
|                                                                                            | Wiþ schipes, barges, & balyngers. <sup>8</sup>                                       | 5928 |
| which he mans<br>with thieves<br>and other evil-<br>deedy men                              | He desired <sup>9</sup> men þat were fledde,<br>þeues & robbours, swylk he ledde,    |      |
|                                                                                            | . Yuel dedy <sup>10</sup> men þat were wight,                                        |      |
|                                                                                            | Of Outlandes al <sup>11</sup> þat he myght;                                          | 5932 |
|                                                                                            | Of swylk he gadered compaignies,                                                     |      |
| born and<br>nourished in<br>felonies,<br>and then<br>invades islands,                      | Born & norysched in felonyes.<br>Whan þis Karraus had gadered him <sup>12</sup> ost, |      |
|                                                                                            | Of manye a land he serched þe cost;                                                  | 5936 |
|                                                                                            | ffro on ilde til oþer he zede,                                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | . Of no þynge ne hadde þey <sup>13</sup> drede;                                      |      |
| robs men,<br>wastes lands,                                                                 | Men he robbed, & landes wasted,<br>ffrom o stede til oþer <sup>14</sup> he hasted;   | 5940 |
|                                                                                            | To ney neygheburs, & ferþer <sup>15</sup> fro,                                       |      |
|                                                                                            | . Til alle he dide skape & w[o];                                                     |      |

<sup>1</sup> MS. þey, but þ altered to h.  
he, P.<sup>2</sup> chartire & auourie.<sup>3</sup> I saß þam warant þorgh.<sup>4</sup> þat he suld to þam be leale.  
[leaf 35, back, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> MS. Romyans.<sup>6</sup> þe.<sup>7</sup> quicly.<sup>8</sup> schippes gode busses coggers.<sup>9</sup> disherited. <sup>10</sup> itt dedy.<sup>11</sup> þo.<sup>12</sup> geten him.<sup>13</sup> was it non þat þei ne had.<sup>14</sup> fro a stede till anoþer.<sup>15</sup> neihburs nere & fer.



- Al he tok þat he myght take,  
 He nolde mesure to<sup>1</sup> no man make; 5944 plundering all  
 þat Outlandeys byforn had left, De fide he can.  
 He spared non, bot alle he reft. ffracta.  
 To saue þe folk, Carrays was sworn,  
 Bot he was worse þan oper byforn; 5948 Sworn to pro-  
 fful mykel he wan, ȝit ȝernde he more, tect folk, he  
 ffor his folk woxe & spredde ay whore; robs them more  
 Casteles & tounes doun he þrew; than any one.  
 ffor lord, he wolde þat alle hym knew. 5952  
 . So fer he sayled<sup>2</sup> to wynne hym wayne, [leaf 26, col. 2.] At last he  
 Atte laste he aryued in<sup>3</sup> Bretaigne; reaches Britain,  
 Pryuely wiþ þe Bretons he spak,  
 & seide, “ȝe se nought ȝoure lak! 5956 asks the Britons  
 . “ȝour kyng can nought hym seluen were! to change  
 “Bot ȝyf ȝe wyl me god feiþ bere, Bassian for  
 “Y scholde deliuere ȝow out of peynes,<sup>4</sup> him;  
 “And al ȝour land of ȝour Romaines.<sup>5</sup>” 5960  
 He ȝede to þe Peytes, & seide hem þe same; and the Picts  
 . ȝif þey wolde alle wyþ o name  
 . Make hym kyng of þempyres, to make him  
 . He wolde þem make lordes & syres. 5964 king.  
 þo were þe Peytes wyþ þe kyng pryue,  
 & in þys lond gret plente;  
 . And Karays wyste þat þey were fykel,  
 . perfore he glosed hem, & gaf hem mykel, 5968  
 & þey hight<sup>6</sup> hym wypouten faille,  
 ȝyf he wyþ þe kyng tok bataille,  
 Tyl Kareys party schold þey go,  
 And þe kyng desconfite & slo. 5972 The Picts  
 agree  
 to betray Bas-  
 sian when  
 Karausius  
 fights him.

<sup>1</sup> *measure wild he.*<sup>2</sup> *farde.*<sup>3</sup> *in þis.*<sup>4</sup> *I. suld delyuere ȝow of þe Romeyns.*<sup>5</sup> *att þis lond of þar dimeyns.*<sup>6</sup> *hette.* [leaf 36.]



## ¶ Decepcio Pyctorum.

|                                                   |                                                                     |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Karausius                                         | . Whan þey had alle Karays y-highte,                                |      |
| defies Bassian,                                   | . Bretons & Peytes help at her myghte,<br>Bassian he gan defye,     |      |
|                                                   | & wip foule wordes hym descrie. <sup>1</sup>                        | 5976 |
| and the armies<br>meet.                           | So longe lasted þer manace,                                         |      |
| Bassian trusts                                    | To bataille þey comen in to <sup>2</sup> place :                    |      |
|                                                   | <sup>3</sup> Bassan affied hym o þe Peytes,                         |      |
| the Picts more<br>than all his<br>men ;           | . In bataille þey knewe many <sup>4</sup> sleighes,                 | 5980 |
|                                                   | þer-fore his trist was on þeym more<br>þan on alle þo þat þer wore. |      |
|                                                   | ffor he god trist to þem hadde,                                     |      |
|                                                   | Richely often þeym he cladde ;                                      | 5984 |
|                                                   | & als þe partys gaf bataille,                                       |      |
| but they prove<br>traitors, turn<br>against him ; | Iusted & chased, & gon assaille,                                    |      |
|                                                   | pys ilke Peytes were traytours,                                     |      |
|                                                   | Ageyn þe kyng turned y þe stours,                                   | 5988 |
|                                                   | . & wyþ Karays partye held,                                         |      |
|                                                   | & traysched þe kyng right in þe feld,                               |      |
| and kill him.                                     | And slowe þe kyng, sire Bassian,                                    |      |
|                                                   | . & alle his folk, ylk a man.                                       | 5992 |
|                                                   | . þus þey traisched hym in nede,                                    |      |
|                                                   | . Sire Bassian þat dide þem fede ;                                  |      |
| Karausius wins<br>Britain,                        | & Karays lyghtli wan þe lond ;                                      |      |
|                                                   | . Agayns hym no party he ne fond.                                   | 5996 |
| and gives the<br>Picts land in<br>Scotland.       | Karays gaf hem, for þer seruise,                                    |      |
|                                                   | Among þe Scottes gret ffraunchise ;                                 |      |
|                                                   | So þat Pictes & þe Scottes kynde                                    |      |
|                                                   | Ar now al on, as men fynde.                                         | 6000 |

<sup>1</sup> wordes ascrie.<sup>2</sup> were þei brouht in.<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. inserts—Karais partie dred not þe kyng.  
ne Bassian Karais no þing.<sup>4</sup> Inouh of bataile þei couth.



**Allectus & Walwus, Romany, venerunt.**

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                      |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Whan þey of Rome tydyng herde<br>þat Karays wiþ Bretaygne þus ferde, <sup>1</sup><br>þey sente hider þre <sup>2</sup> legions,<br>Wyþ to of þer bolde barons ;                                                                                                | The Romans<br>send three<br>legions against<br>Karausius,            | 6004 |
| Allectus & Walwes þer name <sup>3</sup> hyght,<br>Wysemen of werre, & hardy in fight. <sup>4</sup><br>. þey come pryuely <sup>5</sup> out of þe se,<br>. Bot Karays wolde haue reft hem þeir entre ;                                                          | led by Allectus<br>and Walwes.                                       | 6008 |
| Bot maugre Karreys, on hym þey wan, [lf. 26, bk., col. 1.]<br>And slowe Karreys þe false man, <sup>6</sup><br>& alle þat weren of his kynde,<br>Destroyed hem <sup>7</sup> by rote & rynde,<br>& alle þo þat þe Romainys forsok,<br>And til Kareys party tok. | They slay<br>Karausius,<br>all his kin,<br><br>and all his<br>party. | 6012 |

¶ **De electione Regis Asclypidot in parlamento.**

|                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                  |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| . þe Bretons seye þe Romainys aboue,<br>. And Romainys myghte þey neuere loue ;                                                                       | The Britons<br>still desire free-<br>dom from the<br>Roman yoke, | 6016 |
| ffayn wold þey þer fredam fende, <sup>8</sup><br>Truage to Rome wold þey non sende ;<br>After þe barons þo þey sent,<br>To chesen at þat Parlement    | and call a<br>Parliament to<br>choose Ascly-<br>pidot king.      | 6020 |
| A kyng þat myghte ageyn þeym vaille,<br>Asclipedot, Erl of Cornewaille.<br>Whan he was chosen, he dide somoune<br>Alle þe Bretons fro toune to toune, | He summons<br>them all to                                        | 6024 |

|                                                              |                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> with þis lond misferd.                          | <sup>5</sup> com vp ryuand.                           |
| <sup>2</sup> tuo. [leaf 36, col. 2.] trois, Wace,<br>i. 260. | <sup>6</sup> þat falsnes gan.                         |
| <sup>3</sup> Allet & Gallus þer names.                       | <sup>7</sup> stroyed þam.                             |
| <sup>4</sup> hardy & wight.                                  | <sup>8</sup> P. transposes this line and the<br>next. |



fight the Ro-  
mans at Lon-  
don.

<sup>1</sup> þat alle þat myghte wepene welde,  
To bataille schold come, þat were of elde,<sup>1</sup>  
To Londone ageyn Allectus,  
. & his felawe sire Walwus.<sup>2</sup> 6028

¶ De Bello inter Romanos & Regem apud Londonium.

While the Ro-  
mans are  
sacrificing,

the Britons  
besiege them.  
They rush to  
arms,

and fight the  
Britons,  
but are de-  
stroyed, and  
Allectus is slain.

Walwes (Gal-  
lus) flees into  
London,

mans the battle-  
ments,

and keeps the  
Britons off.  
Asclipedot

sends for more  
Britons.

A day þe Romayns made sacrifice  
I þe temple, as was [þer] gyse.<sup>3</sup>  
Right in þeire solempnete,  
Byseged þe Bretons þeir cite; 6032  
þe Romayns herde noise & cry,  
& cried "as armes!" on hy, on hy,<sup>4</sup>  
And dide þem out in to þe felde,  
. & baldely on þem self gon belde, 6036  
& foughten wyþ þe Bretons faste.  
Bot þe Romayns route to-braste;  
ffor Allectus dide<sup>5</sup>; & his mene  
zedede al doun, & moughte nought fle; 6040  
Alle þat were on þat party,  
Ascaped þer non by stret ne sty.  
Sire Walwes sey<sup>6</sup> þeir side zed doun;  
By tyme he fledde in to þe toun, 6044  
. & þe gates after þem sperde.  
To karnels & to þe walle [t]hey ferde,  
& to þe toures cop<sup>7</sup> on hey,  
& dide þe Brutons holde þem a dreigh.<sup>8</sup> 6048  
Asclipedot þat was wypoute,  
. Saw þe Romayns hadde no doute;  
His lettres<sup>9</sup> he dide write & sende  
After mo bretons fer & hende, 6052

<sup>1-1</sup> *att suld com þat were of elde.*  
*to bataile go or wapen welde.*

<sup>2</sup> *Gallus.*

<sup>3</sup> *þer wise.*

<sup>4</sup> *has armes att on hy.*

<sup>5</sup> *side.*

<sup>6</sup> *Gallus sawe.*

<sup>7</sup> *ture vp.* [leaf 36, back.]

<sup>8</sup> *o drie.*

<sup>9</sup> *brefis.*



- pat þey scholde come & sege make  
 Aboute Londone, Romainys to take.  
 ffor þe sonde of sire Asclipidot,  
 Come Walschemen & many a Scot ;  
 On ilka syde alle þey cam,  
 pat langed vnto þe kynedam.  
 Engyns dide<sup>1</sup> þe Bretons reyse,  
 & mangelens ful gode to preyse,  
 & ffruscht þe wal of þe cite ;  
 Wyþ strengþe on þeym þey had entre.  
 þen myghte men se þe Romainys deye,  
 & on hepes leye by<sup>2</sup> ilka weye ;  
 Neuere byfore swylk slaughter was  
 Of [þe]<sup>3</sup> Romainys at no pas.  
 þe Romainys þat were so schent/, [leaf 26, back, col. 2.] A few retreat  
 To priue fortelets<sup>4</sup> þey went,  
 6068 to hidden forts,  
 . ffro þe Bretons for to hyde,  
 . þer lif to lengþe ay byside ;<sup>5</sup>  
 Bot þe Bretons helden hem<sup>6</sup> streyt,  
 þey ascaped nought for no deseyt.  
 6072 but the Britons pursue them,  
 Sory was Walwes, &<sup>7</sup> made his mone,  
 & preyed vn-to<sup>8</sup> þe Bretons ilkone,  
 and Walwes is obliged to ask leave  
 “ Lordynges, wol ȝe let me go  
 to go back to  
 “ Vnto Rome þer y cam fro,  
 6076 Rome  
 “ & my men for to saue ?  
 “ O legion, & namo, wold y craue.<sup>9</sup>  
 with his one  
 . “ þo þat mystaken haue, more or lesse,<sup>10</sup>  
 legion left.  
 . “ ffor þeym ask y forgyuenesse,  
 6080  
 “ & let vs senglely a-wey<sup>11</sup> fare  
 “ Out of þys lond for euere mare.”

<sup>1</sup> barfreis did.<sup>2</sup> ligge in.<sup>3</sup> þe.<sup>4</sup> forceletes.<sup>5</sup> be tide.<sup>6</sup> þam so.<sup>7</sup> vnglad was Gallus he.<sup>8</sup> said vnto.<sup>9</sup> a legion no mo we haue.<sup>10</sup> a legion no ne lesse.<sup>11</sup> with lyfe & hymme away to.



|                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| The Britons<br>agree to this:                                          | þe Bretons graunted þem þer bone,<br>& þe Romayns ʒolde þem sone.                                                                                                                                    | 6084 |
| but when the<br>Romans have<br>marched out,<br>the Welsh and<br>Scotch | Out of þe tours þey come al doun,<br>. To þe pes in-to þe toun;<br>& als þe Romayns ʒolden were,<br>þe Wa[l]ssche & Scottes <sup>1</sup> wyþ al þer here                                             | 6088 |
| fall on them,<br>and slay them<br>all.                                 | Comen wyþ gret noise & hew; <sup>2</sup><br>. Tok þey no tent to pes ne trew; <sup>3</sup><br>Of the Romayns þey smyten ilkan heued,<br>. Lord ne ladde was þer non leued. <sup>4</sup>              | 6092 |
| Walwes is<br>taken, and be-<br>headed at the<br>brook                  | Walwes <sup>5</sup> þey tok, al his vnthank,<br>& leddym to Atyngal, a <sup>6</sup> brokes bank;<br>þer left he his heued, <sup>7</sup> he was þe last;<br>His body in to Atyngal cast. <sup>8</sup> | 6096 |
| Atyngal,                                                               | & for he in þat water lay,<br>þe riueres name was turnd þat <sup>9</sup> day;<br>On Engliche tonge hit hat Walbrok, <sup>10</sup><br>ffor þat Walwes his dep þer tok.                                | 6100 |
| whose name is<br>then changed to<br>Walbrook.                          | ¶ þenne regned Asclipedot;<br>Neyþer was he <sup>11</sup> schrewe ne sot.<br>Gret feste he held at hys coronynge,<br>& ten ʒer he regned kyng.                                                       | 6104 |
| Asclypidot<br>reigns 10 years,<br>and is not a<br>shrew or a fool.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |

¶ De Dioclisiano Inperatore. maximo  
persecutore

Diocletian  
sends Maxi-  
mianus to  
Britain,

In his tyme was an Emperour  
Dioclisian, a werreour,  
He sente hider Maximian;  
& struyde & slow ilk Cristenman.

Christianorum.  
(In a later hand.)

6108

<sup>1</sup> þe scote þe walsh. [lf. 36, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> hu.

<sup>3</sup> toke þe no tent of pes ne tru.

<sup>4</sup> bileued.

<sup>5</sup> Gallus.

<sup>6</sup> him titt a.

<sup>7</sup> his hede gird of.

<sup>8</sup> in to þe broke kast.

<sup>9</sup> þe broke men call to þis.

<sup>10</sup> on Inglis Gualebroke.

<sup>11</sup> nouþer he lufed.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pat he on þys half Mounchow <sup>1</sup> fond,<br>Til he come vntil þys lond,<br>Al he destroyed, & broughte to schame,<br>pat cristned were in Iesu name.<br>Dioclisien, on his partie,<br>To Cristenmen dyde felonye;<br>Vnder hym & Maxymian<br>pey slowe at Verolame <sup>2</sup> seint <sup>3</sup> Alban,<br>& seint Iue & seint Aroon.<br>þo were in ware at <sup>4</sup> Kerlyon,<br>þe byschop wyþ alle þe clergie<br>. pat leued in Iesu or <sup>5</sup> Marie,<br>Alle þey slowe þat þey fond,<br>fful fewe ascaped fro þer hond; <sup>6</sup><br>. So fele were neuere slayn in stour<br>. Of corseyntz <sup>7</sup> vnder emperour.<br>. pat ȝer þe date of Iesu wex,<br>¶ . Two hundred ȝer, four score & sex. | and he destroys<br>all the Chris-<br>tians on his<br>road;<br><br>6112<br><br>6116 among others,<br>Sts. Alban,<br>Julius, and<br>Aaron.<br><br>6120<br><br>6124<br>This was A.D.<br>286. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ De Rege Coele, Patre Sancte Elene. [leaf 27.]

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In Colchestre <sup>8</sup> waster <sup>9</sup> a lordyng,<br>Of wham þe toun hadde gynnyng;      6128<br>S[i]re Coel his name hight,<br>Of noble lynage, a man of myght;<br>He werreyed <sup>10</sup> on Asclipedot,<br>. ffor he had born hym as a sot,<br>. & suffred to mykel <sup>11</sup> Maximian,<br>. pat he þorow þe lond so ran, | Coel of Col-<br>chester<br><br>6132 rebels against<br>Asclypedot, be-<br>cause he's be-<br>haved like a<br>sot, and let<br>Maximinianus |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> mon Giu, Wace; Mons Jovis.  
 See p. 116, note <sup>5</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Written over an erasure.

<sup>3</sup> her was slayn sayn.

<sup>4</sup> in Wales in Kaerlion.

<sup>5</sup> or in.

<sup>6</sup> bot if any ascapid þe lond.

<sup>7</sup> corsayntes.

<sup>8</sup> Wace says 'Hoël . . . de Gloe-  
 cestre;' but R. Brunne is right  
 by Geoffrey of Monmouth.

<sup>9</sup> was.

<sup>10</sup> wered. [leaf 37.]

<sup>11</sup> suffred mykett.



|                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                     |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| slay the<br>Christians.                                               | . þe Cristene blod for to slo ;<br>. þer-fore were þe Bretons <sup>1</sup> wo.                                                                      | 6136 |
|                                                                       | ffor Asclipedot bar hym nought wel, <sup>2</sup><br>þer-fore corouned þei sire Coel. <sup>2</sup>                                                   |      |
| Coel kills<br>Asclypedot.                                             | . When Maximien was gon to Rome,<br>. On Asclipedot toke þey dome ;                                                                                 | 6140 |
|                                                                       | Sire Coel hym in bataille slow,<br>. ffor he fro Maximien hym yuel wyþdrow. <sup>3</sup>                                                            |      |
| Coel has a fair<br>daughter,<br>an only child.                        | þis Coel hadde a doughter fair,<br>Of clergie [sc]he coupe, <sup>4</sup> & was his ayr ;                                                            | 6144 |
|                                                                       | Sone ne doughter had he namo<br>pat þe heritage myghte to go,<br>Scheo was to hure fader ferly dere ;                                               |      |
| and has her<br>taught well.                                           | He dide maistres hure for to lere,<br>pat scheo moughte bettere <sup>5</sup> þe lond ȝeme,<br>. & lord to take, as hure wolde byseme ; <sup>6</sup> | 6148 |
| Her name is<br>Eleyne.                                                | pys ilke mayden highte ELEYNE,<br>. A ful god woman, & a certeyne.                                                                                  | 6152 |
| The Romans                                                            | þe Romainys herde, & were fayn,<br>pat Asclipedot was so slayn ;                                                                                    |      |
| send a choice<br>man here,<br>Constantius,<br>who conquered<br>Spain. | þey sente hider a man of pris,<br>Constancius, þat was noble <sup>7</sup> & wys ;                                                                   | 6156 |
|                                                                       | Al Spayne he had wonnen to Rome,<br>þorow truage al at her dome ;<br>Was noman þanne of his bounte,<br>pat men wiste, so mikel as he.               | 6160 |
|                                                                       | pys Constant þat þus wan Spayne,<br>He aryued her in Brutaigne.                                                                                     |      |
| Coel fears him,                                                       | Choel, þat wiste his comyng,<br>He dredde Costant <sup>8</sup> ouer alle þyng ;                                                                     | 6164 |
| and offers to                                                         | Coel sent til hym messegers,<br>& seide 'he wolde on faire maners                                                                                   |      |

<sup>1</sup> þe Bretons were wroþe.<sup>2</sup> P. transposes these lines.<sup>3</sup> him drouh.<sup>4</sup> of clergie couth. (A.-Sax. heo, she.)<sup>5</sup> scho couth.<sup>6</sup> þat hir wild queme.<sup>7</sup> Constancius both ware. (Cos- tans, Wace, i. 266.)<sup>8</sup> Constant.



- ‘ Holde of hym, ȝif þat he wylde,  
 ‘ & redyly his truage ȝelde.’  
 Costant<sup>1</sup> seide he wolde skyl,  
 & consented til<sup>2</sup> his wyl;  
 þe Romainys seyde<sup>3</sup> þey were aboue,  
 & fayn þey were of pees & loue.  
 Was hit nought a monþe long,  
 Sire Coel tok an yuel strong;  
 Eyghte<sup>4</sup> dayes lay he, & namo,  
 & deide, & wente þer we schal go.<sup>5</sup>  
 Constant saw þys ilke Eleyne,—  
 þis lond was al of hure demayne,—  
 Saw þat scheo was ferly wys,  
 And of beute bar þe prys;  
 Hym þoughte he myghte wel be<sup>6</sup> byset  
 To wedde þat mayde, & bate baret.  
 þen was he kyng, & scheo quene. [leaf 27, col. 2.]  
 A knaue child com þer hem<sup>7</sup> bytwene;  
 CONSTANTYN was his name ytold;  
 & when he was enleuen ȝer old,  
 His fader fel in a seknesse,  
 þat to þe dep<sup>8</sup> hit made hym stresse.  
 . When Constant<sup>9</sup> had y-mad<sup>10</sup> his fyn,  
 . In Euerwyk toun þey byried hym  
 . fful ryaliche wiþ gret honur,  
 . ffor he was a worþy emperour.  
 . When þenterement was done,  
 Constantyn his sone þey coronede sone;<sup>11</sup>  
 & þe more he wax in<sup>12</sup> age,  
 þe bettere loued hym ys<sup>13</sup> baronage;
- 6168 pay tribute to Rome.  
 Constantius agrees to this.  
 6172 Coel dies in a few weeks,  
 6176 and goes where we shall too.  
 Constantius  
 6180 marries Coel’s daughter Eleyne,  
 6184 gets on her a boy, Constantine, dies when his boy is eleven,  
 6188 and is buried at York.  
 6192 Constantine is crowned king,  
 6196 is much loved,

<sup>1</sup> *Constant.*

<sup>2</sup> *consentid to.*

<sup>3</sup> *sawe.* [leaf 37, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> *aght.*

<sup>5</sup> *siben died as we saȝt do* (not in Wace or Geoffrey).

<sup>6</sup> *he þouht him self wele.*

<sup>7</sup> *was þam.*

<sup>8</sup> *ded.*

<sup>9</sup> *MS. Constantyn.*

<sup>10</sup> *Constant had don :* and leaves out the next four lines.

<sup>11</sup> *þei crouned his sone Constantyn.*

<sup>12</sup> *whan he was wele of.*

<sup>13</sup> *wele lufed him his.*



|                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| is liberal,<br><br>knowing,<br><br>and wise. | God chiualrie til hym he <sup>1</sup> drow,<br>ffor he was large, & gaf ynow;<br>3if his fader were of bounte,<br>3it was þe sone wel more þan he. 6200<br>þis Constantyn was man of queyntise,<br>þer-wyþ he was a noble iustise; <sup>2</sup><br>In his 3outhe he was als wys<br>As elder were y þer moste pris. 6204<br>ffor his moder, he loued Bretons;<br>ffor his ffader, of Rome al þe barons;<br>Of þyse two kyndes he was born,<br>And of þe noblest men byforn. 6208 |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ De Constantino, filio Constanty & sancte Elene.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Roman<br>emperor<br><br>Maxentius<br>is a fierce bad<br>man,<br><br>who abases the<br>Senators.<br><br>Some of them<br><br>come to Con-<br>stantine,<br><br>and pray him<br>to put down<br>Maxentius.<br><br>The Britons<br>also pray him<br>to do it. | At Rome was þenne an Emperour<br>þat dide þe Romayns gret desonour;<br>His name was Maxencius,<br>Proud, & fers, <sup>3</sup> & malicious; 6212<br>He wasted þe honour of þe toun,<br>þe noble men he brought þem doun,<br>þe ordre of þer sene abated he,<br>& reft hem þeir dignite. 6216<br>Somme þat hated hym of þo,<br>Left þer fes, <sup>4</sup> dide hem to go<br>Hider to Bretaygne, til Constantyn.<br>ffor he was born of þeyr lyn, 6220<br>þey preied hym he wolde make defens,<br>& abate þe pruyde of Maxens,<br>. Bysoughte as he was, worþy knyght,<br>. Of þer sene to holde vp þe ryght. 6224<br>þe Bretons alle preied hym so,<br>Wyþ hym þey wolde concente þer to. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> Gode knyghtes to him.

<sup>2</sup> P. puts this line two lower.

<sup>3</sup> proude. stoute.

<sup>4</sup> feez. [leaf 37, back.]



Longe þey preied, bot at þe<sup>1</sup> ende  
 He graunted þeym þider to wende; 6228 Constantine  
 He tok wyþ hym<sup>2</sup> knyghtes & squiers, agrees,  
 Men wiþ bowes & arblasters,<sup>3</sup>  
 & his moder ful wys<sup>4</sup> of dome;  
 Wyþ hym wente þey alle vntil Rome. 6232 and takes his  
 ffor þey were men of honurs, host and his  
 He dide hem y þe ordre of senaturs; mother to  
 þat on highte sire Huwelyn,<sup>5</sup> Rome,  
 þat oþer Iohern,<sup>6</sup> Eroert, &<sup>7</sup> Maryn; 6236  
 . Wardeyns he ordeined gode &<sup>8</sup> certeyn, leaving behind  
 . þis lond to kepe til he com ageyn, guardians of  
 Britain.

When Constantyn to Rome cam, [leaf 27, back, col. 1.] He dethrones  
 þe maistrie fro Maxcence he nam, 6240 Maxentius,  
 And was hym selue emperour, and becomes  
 . & Maxcence doun wiþ deshonor.<sup>9</sup> Emperor.  
 Til sire Huelyn<sup>10</sup> he gaf a wyf,  
 Of noble kynde was sche ryf: 6244  
 Of þat wyf, sire Huelyn<sup>10</sup> wan  
 A child men calde Ma[x]imian.<sup>11</sup> Huelyn begets  
 a son Maxi-  
 mian.

¶ De Rege Octauo.<sup>12</sup>

I þe wardeyns tyme<sup>13</sup> þat Constantyn tok  
 þe Bretons for to lok, 6248 While Constan-  
 tine is away,

<sup>1</sup> *bisouht & he at.*  
<sup>2</sup> *he dight his folk.*  
<sup>3</sup> *with alblastes & oþer archers.*  
<sup>4</sup> *his moder eames wys men.*  
<sup>5</sup> *Leonyn.* (Lohélius, *Wace*.)  
<sup>6</sup> 'þat oþer' is dotted under, as if  
 for omission, in the Lambeth MS.  
 The Petyt reads *þe toþer Trahern*  
 (*L'altre Trahens, Wace*). (See *Tra-*  
*herne* here, lines 6259-64, &c., below.)  
 Geoffrey (v. 8) gives only *Leolin*,

*Trahern*, and *Marius*, three uncles  
 of *Helena*.

<sup>7</sup> *þe þrid.*

<sup>8</sup> *left gode.*

<sup>9</sup> *R. Brunne* leaves out *Wace's*  
 seven lines (i. 270) on the finding  
 of the Cross by *Helena*.

<sup>10</sup> *Leonyn.*

<sup>11</sup> *Maximian.*

<sup>12</sup> This heading is two lines lower  
 in the MS.

<sup>13</sup> *this wardeyns.*



|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                          |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Octavus, an<br>earl of Wales,<br>seizes Britain,      | Com Octauus, an erl of Walys,<br>& sesed þys lond, boþe dounes & dales.<br>þy[s] erl of Walys <sup>1</sup> was man of myght,<br>In Bretayne he cleymed ryght ;           | 6252 |
| and kills the<br>wardens and<br>sheriffs.             | Wardeyns & schirreues he slow,<br>Baillifs, bedeles, dide schame ynow.<br>Bot Constantyn to Rome was went,<br>Til gretter nedes he gaf his tent ;                        | 6256 |
| Constantine<br>sends Trahern<br>to subdue<br>Octavus. | . He ne myghte þenne on none wyse<br>. Hyder come to make iustise ;<br>He sende <sup>2</sup> hider sire Traherne,<br>þe lond to kepe & to gouerne.                       | 6260 |
| Traherne forces<br>Winchester<br>to yield.            | Two legions wiþ hym he ladde, <sup>3</sup><br>Toward Bretayne þey hem spedde ; <sup>3</sup><br>. At an hauen þat þey fond,<br>. Sire Traherne tok þys <sup>4</sup> lond. | 6264 |
|                                                       | To Wynchestre <sup>5</sup> wente þis <sup>6</sup> Trahere,<br>Two dayes he soiourned þere,<br>& to hym he dide hem <sup>7</sup> zelde ;                                  |      |
|                                                       | . By þer willes þey ne wolde ;<br>Maugre þeires, þey zolde þe <sup>8</sup> estre.<br>Syþen he zede <sup>9</sup> to Wynchestre ;<br>Sire Octauus wiþ many a scheld        | 6268 |
| Octavus                                               | Was byforn hym in þe feld,                                                                                                                                               | 6272 |
| gives him<br>battle,                                  | & gaf til hym bataille stout.<br>þe Romainys ofte perced þe rout ; <sup>10</sup><br>Octauus grettere force hadde,                                                        |      |
| and drives the<br>Romans to<br>their ships.           | So þat þe Romainys route to-schadde, <sup>11</sup><br>& dide hem to þe hauene fle,<br>Vntil þer schipes on þe se.                                                        | 6276 |

<sup>1</sup> þis *Octauus*.<sup>2</sup> *sent*. [leaf 37, back, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> P. omits these lines.<sup>4</sup> þe.<sup>5</sup> Porcestre, *Wace*, l. 5866, who makes another march on Winchester, l. 5870. R. Brunne follows Geoffrey.<sup>6</sup> sir.<sup>7</sup> to him þe toun he did.<sup>8</sup> *zald* þat.<sup>9</sup> *zode*.<sup>10</sup> *Romeyns* perced þorghoute.<sup>11</sup> *alto* *schad*.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |      |                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pey sette vp sail heye on mast,<br>Toward þe northe þey seyled fast;<br>In Scotlond aryued, <sup>1</sup> & logged his ost,<br>& pylede & robbed <sup>2</sup> at ilka cost.<br>Til Octauus sone com tydand<br>pat Trahern robbed in Scotland.                                                                                                             | 6280 | They sail to the<br>north,<br><br>and pillage<br>Scotland.                             |
| Octauus gadered host ay whare,<br>& hyed hym faste pat he were þare;<br>Oft he seyde wyþ grete pryde<br>pat Trahern schold nought dur abide;<br>Bot his ouerwenyng <sup>3</sup> gan faille;<br>Trahern stod, & bod <sup>4</sup> bataille,<br>& dide Octauus for to fle;<br>In to Norweye ouer þe se.                                                     | 6284 | Octavus follows<br>them,                                                               |
| Octauus þenne fledde for ferd;<br>He spak vntil þe [kinge] Comperd, <sup>5</sup><br>ffor help & socour he preyde <sup>6</sup> ʒerne,<br>To wynne þe lond of sire Traherne.<br>Pryuely he sent to þis lond ageyn, [leaf 37, back, col. 2.]<br>To þo pat were til hym certeyn,<br>pat þey scholde fonde on alle wyse<br>To sle Traherne wip som queyntise. | 6288 | but they put<br>him to flight.                                                         |
| pat tyme spedde Traherne wel ynow; <b>Rex Tra-</b><br>ʃ Ageyn to þe southe Traherne drow, <b>hernus.</b><br>& dide hym coroune kyng to be,<br>. & regned wip solempnete.                                                                                                                                                                                 | 6292 | He goes to<br>Norway,                                                                  |
| A day to <sup>7</sup> Londone he scholde out ryde;<br>His ffomen a-spied wel what tyde;<br>. Enbusched þeym by þat strete<br>. þer þey hoped þe kyng to mete.                                                                                                                                                                                            | 6296 | and asks king<br>Comperd(Gom-<br>bert) for help.                                       |
| Sire Traherne of non hym dredde,<br>. þer-fore no folk wyþ hym ne ledde;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 6300 | Octavus also<br>tells his friends<br><br>to try and kill<br>Traherne by<br>some snare. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 6304 | Trahern is<br>crowned king,                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 6308 | but one day his<br>foes lie in wait<br>for him,                                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |      | when he is out<br>alone,                                                               |

<sup>1</sup> he ryued in Scotland.

<sup>2</sup> robbed & reft.

<sup>3</sup> ouerhope.

<sup>4</sup> stode vnto.

<sup>5</sup> vnto kyng Comperde.

<sup>6</sup> socour for.

<sup>7</sup> of. [leaf 38.]



|                |                                                |      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|------|
|                | At a passage as he went,                       |      |
|                | þey breken of þeyr enbuschement; <sup>1</sup>  | 6312 |
|                | þo þat hym hated for Octauus                   |      |
| and kill him.  | Slowen <sup>2</sup> þer sire Trahernus.        |      |
| They send for  | ffor Octauus þey sende <sup>3</sup> þer sonde, |      |
| Octavus,       | & sesed hym eft in to þe londe,                | 6316 |
|                | & corouned hym als he was er;                  |      |
| crown him,     | & alle þat comen wyþ Traher,                   |      |
|                | Euerilkon he <sup>4</sup> dide þem slo;        |      |
|                | Ascaped non bot wyþ wo;                        | 6320 |
| and he reigns  | Syþen in pes þe lond gan welde,                |      |
| long in peace. | & longe lyuede til gret <sup>5</sup> elde.     |      |

¶ De consilio Octaui per Karadukum.

|                 |                                                   |      |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| When Octavus    | Whan he had regned <sup>6</sup> þis lond her,     |      |
| gets old,       | þe tyme of to & þritty <sup>7</sup> ȝer,          | 6324 |
|                 | He sey þat of hym cam <sup>8</sup> non eyr        |      |
|                 | Bot a maiden child right feir;                    |      |
| and has no heir | He asked who moughte his doughter haue,           |      |
| but a girl,     | þis lond for to loke & saue.                      | 6328 |
| he asks who     | ffele of his frendes seid his <sup>9</sup> reson, |      |
| had better      | To sende to Rome for a baron,                     |      |
| marry her,      | His doughter for to gyue to wyue;                 |      |
| and have the    | So myghte þey pes haue in þer lyue.               | 6332 |
| land.           | Oþer þer were þat loued Conan,                    |      |
| Some propose a  | þe kynges cosyn, a noble man;                     |      |
| Roman;          | þey conseilled to make hym ys eyr,                |      |
|                 | He myghte best, in þeir espeir. <sup>10</sup>     | 6336 |
| others, Conan,  | þen spak þe Erl of Cornewaille,                   |      |
| the king's      |                                                   |      |
| relation.       |                                                   |      |
|                 |                                                   |      |
| Karaduk, the    |                                                   |      |
| earl of Corn-   |                                                   |      |

<sup>1</sup> put þam of þer bussement.<sup>2</sup> slouh.<sup>3</sup> sent.<sup>4</sup> þei.<sup>5</sup> to right gode.<sup>6</sup> regned in.<sup>7</sup> MS. ȝritty. P. þritty.<sup>8</sup> sawe of him was.<sup>9</sup> gaf.<sup>10</sup> þis was þer speire.



- Sire Karaduk: he seide, 'saunz faille  
 ' He ne wolde nought *conseille* þer-to,  
 ' ffor<sup>1</sup> hit were nought wel to do,  
 ' To make his eir sire<sup>2</sup> Conan;  
 " Bot sende after Maxymian,  
 " þe eldest sone of Huelyn,<sup>3</sup>  
 " Eleyne<sup>4</sup> cosyn, & Constantyn:  
 " His fader ys Breton, þat<sup>5</sup> is certayn,  
 " & on his moder side Romayn;  
 " Gif hym þy doughter in mariage;  
 " Wys man he is, & wel of age.  
 " ȝif þou gaf hit vntil Conan,  
 " & married þy doughter to anoþer man,  
 " He scholde fonde, when he myght<sup>6</sup> wel,  
 " þe lond of hym to wyne ilk del;  
 " He scholde þenke, & ful wel myght,  
 " þat hit scholde<sup>7</sup> be his þorow ryght;  
 " Bot ȝyf ȝe do as y ȝow seye,  
 " Of pes ys þer non oþer weye."  
 þe kyng held hym to þat conseil;  
 þer-fore bygan þer a tyrpeyl<sup>8</sup>  
 Bytwyxt Conan & Karaduk;  
 ffor Conan gan þat oþer<sup>9</sup> rebuk,  
 & reuiled<sup>10</sup> hym wyþ wordes þore;  
 & ȝif he had durst, he wolde more.  
 Sire Karaduk held ful litel<sup>11</sup> awe  
 Of his manace or of his sawe.  
 þe kyng bisoughte sire Karaduk  
 To sende to Rome his sone Maurik/,  
 & preye hym vpon alle þynge  
 Maxymian to Bretaigne brynge.
- 6340 wall, is against Conan,  
 6344 and recom- mends Maxi- mian,  
 6348 who is in blood both Briton and Roman, and a wise man,  
 6352 [leaf 28.] which will also secure peace.  
 6356 Octavus agrees to this.  
 6360 Conan reviles Karaduk,  
 6364 but he cares very little for it.  
 6368 Octavus asks Karaduk to send his son Maurice to Rome, and fetch Maxi- mian.

<sup>1</sup> *ne.*<sup>2</sup> *heir to mak his cosyn.*<sup>3</sup> *leonyng.*<sup>4</sup> *Heleyn.* [leaf 38, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *þis.*<sup>6</sup> *suld fond whan he mot.*<sup>7</sup> *þe lond suld.*<sup>8</sup> *tirpeile.* (Fr. trepel, Wace, l. 5967.)<sup>9</sup> *þe [on] to þe toþer.*<sup>10</sup> *Conan stouted.*<sup>11</sup> *had litell.*



|                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maurice<br>finds Maximian<br>disputing with<br>Valentine and<br>Gratian for the<br>Roman empire,<br><br>and advises him<br><br>to marry<br>Octavus's<br>daughter,<br>and so strength-<br>en his party. | Whan Mauryk was to Rome y-comen,<br>He saw þat gret party was nomen<br>Bytwixten þis Maximian<br>& Valentyn & Gracian :<br>þey stryue to haue þe empire ;<br>þe breþere hadde þer partie most seure. <sup>1</sup><br>Sire Maurik þer Maximian fond,<br>& teldym <sup>2</sup> he was of þys lond ;<br>Anon he bad him, "take leue <sup>3</sup> of Rome,<br>" & vntil Bretaygne smertly come,<br>" þe kynges doughter for to take ;<br>. " þou may þy party þe better make."<br> | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6372<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6376<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6380 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### ¶ De Maximiano Rege.

|                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximian<br>agrees,<br><br><br><br>comes to South-<br>ampton,<br><br>and gets Oc-<br>tavus's<br>daughter and<br>Britain.<br>Conan makes<br>war on<br><br>Octavus and<br>Maximian. | ¶ When Maximian þis tydynges herde,<br>Wip ioie to Bretayne wyþ Maurik [he] <sup>4</sup><br>ferde :<br>Was non abyd ne no dwellynge<br>Til Maximian com to þe kyng.<br>. Maximian at Southaumptoun gan ryue,<br>& asked þe kynges doughter to wyue.<br>þan was Octauus al at ese ;<br>Of his doughter he dide hym sese,<br>Wip al þe reome <sup>5</sup> ilkadel,<br>. & bad hym richely regne, & wel.<br>¶ Conan was wroþ, & made gret bost,<br>He alyed hym to þe Scottes cost ;<br>Octauus, his em, he gan manace,<br>& Maximien wip <sup>6</sup> werre dide chace ;<br>Bot Maximian gaf nought of hym ;<br>He stod ageyn Conan ful grym. | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6384<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6388<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6392<br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br>6396 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þe breþer þe better partie.

<sup>2</sup> told him.

<sup>3</sup> bad him leue att þat.

<sup>4</sup> he.

<sup>5</sup> & alle rengne. [leaf 38, back.]

<sup>6</sup> to.



|                                                   |                    |                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| fful often Conan of hym wan,                      |                    | Some times one    |
| So dide of hym Maximian:—                         |                    | side wins,        |
| Hit ys <i>per</i> chaunce þat werre bygynne,      |                    | sometimes the     |
| Vmwhile to lese, vmwhile <sup>1</sup> to wynne.—  | 6400               | other,            |
| Whan þei to-gedere had werreyed longe,            |                    |                   |
| Men of gode zede þeym amonge,                     |                    | till at last they |
| Dide þem acorde in loue & pes,                    |                    | make peace.       |
| . So þat Maximian nought ne les;                  | 6404               |                   |
| He highte hym, for his emes <sup>2</sup> sake,    |                    |                   |
| A riche man he scholde hym make.                  |                    |                   |
| pre <sup>3</sup> zer in pes, wypouten fight,      |                    | After three       |
| He drow to tresour þat he myght;                  | 6408               | years Maximian    |
| He seide he wolde assaye þe <sup>4</sup> chaunce, |                    | resolves to       |
| Ouer se to wende, & wynne ffraunce,               |                    | conquer France    |
| & fro þenne wende to <sup>5</sup> Rome,           |                    | and Rome.         |
| Of his enemys to make dome,                       | 6412               |                   |
| And of alle þat wyþ hem helde,                    | [leaf 28, col. 2.] |                   |
| Ageins hym fyghtyng in [þe] <sup>6</sup> felde.   |                    |                   |

¶ De nauigacione Maximiani versus Armoricham.

|                                                  |      |                |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|----------------|
| When he had folk, & was redy,                    |      | He sails, with |
| To schipe þey wente hastily.                     | 6416 | his host,      |
| Toward south-west þey passed þe se,              |      |                |
| Aryued vp in a contre;                           |      |                |
| Armoriche was þenne þe name,                     |      | to Armorica,   |
| . Bot now hit hap an oper fame.                  | 6420 |                |
| Humbald was <i>per</i> -in lord & sire,          |      |                |
| Of Armoriche he held þenpire;                    |      |                |
| He dide somoune alle his barons,                 |      | is opposed by  |
| A-wey to chace, & felle <sup>7</sup> þe Bretons. | 6424 | king Humbald,  |
| þe Bretons were of wel more myght;               |      |                |

<sup>1</sup> som tyme to lose som tyme.

<sup>2</sup> he het him þan for his eam.

<sup>3</sup> 'five' says Geoffrey.

<sup>4</sup> wild stande to.

<sup>5</sup> fro þien vnto.

<sup>6</sup> agayn him fightand in þe.

<sup>7</sup> to chace away.



but puts the  
Armoricans to  
flight,

and kills 15,000  
of them.  
Maximian  
rejoices,

and says to  
Conan,

"You see this  
fair country,

well wooded,

and watered.

I give it you.

You were pro-  
mised Great  
Britain, and  
lost it for me.

I give you this  
land instead."

Humbaldes men þey slowe doun right,  
þey nadde<sup>1</sup> no force to turne agein;  
Alle þey fledde, knyght & swayn; 6428  
Bot fiftene þousand wer þer slayn.  
& Maximien gan turne<sup>2</sup> ageyn,  
. & ioyful was þat he so spedde:—  
. þat lond held women, þe men were fledde:—<sup>3</sup>  
He tok sire Conan by þe hond,<sup>4</sup> 6433  
& on hym low wyþ god semblaunt/<sup>5</sup>  
"Conan," he seide, "þou art doughti;  
"To manne Armoriche<sup>6</sup> þou were worthi. 6436  
"Sestow now þis faire contre,  
"fful plentyuous & ful ayse;<sup>7</sup>  
"þe lond to tyle, god ys to wynne;  
"Wodes, watres, ynowe þer-ynne, 6440  
"fforestes fulle of ful fayr dere,  
"ffresche ryuers ese & ner;  
"Y ne sey nere in al<sup>8</sup> my lyue  
"A fairer lond, ne more<sup>9</sup> plentyue. 6444  
"On þe, Conan, y vouche hit saue,  
. "þat þou hit welde wyþ ioye, & haue.  
"Bretaygne þe grete was þe het,  
" & on þe hit were ful wel byset; 6448  
"Bot for me þou hast hit lorn,  
"per-fore to me yuel hastow<sup>10</sup> born;  
"ffor-gyue me now ilk a del,  
" & haue þis lond, & brouk hit wel. 6452  
. "þis ys þe heste<sup>11</sup> þat y þe hight;  
. " & bettere y wolde, ȝyf þat y<sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup>myght;  
"pys lond we scholle<sup>14</sup> clense of þyse,

<sup>1</sup> had.

<sup>2</sup> MS. turned.

<sup>3</sup> had wonnen þe folk was fled.

<sup>4</sup> hande.

<sup>5</sup> louh with faire semblande.

<sup>6</sup> to haf a reume.

<sup>7</sup> wele ese.

<sup>8</sup> I. sawe neuer in.

<sup>9</sup> so faire a lond ne so.

<sup>10</sup> itt witt to me þerfor has.

<sup>11</sup> hete. (see l. 6405-6.)

<sup>12</sup> & better satt whan .I. haf.

<sup>13</sup> One stroke too many in the  
MS. m.

<sup>14</sup> satt.



" pen schulle<sup>1</sup> þe Bretons þe lond iustise ; 6456  
 " Non oþer folk schulle<sup>1</sup> dwelle þer-ynne ;  
 . " pen may þou weldit al<sup>2</sup> wyþ wyne."  
 Conan of hym receyued þe gyfte,  
 . & Maximian to kyng hym lyfte ; 6460  
 And Conan made hym þer fewte,  
 Of hym to holde hit euere yn fe.<sup>3</sup>

Conan accepts  
 the gift,  
 and does fealty  
 to Maximian  
 for it.

¶ *Brytannia Mynor conquesta est per Maximianum.*

¶ Maximian spak to þe kyng :  
 " þis lond is Bretones wynnyng, 6464  
 " & for þat ilke encheson  
 " þat hit is conquered þorow<sup>4</sup> Bretoun,  
 " Hit schal hote þe Lesse<sup>5</sup> Bretayne,  
 . " And we Bretons to be cheuentayne ;<sup>6</sup> 6468  
 . " And y comaunde ȝow alle oliche,<sup>7</sup> [lf. 23, bk., col. 1.]  
 . " þat noman calle hit Armoriche."  
 ffro þat day vntil þis same,  
 Of Armoriche hit loste þe name ; 6472  
 & now ys hit cald Bretaigne wyþ alle ;  
 I trowe þat name schal neuere falle.  
 Maximien, til his demeynes  
 He sesed þe faire cite of Reynes. 6476  
 þat were þer-ynne, þe toun þenne left,  
 Durste neuere non of þeym ryse efte.  
 Maximian þe<sup>8</sup> lond tok,  
 Tounes & casteles dide he lok ;<sup>9</sup> 6480  
 ffaire countres ouer al he fond,  
 Bot þer were none myghte tyle þe lond ;  
 He þoughte he wolde to Bretaigne sende  
 . After men, boþe sibbe & fremde, 6484

As Britons  
 have conquered  
 Armorica,  
 Maximian  
 changes its  
 name to the  
 Less Britain ;

and it is now  
called Britany.

Maximian  
 seizes Reynes.

But as he finds  
 few people in  
 Little Britain,  
 he imports  
 from Great  
 Britain

<sup>1</sup> *satt.*

<sup>2</sup> *weld þe lond.*

<sup>3</sup> *hold att his fe.*

<sup>4</sup> *conquest þorgh.*

<sup>5</sup> *it satt hate lesse.*

<sup>6</sup> *cheiftayn.*

<sup>7</sup> *onlyche.*

<sup>8</sup> *þat þe.* [leaf 39.]

<sup>9</sup> *constables castels did loke.*



|                                              |                                                            |      |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                              | . þe lond to multeplie & to tyle, <sup>1</sup>             |      |
|                                              | . þat oper þer-to ne scholde haue skyle.                   |      |
|                                              | He dide come of pore pedaille                              |      |
| 100,000 labourers,                           | An hundred þousand þat myghte trauaille,                   | 6488 |
|                                              | <sup>2</sup> To labour & to tyle þer fode;                 |      |
| and 30,000 men of arms.                      | Wyþ þritty þousand men of armes gode,                      |      |
|                                              | þe londe fro enemis to fende & were,                       |      |
|                                              | . þat Vtlandeys scholde þem nought dere. <sup>2</sup>      | 6492 |
| Then Conan is crowned king,                  | þenne was Conan corouned kyng,                             |      |
|                                              | & hadde þe regne al in kepyng,                             |      |
|                                              | . þer-ynne <sup>3</sup> to lyue & to deye,                 |      |
| and Maximian goes his way,                   | And Maximian wente forþ his weye.                          | 6496 |
| conquers France and Lorraine,                | Als he wente, Maximian,                                    |      |
|                                              | ffraunce & al Lorreyne <sup>4</sup> he wan.                |      |
|                                              | Hym þoughte hit was nought ȝit ynow;                       |      |
|                                              | To Rome he þoughte, & þider he drow;                       | 6500 |
|                                              | . He þoughte to venge hym þenne of þo                      |      |
|                                              | . þat greued hym at Rome, when he scholde go; <sup>5</sup> |      |
|                                              | & þo breþere to bryng to yuel <sup>6</sup> fyn,            |      |
|                                              | Boþe Gracien & sire Valentyn.                              | 6504 |
| takes Rome,                                  | He com to Rome ful hastely; <sup>7</sup>                   |      |
|                                              | þat o broþer tok he par <sup>8</sup> maystry;              |      |
|                                              | þat oper he dide wyþ force fle,                            |      |
| and becomes the 14th Emperor after Augustus, | & held þempire in dignite.                                 | 6508 |
|                                              | . þen was he þe fourtenþe <sup>9</sup> Emperour            |      |
|                                              | . Syþen Augustus, þat bar þe flour:                        |      |
|                                              | . þe date of Crist þen was þus euene,                      |      |
| A.D. 377.                                    | . þre hundred ȝer, seuenty & seuene.                       | 6512 |

<sup>1</sup> & forto puplise þe lond & tile.<sup>2-2</sup> & þritty þousand of knyghted gode.

to fende þam to tile þer fode.

<sup>3</sup> þer for.<sup>4</sup> lorenge.<sup>5</sup> whan he Rome first ȝede fro.<sup>6</sup> ille.<sup>7</sup> austerly.<sup>8</sup> þe tuo breþer toke par.<sup>9</sup> fourtend.



¶ De Dynoto, Custode siue Rege, & de Vrsula, filia eiusdem, & .xj. M<sup>t</sup> virginum, tam per tempestatem quam apud Coloniam, occisi per Sarasenos.

When Maximian ferde fro Bretaigne,  
Of Dynotis mad he cheftayne,<sup>1</sup>  
To kepe<sup>2</sup> þe lond til his bihoue;  
ffor trewe & feyþful he dide<sup>3</sup> hym proue. 6516  
Sire Karaduk, þat y spak of<sup>4</sup> byforn,  
Was Dynotis broþer, & ʒonge<sup>5</sup> born;  
Bot ded þat tyme was Karaduk;  
& his sone, þat highte sire Mauryk,— 6520  
þat ʒede to Rome in Octauus message—  
Wyþ Dyanot he kepte<sup>6</sup> his heritage.

Maximian has  
left Dianot in  
charge of Great  
Britain.

A doughter had Dianot, & no ma; [lf. 28, bk., col. 2.] Dianot has one  
Hure name was cald dame<sup>7</sup> Vrsula. 6524 daughter,  
Ursula.

. po þat were dryuen fro Armoriche,  
 þe Frensche & þey felawed o-liche,<sup>8</sup>  
 & rysen<sup>9</sup> ageyn Conan to fight;  
 Bot Conan meyntende wel his right;  
 ffor þeym ne loste he<sup>10</sup> neuere nought

Conan puts  
 down a rebel-  
 lion in Bri-  
 tany.

6528

. Whan þey on hym bataille sought.  
 þen was Conan meued of skyle <sup>11</sup> Conan wants  
 Hys lond to edefie & to tyle; <sup>12</sup> 6532  
 & þat þey moughte þe sikerere lyue,  
 Wyues he þoughte hem for to gyue.  
 ffrensche wymen wolde <sup>13</sup> þey non take,  
 þat þer blod no monge scholde <sup>14</sup> make, 6536  
 and, as they  
 won't take  
 French wome

<sup>1</sup> *ceiftayn.*

<sup>2</sup> & kept. [leaf 39, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> *for a lele man did.*

<sup>4</sup> *Karaduk broper .I. spak.*

<sup>5</sup> was *Dinotus* & *zongere*.

<sup>6</sup> with *Dianoth* had.

7 þat maiden hight,

<sup>8</sup> *frankis & þei fleand olike.*

9 *ros.*

<sup>10</sup> þem he les.

<sup>11</sup> *to do his folk be more þorgh skitt.*

<sup>12</sup> & þe lond herberw & titt.

<sup>13</sup> *frankis women wild.*

<sup>14</sup> *monge suld.*



|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | To haue cleyrn þorow heritage,<br>Ne dowarye þorow mariage.<br>. Vntil no blod wolde þey hem bynde,<br>. Bot only to þer owene kynde; 6540<br>þerfore Conan sente his sonde<br>To Dianot, þat kepte þis londe,<br>“ To sende hym his doughter Vrsele—<br>“ Wip non oper wolde he dele,— 6544<br>“ And gentil damysels vngyuen, <sup>1</sup><br>“ þat able to mennes companye were <sup>2</sup> þryuen,—<br>“ Squyers <sup>3</sup> doughtres, & frankelayns,<br>“ To gyue hem to knyghtes & to swayns, 6548<br>“ Oper maidens comen of þralles,<br>“ To be married as þem falles;<br>“ Alle þat he myghte, he schold <sup>4</sup> hym sende,<br>“ Wip waryson he schold <sup>4</sup> þem mende.” 6552<br>Dynot graunted to sende hym hyre,<br>& richely þen dide hure atyre;<br>Alle þo þat he gete myght,<br>Lordynges <sup>5</sup> doughtres wel adight: 6556<br>¶ Enleuen þousand <sup>6</sup> þey were by tale,<br>Of gentil blod, <sup>7</sup> grete & smale;<br>Oper þat were of lower kynde,<br>. þe auenauntest þey myghte <sup>8</sup> fynde, 6560<br>Sexty þousand, <sup>9</sup> so many þer ware,<br>Redy to schipen ouer <sup>10</sup> to fare,<br>Wel dight ilkon for þe nones.<br>At Londone þey schiped at ones, <sup>11</sup> 6564<br>& drowe þer sail heye vpon mast;<br>Bytaughte þem God, & seyled fast. |
|--|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Conan sends to  
Dianot

for his daughter  
Ursula for him-  
self,

and plenty of  
marriageable  
girls  
of different  
ranks for his  
men.

Dianot agrees  
to send Ursula  
to Conan,

with 11,000  
virgins of gentle  
blood,

and 60,000 of  
the prettiest  
girls of lower  
rank.

They take ship  
at London, and  
sail off.

<sup>1</sup> *Ientitt doughtres vngyuen.*

<sup>2</sup> *þat were of wærdam & wele.*

<sup>3</sup> *sergeanz.*

<sup>4</sup> *suld.*

<sup>5</sup> *lordes.*

<sup>6</sup> *elleuen.* [leaf 39, back.]

<sup>7</sup> *women.*

<sup>8</sup> *auenant þat þei mot.*

<sup>9</sup> *quarante mil, Wace, i. 285, l. 6169.*

<sup>10</sup> *schip ouer se.*

<sup>11</sup> *P. inserts,—*

*whan þei had aʒt þat þam fett nede.  
& were bitaght þo þam suld lede.*







|                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
|                                                                                                      | . What wyþ þat on, what wyþ þat oþer,<br>þer lefte no force agayns non oþer.<br>What dide Melga & Guaneis,                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |              |
| They gather a<br>host, sail to                                                                       | . Bot gadred ost of Outlandeys.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 6600         |
| Scotland,<br>pour into the                                                                           | . Wip gret nauye o þe se þey <sup>1</sup> ryde,<br>& comen in alle by Scotlande syde;<br>Wyþ werre & wo þey dide gret noye,<br>. ffor Westmorland al gon þey struye;                                                                                                                                                       | 6604         |
| North country,<br>and waste it;<br>pass to the<br>South, and<br>meet no foes<br>but husband-<br>men, | Al þe northe contre þey wasted.<br>þey passed Humber, & southe hem hasted;<br>Non encountre <sup>2</sup> þey ne fond,<br>Bot husbonde-men þat tyled lond,<br>& werkmen, & oþer pedaille<br>þat coupe nought werre ne of bataille;<br>. ȝif any swyche stod ought <sup>3</sup> agayn,<br>Wyþ armed men sone were þey slayn. | 6608<br>6612 |
| who flee or are<br>killed.                                                                           | . Ilk man fro his owen gan fle,<br>& þo þat ne myghte, slayn was he:<br>How scholde þat londe kepe hym fro harmes, <sup>4</sup><br>þat naked ys of men of armes? <sup>5</sup>                                                                                                                                              | 6616         |
| How can a land<br>defend itself<br>without men of<br>arms?                                           | . A lond hedles <sup>6</sup> in tyme of nede,<br>. Ouer al þanne ys sorewe & drede;<br>& so was þenne bot cry & kare,<br>. Of socour & help þey were al bare;                                                                                                                                                              | 6620         |
|                                                                                                      | Bot <sup>7</sup> while þey hadde þer bolde barons,<br>Saulike <sup>8</sup> held þey þer castels & touns;<br>. Ouer alle landes þey schewed þer <sup>9</sup> myghtes,<br>. þe whyles <sup>10</sup> þey hadde þer noble knyghtes.                                                                                            | 6624         |
| The Britons<br>send messengers<br>to Maximian at<br>Rome,                                            | . þen chose þey of most bolde <sup>11</sup> & fers,<br>& sent hem to Rome as messegers<br>ffor help vnto Maximian;                                                                                                                                                                                                         |              |

<sup>1</sup> with a grete flete on flode to.  
[leaf 39, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> in no countre.

<sup>3</sup> ony of swik stode.

<sup>4</sup> How suld a lond be dredede.

<sup>5</sup> þat of knigthes es al nakyd.

<sup>6</sup> heuedles.

<sup>7</sup> to.

<sup>8</sup> Saueþy.

<sup>9</sup> þei mustird.

<sup>10</sup> to whyle.

<sup>11</sup> þei ches þat were baldest.



|                                                 |      |                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------------|
| And he þem sende sire Gracian ;                 | 6628 | and he sends<br>back Gratian<br>with two<br>legions, |
| Wyþ hym come two legyons                        |      |                                                      |
| pat wel socoured þe Bretouns ;                  |      |                                                      |
| þise Sarsynes <sup>1</sup> þeues þey drof away, |      | who drive the                                        |
| In til Irland ilkon fled þey.                   | 6632 | Saracen thieves<br>away to Ireland.                  |
| ¶ In þys tyme at Rome ros Valentyn              |      | But in Rome,                                         |
| Wyþ al hys kynde, em & cosyn ;                  |      | Valentine rebels<br>against Maxi-<br>mian,           |
| . Wyþ hym com kynges <sup>2</sup> of þe Est,    | 6636 |                                                      |
| Mo þan twenty, as seyþ <sup>3</sup> þe Gest ;   |      |                                                      |
| . Bot þorow treson, y ne wot how,               |      |                                                      |
| Algate Maximian þey slow.                       |      | kills him,                                           |
| þe Bretons þat Maximian ledde,                  |      |                                                      |
| Summe þey slowe, somme were fledde ;            | 6640 |                                                      |
| pan sesed Valentyn Rome <sup>4</sup> al eftē,   |      | and seizes<br>Rome.                                  |
| Al þat Maximian hym refte.                      |      |                                                      |

¶ De Rege Graciano Romano.

|                                                     |                    |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| þys tydyng com to Gracian,                          | [leaf 29, col. 2.] |                                             |
| How Valentyn slow <sup>5</sup> Maxymian ;           | 6644               |                                             |
| & saw he was here cheuentayne, <sup>6</sup>         |                    | Gratian gets<br>crowned king<br>of Britain, |
| & dide hym coroune kyng of Bretayne,                |                    | turns tyrant,                               |
| And bar hym heye as a Tyraunt,                      | 6648               |                                             |
| ffor þis was his custume & his haunt,               |                    | and does poor<br>men woe.                   |
| Pouere men to do þem wo ;                           |                    |                                             |
| Out of þer right he put þem fro,                    |                    |                                             |
| . & ful manye of þeym he slow ;                     |                    |                                             |
| þe riche he louede wel ynow.                        | 6652               |                                             |
| What dide þe mene folk & þe pedaille ? <sup>7</sup> |                    | For which the<br>mean folk                  |
| Samned þem a gret bataille ;                        |                    |                                             |
| . To pryue conseilte þey gon þem renge,             |                    |                                             |

<sup>1</sup> þis Saxins. (les hulagues, *Wace*, i. 289, l. 6253.)

<sup>2</sup> a kyng.

<sup>3</sup> *Theodosius*, so *sais*. (O Théo-  
sien d'Orient, *Wace*, i. 289, l. 6258.)

<sup>4</sup> *Valentyn seised att eft*. [leaf 40.]

<sup>5</sup> þat he was dede.

<sup>6</sup> he saw him self cheftan. P.  
transposes this line and l. 6666.

<sup>7</sup> *poueraile*.



On <sup>1</sup> Gracian þey wolde hem venge. 6656  
 . þey byseded hym sodeynly,<sup>2</sup>  
 . & token hym syþen þar maistri,  
 & his body al to-hewe,  
 þe peces vntil houndes þrewe. 6660  
 þe Romainys þat were wyþ him comen,  
 Smerly a-geyn to Rome þey nomen.

take him pri-  
 soner, and cut  
 him in pieces.

¶ De captiuitate Brytannie.

Melga and  
 Guaneys  
 come from Ire-  
 land  
 with Norsemen,  
 Danes, Scots,  
 &c.,  
 and pillage and  
 burn the  
 country.  
 The Britons  
 cannot stop  
 them,

Melga Guaneys<sup>3</sup> herde wel how  
 þat þe poraille<sup>4</sup> Gracian slow; 6664  
 . ffor Irlond þey come, ful<sup>5</sup> fayn  
 . þat sire Gracian was so slayn;  
 þey gadered alle þe outlandeys  
 Of Norway men, wyþ þe Daneys, 6668  
 &<sup>6</sup> þe Scottes wyþ men of Irland,  
 & ouer-sette alle Northumberlande;  
 þey passed Humber, pylede<sup>7</sup> & brent.  
 þen sawe þe Bretons þer lond al schent, 6672  
<sup>8</sup> . & þey hadde no myght to stoppe þer weye,<sup>9</sup>  
 . ffor nought þat þey coupe don or seye;  
 . No þrowe in pes ne myghte þey reste;  
 . þer-upon þey conseilled what was þe beste. 6676

¶ Hic miserunt Britones ad Romanos pro defensione  
 eorum.

and send to the  
 senators at  
 Rome

¶ þey sente vnto þe senatours  
 Of Rome for help & socours,  
 As men þat þey most on affied,

<sup>1</sup> of.

<sup>2</sup> þe biseged him priuely.

<sup>3</sup> Melga Guanys. (Ganis et Ma-  
 gan, Wace.)

<sup>4</sup> poueraile. (vilain, Wace, l. 6281.)

<sup>5</sup> & were.

<sup>6</sup> of.

<sup>7</sup> robbed.

<sup>8</sup> P. puts here, for the next line,  
 & þer folk so schamly deie.

<sup>9</sup> myght stop weie.



- . & in seruage to þem alyed, 6680  
 To helpe hem on haste now in þer nede, for help,  
 . ffor ay þey lyue wyþ pylours<sup>1</sup> in drede;  
 & þey ne scholde neuere, for wele ne wo, promising  
 More out of þer conseil do,<sup>2</sup> 6684  
 Bot ȝelde hem þat þeym oughte to haue, to pay them  
 ȝyf þey<sup>3</sup> wolde helpe now þeym to saue. tribute.  
 Bot þe Romayns forgete nought The Romans  
 What schame byforn<sup>4</sup> þey had hem<sup>5</sup> wrought remember the  
 So often & so fele syþe 6689 Britons' former  
 Whan þey moughte þer felonye kype; rebelliousness,  
 Natheles, twoo legions<sup>6</sup> þey sent, but they send  
 þat sone come, as hap þem lent, 6692 two legions,  
 & deliuered þem of þer enemys: who put Melga  
 To Scotland fledden Melga Gwanis. to flight,

¶ Iam Romany venerunt, & fiery fecerunt Murum de  
 Thurlwal.

- . pys Romayns dide þem conseyl take, and then resolve  
 . A wal vpon a dik to<sup>7</sup> make 6696 to build a wall  
 . ffro þe est se vnto<sup>8</sup> þe west, across the land.  
 . Agayns þer foos to saue þem best.  
 Ston þey dide gadere & graue, They get  
 . & masons alle þat þey myghte haue; 6700 stones;  
 . Ouer-þwert þe lond, þat ys, þe brede, and masons  
 þey made þe wal ar þat þey ȝede, build the wall  
 ¶ ffor by þe northe ende come alle þo  
 þat to þe lond broughte werre or wo. 6704 to keep out foes  
 þat contre hight þat tyme Deyre, from the  
 . Of þis half þe wal in ȝork-schire; North,

<sup>1</sup> with robbours lyued att day.

[leaf 40, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> go. (n'istront, Wace, l. 6294.)

<sup>3</sup> if ȝei.

<sup>4</sup> MS. byform.

<sup>5</sup> what to þam befor þei.

<sup>6</sup> neuerþeles agayn. (Une légion  
 solement, Wace, i. 291, l. 6299.)

<sup>7</sup> did.

<sup>8</sup> est vnto.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| the Picts' land.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | . On þat oþer half, y vnderstande,<br>. Men caldit þenne þe Peytes lande. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 6708         |
| Men are set to<br>watch the wall.                                                                                                                                                                                        | When þys land <sup>2</sup> was al dight,<br>& wardeyns set boþe <sup>3</sup> day & nyght<br>þat wal for to defende & lok,<br>. þat þey namore scape ne tok,                                                                                                                                               | 6712         |
| The Romans go<br>south,<br>call the British<br>lords together<br>in London,<br><br>and warn them<br>that no Ro-<br>mans will come<br>there again;<br>the Britons<br>must learn<br>arms, and de-<br>fend them-<br>selves. | . Toward þe southe gan þey wende<br>. Whan þe wal was brought to þe ende.<br>At Londone þey sette a Parlement;<br>þe heye folk of alle, þyder þey went,<br>þorwout þe lond ilka lordynge;<br>And þus þey seyde at þer sampninge:<br>" We wole wende fro þow to Rome,<br>. " & neuere hider sende ne come. | 6716<br>6720 |
| The Britons<br>protest.                                                                                                                                                                                                  | " Be þe doughty, & lereþ <sup>4</sup> of armes,<br>" & quykly defende þow fro <sup>5</sup> harmes,<br>" ffor we ne mowe come so fer viage,<br>" Ne endure þe grete costage." <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                                 | 6724         |
| Then a wise<br>Roman                                                                                                                                                                                                     | . þe Bretons seyde alle þer geynes.<br>. þenne stirte vp on of þe Romainys,<br>A wys man & a wel spekande,<br>. & seyde, " Lordynges of þys land,                                                                                                                                                         | 6728         |
| puts the Roman<br>view of the case:                                                                                                                                                                                      | . " Lystneþ <sup>7</sup> now til y haue seyð;<br>. " þe Romainys reson on me ys leyð.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |              |

¶ Hic Romany trugam renuerunt pro toto tempore,  
sic dixerunt.

|                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <b>Nota.</b><br>" Many a loss<br>have we and<br>our ancestors<br>suffered for you<br>Britons, | " Lordes," he seide, " mani a <sup>8</sup> lore<br>" " Haue we suffred þis lond fore;<br>" & byfore [vs], <sup>9</sup> oure auncessours<br>" ffor þow han had ful harde stours. | 6732 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|

<sup>1</sup> *cald it þan Peihlond.*<sup>2</sup> *wall.* (tot, Wace, l. 6314.)<sup>3</sup> *bi.*<sup>4</sup> *lere.*<sup>5</sup> *defend þow.*<sup>6</sup> *ffor we ne may suffre þe costage,  
so often com so fer viage.*

[leaf 40, back.]

<sup>7</sup> *listens.*<sup>8</sup> *many tyme.*<sup>9</sup> *befor vs.*



- “ Truage *ze* gaf, & *vmwhile* <sup>1</sup> nought ;  
 “ When we hit hadde, dere was <sup>2</sup> hit bought ;  
 “ Litel *perof* were we amended, 6737 and little have  
 “ ffor ay for *zow* wel more we spendid.<sup>3</sup> we got for it.  
 “ *zyf* o *zer* til vs we *ze* hit *zolde*,  
 “ Two *zer* after *ze* ne wolde ; 6740 If you paid  
 “ *zyf* o kynges tyme *ze* were vs trwe, your tribute  
 “ To so mykel after <sup>4</sup> *zour* wrong was newe,— one year, you  
 “ Til whan *ze* mighte onst stonde <sup>5</sup> ageyn— stopt it the  
 “ Ne louede *ze* neuere man Romain ; 6744 You never  
 “ Ay when we come to *þys* lond, liked us Ro-  
 “ To lese oure right som cheson *ze* fond, mans.  
 “ And oper wronges til vs y-nowe ; You were  
 “ An[d] alderworst,<sup>6</sup> oure men *ze* slowe. 6748 and killing our  
 “ Now *ze* haue nede, *ze* vs byseke, [lf. 29, bk., col. 2.] men.  
 “ And het vs *þanne* to ben vs meke. Now you’re in  
 “ Whan we han holpen *zow* in cas, need, you pro-  
 “ *pen* do *ze* wors, & more trespas ; 6752 meek ; but  
 “ Til vs *ze* bere *zow* as lyouns, when we’ve  
 “ & waytes<sup>7</sup> vs *wyþ* sum tresons helpt you be-  
 “ ffor to *wyþ*-halden vs oure right, fore, you’ve  
 “ Oper yuel hit gyuen,<sup>8</sup> & *þat* *wiþ* fyght. 6756 always been  
 “ Wel bettere were hit al for-sake, worse to us  
 “ *þan* suffre *þe* wo we *per*-fore take ; afterwards.  
 “ Our costes ar grete, & [we] wone<sup>9</sup> fer heþen, We mean to  
 “ & *ze* haue ay nede, & ar byneþen ; 6760 give you up.  
 “ & we ne mowe nought<sup>10</sup> come al day. We can’t come  
 “ Doþ now *zour* self as *ze* best may ! to you every  
 “ May we ones take til Rome, day.  
 “ ffor no man eft schol we here come. Get on as you  
 “ To saue *zour* self, bygynneþ<sup>11</sup> now, 6764 best can.  
 We shall never  
 come from  
 Rome again

<sup>1</sup> *som tyme.*<sup>2</sup> *we.*<sup>3</sup> *more for zow we haf dispendid.*<sup>4</sup> *tuis als mykett.*<sup>5</sup> *to while ze myght ouht stand.*<sup>6</sup> *aldermast.*<sup>7</sup> *waite.*<sup>8</sup> *ouer wikly gif.*<sup>9</sup> *It is grete coste we.*<sup>10</sup> *we may not att way.*<sup>11</sup> *bigynnes.* [leaf 40, back, col. 2.]



to protect you.  
Your ancestors  
were bold  
conquerors.

**Nota.**

They took care  
of themselves;  
but you can't.  
What it's along  
of, I don't  
know,  
that you can't  
defend your-  
selves.

Change, and  
grow bold!

For now a rout  
of barbarians  
frightens you.

We've put a  
wall across the  
worst place, for  
you.

Mind you  
guard it well.

Stop invaders  
landing, too.

- " ffor we namore wil mayntene ȝow.  
" Wyteȝ wel,<sup>1</sup> ȝour auncessours:  
" Were bolde & hardy conquerours, 6768  
" ¶ Belyn/ Constantyn/ & Maxymian/, **Brytonum**  
" Alle londes to Rome ȝey wan; **Inperatores.**  
" ȝey mayntend hem self, & dide prowesse.  
" Bot now of ȝow, oȝer weis hit esse!<sup>2</sup> 6772  
" Y ne wot wher-on hit ys long,<sup>3</sup>  
" On ȝow ȝer ne comeȝ non oft<sup>4</sup> so strong  
" ȝat ȝe ne myghte ȝow self defende,  
" ȝyf any grace on ȝow myghte desende.<sup>5</sup> 6776  
" Bot ȝe [are]<sup>6</sup> al gon out of kynde;  
" ȝour wikkednesse now ȝe fynde!  
" Turneȝ ageyn, & wexeȝ<sup>7</sup> bolde,  
" & ȝenkes<sup>8</sup> on ȝour auncestres olde, 6780  
" ȝat riche regions conquered!  
" ffor fyght ne fondyng were ȝey ferd.  
" fful late schul ȝe now conquere,  
" Syn<sup>9</sup> route of rascaille may ȝow ay fere. 6784  
" Now schal bi sene what hit schal<sup>10</sup> vaille  
" When Outlandeys comen ȝow to<sup>11</sup> assaille?  
" We haue ȝow closed ȝer most nede was;  
" & ȝyf ȝe defende wel ȝat pas 6788  
" Wyȝ archers & wyȝ mangeneles,  
" & wel kepe ȝe carneles,<sup>12</sup>  
" ȝer-on ȝe may boȝe scheote & kaste.  
" Wexeȝ bolde, & fendeȝ<sup>13</sup> ȝow faste! 6792  
" ȝer Outlandeys aryues & rydes,<sup>14</sup>  
" Makeȝ ȝer hauenes to kepe ȝo sydes,

<sup>1</sup> *wittes wele.*

<sup>2</sup> *ways is.*

<sup>3</sup> *where it is long.*

<sup>4</sup> *comes non ofte.*

<sup>5</sup> *of ȝow descend.*

<sup>6</sup> *ere.*

<sup>7</sup> *Turnes agayn & waxes.*

<sup>8</sup> *thynk.*

<sup>9</sup> *ȝat.*

<sup>10</sup> *be sene what it may.*

<sup>11</sup> *witt ȝow.*

<sup>12</sup> *kirnels.*

<sup>13</sup> *waxes bold & fende.*

<sup>14</sup> *P. omits the next four lines.*



- " & at *oper* recettes fele,  
 . " *pat* non alien on *zow* stele. 6796  
 . " *penk*, *zour* fadres wonne *fraunchise*! <sup>1</sup> Be no more  
 " Be *ze* namore in *operes* seruise, tributaries, but  
 " Bot frely lyues <sup>2</sup> *zour* lyues ende! free men!  
 . " We taken now leue, fro *zow* to <sup>3</sup> *wende*." Good bye!"  
 At *pat* word was mikel cry, 6801  
 ffor manion wep ful delfully. <sup>4</sup> The Britons  
 . Was *per* nought elles for to seye; weep,  
*pe* Romainys *hem* keste, <sup>5</sup> & wente *per* weye, but the Ro-  
 And seyden hem *pere* for certeyn 6805 mans go, and  
*pey* ne wolde her neuere come eft ageyn. say again that  
 they'll never  
 come back.  
  
 Gwanyus Melga <sup>6</sup> hadde *per* spyes, [leaf 30.] Gwanis and  
 . Waytyng ay <sup>7</sup> by stretes & styas 6808 Melga,  
 . How longe *pe* Romainys scholde <sup>8</sup> soiourne,  
 & whan *pey* scholde <sup>8</sup> to Rome-ward tourne;  
 & al so sone as *pey* forþ nam, as soon as the  
 Melga Gwaneys <sup>9</sup> to *pys* lond cam, 6812 Romans go,  
 Robbed & brente Northumberland;  
 . Ageyns hem non encountre *pei* <sup>10</sup> ne fand; plunder North-  
 Made *pey* neuere stynt ne stal umberland  
 Tyl *pey* come to *pe* Romainys wal. 6816 up to the Ro-  
*pe* Bretons were redy *peron* aboute, man wall.  
 To gyue bataille to *peym* wyþoute: This the Bri-  
*per* myghte men se on boþe partys tons defend,  
 . A scharp schour by-twyxten enemys; <sup>11</sup> 6820 and  
 Arewes, quareles, þykkely fleye, <sup>12</sup> a sharp fight  
 Wip slynges casten stones heye. takes place,

<sup>1</sup> þinkes *zour* fadres wan *fran-*  
*chise*.

<sup>2</sup> lyf to.

<sup>3</sup> we will fro *zow* for euer.

<sup>4</sup> doelfulli.

<sup>5</sup> kissed & went away.

<sup>6</sup> *Guanis Melga*. (Ganis et  
 Magan, Wace, i. 296, l. 6399.)

<sup>7</sup> waitand.

<sup>8</sup> suld.

<sup>9</sup> *Melga Guanis*. [leaf 41.]

<sup>10</sup> no cuntre ne.

<sup>11</sup> schaftes schoten bituex enmyes.

<sup>12</sup> þikli flie.



|                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| but the Britons<br>know little of<br>war,                                                                                      | po þat on þe wal faught,<br>fful mykel scape sone þey <sup>1</sup> laught ; 6824                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| and cannot<br>stand against<br>the shower of<br>arrows and<br>stones.                                                          | po þat were newe dubbed knyghtes,<br>þey couþe bot litel þo <sup>2</sup> of fightes ; <sup>3</sup><br>þe arewes come so þykke so <sup>4</sup> reyn,<br>þey couþe nought coeuere þer eye <sup>5</sup> þer ageyn ;<br>& also þykkely come þe stones, 6829<br>Wip schot of dartes, <sup>6</sup> al at ones ;                                                                      |
| The Picts<br>undermine the<br>wall, and<br>fill up parts of<br>the ditch,<br>so that they can<br>drive carts into<br>the city. | . Vneþes myghte non kepe his eye,<br>þat he nas y poynt bakward to flye ; 6832<br>Was þer non so hardy Bretoun,<br>þat hym ne þought long til he were down.<br>þey wyþoute were mynyng <sup>7</sup> alle ;<br>þe wal þey holede, & dide hit falle, 6836<br>& fulde <sup>8</sup> in fele stedes þe dyke,<br>þat wal & wey was euene y-like,<br>. & made þer-þorow pleyn passage |
| A terrible<br>slaughter of<br>the Britons<br>follows.                                                                          | . Wyþ cart & wayn, wip <sup>9</sup> hors & page. 6840<br>þey robbed & slowen <sup>10</sup> al aboute,<br>. ffor þey fond non þey hadde of doute ;<br>Byforn þat tyme <sup>11</sup> no man fonde<br>So manye at ones slayn in þys lond 6844<br>. Wip so delful dep & vyl,                                                                                                       |
| All their<br>prowess is<br>gone.                                                                                               | Of 3onge knyghte, & so gentil.<br>Whylom Bretons bere <sup>12</sup> þe pris,<br>Now al þer prowesse down hit lys, 6848<br>& þorow hem schal hit neuere a-ryse,<br>Bot þorow grace of oþer <sup>13</sup> queyntyse.                                                                                                                                                             |
| The Britons<br>send to Rome<br>again, and ask<br>help,                                                                         | þen sent þey to Rome, to þe senatours,<br>& preyed hem 3ut of more socours. 6852                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

<sup>1</sup> so mykeltt skape non.<sup>2</sup> þei ne couth not 3it.<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,  
þei couth not þe querels scurne  
ne no quantise in bataile turne.<sup>4</sup> als þik as.<sup>5</sup> not couer þam.<sup>6</sup> with þe dartes &.<sup>7</sup> myand.<sup>8</sup> filled.<sup>9</sup> to.<sup>10</sup> slouh.<sup>11</sup> befor or þat.<sup>12</sup> som tyme bretons bare,<sup>13</sup> þer.



þe Romayns saiden, 'þey ne wolde;  
 ' To Bretayne þey neuere come ne scholde;  
 ' On oþer halue þey hadde to do;  
 ' þey wolde namore be trauailed so, 6856  
 ' Bot gete þem help where þey myghte haue,  
 ' þey wolde þem neyþer slo ne saue.'  
 . Whan þe Romayns þus vs forsok,  
 . þe date<sup>1</sup> of Cryst was wryten in bok, 6860  
 . ¶ ffour hundred zer, & nyne, were gon A.D. 409.  
 . Syn Iesu of Marye tok flesche & bon.

¶ *Hic miserunt Guncelinum Archiepiscopum ad  
 Regem Minoris Brytannie.*

¶ Al þe clergie of þe contrees, [leaf 30, col 2.] The British  
 . & lordynges of londes & fees, 6864 clergy  
 At Londone þey toke þer conseil,<sup>2</sup> and lords  
 . What myght hem helpe in þer turpeyl:<sup>3</sup> consult as to  
 " þys<sup>4</sup> aliens al day vs noyes, what is to be  
 " & þe Cristen blod destruyes. 6868 done.  
 " Bot Iesu Crist visite vs sone,  
 " We Cristen men schul be fordone."  
 þen was at Londone þe bischopes se,  
 When Cristendam com<sup>5</sup> first to be. 6872  
 þe Erchebischoþ highte Guncelyns, Archbishop  
 A ful holy clerk was<sup>6</sup> in deuynes; Guncelyn  
 þys Erchebischoþ his conseil tok  
 At þo þat þis lond schulden lok, 6876  
 þat he wolde wende to þe Lasse Bretayne,  
 þer Conan vmwhile<sup>7</sup> was cheftayne.  
 Aldroan highte<sup>8</sup> þe kyng was þan,  
 þe ferþe kyng after Conan. 6880 resolves to go  
 to Little Bri-  
 tain,  
 and ask help of  
 king Aldroan.

<sup>1</sup> birth. [leaf 41, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> com aȝt to a comon conseile.

<sup>3</sup> how þei mot turne þat tirpeile.

<sup>4</sup> þei said.

<sup>5</sup> gan.

<sup>6</sup> a holy man clerk.

<sup>7</sup> som tyme.

<sup>8</sup> Adroel hight.



Aldroan re-  
ceives him well

þe bischop wente in to þe lond,  
Sire Aldroel þer kyng he fond;  
þe kyng receyued hym *curteysly*—  
His fame was god, his stat was hey,— 6884  
He asked what he so fer had sought,  
& what tydyng he hadde brought.

and Guncelyn  
tells him why  
he has come.

“ Lord,” he seyde, “ ȝow þar nought wene,  
“ Why y am comen ȝe may wel mene,  
“ & what encheson me hider led, 6889

“ Aliens destroy  
us.  
Since Maxi-  
mian

“ pat y to ȝow so hastely<sup>1</sup> sped;  
“ ffor ȝe nar nought<sup>2</sup> born so late,  
“ Ne bytwyxt vs so fer gate, 6892

took away all  
our doughty  
folk,  
we have always  
gone down.  
No friends have  
we found, but  
plenty of foes.

“ pat ȝe naue<sup>3</sup> herd tydyng seye,  
“ How alyens don vs schamely deye.  
“ Syþen Maximien went vs fro,  
“ We han y-lyued in sorewe & wo. 6896

We cannot pro-  
tect our own  
land.  
Our old helpers,  
the Romans,  
have forsaken  
us,

“ pat þys lond þorow conquiste wan,  
“ & gaf hit þyn auncestre, sire Conan,  
“ Oure doughti folk al wyþ hym went,  
“ & siþen were we neuere bot schent. 6900

“ Donward syþen haue we gon;  
“ ffrendes fond we fewe or non  
“ pat euere vs wolde socoure or were;  
“ Bot to fele we fynde pat wolde<sup>4</sup> vs dere. 6904

“ Whylom,<sup>5</sup> Bretons landes wonnen,  
“ þe renoun of þeym þorow lande ronne;<sup>6</sup>  
“ Now ar þey nought so mykel of myght  
“ pat þer lond may halde<sup>7</sup> to ryght. 6908

“ þey of Rome halp vs whylom;  
“ Now haue þey for-sake vs alle & sum,  
“ ffor fer<sup>8</sup> wonyng & gret costage,

<sup>1</sup> *hasty.*

<sup>2</sup> *ȝe ne ere not.*

<sup>3</sup> *haf.* [leaf 41, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *Inouh we fynd þat will.*

<sup>5</sup> *som tyme.*

<sup>6</sup> *remes ronen.*

<sup>7</sup> *londes may hold.*

<sup>8</sup> *þer.*



- " pat often mys-spedde<sup>1</sup> in þer passage. 6912  
 " Of folk we are ynowe ȝyt leued,  
 " Bot keperē non, ne kyng, to heued, and we have no  
 " pat can oure folk to bataille lede, king to lead us  
 " Ne oure enemis to haue of no drede. 6916 to battle.  
 " Bot we haue help by tyme<sup>2</sup> now If you wo'n't  
 " Of oþer landes, oþer of ȝow, help us,  
 " We kenne neuere<sup>3</sup> oure cursed kare, we don't know  
 " So fer doun byneþe we are. 6920 what we may  
 " I ne may nought telle, for sor of<sup>4</sup> herte, suffer.  
 " Al oure sorewe þat ys so<sup>5</sup> smerte,  
 " pat we han had, & ȝit haue ;  
 " Bot God wyle, nought may vs saue. 6924  
 " Here-fore am y to ȝow comen, [leaf 30, back, col. 1.] For this I am  
 " As to kyp of oure kynde<sup>6</sup> nomen, come to you,  
 " ffor ȝe ar Brutes,<sup>7</sup> & we Breton ; our kinsman.  
 " & for þat skyle & þat reson, 6928  
 " Help vs now to venge our foo,  
 " As we wolde ȝow &<sup>8</sup> ȝe were wo. Help us to  
 " þorow right lawe write men fynde,<sup>9</sup> avenge us on  
 " pat men oughte to helpen<sup>10</sup> þer kynde ; 6932 our foes !  
 " & hit ys also worldes honur, You ought to  
 " At nede þer frendes for to socour. help your kin.  
 " þey no sybrede of kynde cam, You ought to  
 " Helpe ȝe scholde Crystendam." 6936 help your fellow  
 Christians."

Whan Aldroel herde so Gwyncelyn speke, Aldroan weeps  
 ffor sorewe hym þoughte his herte wolde for pity,  
 breke ;

þe teres ronnen out of his eyne,  
 ffor þat þey were in so gret pyne, 6940

<sup>1</sup> *misferd*.  
<sup>2</sup> One stroke too many in the MS.  
*m.* P. at þis tyme.  
<sup>3</sup> *cone not*.  
<sup>4</sup> *for sore*.  
<sup>5</sup> *how it is*.

<sup>6</sup> & our *kyn*.  
<sup>7</sup> *ere brettis*.  
<sup>8</sup> for *an*, if. P. *if*.  
<sup>9</sup> *writen we fynd*.  
<sup>10</sup> *auh to help* ; and leaves out the  
 next two lines.



and says,  
"I will do all I  
can to help you.

I can't go my-  
self, as the  
Frenchmen are  
always warring  
on me,

but I'll send my  
valiant brother  
Constantine,  
with 2,000  
knights,

to Britain."

Constantine is  
sent for,

Archbishop  
Guncelyn

blesses him,

and Aldroan  
gives him 4,000  
men-at-arms,  
and 3,000 foot.

Gretand ageyn he hym answered,

"ffor þe doel þat y haue herd,

"Y schal do al my trauaille

"þat y to ȝow may helpe or vaille.

6944

<sup>1</sup> "ȝyf y myghte my self, y wolde <sup>2</sup> fayn,

"Bot Frensche men <sup>3</sup> me chace ageyn; <sup>1</sup>

"þey werre on me al þat þey may,

"My self am þer a[t] ylka fray; <sup>4</sup>

6948

"I wol nought leue my litel þynge,

"Myn heritage, for more wynnynge; <sup>5</sup>

"I haue a broþer, sire Constaunt, <sup>6</sup>

"God werroure, & man valliaunt;

6952

"Wyþ two þousand <sup>7</sup> y schal hym sende,

"Wyþ gode knyghtes, ȝour lond to fende;

"Hym to Bretaigne schaltow lede,

"þorow gode grace for <sup>8</sup> to spede."

6956

He sente þenne for Constantyn,

& bytaughte hym sire Gwyncelyn.

Whan Guncelyn byheld þe knyght/,

þe hand he lyfte þat was þe ryght,

6960

& gaf Constant þe benisoun:

þe knyght byfore hym kneled down,

þe bisschop foure wordes seyde;

þe wordes arn, o <sup>9</sup> Latyn leyde,

6964

"*Christus vincit, Christus reingnat!*

"*Christus vincit, Christus inperat!* <sup>10</sup>"

þe kyng þen bitaughtym four þousand <sup>11</sup>

Of men of armes wel <sup>12</sup> seruand,

6968

& þre þousand men of fote.

<sup>1-1</sup> Wace gives these two lines  
after the sailing of Constantine, l.  
6569-70 (*Wace*.)

<sup>2</sup> *my self wald.* [leaf 41, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> *frankis men.*      <sup>4</sup> *at ilk assay.*

<sup>5</sup> MS. *wynnynge.*

<sup>6</sup> MS. *Constantyn.* P. has *Con-*  
*stant.*

<sup>7</sup> *trois mil armés, Wace, l. 6553.*

<sup>8</sup> *godes grace wele.*

<sup>9</sup> *ere of.*

<sup>10</sup> *imperat.*

<sup>11</sup> *bitauht him knyghtes tuo þousand.*  
(*trois milliers, Wace, l. 6564.*)

<sup>12</sup> *tuo þousand squiers þam.*



- . þe kyng þan seyde, " þys<sup>1</sup> may do bote  
 . " To saue ȝour lond ilka del.  
 . " My kynde þer-inne, gret þem wel." 6972

- Syre Guncelyn aryued at Toteneys,  
 & sire Constant wyþ his harneys. Constantine  
 pat herde þe Bretons alle aboute, lands at Tot-  
 po pat er skulked for drede & doute. 6976 The Britons  
 Out of wodes & out of mountaynes flock to him  
 (pat durste nought er<sup>2</sup> come to þe playnes,) from their  
 To Constant come þen men ynowe, hiding places,  
 pat þer enemys ouer al slowe. 6980 and he slays  
 . He dide hym vntil Westmorland; their enemies,  
 þe countre al wasted he fand;  
 . Al þe lond, leye hit lay,  
 . þe folk for fere wer<sup>3</sup> fled away; 6984  
 . Hadde þey nought vn-to þe<sup>4</sup> fode, [leaf 30, back, col. 2.]  
 . Bot bestes wylde, & fische on<sup>5</sup> flode.  
 . þeyr enemys þer þey broughte of lyue,  
 . þe remenaunt out of lond gon dryue. 6988 and drives out  
 those he does  
 not slay.

¶ Apud Cirencestriam coronatus est Rex  
 Constantinus.

- To Circestre Constant wente,  
 & held þer a parlymente. Constantine is  
 Sire Guncelyn þer gaf hym þe coroun; crowned king  
 þer-of was fayn ilka Bretoun. 6992 of Britain,  
 penn tok he wyf auenaunt & god, marries a fair  
 Sib þe bischop, of Romyans blod. wife,  
 þ[r]e childre on hure he gat auenaunt, and has three  
 þe eldest, highte his name Constant; 6996 children.  
 1. Constant,

<sup>1</sup> kyng said þise.  
<sup>2</sup> þat durst not are.  
<sup>3</sup> for pouerte. [leaf 42.]

<sup>4</sup> þer.  
<sup>5</sup> in.



246 CONSTANTINE HAS THREE SONS, AND IS KILLED.

|                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| who turns<br>monk ;                                                                             | He dide hym norice <sup>1</sup> at Wynchestre,<br>And ȝald <sup>2</sup> hym monk in þat same estre ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                |      |
| 2. Aurelius<br>Ambrosius ;                                                                      | þat oþer sone highte Aurelyus,<br>His to-name was Ambrosius ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 7000 |
| 3. Uther.                                                                                       | þe þridde child, Vter he hight,<br>þat lyuede lengest, & best was knyght.<br>þe bischop, þorow leue of þe kyng,<br>Hadde þe two in his kepyng.                                                                                                                                                                      | 7004 |
| Constantine<br>reigns two<br>years,<br>and is killed by<br>a traitor,<br>the Welsh<br>Vortiger. | ȝyf Constant had lyued ani sel, <sup>3</sup><br>He schuld haue mended þe lond ful wel ;<br>Two <sup>4</sup> ȝer he regned, & namo ;<br>. Lyst how a traitour dide hym slo :<br>. ¶ On ffortyger, of Walsche blod, <sup>5</sup><br>. þat neuere in truþe no stude stod, <sup>6</sup><br>. He ȝerned mikel þe kyndam. | 7008 |
| Hear now :                                                                                      | . Lyst how þe treson fro hym <sup>7</sup> cam :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 7012 |

¶ De quodam Pycto traditore.

|                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Constantine has<br>a Pictish<br>servant in<br>league with<br>Vortiger, | Y þe kynges court serued a Peyght,<br>. þat was þorow ffortegers deseit ; <sup>8</sup> —<br>pis Peit, longe wiþ þe kyng had ben ;<br>Of treson he þoughte ay by-twen ;                                                                                                                                                      | 7016             |
| and one day,<br>while alone<br>with the king,                          | þys Peyt ȝede wyþ þe kyng a day<br>Vntil <sup>9</sup> an herber alone to play ;<br>. Bot hit was perceyued of non<br>. Whider þe kyng & þe Peyt was gon.<br>þe kyng of treson wende nought,<br>. Bot þe Peyt þeron he þought ;<br>As þey boþe to-gyder sat,<br>. & speken þer of many what,<br>þe kyng til hym gaf no tent. | 7020<br><br>7024 |

<sup>1</sup> *norish.*

<sup>2</sup> *mad.*

<sup>3</sup> *any seele.*

<sup>4</sup> *ten.*

<sup>5</sup> *One Vortiger of Wales blode.*

<sup>6</sup> *while stode.*

<sup>7</sup> *listes how þis treson for him.*

<sup>8</sup> *þorgh Vortigers sleiht.*

<sup>9</sup> *In to.*



- þat saw þe Peyt, & his knyf out hent,      the Pict stabs  
 & smot þe kyng vntil<sup>1</sup> þe hert,      him, and flees.  
 & fledde away also smert.      7028  
 Pryuely þat fame zede  
 þat fforteger had don<sup>2</sup> þat dede.      Vortiger had it  
 . fforteger was of þe Walscherye,<sup>3</sup>      done,—one of  
 . þat euere louede trycherye;      7032 the treacherous  
     Welshmen,—  
<sup>4</sup>. Queynte he was, & fer coupe þenke  
 . To compasse a wykked blenke;<sup>4</sup>      a plotter,  
 . ffaire he spak þer he wolde gyle;      a hypocrite,  
 . & þer he hated, þer wolde he smyle;      7036  
 . Wel coupe he preyse & lakke somdel,  
 . & treson coupe he teche wel:—  
 . & somme þat arn at þis tyme here,      and a conspi-  
 . þat craft of hym nought nedep<sup>5</sup> lere.—      7040 rator.  
     (We've got  
     some like him  
     now.)

# ¶ De electione Constanti Monachi in Regem.

- ¶ þe clergie for þis dide make asemble,      [leaf 31.] The Britons  
 Whilk of þe children best kyng myght<sup>6</sup> be;      consult on who  
 Bot þey were so lytel & zonge,      shall be king.  
 Reson coupe þey non wiþ tonge.      7044  
 Constant was eldest & mere,  
 & was a monk, a man of lere.      They resolve  
 þey seide atones, alle & som,<sup>7</sup>      that Constant  
 þem noughte nout<sup>8</sup> reue hym fro religion;<sup>9</sup>      the monk  
 Ne lawe nolde hit by no weye,<sup>10</sup>      7049  
 A monk to take fro his abbeye:  
 To take an oper, þe<sup>11</sup> Conseil ches.      shall not be.  
 þen stirte vp Forteger in al þe pres,      7052 But Vortiger  
 & seide, "Hit is to drede no þyng,      says that

<sup>1</sup> to. [leaf 42.]

<sup>2</sup> Vortiger gart do.

<sup>3</sup> an erle þat lufed tricherie.

<sup>4</sup> Wace, lines 6638–40.

<sup>5</sup> þat of him þar no thyng.

<sup>6</sup> childre kyng mot.

<sup>7</sup> it myght not be don.

<sup>8</sup> (=ne oughte not.) P. ne oughte  
not.

<sup>9</sup> to take him fro religion.

<sup>10</sup> of no right we se no way.

<sup>11</sup> take on þe tuo þer.



Constant's  
being a monk  
doesn't matter :

king he'll make  
him.

He, Vortiger,  
doesn't care for  
the sin of it.

He goes to  
Winchester,

and tells Con-  
stant

that if he'll  
love and trust  
him,

he'll get him  
the kingdom.  
Constant  
throws off his  
monk's habit,

plights his troth  
to Vortiger,

leaves his  
abbey,

goes to London,

" Of þe monk to make a kyng.

" He ys eldest ;—of þe habite no tale !—

" þe opere arn ʒonge, & ouer smale. 7056

" Y graunte non oper kyng to be.

" ffor al þe synne, y take on me."

Non oper assented to þat dome,

þat þe monk scholde a kyng bycome ; 7060

þey dredde<sup>1</sup> swylk a þyng bygynne ;

Bot fforteger dredde<sup>1</sup> nought þat synne :

. What he wold do, non durste hym werne,

To Wynchestre he hyed hym ʒerne, 7064

He asked leue atte priour

To speke wyþ Constant y þe parlour :

¶ " Constant," he seide, " þy lord ys ded ;

" þy breþere ar ʒonge ; what ys þy red ? 7068

" Y wolde þou haddest<sup>2</sup> þe herytage,

" ffor þou art man most of age.

" Wiltow<sup>3</sup> auaunce my rente, my fe,

" & loue me wel, & triste on me. 7072

" þy blake cloþes schalt<sup>4</sup> þou loþe,

" & y þe richest y schal<sup>4</sup> þe cloþe ;

" þy monkhod þow schalt<sup>4</sup> al weyue,

" þe heritage of þe reome reseýue." 7076

pys monk was blent wyþ veyn glorye ;<sup>5</sup>

Abyte & ordre he let al flye,

. ffor he ʒerned more pryde þan prow,

. & wel more vice þan vertu. 7080

þat fforteger asked, he hym hight,

& þer-to his troupe he dide hym plyght.

Out of his abite he hym schok,

Syþen out of þe abbeye hym tok ; 7084

In faire cloþes he hym cledde,

Wyþ hym to Londone Constant he ledde.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *dred.*

<sup>2</sup> *I. wild þou had.* [leaf 42, back.]

<sup>3</sup> *witt.*

<sup>4</sup> *satt.*

<sup>5</sup> *monke ʒerned seignorie.*

<sup>6</sup> *London he him led.*



Was noman wyþ-seyde hym o<sup>1</sup> nay ;  
 . þey seye hit was þe monkes<sup>2</sup> pay. 7088  
 . To somone þe folk anon þey bed ;<sup>3</sup> summons the  
 Bot perchebischoþ þat tyme was ded<sup>4</sup> people,  
 þat felle to make þe corounement ;  
 þer-to non oþer durste consent ; 7092  
 Bot fforteger þe coroune forþ fet, and is crowned  
 And on Constantes heued hit set ; by Vortiger.  
<sup>5</sup>[was þer non oþer benyson,  
 bot Vortiger set on þe croun,]<sup>5</sup> 7096  
 & Constant þe coroune tok,  
 & ordre & habite al forsok ;  
 þus to worschipe gan he lende,  
 Wip schame he parted<sup>6</sup> at his ende. 7100

¶ Hic ffortygernus traditor factus est custos Regny  
 sub Monacho Rege.

þenne ffortyger hadde alle þe maystrie, [lf. 31, col. 2.] Vortiger does  
 þe kyng at wille, & þe marchalsye ;<sup>7</sup> what he likes  
 . Al to-gedere þe kyng he ledde, Constant,  
 . & al he dide þat he hym redde ; 7104  
 þe kyng dide al as fforteger wylde,  
 & al his conseil he fulfylde.  
 He saw þe kyng couþe no god,  
 Ne kynde skile nought vnderstod ; 7108  
<sup>8</sup>[on clostire skill couth he maste,  
 & his breþer with þe leste.]<sup>8</sup>  
 He sey þe force of þe barons falle,

<sup>1</sup> no man þat said him.  
<sup>2</sup> sawe it was þe mokes [so in MS.].  
<sup>3</sup> non ne beed.  
<sup>4</sup> P. adds (wrongly) line 7086  
 again:—  
 with him to London Constant he led.  
<sup>5-5</sup> These two lines are from the

Petyt MS., representing lines 6677-8  
 of Wace, i. 308.  
<sup>6</sup> schame departid.  
<sup>7</sup> marchaucie. (senescaucie, Wace,  
 i. 308, l. 6695.)  
<sup>8-8</sup> These two lines are from P.,  
 leaf 42, back, col. 2, and represent  
 Wace's lines 6701-2, vol. i. p. 309.



|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                          | & saw his stat heyest of alle,                                                                                                                                                                               | 7112 |
| and schemes to<br>get the kingdom<br>for himself.        | <sup>1</sup> [þe folk discord nouht in a wiff;<br>þan he þouht in hert full stiff,] <sup>1</sup><br>& þoughte þe regne haue in <sup>2</sup> his syde;<br>Her whuche a deseyte <sup>3</sup> he spak þat tyde: | 7116 |
| He tells Con-<br>stant                                   | ¶ "Of o þyng, sires, <sup>4</sup> y wot right wel,<br>" þer-of ȝe owen to wyte <sup>5</sup> som del,<br>" þat þe Daneys, wyþ men of Northweye, <sup>6</sup><br>" On ȝow wyl þey lyue & deye;                 | 7120 |
| that the Danes                                           | " & for þou art no knyght <sup>7</sup> of armes,<br>" þe more þey wayte þis lond wyþ harmes;<br>" On vs þey wyle þis somer <sup>8</sup> haste,<br>" þy casteles take, þy lond to-waste;                      | 7124 |
| will invade<br>Britain next<br>summer,                   | " Here-of y rede þou nyme <sup>9</sup> ȝeme,<br>" þy lond to fende, þy folk to queme."<br>In casteles he sette garnysons <sup>10</sup><br>ffor þe drede of oper traysons; <sup>11</sup>                      | 7128 |
| and he must<br>garrison his<br>castles against<br>them.  | " To þo þat castels coupe loke,<br>" To swylke y wolde þat þou hem toke."<br>þan seyde þe kyng to ffortyger,<br>" Tak þou þe lokyng <sup>12</sup> in þy power;                                               | 7132 |
| Constant puts<br>everything into<br>Vortiger's<br>hands, | " As þou wilt, hit schal be so;<br>" Ouer þe wol y þat noman do;<br>" þe castelles alle y þe bykenne, <sup>13</sup><br>" Now loke þat noman slo ne brenne.                                                   | 7136 |
| and exhorts<br>him to be true<br>to him.                 | " In þy conseil onlyk am <sup>14</sup> y,<br>" Loke to me þou do truely.<br>" Of cites & of tresor al;<br>" Right as þou wilt, so be hit schal."                                                             | 7140 |

<sup>1-1</sup> These two lines are from P.,  
and represent Wace's lines 6705-6,  
vol. i. p. 309.

<sup>2</sup> to haf þe regne on.

<sup>3</sup> here a desceite.

<sup>4</sup> sir.

<sup>5</sup> auh to witte.

<sup>6</sup> with þe Norweie.

<sup>7</sup> ert no kyng.

<sup>8</sup> þe soner.

<sup>9</sup> take.

<sup>10</sup> castels set þi warnisours.

<sup>11</sup> traitours.

<sup>12</sup> take þe kepyng.

<sup>13</sup> biken . . . bren.

<sup>14</sup> conseile þan.



- ¶ þenne was ffortyger at ese,  
 ffor alle þe strengþes he gan to sese.<sup>1</sup>  
 When he had alle þys forceresses,<sup>2</sup>  
 Wyþ cites, tounes, & alle richesses,<sup>3</sup> 7144 towns, and  
 . 3yt he þoughte on oþer<sup>4</sup> wyse treasure,  
 . To contreoue a fals queyntise:  
 “ Sire,” he seyde, “ 3yf þou wilt do  
 “ þat y schal conseilþe þe to, 7148 and then ad-  
 . “ þy lond schaltow ful wel saue, vises Constant  
 . “ & do þyn enemys of þe stond awe.<sup>5</sup> to  
 “ Sent for knyghtes þat conne of sleytes.<sup>6</sup> send for many  
 “ & þat ar bolde men in feygþtes;<sup>7</sup> 7152 crafty and bold  
 “ Lat þeym be alle þy souders, knights  
 . “ ffor of alle kyndes þey knowe þe maners;  
 . “ ffor 3yf þey be y þy court wyþynne, to be in his  
 “ On whilk side þat<sup>8</sup> werre bygynne, 7156 court,  
 “ þen may þou sende hem aboute,  
 “ To serche of wham þer ys most<sup>9</sup> doute, men who know  
 10 “ þaw þe Peytes & þeir kendes, 7159 the Picts, and  
 . “ þat ofte han schewed þey were oure frendes.” 10 king’s foes.

¶ Exe iam tradicio falsy ffortygerny.

- þe kyng to fforteger þus seyð: [leaf 31, back, col. 1.] Constant tells  
 . “ My purueaunce<sup>11</sup> ys on þe leyð; Vortiger to  
 “ Do ryght als þy seluen wyle;  
 “ Tak & lef as þou sest<sup>12</sup> skyle, 7164 settle it just as  
 “ Als manye as þou hast<sup>12</sup> of nede; he likes.  
 “ Bettere þan y þou wost<sup>12</sup> þe dede.”

<sup>1</sup> þe forcelettes he did him seise.

<sup>2</sup> now has Vortiger þe forcelesse.

<sup>3</sup> richesse. <sup>4</sup> on oþer. [leaf 43.]

<sup>5</sup> & of þin enemys no drede haue.

<sup>6</sup> Sende . . . can of slegþtes.

<sup>7</sup> quante men ere alle þe þeihtes.  
 (Des Pis d’Escocce soldiers, Wace, i.  
 310, l. 6742.)

<sup>8</sup> what tyme so any.

<sup>9</sup> of whom is moste.

<sup>10-10</sup> þorgh þe þeihtes & þer frendes.  
 may men witte how mykett  
 wendes.

<sup>11</sup> purueiance.

<sup>12</sup> sees . . . has . . . wote.



|                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vortiger then<br>gets 100 Picts<br>to the court,                                       | pen fforteger had his wille ynow;<br>An hundred Peyghtes to þe court he drow. 7168<br>Of castles, tounes, & tresorye,<br>Of al he hadde þe maystrie;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| gives them rich<br>presents,                                                           | . He gaf þe Peytes what þey wyld,<br>. Al þer askyng he fulfyld, 7172                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| honours them,                                                                          | He honoured hem swyþe mykel,<br>. ffor wel he wyste þey were ful fykel;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| feasts them,                                                                           | Wyþ metes & drynkes he made þem glade,<br>& often dronken he þem made; 7176                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| and prefers<br>them above all<br>others.<br>For this the<br>Picts say that<br>Vortiger | . He preised hem faste in his sawe,<br>. & oueral dide þem forþ drawe;<br>fforby alle opere <sup>1</sup> he þem honoured;<br>pat mester hadde, he þem socoured; 7180<br>per-fore comunly ylka Peight,<br>Byfore alle þey seyde on heyght,<br>“ pat fforteger was more curteys<br>“ þan þe kyng was ony weys, 7184<br>“ & bettere semed to bere þe honour<br>“ þan þe kyng or his auncessour.” |
| is more like a<br>king than<br>Constant.                                               | . In ilka stede whare <sup>2</sup> þey ferde,<br>. þus þey seyde; þey ne roughte ho herde. 7188<br>& for þe Peytes on hym seyde þis,<br>fforteger per-of had gret blys;<br>& þe more þat þey hym preysed,<br>þe more he þem vp areysed. 7192                                                                                                                                                  |
| And Vortiger<br>rewards them<br>for it.                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## ¶ De Adulacione ffortygerny.

|                                 |                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vortiger feasts<br>the Picts;   | A day hit was, to þeym he drank<br>. ffor to gete of hem more þank;                |
| and while they<br>are drinking, | & right as þey dronke <sup>3</sup> & songe,<br>Com fforteger þeym alle among, 7196 |

<sup>1</sup> bifer oper.<sup>2</sup> als. [leaf 43, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> als þei sat drunken.



- . & to þem seyde, "God glade ȝow here!"  
 Bot yuel he let, wyþ sory chere.  
 "Knyghtes," he seide, "mykel y ȝow loue, he says, "I love  
 "I haue ȝow holpen to ȝoure aboue, 7200 you Picts,  
 "& more y wolde, ȝyf y hadde ought; and I'd give  
 "pys [lond]<sup>1</sup> ys þe kynges, & myn ys nought; you more than  
 "Here hauy nought þat ought amountes; I do, if I had it.  
 "þat y spend of, y ȝelde acountes, 7204 But I get no-  
 "ffor y þys contre<sup>1</sup> haue y nought; thing  
 "ffro fer hit comeþ þat me ys brought.  
 "To serue þe kyng y do my tent; from the king  
 "Of hym hauy no lond ne rent, 7208 for serving him.  
 "So þat y may nought holde to me  
 "ffourty squiers<sup>2</sup> on al my fe;  
 "ȝyf y more hadde, hit were ȝour prow,  
 "per-fore nede y mot parte<sup>3</sup> fro ȝow; 7212 If I did, you  
 " & þat ouer-þynkes<sup>4</sup> me ful sore, should share it.  
 "ffor pouere y am, & may namore. But I must  
 "Bot ȝyf ȝe se þat y ought mende, leave you,  
 "Boldely comeþ to me, or sende, as I'm so poor.  
 "And y schal fonde, at al ȝour nede, 7216 Still, if any of  
 "Boþe forto cloþe & [to] fede." you are in  
 want, tell me,  
 and I'll help  
 you."

¶ Exe iam falcitas ffortygerny.

- Fortyger þenne turned his bak; [leaf 31, back, col. 2.] Vortiger then  
 Fals he was, & feyntyse spak; 7220 leaves the  
 And þo þat hadden dronke wel, Picts,  
 Trowed his sawes<sup>5</sup> ylkadel; and they, ex-  
 His word to truþe al þey hit turned, cited by drink  
 þat he to falsnesse had performed; 7224  
 þey seide til oper, "what haue ȝe mynt? say:

<sup>1</sup> lond. (ceste tere, Wace, i. 312, l. 6780.)

<sup>2</sup> sergeanz. (sergans, Wace, i. 312, l. 6788.)

<sup>3</sup> bot nedes .I. mot.

<sup>4</sup> forþenkes.

<sup>5</sup> falsnes. P. leaves out the next two lines.



"This fool of a  
king gives us  
little ;

let's kill him,  
and make  
Vortiger king."

They rush to  
Constant's  
room, cut his  
head off,

carry it to  
Vortiger,

and bid him  
take the crown.

But Vortiger,  
though really  
glad,

feigns sorrow,  
has the mur-  
derers slain,

and proclaims  
death to other  
guilty Picts.

"pys curteys knyght<sup>1</sup> now haue we tynt.  
"pys folted king, he gyueþ<sup>2</sup> vs lytel,  
"ffor a monk can nought bot his chapitel. 7228  
"To slo þat folt, wel were to<sup>3</sup> done ;  
"A bettere myghte we haue ful sone ;  
"Go we now, & sle þat vnþrift/  
" & ffortyger to kyng we lyft, 7232  
"ffor he ys worþy to haue<sup>4</sup> empyre,  
" & bettere hym<sup>5</sup> semed lord & syre  
"þan þis monk þat nought ne can ;  
"Go we & sle þis folted<sup>6</sup> man ! 7236  
"He haþ no kynde þat vs þarf<sup>7</sup> drede,  
"þat myghte may[n]tene host ne lede ;  
"Ne hym self schal neuere be nought ;  
"Go we & do þat we haue þought !" 7240  
þe whyles<sup>8</sup> þer wylle was þus hot,  
þey stirte tys chaumbre<sup>9</sup> ; his hed of smot.  
Wyþ þe heued als swyþe þey went,  
To ffortyger þey made a present, 7244  
þey gon to crie, "here may þow se  
"þat we wyl auaunce þe !  
"þis monk ys ded ! now do þy wylle !  
"Tak þe coroune, & hold vs styll !" 7248  
ffortyger, þat saw þe kynges heued,  
Glad he was þey haddyt hym reued ;  
Napeles he couerede hym queyntely ;  
Semblaunt he made he was sory, 7252  
& for þat dide þo Peytes deye,<sup>10</sup>  
And at Londone he dide crye,<sup>11</sup>  
'þat al þe Peyghtes þat men myght wyte,  
'þer heuedes scholde al of be<sup>12</sup> smyte.' 7256

<sup>1</sup> man.

<sup>2</sup> kyng serues.

<sup>3</sup> it.

<sup>4</sup> he were worþi to haf. [lf. 43, bk.]

<sup>5</sup> he.

<sup>6</sup> þat foltid.

<sup>7</sup> þar.

<sup>8</sup> to while.

<sup>9</sup> to his chambire.

<sup>10</sup> & more to did his felonys.

<sup>11</sup> þerfor in London did he crie.

<sup>12</sup> þer hedes of suld men.



Manyon were þat trowed & seyð,  
 þat 'non of þeym hadde handes leyð  
 ' On þe kyng wyþ yuel<sup>1</sup> manere  
 ' Wyþoute þe conseyl of ffortygere;  
 . & þe Peyghtes seyde þe same,  
 . þat þey dide hit for his frame.  
 þo þat þe children had in kepyng,  
 Aurelius & Vter, boþe ȝyng,  
 Dredde þat þorow þe conseil of þo  
 þat slowen þe kyng, þem wolde þey<sup>2</sup> slo;  
 þer-fore þis conseil þey tok,  
 To Bretayne þey sentem, hem to lok,  
 To þe kyng Budice of þer kynde,  
 þat ful nobly dide hem fynde,  
 And honured hem þorow al the lond;  
 When tyme was, armes hem fond.

However, many  
folk believe

that Vortiger  
prompted the  
murder.

7260

The guardians  
of Aurelius and  
Uther,  
fearing that the  
boys will be  
slain,

7264

send 'em to  
Budice, king  
of Britanny,

7268

who cares for  
them well.

7272

### ¶ Hic cepit Regnare ffortygernus.

Fortiger had al in kepyng þe land,  
 Casteles, & cites, al in hys hand;  
 . & at his wylle þe folk he ledde;  
 . ffor his power, noman he dredde;  
 He sey fortune toward hym<sup>3</sup> falle,  
 And regned þen kyng ouer þeym alle.  
 Of two þynges wakned hys wough;  
 Of þe Peytes þat he slough;  
 þey cald hym traitour wyþ manace,  
 & to meschaunce þey scholde<sup>4</sup> hym chace;  
 An oþer þyng men hym telde,  
 þat whan þe childre were of elde,  
 þey scholde venge Constant her broþer;  
 . War<sup>5</sup> hym wel, & hope non oþer.

Vortiger reigns  
over all Britain,

7276 \*

[leaf 32.] threatened only  
by the Picts,—  
who

7280

declare they'll  
hunt him to  
grief,—

7284

and the report  
that Aurelius  
and Uther will  
avenge Con-  
stant's death.

<sup>1</sup> *itt.*    <sup>2</sup> *slouh þe kyng þam wild.*

<sup>3</sup> *he sauh his chance wele wild.*

[leaf 43, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> *mischefe þei suld.*

<sup>5</sup> *were . . . no noþer.*



256 In tempore ffortygerny venerunt Saxones  
primo in Anglia.<sup>1</sup>

Three ship-  
loads of fine  
men, led by  
Hengist and  
Horsa, land at  
Sandwich.

Vortiger says

that if the  
strangers come  
in peace,  
in peace they  
may dwell,

and go where  
they like.

Whyle þat fforteger þus<sup>2</sup> regnede riche,  
pre schypes aryued at Sandwiche 7288

Wyþ fair folk & wel y-dight,—  
Hengist & Hors þer maistres hight;—  
Of fair stature wyþouten lak,  
& a selcouþ speche þey spak. 7292

þis ffortyger þat held þonour,  
At Caunterbury he made soiour;  
To þe kyng men tydyngge tolde,  
' þat a fair folk, wyþ faces bolde, 7296  
' At Sandwyche late gonne aryue;  
' So faire y-schape were non alyue.'<sup>3</sup>

þen seyde þe kyng, " ȝyf swylk be comen,  
" & peysibly þe hauene han<sup>4</sup> nomen, 7300

" In pes lat þem take þer rest,  
" & wyþ my pes to do þer best,  
" And ȝyf þey speke wyþ me in pes,  
" & right<sup>5</sup> so wende als þey ches." 7304

¶ Hengistus, & Horsus frater eius, cepunt portum  
apud Sandwycum.

Hengist and  
Horsa

come to Vor-  
tiger,

¶ When þyse breþere Hengist & Hors  
Had leue of þe kyng & of þe ports,  
He greyþed his feres<sup>6</sup> to fare al myry  
To speke wyþ þe kyng at Caunterbyri. 7308  
When þey come, þe kyng þey grette,  
& alle þat were by hym sette.

<sup>1</sup> This heading is at the top of  
the front page of leaf 32 of the  
Lambeth MS., as a head-line.

<sup>2</sup> In tyme þat Vortiger.

<sup>3</sup> so gentilt of schap is non of  
lyue.

<sup>4</sup> & in pes haf hauen.

<sup>5</sup> & in þat.

<sup>6</sup> þei dight þer fers.



- þe kyng byheld þyse bachelers  
 Were faire of schap, & face clers,  
 How þey were mad so gentilly,  
 ffayrest of al þer compaigny:  
 þen seyde þe kyng, "of whenne<sup>1</sup> be ȝe?  
 What haue ȝe sought to þis contre?"  
 þen was Hengist eldest & more;  
 ffor alle his feres onswered he þore:  
 " In Saxoyne<sup>2</sup> were we born & fed;  
 " ffro þennes<sup>3</sup> hyder our God vs led.  
 " ȝyf ye wil wite al þe manere,  
 " Whi & for what we ar com here;  
 " To telle ȝow, sire, gyues<sup>4</sup> me leue,  
 " þat ȝe ne ȝoure<sup>5</sup> wyþ me ne greue."  
 þe kyng gaf hym þe grauntyse,  
 & Hengist teldym þen in<sup>6</sup> his wyse:
- " Sire kyng," he seyde, "ȝyf þou euere herde,  
 " So waxynge<sup>7</sup> folk in al þys werde,  
 " Ne so gendryng,<sup>8</sup> ne so plentlyue,  
 " Ne so gracious kynde<sup>9</sup> to þryue,  
 " Als we arn of oure kynde,  
 " In no lond scholde men fynde,  
 " Ne selcouploker so<sup>10</sup> to gendre,  
 " Ne haue so manye childre tendre,  
 " & wexen boþe men & women y-nowe,  
 " þat alle þer dwelle þey ne mowe.<sup>11</sup>  
 " ffor whan þe folk ar woxen & larged,<sup>12</sup>  
 " & þe lond ys ouer-charged,  
 " Oure Prynces perceyue þer ar so fele,  
 " þe ȝonge dur þey nought out wele,<sup>13</sup>
- 7312 who sees how  
 handsome they  
 are,  
 and asks them  
 whence and  
 7316 why they have  
 come.  
 Hengist  
 answers,  
 7320 "From Saxony  
 are we come  
 hither,  
 7324  
 because our  
 folk are such  
 waxing ones,  
 7332 and breed so  
 many children,  
 who all grow  
 into men and  
 women,  
 7336  
 and over-  
 burden the  
 land.  
 When our  
 7340 princes see this,

<sup>1</sup> what lond. [leaf 44.]<sup>2</sup> sessoynne.<sup>3</sup> þien (no fro).<sup>4</sup> þe sir gif þou.<sup>5</sup> þou ne þin.<sup>6</sup> tellis on.<sup>7</sup> waxand.<sup>8</sup> genderand.<sup>9</sup> þrod (? for þeod (A.-S. þeod) people; or A.-S. þreot, þreat, a crowd).<sup>10</sup> ne so selcoupþly.<sup>11</sup> duelle ne mowh.<sup>12</sup> is waxen & largid.<sup>13</sup> þe ȝenge þorgh þei do wele.  
(wele = choose: see page 98, note <sup>1</sup>.)



they make all  
the young  
strong men  
cast lots, and  
go forth to  
seek another  
land.

Just now the  
lot fell on us,

and our God  
Mercury  
brought us  
here."

Vortiger asks  
the names of  
the Saxon  
Gods,

and which is  
the chief.  
Hengist names  
five,

but says, that  
above all others

" Bot pulke of twenty<sup>1</sup> wynter elde  
" Or more, þat con þem kepe & welde,  
" On strong[e]<sup>2</sup> men, lotes þey kest,  
" & byddem<sup>3</sup> go purchace þem best, 7344  
" To seke oþer lond & lede,  
" ffor<sup>4</sup> mykel people may hit nought fede.  
" Mo childre þer are of oure gendrure  
" þan bestes are in oure pasture ; 7348  
" & for we so multeplye,  
" We ar of þe kynde of Germanie.  
" At þis tyme fel on vs þe lot,  
" þer-fore, nede, of lande<sup>5</sup> we mot, 7352  
" To seke vs oþer on to lende ;  
" & hidere oure Godes dide vs wende ;  
" Mercurius, þat vs saues & schildes,  
" Hap vs brought vnto þys ylde." 6 7356

When þe kyng herde hym nemne a God,<sup>7</sup>  
He asked þenne how þey trowd,<sup>8</sup>  
& what þer Godes name hight,  
On wham þey trowed<sup>9</sup> had most myght. 7360  
He seide, " We haue Godes seeres<sup>10</sup>  
" ffor whos wyrship we make auteres ;<sup>11</sup>  
" Mars, Iubiter, & Saturnus,  
" Dyane, & Mercuryus : 7364  
" þis ar Godes of oure paen lay,  
" þat we worschipe<sup>12</sup> at þer day.  
" & mo Godes ȝyt we holde,  
" As oure auncestres by-forn vs tolde ; 7368  
" Bot on ouer alle wyrship<sup>12</sup> we mest,

<sup>1</sup> þat ere of fiften. (qui de quinze  
ans sunt, et de plus, *Wace*, i. 319,  
l. 6911.)

<sup>2</sup> stronge.

<sup>3</sup> bid þam.

<sup>4</sup> so.

of ond nede.

<sup>6-6</sup> P. leaves out these two lines.

<sup>7</sup> herd þam neuē. [leaf 44, col. 2.]

<sup>8</sup> trod (see next note).

<sup>9</sup> whilk þei trowed.

<sup>10</sup> sere.

<sup>11</sup> to whom we mak autere.

<sup>12</sup> wirship.



|                                                    |                          |                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| " Sire <i>Mercurius</i> , & holde his fest.        |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " Mercury ys on oure langage                       |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " 'Woden,' louerd, ys oure vsage,—                 | 7372                     | <b>Nota de die Mercurii &amp; Veneris.</b><br>they worship Mercury or Woden; his day is the fourth of the week, and |
| " Oure auncessour set hit so,—                     |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " þe ferþe day we halewe hym to.                   |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " ffor we þat day worschipeþ hym alle,             |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " 'Wodenesday' þat day we calle.                   | 7376                     | therefore called Wodensday.                                                                                         |
| " Wypouten hym an oþer we haue,                    |                          | Also they have a Goddess                                                                                            |
| " A Godesse þat we for help to craue;              |                          | Fre; and her                                                                                                        |
| " On oure speche we calle hure ffre;               |                          | 7380 day, the sixth,                                                                                                |
| " þe sixte day, hure worschipe we;                 |                          | is called Fry-                                                                                                      |
| " ffor 'ffre' we calle hit ffryday, <sup>1</sup>   |                          | day.                                                                                                                |
| " & worschipe hure on payen lay."                  |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| ¶ þen seide þe kyng, "ze leue al wronge;           |                          | Vortiger tells                                                                                                      |
| " Wyp false Godes ze make monge;                   | 7384                     | them that their                                                                                                     |
| " On swylk ar nought for to leue,                  |                          | Gods                                                                                                                |
| " Hit ar ffendes þat schol ȝow greue;              |                          | are fiends;                                                                                                         |
| " & þat sore ouer-þynkes <sup>2</sup> me;          |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " Napeles," he seyde, "welcome ar <sup>3</sup> ze! | 7388                     | but, neverthe-                                                                                                      |
| " ffayre men ze are, & stalworthe seme.            |                          | less,                                                                                                               |
| " And ze wyl serue me to queme,                    |                          | if they'll serve                                                                                                    |
| " Euerilkon y wyl ȝow take,                        | [leaf 32, back, col. 1.] | him,                                                                                                                |
| " & riche men y schal ȝow make.                    | 7392                     |                                                                                                                     |
| " þe Peytes wayten me wyþ wo,                      |                          | against the                                                                                                         |
| " þe Scottes also vs brenne <sup>4</sup> & slo;    |                          | Picts and Scots,                                                                                                    |
| " ȝyf hit be so, ze may me vaille                  |                          |                                                                                                                     |
| " To vencuse <sup>5</sup> þem in pleyn bataille;   | 7396                     |                                                                                                                     |
| " Gyftes schol ze haue ful gode                    |                          | he'll give them                                                                                                     |
| " Til ȝoure cloþynge & ȝour fode;                  |                          | rich gifts.                                                                                                         |
| " & kepes wel ay þe Northe cost; <sup>6</sup>      |                          | They must                                                                                                           |
| " ffro þennes comen ouer al þeyr <sup>7</sup> ost. | 7400                     | keep well the                                                                                                       |
|                                                    |                          | north bound-                                                                                                        |
|                                                    |                          | dary.                                                                                                               |

<sup>1</sup> *it freeday*. (Freedai, Wace, i. 321, l. 6950.)

<sup>2</sup> *forþynkes*.

<sup>3</sup> *welcom ere*.

<sup>4</sup> *robbe*.

<sup>5</sup> *venquis*.

<sup>6</sup> *þe north kepis ay wele þat cost*.

A fresh hand writes a page here in the Petyt MS., (leaf 44, back,) and the initial *qw-* for *wh-* comes in: see notes <sup>9</sup>, <sup>10</sup>, p. 261, below.

<sup>7</sup> *þine comys euere att oþer*.



Thus Vortiger  
brings the  
Saxons among  
the Britons.

. " Loke y fynde in ȝow no feyntyse ;  
 . " ȝe schul me serue of swylk seruise."  
 On þys manere come þe Saxouns<sup>1</sup>  
 . þorow ffortyger among þe Bretouns. 7404  
 . Hengist tok leue at þe kyng,  
 . To Londone<sup>2</sup> for to brynge his þyng ;  
 & sone com to þe court agayn  
 Wyþ manye faire knyght & swayn. 7408

¶ De Bello inter Saxones & Pictos.

Soon after,  
the Scots and  
Picts  
ravage Eng-  
land

up to the  
Humber.  
Vortiger and  
the Saxons  
march against  
them,

Wel sone after þat<sup>3</sup> þey were come,  
 þe Scottes & Peytes bataille nome,  
 And comen faste in-til þys lond,  
 Pylede<sup>4</sup> & brente al þat þey fond ; 7412  
 Right<sup>5</sup> to Humber water þey cam.  
 þe kyng wyþ Saxons<sup>6</sup> ageyn þem nam.  
 . þe Saxons<sup>6</sup> were þer-of ful blyþe,  
 . þey arrayed hem wel, & þydeward swyþe,<sup>7</sup> 7416  
 þey smyte to-gedere bataille smert ;  
 þe Peytes were euere ful egre of hert,  
 þey stode wel furst & hardyly ;  
 ffor þey were wond to haue þe<sup>8</sup> maistri. 7420  
 þey wende haue had þer elde custume,  
 þe lenger ageyn þe Bretons þey nome.  
 þer wenying þat day þey tynt,  
 ffor þe Saxons<sup>6</sup> did þem bakward stynt, 7424  
<sup>9</sup> [& were discounfet at þat dai ;  
 þe Sessions bare þe prise a-wai.]<sup>9</sup>  
 . þen was þe kyng a ioly<sup>10</sup> man  
 . þat he þe bataille of þem so wan ; 7428

and drive them  
back.

Vortiger is a  
jolly man over  
this,

<sup>1</sup> sessouns.

<sup>2</sup> lond.

<sup>3</sup> was it not long sethen.

<sup>4</sup> robbid.

<sup>5</sup> reght.

<sup>6</sup> sessions.

<sup>7</sup> dyght þem wele & þidir swiþe.

<sup>8</sup> wer won haue.

<sup>9-9</sup> From P., representing lines  
6995-6 of Wace (i. 323).

<sup>10</sup> ioiefull.



|                                                          |      |                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------|
| pen let he mykel <sup>1</sup> of þe Saxons, <sup>2</sup> |      | makes the             |
| & dide hem amende þer liuersons. <sup>3</sup>            |      | Saxons large          |
| þe kyng gaf Hengist faire <sup>4</sup> maners            |      | allowances,           |
| In Kent, & fele opere stedes seers : <sup>5</sup>        | 7432 | and gives             |
| pys loue lested bytwyxt þem longe,                       |      | Hengist many          |
| ffeyþfullike, wel & strong.                              |      | fair places.          |
| Hengist sey til hym þe word wold schape, <sup>6</sup>    |      |                       |
| His nedes to spede þen had he rape ; <sup>7</sup>        | 7436 |                       |
| . He sey oper do <sup>8</sup> þer queyntyse,             |      |                       |
| . Wher-of auauntage myghte aryse, <sup>9</sup>           |      |                       |
| & also þoughte he þan seye som þynge                     |      |                       |
| ffor to plese wyþ-al þe kyng.                            | 7440 |                       |
| On a day by þe kyng he sat,                              |      | One day               |
| . To-gydere spekyng of many what ; <sup>10</sup>         |      | Hengist says to       |
| He sey þe kyng was mury <sup>11</sup> at ese,            |      | Vortiger,             |
| Wyþ his conseil he gan hym plese :                       | 7444 |                       |
| " Sire," he seis, " ȝe han do <sup>12</sup> me honour,   |      |                       |
| " & mykel y haue y-take <sup>13</sup> of ȝour.           |      |                       |
| " ȝyf y haue serued þe to wille,                         |      |                       |
| " ȝyt bettere wol y forward fulfyllen ;                  | 7448 |                       |
| " & mikel haue y herd & seen                             |      |                       |
| " Syþen y haue y þy court y-ben ; <sup>14</sup>          |      |                       |
| " ffor þou hast neyþer baron ne knyght,                  |      | [lf. 32, bk., cl. 2.] |
| " pat alle ne hate þe wyþ her <sup>15</sup> myght.       | 7452 | " I find that all     |
| " Of two childre y here þem speke,                       |      | your barons           |
| " pat on þe harde schul <sup>16</sup> þem wreke ;        |      | and knights           |
|                                                          |      | hate you,             |
|                                                          |      | and talk of two       |
|                                                          |      | children who          |

<sup>1</sup> þe king lete mikitt.  
<sup>2</sup> sessions.  
<sup>3</sup> did amend þer liueresons.  
<sup>4</sup> of his.  
<sup>5</sup> In Lindesai in stedis sers. (In Londesla regione, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 11 ; Lindesée, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb. ; Lindesie, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé, *Wace*, i. 323.)  
<sup>6</sup> saw þe werld wild skape.  
<sup>7</sup> for to spede & rape.  
<sup>8</sup> MS. to. P. has do. (Wace's

comment 'Comme cascuns faire 'devoit,' (i. 323, l. 7006), on Hengist's 'D'avancier soi s'entremetoit,' is not translated.)  
<sup>9</sup> qwere-of auauntige mote rise.  
<sup>10</sup> spekin of mani qwat. [lf. 44, bk., col. 2.]  
<sup>11</sup> wele.  
<sup>12</sup> Sir king þou has done.  
<sup>13</sup> had.  
<sup>14</sup> Alls I haue in þi court bien.  
<sup>15</sup> att þe hate at þer.  
<sup>16</sup> of þe ful herd þei satt.



shall avenge  
themselves on  
you,

and bring you  
to an evil end.

When I hear  
this,

I think I'd  
better send to  
Saxony for my  
kin,

and then I  
could protect  
you better.

Also if I had  
any fortlet,

we should be  
more secure  
against our  
enemies.

It would be  
better for you

“ *per* lige lordes þey scholden<sup>1</sup> ben,  
“ þorow heritage of þer faderes fe; 7456

“ & bynne schort terme<sup>2</sup> schul<sup>1</sup> þey come,  
“ & of vs boþe take harde dome:

“ & þis ys þe comune sawe of alle,  
“ þat yuel<sup>3</sup> endyng on þe schal<sup>1</sup> falle. 7460

“ þus þey þrete wyþ<sup>4</sup> manace,  
“ & ful yuel þey<sup>5</sup> procure & purchace.

“ When y here þem þus ȝelpe,  
“ þen þenky<sup>6</sup> how y myght ȝow helpe; 7464

“ *per*-fore to Saxoyne woldy sende,<sup>7</sup>  
“ ffor my sib kynde, & oþer freinde;

“ & ȝif y her hadde childre or<sup>8</sup> wyf,  
“ þen were y holden, on lymes & lyf, 7468

“ þe forto socoure & to saue  
“ Wyþ al þe strengþe<sup>9</sup> y myghte haue;

“ þe sikerer mightest þow<sup>10</sup> be for me,  
“ & y scholde deserue more loue of<sup>11</sup> þe; 7472

“ ffor alle þyn enemis, þaw þey wild<sup>12</sup> fond,  
“ Ne durste nought reue þe a fot of lond.

“ ffor y þe serue & loue truely,  
“ Haue y on me many enemy; 7476

“ & y lyg euere so naked syde,  
“ & oure fomen spred ful wyde;

“ ȝyf y had ony fforcelet,  
“ To haue þer-inne som<sup>13</sup> syker recet, 7480

“ þen myghte we þe more be syker,  
“ What tyme our enemis wold giue vs byker.

“ *per*-fore wer hit prow to þe  
“ þat y hadde som<sup>14</sup> castel or cite 7484

<sup>1</sup> *suld.*

<sup>2</sup> *In scort time.*

<sup>3</sup> *An iuelþ* ('ill' was the first scribe's word).

<sup>4</sup> *þei þe with itt.*

<sup>5</sup> *And to.*

<sup>6</sup> *þink .I.*

<sup>7</sup> *in to session wild .I. send.*

<sup>8</sup> &.

<sup>9</sup> *On att þe purtenaunce.*

<sup>10</sup> *mote þou.*

<sup>11</sup> *i suld be loued bettir for.*

<sup>12</sup> *enmis þou ne.*

<sup>13</sup> *haue on.*

<sup>14</sup> *oþer* [leaf 45, in the first scribe's hand again].



“ Where-inne y mighte sauely slepe, if I had a castle  
 “ þat none enemis on vs lepe; or city.”  
 “ [wele more þan, þei wild me doute]<sup>1</sup>  
 . “ þan þey do now y lygge þer-oute.” 7488

þenne seide þe kyng vnto Hengist, Vortiger  
 “ þorow sonde y wolde þy folk hit wist,  
 . “ þat þey were her when we had nede;  
 “ Inow þey scholden haue<sup>2</sup> to mede. 7492  
 “ To gyue þe a toun, y ne may,  
 “ ffor þou art of þe Payen lay;  
 “ ffolye hit were, more þan resoun,  
 “ To gyue a Payen a Cristen toun; 7496  
 “ Of oþer þyng þe entermet,  
 . “ ffor of toun getestow no recet.”

refuses alto-  
 gether to give a  
 Christian town  
 to Hengist, a  
 heathen.

¶ De cordys Corey Taury.

<sup>3</sup> “ Syn þou,” seide Hengist, “ wyþseyest þat me, “ Well then,”  
 . “ A skylful preiere þou graunte me: 7500 says Hengist,  
 “ Of þy maners þat y mot haue— “ give me at  
 “ Wher-inne þat y may my lif saue—<sup>3</sup> least as much  
 “ Namore lond,<sup>4</sup> wyd ne syd, ground as a  
 “ þan y may sprede a boles hyd.” 7504 bull's hide 'll  
 pat graunted anon kyng ffortygerne. cover.”  
 þen Hengist of sente his frende 3erne; Vortiger agrees  
 A boles hyde, he broughte hit þyder; to do this;  
 On þonges he carf hit al<sup>5</sup> to-gyder, 7508 and Hengist  
 And knytte hem alle þen on o þonge; [leaf 33.] cuts his bull's  
 & al so fer as hit was long, thongs, hide into  
 & euenlik al so mykel in brede, knits these  
 pe lond he tok hit ouer 3ede. 7512 into one,  
 takes the square  
 measure of that  
 in land,

<sup>1</sup> From the Petyt MS.

<sup>2</sup> *satt haf.*

<sup>3-3</sup> *Said Hengist, if þou wilt nouht.*  
*ne dar not gif .I. þe of souht.*

*on of þi maners þat .I. haue.*

*grante it me myself to saue.*

<sup>4</sup> *ne no more lond.*

<sup>5</sup> *thuonges he karue it att.*



builds a fortlet  
on it,  
 and calls it  
Thong Castle.

. þe lond aboute he dide hit stake,  
 A fforcelet þer-on þan dide he make,  
 & on his wyse<sup>1</sup> he gaf hit name,  
 ' þe Castel of ponges,'<sup>2</sup> þe firste fame; 7516  
 . Syn, als schorter speche fel,  
 . Hit was called ' þong castel;'<sup>3</sup>  
 . Bot Frenschemen coupe nought so seye,  
 & caldit ' Castel de Correye; ' 7520  
 . þat vse<sup>4</sup> men byzonde þe se,  
 & Bretons caldit ' Kaer Karre.'<sup>5</sup>

¶ Exe Castellum factum est, cui dedit nomen  
 þongcastre.

Hengist's  
friends come in  
16 ships,

and with them  
his lovely  
daughter  
Ronewen

(whom stupid  
people say was  
called Inge).

When pongcastre<sup>6</sup> was al closed,  
 . þe name y-gyuen,<sup>7</sup> oueral alosed, 7524  
 Of þo þat Hengyst sente his sonde,  
 þer comen sexten schipe<sup>8</sup> to londe,  
 Wyþ mikel folk, knyghtes, swaynes,  
 & opere þat were of his demaynes. 7528  
 ¶ In a schip wyþ gentil<sup>9</sup> men  
 Com Hengiste doughter þat hight Ronewen,<sup>10</sup>  
 A zong woman & louely,<sup>11</sup>  
 . Auenant, & fair & semly;<sup>12</sup> 7532  
 . Bot þis lewed men sey & synge,  
 . & telle þat hit was mayden Inge.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *langage*.

<sup>2</sup> Vancastre (*Wace*, i. 327), MS. du Roi, 27; Gancastre, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Tuancastre, MS. de l'Ars., 171, B.-L.

<sup>3</sup> *thuancastett*.

<sup>4</sup> *vses*.

<sup>5</sup> *Wace* adds that many now call it 'Lancastre' who don't know the cause of its first name, l. 7082-4.

<sup>6</sup> *thuancastett*.

<sup>7</sup> *giffen*.

<sup>8</sup> *xiij. schippis*. [leaf 45, col. 2.]

(dix huit nés, *Wace*, i. 327, l. 7087; decem et octo naues, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 12.)

<sup>9</sup> *geentitt* [leaf 45, col. 2.] the second scribe wrote this column and the next two: see his *q*, *-it*, *-is*, *-in*, in the notes <sup>10</sup>, p. 266; <sup>13</sup>, p. 264; <sup>11</sup>, p. 266; <sup>1</sup>, <sup>12</sup>, p. 265.

<sup>10</sup> Roven, *Wace*, i. 328, l. 7091.

<sup>11</sup> *a fair woman & a loueli*.

<sup>12</sup> *auenaunt gret & fair was hi*.

<sup>13</sup> *and tellit it was a maydin zinge*.



- . Wryten of Inge,<sup>1</sup> no clerk may kenne,  
 . Bot of Hengiste doughter, Ronewenne. 7536 **Nota de nomine Engeland.**  
 . Al þe folk Hengist fore sent; (In a later hand.)  
 . To þoncastre<sup>2</sup> ilkon þey went. Hengist's  
 . (ffro Angle, a contre in Saxonye, friends come  
 . Comen alle Hengistes compaynie; 7540 from Angle in  
 . So þat for Angle, y vnderstond, Saxony, and  
 . Bretayne was cald Engeland.) that is why  
 . þen Hengiste faste hym purueyd,<sup>3</sup> Britain is  
 & sente unto þe kyng, & seyð, 7544 called England.  
 . ' Preyenge,<sup>4</sup> as he loued his griþ, Hengist  
 . ' þat he wolde ony night herberwe<sup>5</sup> him wyþ, prays Vortiger  
 . ' A day to ete a sop, & drynke, to come and  
 . ' & se his werk, how þat hym þynke; 7548 see Thong  
 . ' & of his folk, how þat hym þought, Castle,  
 . ' & wyþholden<sup>6</sup> þo þat to hym dought.'  
 . Hengystes<sup>7</sup> werk fayn wolde he se;  
 He zede þider al in pryuate. 7552 Vortiger goes,  
 Whan he hit saw, wel he hit preised, and likes  
 & þat þer myght be folk wel aysed;<sup>8</sup> Hengist's castle  
 & þo knyghte<sup>9</sup> þat late cam, and his friends.  
 ffor þer sonde wyþ hym þey nam. 7556  
 Hengist þat day dide his myght  
 pat al was<sup>10</sup> glad, kyng & knyght;  
 & als þey were best in gladyng,  
 & wel cuppe-schoten,<sup>11</sup> knyght & kyng, 7560 When Vortiger  
 is merry at the  
 feast, and well  
 cup-shotten,

<sup>1</sup> *writin of Ingge.* Robert Manning poohpoohs this *Inge* notion again, when writing of King Engel, near the end of the first part of his *Stori*.

<sup>2</sup> *thuang castell.* P. leaves out the next four lines, 7539-42.

<sup>3</sup> *A day Hengest him purueid.*

<sup>4</sup> *Praid him.*

<sup>5</sup> *A night herber.*

<sup>6</sup> *& held.*

<sup>7</sup> *þe king his.*

<sup>8</sup> *þat þus myght folk be wele asaied.*

<sup>9</sup> *knightes.*

<sup>10</sup> *wer.*

<sup>11</sup> *cop schotin.* (enivré, *Wace*, i. 239, l. 7108.)



¶ Exe Ronewenna, pulcra puella, quam Rex ffortygerus desponsauit secundum legem Paganorum.

|                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| comes the beautiful Ronewen with a cup of wine,                                                       | ffro chaumbre cam Ronewenne so gent,<br>Byfore þe kyng in halle scheo went;<br>A coupe wyþ wyn sche hadde in hande, [lf. 33, col. 2.]<br>And hure atyr <sup>1</sup> was wel farande; 7564                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| kneels to him, and says,<br><b>Wassail.</b>                                                           | Byfore þe kyng o knes sche hir sette,<br>In hure langage ful faire him grette:<br>"Wassayl, my lord! wassail!" <sup>2</sup> seyde sche.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Vortiger asks what it means,                                                                          | þen asked þe kyng what þat myght <sup>3</sup> be: 7568<br>On þat langage þe kyng ne coupe,<br>Bot a knygh[t] þat speche had lered <sup>4</sup> in zoupe—                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| and Sir Breyth, who knows Saxon,                                                                      | Breyþ <sup>5</sup> highte þat knyght, y-born Bretoun,<br>þat wel spak langage of Saxoun. <sup>6</sup> 7572<br>pys Breþ was þe kynges latynier; <sup>7</sup> —<br>& what scheo seyde, teldyt ffortyger: <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| tells him that Ronewen has greeted him as king,<br>according to the Saxon custom,                     | "Sire," Breþ seyde, "Ronewenne 3ow gretes,<br>"And kyng calles, & lord 3ow letes; 7576<br>"pys ys þer custume & þer gest,<br>"Whan they arn at þer [ale or] <sup>9</sup> fest,<br>"Ilk man þat loues, þer hym best þynk <sup>10</sup><br>"Schal sey 'wassail,' & to hym drynk; 7580<br>"He þat haldes schal sey <sup>11</sup> 'wassayl,'<br>"þat oper schal seye ageyn 'drynk hayl';<br>"þat seys [wassayl] drynkes <sup>12</sup> of þe coppe;<br>"Kissing his felawe, he gyueþ <sup>13</sup> hit vppe; 7584<br>" 'Drynk hail,' he seyþ, & drynkeþ <sup>14</sup> þer-of,<br>"Kyssyng <sup>15</sup> hym in bourde & scof." |
| and that he's to answer <i>Drynk hayl</i> ,<br>and Ronewen'll kiss him,<br>and then he's to kiss her. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

<sup>1</sup> *hir hatir.*<sup>2</sup> *Lauerid king/ wassaiþt.*<sup>3</sup> *þe king askid what suld.*<sup>4</sup> *langage lerid.*<sup>5</sup> *Brez.* [leaf 45, back.]<sup>6</sup> *þat lerid þe langage of sessoun.*<sup>7</sup> *Brez was þe latinier.*<sup>8</sup> *told Vortager.*<sup>9</sup> *are at þe ale or.*<sup>10</sup> *louis qware him þink.*<sup>11</sup> *bidis satti say.*<sup>12</sup> *sais wosseitt drinkis.*<sup>13</sup> *Kissand his felaw he giues.*<sup>14</sup> *drinks.*<sup>15</sup> *kissand.*



- þe kyng seide as þe knight gan kenne,  
 "Drynk hayl," smylynge<sup>1</sup> on Ronewenne.  
 Ronewenne drank right as hure lyst,  
 & gaf þe kyng, & syn hym<sup>2</sup> kist.—  
 þat was þe firste wassail in dede,  
 . þat now & euere þe<sup>3</sup> fame ȝede. 7589  
 Of þat wassail men tolde gret tale,  
 & vsed 'wassail' when þey were at þale,  
 & 'drynk hail' to þem þat drank;  
 þus was wassail take<sup>4</sup> to þank.— 7592  
 . fful often þus þys<sup>6</sup> mayden ȝyng 7596  
 . Wassailed & kyste þer þe kyng;<sup>5</sup>  
 Of body sche was ful auenaunt,  
 Of fair colour, wyþ swet semblaunt. 7600  
 Hure atir, ful wel hit bysemed;<sup>7</sup>  
 Merueillyke þe kyng scheo<sup>8</sup> quemed;  
 Out of mesure was he glad,  
 Opon<sup>9</sup> þat mayden he wax al mad. 7604  
 þe ffend & dronkenesse hit wrought;<sup>10</sup>  
 On<sup>11</sup> þat Payen was al his þought.  
 As meschaunce þat tyme<sup>12</sup> hym spedde,<sup>13</sup>  
 He asked þat Payen for to wedde; 7608  
 & Hengist wernde hym bot<sup>14</sup> lyte,  
 Bot graunted hure hym al so tyt;  
 & Hors his broþer consented sone;  
 Hire frendes seyð alle, hit was<sup>15</sup> to done; 7612  
 þey askede þe kyng to gyue<sup>16</sup> hure Kent,  
 In dowarye, to take of rent.

Vortiger says,  
"Drynk hayl,"

7589 and Ronewen  
kisses him.

7592 (Thus were  
wassail and  
drynk hail  
brought in  
here.)

7596

Ronewen was-  
sails and kisses  
Vortiger often;  
and she's so  
pretty

7600

and well  
dressed,

7604

that he gets  
quite wild  
about her, and,  
worked on by  
the devil and  
drunkenness,

7608

asks to wed her.  
Hengist at once  
gives her to  
him,

7612

and asks for  
Kent as her  
dowry.

<sup>1</sup> *Drinkheitt smiland.*

<sup>2</sup> *gaue þe king sine him.*

<sup>3</sup> *& þat first of.*

<sup>4</sup> *tane.*

<sup>5-5</sup> These lines are in the MS. de Ste. Gen. Y. of Wace, fol. 10. Wace, i. 332, note b.

<sup>6</sup> *ffele sithes þat.*

<sup>7</sup> *Hir hatire fultt wele it semid.*

<sup>8</sup> *Meruelike þe king sche.*

<sup>9</sup> *ffor of.*

<sup>10</sup> *Drunkenes þe feend.*

<sup>11</sup> *Of.*

<sup>12</sup> One stroke too many in the MS. m.

<sup>13</sup> *A meschaunche þat time him led.*

<sup>14</sup> *Hengist wild noght draw o.*

<sup>15</sup> *Hir frendis said it were.*

<sup>16</sup> *gife.* [leaf 45, back, col. 2.]



|                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vortiger gives<br>Kent to<br>Ronewen,<br>weds her in<br>Pagan wise,<br>without Priest<br>or Mass,<br>and has her<br>that night. | Vpon þat mayde his herte so kast,<br>What-so þey asked, <sup>1</sup> þe kyng mad fast. 7616<br>I wene þe kyng tok hure þat day,<br>& wedded hure on Payens lay.<br>Of prest was þer no benisoun,<br>Ne messe songen, ne orysoun; 7620<br>In sesyn þe kyng had hure <sup>2</sup> þat nyght; [lf. 33, bk.,<br>col. 1.]<br>Of Kent he gaf Hengist þe ryght.<br>þe Erl þat tyme þat Kent <sup>3</sup> held,<br>Sire Gorogon, þat bar <sup>4</sup> þe scheld, 7624<br>Of þat gyft no þyng he ne wyste<br>Til he was dryuen out <sup>5</sup> wyþ Hengist.<br>þe Payens conseil þe kyng vnderstod,<br>& despised þe Cristene blod; 7628<br>& alle þe Cristene hym forsok,<br>ffor he hym to þe Payens tok;<br>His owen kynde hated hym mest, <sup>6</sup><br>His children loued hym alder lest. <sup>7</sup> 7632<br>Byfore tyme he hadde a wyf,<br>But deþ hadde departed <sup>8</sup> þer lyf;<br>Wyþ þat wyf he had þre sones<br>þat helde ageyn hym for þe Bretons; 7636<br>þe eldest highte sire Vortymer,<br>þat oper, Patens, and Catyger. <sup>9</sup> |
| Earl Gorogon,<br>who holds<br>Kent, doesn't<br>know it is given<br>to Hengist,<br>till he is driven<br>out.                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Vortiger dis-<br>pises the<br>Christians,<br>and they for-<br>sake him.                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| So do his three<br>children by his<br>former wife,                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Vortimer,<br>Patens, and<br>Catyger.                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

### ¶ De blandicione Hengisty.

|                              |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hengist says to<br>Vortiger, | Hengist wente wyþ þe kyng aboute,<br>To be syker for drede & doute, 7640<br>& seyde, "y se hit on many gate<br>" þat þou for me of summe hast <sup>10</sup> hate; |
| "We are both<br>hated;       |                                                                                                                                                                   |

<sup>1</sup> þat þei askid.  
<sup>2</sup> seisine he had hir. (si l'ot, Wace,  
 l. 7183.)  
<sup>3</sup> Erett . . . Kent att.  
<sup>4</sup> had.  
<sup>5</sup> To he was cast oute.

<sup>6</sup> kin hotid him.  
<sup>7</sup> childir loued him alle lost.  
<sup>8</sup> Bot dede had depart.  
<sup>9</sup> þe toþer Passence & Katiger.  
<sup>10</sup> has.



- " & y am—syker mot ze be—  
 " Hated for þe loue of þe. 7644  
 " þou art my sone, for þys skyle,  
 " þou hast<sup>1</sup> my doughter; as lawe hit wyle,  
 " Y am þy fader, als in honour  
 " To be þe a god conseillour; 7648  
 " ꝛz þou wilt regne, trist on me wel,  
 " & help on my partie som del.  
 " ꝛz þou wilt greue þyn enemis,  
 " Y schal þe conseilte by god auis,<sup>2</sup> 7652  
 " Send after my sone, sire Octa,  
 " & ffor his cosyn Ebsa,<sup>3</sup>  
 " & ffor a noble knyght<sup>4</sup> Kerdyk;  
 " in al Saxoyne nar<sup>5</sup> non þem lyk; 7656  
 " þey ar fighters, & noble iustours,<sup>6</sup>  
 " & queynte men & werreyour[s];  
 " Gyf hem lond y þe norþ to lende,—  
 " þy werre comeþ euere in by þat ende,<sup>7</sup>—  
 " ffor þyn enemis þey schul<sup>8</sup> þe were, 7661  
 " þat nought of þyn schulle þey<sup>9</sup> dere;  
 " So myght þou haue, til þy deses,<sup>10</sup>  
 " O þys half Humber þy lond in pes." 7664  
 ꝛ þen seyde þe kyng, " send after þo,  
 " & of þe beste, ꝛz þer be mo."  
 Hengist hadde his sonde<sup>11</sup> sone;  
 þem to brynge þey were al bone; 7668  
 Wyþ hem cam a fflute of fflode,  
 pritty schipes<sup>12</sup> alle gode;  
 Knyghtes þat wolde wende for wages,  
 Wyþ Octa wenten to þe ryuages. 7672

and as I'm  
your father,  
I'm bound to  
give you good  
counsel.

Therefore I  
advise you to  
send for my son  
Octa, his cousin  
Ebsa, and a  
noble knight,  
Kerdyk,

and settle them  
in the north

to protect you  
against your  
enemies."

Vortiger bids  
Hengist send  
for them,

and they come  
with 30 ship-  
loads of  
knights.

<sup>1</sup> *has.*

<sup>2</sup> *I. satt þe counseitt a gode vis.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ebissa* (in *Wace*, and *Geoff.*  
too).

<sup>4</sup> *man.* [leaf 46.] The first scribe  
begins again.

<sup>5</sup> *sessone ere.*

<sup>6</sup> *þise ere feihters nobitt in stours.*

<sup>7</sup> See p. 235, l. 6703-4; p. 259,  
l. 7399, 7400, &c.

<sup>8</sup> *satt.*

<sup>9</sup> *satt robbe ne.*

<sup>10</sup> *may þou haf to þi decese.*

<sup>11</sup> *had his sondes.*

<sup>12</sup> *à trois cent nès*, *Wace*, i. 335,  
l. 7231; *cum trecentis navibus*,  
*Galf. Mon.* vi. 13.



Then come  
smaller parties  
of Saxons,

till there are as  
many Pagans  
as Christians  
in England.  
This annoys  
the Britons, and  
they ask Vor-  
tiger

to send them  
out of the  
country.

He will not.

After þat flute, com ouer þe se  
. Schipes vmwhile by two or<sup>1</sup> þre,  
<sup>2</sup> By foure & fyue, by six & seuene,  
By eyghte & nyne, by ten & enleuene;<sup>2</sup> 7676  
In a þrowe were mo Payen men, [leaf 33, back, col. 2.]  
Or al so manie, as were Cristen.  
þis seye þe Bretons, & were onoyed,<sup>3</sup>  
& seide þe kyng þe lond destruyed; 7680  
To þe kyng þey pleynd in curteys sawe;<sup>4</sup>  
“ Payens ageyn þe Cristen lawe  
“ Bygynneþ gretly vs to greue;  
“ To wende a-vey, sire, gyue þem<sup>5</sup> leue, 7684  
“ Alle, or þe moste partye,  
“ ffor to Cristendom ȝe do vylenye.”  
þe kyng answered, & seyde, “ nay,  
“ Y sente for þem; þey serue to pay.” 7688

¶ Vortimerus, filius ffortigerni, factus est Rex.

On this the  
Britons

make Vortimer  
king,

and by his  
order

drive the  
Saxons out of  
his dominions.

Whan þe Bretons herde þat þe kynge  
Wolde nought leue for no þynge,  
At Londone þey sette a Parlement,  
& Vortimer to kyng þey hent, 7692  
þe eldest sone of ffortyger,  
þat was a doughti bachelor.  
. þis Vortimer dide crie a cry,  
. ‘ þat no Saxon<sup>6</sup> were so hardy, 7696  
. ‘ In his demeynes dwelle ne be,  
. ‘ Neyþer in burgh ne in cite.’  
Anon alle out he dide hem keste;<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *bi.*

<sup>2-2</sup> P. leaves out these two lines,  
though Wace begins at four ships  
and goes up to ten, i. 335, l. 7237-8.

<sup>3</sup> *noied.*

<sup>4</sup> *þei praied him he suld not drauh.*

<sup>5</sup> MS. *vs.* P. *gif þam.* (Départe

les, Wace, i. 336, l. 7249; ut ipsos  
expelleret, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 13.)

<sup>6</sup> . . . . *krie a kri*

*þat no sessone.*

<sup>7</sup> *smertli aȝt did þam out kest.*

[leaf 46, col. 2.]



Among þe Bretons myghter non reste.<sup>1</sup> 7700  
 þe kyng, for loue of his wyf,  
 Held wyþ þe Saxons, & meyntend̃ strif.<sup>2</sup>

Vortiger holds  
 with the  
 Saxons,

### De infortuniis Saxonum.

. Hys sone hadde þer-wyþ enuye,  
 . & sey his ffader meyntende folye; 7704  
 He spied þe Saxoyns,<sup>3</sup> whar þey ware,  
 & chased hem as hound doþ þe<sup>4</sup> hare;  
 His folk was god, hym-self doughti,  
 & meyntende wel his party. 7708

but Vortimer  
 hunts them  
 down like a  
 hound does a  
 hare.

Baldely bolded on hym þe Bretons  
 Ageyns his fader & þe Saxons;<sup>3</sup> De exilis  
 ffoure tymes þey bataille nomen, Saxonum. 7712

Four times do  
 the Britons  
 beat the Saxons  
 in battle:  
 1. On Derwent;

& euere þe Saxoyns<sup>3</sup> were ouer-comen;  
 þe firste bataille was vpon Derewent,  
 . þer were þe Saxons<sup>3</sup> alle y-schent;  
 þat oper at Berforde, att a brok,<sup>5</sup>  
 þer þe Saxons eft bataille tok,<sup>6</sup> 7716  
 þer was Hors & manye anoþer  
 Ageyn Catyger, Vortymeres broþer;

2. At Berford,  
 where Horsa  
 and Catyger

. Gretly þey ȝernde ilk oper tasayle,  
 & boþe were slayn at þat bataille. 7720

are both slain :

þe þridde tyme in Kent, at an hauen;  
 To þer schipes þer<sup>7</sup> þey were drawen;  
 þer wer þey so harde byset,

3. In Kent,

þey fledde to þe yle of Tanet;  
 ffro byȝonde Humber, vnto þat ylde,  
 Was no Saxon<sup>3</sup> so bold ne wylde,  
 þat he ne dide hym þyder chace, 7724

when the  
 Saxons flee to  
 the Isle of  
 Thanet.

<sup>1</sup> non mot rest.

<sup>2</sup> held þe sessions mantende stryfe.

<sup>3</sup> sessions.

<sup>4</sup> þam als hunde dos.

<sup>5</sup> Breford at a broke. (Epifor,

Wace, l. 7273; Episford, *Galf.*  
*Mon.*)

<sup>6</sup> þer eftsons bataile þei toke.

<sup>7</sup> as. P. transposes the next two  
 lines.



4. In the Isle of  
Thanet, where  
they follow the  
Saxons,

who die for  
hunger.

Then the  
Saxons ask  
Vortiger  
to get them  
leave from  
Vortimer to  
leave his land  
peaceably ;

and they sail  
off, leaving  
their wives and  
children be-  
hind.

. ffor in ffortiger<sup>1</sup> þey fond no grace. 7728  
þe Bretons folewed þem & slowe ;  
þo þat ascaped, to þe hil<sup>2</sup> þey drowe.  
I þe yle þey assailed þem þer-ynne  
Wip botes, as þey myghte þem<sup>3</sup> wynne ; 7732  
By þe se syde on þem þey carf ; [leaf 34.]  
O þe oþer syde for hunger þey starf.  
þan sey Saxons<sup>4</sup> on ilk syde wo,  
& þoughte best<sup>5</sup> were to wende þer-fro ; 7736  
þey sente her sonde to ffortyger,  
' þat he wolde so sende to<sup>6</sup> Vortymer,  
' To gyue hem leue a-vey to wende  
' Wypouten slaughter,<sup>7</sup> as he was hende ; 7740  
' ffor þey ne leften nyght ne day  
' þem tasaille wyþ strong afray :  
' His trewes, þer-fore, fond vs<sup>8</sup> to gete.'  
þen drowe þe Saxons<sup>9</sup> alle to a flete, 7744  
& dight þer schipes, & sette vp sayl,  
Left wyf & childre, & oþer porayl :<sup>10</sup>  
On þis manere a-vey þey scaped,  
Ouer se til oþer land þeym<sup>11</sup> raped. 7748

# ¶ De Restauracione ecclesiarum per Vortimerum.

Vortimer re-  
stores the  
churches,

and has God's  
service sung in  
them.

Vortymer dide þanne restore  
þat for þem hadde any lore.  
He dide kirkes reyse & make,—  
. þo þat Hengist dide doun schake,— 7752  
& dide Godes seruise be songe & seyd,  
þat for þe Payens longe was leyd.

<sup>1</sup> for all þe kyng.

<sup>2</sup> Ilde.

<sup>3</sup> to þam.

<sup>4</sup> þe sessions sauh.

<sup>5</sup> þare best it.

<sup>6</sup> wild praie sir.

<sup>7</sup> scaþe. P. leaves out the next  
two lines.

<sup>8</sup> In þis treus leue. [leaf 46, back.]

<sup>9</sup> þe sessions drouh þam.

<sup>10</sup> childe & oþer apparaille.

<sup>11</sup> Into þer awen lond þam.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                  |                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| He sente to Rome, to seint Romeyn,<br>& he sente hider þe byschop Germeyn.<br>þen com wyþ hym seint Lowys,<br>An holy bischop & a wys,—<br>. þey were sent þe londe to assoille,—<br>He kepte þe sege of the apostoylle. <sup>1</sup><br>pyse two turned þe folk ageyn,<br>To Crist & to his lawe ageyn; <sup>2</sup><br>& manion þorow hem saued was<br>. þat er wer gyuen to Satanas.<br>þorow hem schewed God many vertu,<br>þat in þis lond dide gret pru. | 7756<br><br><br><br><br>7760<br><br><br><br>7764 | The pope sends<br>him Bishops<br>Germeyn and<br>St. Lowys,<br><br>and they turn<br>the folk to<br>Christ again. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ De Maledicta Ronewenna.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When þey had stabled Godes lawe<br>. þorow miracle & þorow þer sawe,<br>Anoþer sorewe com vp ryf,<br>þorow Ronewenne, ffortygeres wyf:<br>. Scheo made a drynke þorow treson,<br>& Vortymer sche dide poyson;<br>Scheo poysend hym þat louede Crist,<br>ffor þe payen, hure ffader Hengist.<br>Whan Vortymer wyste he scholde deye—<br>Leches to lyue coupe hym non seye, <sup>3</sup> —<br>þen sent he after his barons bolde,<br>Bytaught hem alle his tresor to holde,<br>& seide, “takeþ conseil & red,—<br>“ Of me nys non, for y am ded, <sup>4</sup> —<br>“ Men of armes swyþe <sup>5</sup> ze take,<br>“ By alle þe costes <sup>6</sup> quykly to wake<br>“ þat no Saxoyn <sup>7</sup> on ȝow aryue, | 7768<br><br><br><br><br>7772<br><br><br>7776<br><br>7780 | Then Ronewen<br>poisons Vor-<br>timer;<br><br>and when he<br>knows he must<br>die, he bids his<br>barons<br><br>set watches on<br>the coasts, so<br>that no Saxons<br>may land; |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> see of þe apostole.

<sup>2</sup> to leue þe cristen lawe certayn.

<sup>3</sup> not seie.

<sup>4</sup> .I. am bot dede.

<sup>5</sup> knyghtes of sonde .I. rede.

<sup>6</sup> bi þe se side.

<sup>7</sup> session.



- and bury him  
by the sea side
- under a very  
high tomb,
- that may  
always meet  
the Saxon's  
eye, and keep  
them off.  
Vortimer then  
dies; and, as  
dead men's  
words are soon  
*Nota.*  
forgotten,  
his barons bury  
him in London.  
Vortiger reigns  
again over the  
whole land;  
and, on Rone-  
wen's asking,
- sends word to  
Hengist to  
come over  
again, but with  
few folk, so as  
not to frighten  
the Britons.
- “ Ne receyueþ non for þyng alyue; 7784  
“ Holdeþ þe stat þat y ʒow wan,  
“ And trauailleþ forþ as y began;  
“ And ʒyf ʒe do als y schal rede, [leaf 34, col. 2.]  
“ On ʒow to come þey schul drede. 7788  
“ By þe se side, byrieþ me þere,  
“ þe sight of me ʒyt schal hem fere;<sup>1</sup>  
“ & doþ make a tounge þat longe may last,  
“ þe sight þerof schal þem agast; 7792  
“ On alle manere ʒe make hit heye,  
“ þat y be euere ageyn þer eye;  
“ þat wey of me þan schul þey scurne,  
“ Ne neuere haue grace on me to turne.” 7796  
þus he þem taughte, þus he þem seyde,  
& þenne byforn þem alle he deyde.  
Bot þei dide nought his comandement; **Heu pro**  
þe dedes conseyl<sup>2</sup> ys sone ouer-went,— **morte Vor-**  
To Londone his body þey bar, **timery!**  
& in þe cite biried hym þar.  
þen wax ffortiger ful stout;  
Als he fore dide, he<sup>3</sup> regned þorowout. 7804  
Renewenne þenne hure lord bysought  
þat Hengist myghte a-geyn be brought.  
Anon tys<sup>4</sup> wif, his wille he went,  
& after Hengist his lettre sent: 7808  
To come sleightly he scholde<sup>5</sup> fonde,  
& litel folk wyþ hym brynge<sup>6</sup> to londe,  
<sup>7</sup> So þe barons þem nought mispaye,  
Ne þe comun folk affraye;<sup>7</sup> 7812  
“ Hit nedeþ no þyng gret folk to haue,  
“ ffor Vortimer lygges ded<sup>8</sup> in graue.”

<sup>1</sup> *saht þam afere.* [lf. 46, bk., col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> *dede conseile.*<sup>3</sup> *he are was.*<sup>4</sup> *titt his.* [went=turned]<sup>5</sup> *com slily he suld.*<sup>6</sup> *bot bring not mykett folk.*<sup>7-7</sup> P. leaves out these two lines.<sup>8</sup> MS. *dred.* P. *dede.*



¶ Hengistus reconsiliatus est.

|                                                                                                                                                                          |      |                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------------|
| When Hengist herde þo tydinges,<br>. His God he þanked, <sup>1</sup> & made offrynges ;                                                                                  | 7816 | But Hengist                               |
| He dight hym folk, an hundred <sup>2</sup> þousand<br>Of armed men, brought þem to land.                                                                                 |      | brings over<br>100,000 men<br>with him.   |
| Many a Breton þen dredde hym sore,<br>. & so schold oþer þat þenne [ne] <sup>3</sup> wore.                                                                               | 7820 | This frightens<br>the Britons             |
| When þe kyng herde Hengist was comen,<br>& wiþ mykel folk þe lond <sup>4</sup> had nomen,<br>He dredde hym sore, & mente his mone.                                       |      | and Vortiger<br>too,                      |
| þe Bretons were greued ones <sup>5</sup> ilkone,<br>& seide 'þey wolde do <sup>6</sup> þer myght<br>' To sle þem doun wyþ force & <sup>7</sup> fight.'                   | 7824 | and the Britons<br>say they'll<br>fight.  |
| Bot Hengist herde, what loud, what stille,<br>. þe Bretons to hym hadde yuel <sup>8</sup> wille.                                                                         | 7828 | On this,<br>Hengist trea-<br>cherously    |
| Hym self was euere ful feloun ;<br>He sente to þe kyng al in tresoun,<br>' þat he wolde speke wyþ alle in pees,<br>' & simply <sup>9</sup> wyþouten pres ;               | 7832 | declares that<br>he wants peace<br>only,  |
| ' Pes he asked, pes wolde he seke,<br>' Til hym in pes he wolde be <sup>10</sup> meke,<br>' & he wolde nought þe Bretons greue,<br>' Ne dwelle wiþ force ageyn þer leue, | 7836 | that he'll not<br>grieve the<br>Britons,  |
| ' Bot chese þem-seluen, as þey wol say,<br>' Wheþer we schul dwelle, or go our way.' <sup>11</sup>                                                                       |      | but will stop or<br>go as they<br>choose. |
| . On þat couenaunt & þat deuis<br>þey hadde trewes on boþe partys.                                                                                                       | 7840 | So a truce is<br>made,                    |
| . When þe partys to trewe <sup>12</sup> wer brought,                                                                                                                     |      |                                           |

<sup>1</sup> he þankid his godes.

<sup>2</sup> þre hundreth. (trois cent mil-  
liers, *Wace*, i. 343, l. 7380 ; trecenta  
millia, *Galf. Mon.* vi. 15.)

<sup>3</sup> þan ne.

<sup>4</sup> hauen.

<sup>5</sup> euer.

<sup>6</sup> þei suld fond.

<sup>7</sup> & do him flie þorgh force of.

<sup>8</sup> had wikked.

<sup>9</sup> scmpely. [leaf 47.] A fresh scribe  
(? not the second) writes this page  
of P. and has -in, -is, -id, &c.

<sup>10</sup> wild him.

<sup>11</sup> or at þer wiþ go home þer weie.

<sup>12</sup> treus.



|                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                  | . Hengist of treson hym byþought; <sup>1</sup><br>þorow trist of trues, of <sup>2</sup> on assent                                                |      |
| and a day for<br>parleying fixed,<br>on Salisbury<br>plain, by the<br>Marvel of Am-<br>bresbury. | þey sette a day of Parlement                                                                                                                     | 7844 |
| Hengist is told<br>to come alone;                                                                | Opon þe Playne of Salesbury,<br>Byside the Merueille of Aumbresbyry, <sup>3</sup><br>þey bede Hengist no gret folk lede, [leaf 34, bk., col. 1.] |      |
|                                                                                                  | . Bot senglery come, & noman <sup>4</sup> drede,                                                                                                 | 7848 |
|                                                                                                  | . & what lordyng he gan mete,                                                                                                                    |      |
|                                                                                                  | . Als he þem dredde he scholde <sup>5</sup> lete.                                                                                                |      |
| but he says<br>he'll come with<br>men unarmed.                                                   | Hengist sent hym bode a-geyn,<br>þat he wolde comen to þe Playn                                                                                  | 7852 |
|                                                                                                  | Wypoute armure on any wyght,<br>ffor drede of kontek & of fight.                                                                                 |      |

¶ De tradicionē Hengisti, & occisione Britonum  
cum Saxis.

|                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| On the 1st of<br>May the meet-<br>ing at Salisbury<br>is held.                                                      | <b>T</b> o þat playne þey come þat day,<br>Of Salesbury, þe firste of May,                                                                                                                   | 7856 |
|                                                                                                                     | . Many a man (wypoute <sup>6</sup> somons)                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|                                                                                                                     | . Of þe Saxons <sup>7</sup> & of þe Bretons:                                                                                                                                                 |      |
|                                                                                                                     | . Hereþ now how Hengist þought, <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| But the traitor<br>Hengist has<br>told his men<br>to bring two-<br>edged knives—<br>sexes—hidden<br>in their hosen, | . What treson he schop to be wrought. <sup>9</sup>                                                                                                                                           | 7860 |
|                                                                                                                     | “ ffelawes,” he seyde, “ what so bytydes,<br>“ Get ȝow knyues egged on <sup>10</sup> boþe sydes,<br>“ & ber þem priuely, þat non ne se,<br>“ In ȝoure hoses harde by ȝour kne. <sup>11</sup> | 7864 |
| to set them-<br>selves, each one                                                                                    | “ When we haue þem, & þey vs gret,<br>“ & ilkon of vs by a Breton <sup>12</sup> set,—                                                                                                        |      |

<sup>1</sup> who wild haue wend of treson  
þoght.

<sup>2</sup> treist & treus on.

<sup>3</sup> Nunnis of Ammesberi. (l'abeie,  
Wace, i. 344, l. 7410; cænobium,  
Galf. Mon. vi. 15.)

<sup>4</sup> simpli no man suld.

<sup>5</sup> so suld he.

<sup>6</sup> þoru.

<sup>7</sup> sessions.

<sup>8</sup> heres now hov . . . wroght.

<sup>9</sup> þis treson who wild haue þoght.

<sup>10</sup> puruey ȝou kniues egid.

<sup>11</sup> In ȝoure bosums be ȝour the.

<sup>12</sup> Ilkone be sidyn oþer.



- . " On alle manere fondes how,  
 . " Ay on of hem, anoþer<sup>1</sup> of ȝow,— 7868 next to a Briton,  
 . " Nymeþ out<sup>2</sup> ȝour sexes when y so say, and, when he, Hengist, calls,  
 . " & handes on ȝour felawes lay,  
 . " On ilka Breton þat sittes ȝou nest, let each Saxon  
 . " & strykeþ hem ded þorow bak &<sup>3</sup> brest." 7872 draw his sex, and stab the Briton next him, in the back.  
 . When Hengist to þem þus had yseyd,<sup>4</sup>  
 . Ilka Saxon<sup>5</sup> a sex purueyd,  
 . & com to þe Playne of Salesbury,  
 . ffair felawschip,<sup>6</sup> & ful mury. 7876 So every Saxon brings his sex,  
 . When þey were alle set in fere,  
 . Als he had seid hem þe<sup>7</sup> manere,  
 . " Nymeþ out<sup>8</sup> ȝour sexes," seide Hengist ;  
 . Bot what hit mente þe Bretons nyst.<sup>9</sup> 7880 and when Hengist gives the word,  
 . þe Saxons<sup>10</sup> anon þer sexes drowe ;<sup>11</sup> each kills the Briton next him,  
 . His felawe next, þe Saxons<sup>10</sup> slowe.  
 . þe kyng sey þat, anon vp stirt,  
 . Bot Hengist laughtym<sup>12</sup> by þe skirt, 7884 while Hengist holds Vortiger down.  
 . & he held hym as stille as ston,  
 . þat he mighte helpe to saue non.  
 . þe Bretons seye þey were by-traischt,<sup>13</sup>  
 . fful deolfuly were þey þenne abayscht.<sup>14</sup> 7888  
 . þat so sodeynly had þer lyues<sup>15</sup> reft/,  
 . & so fewe lordes as þer were left ;  
 . ffior þer wer slayn of knyghtes<sup>16</sup> bolde  
 . pre hundred<sup>17</sup> & sexti Bretons tolde ;  
 . Alle were þey lordes<sup>18</sup> euerilkone, 7892 360 British knights are slain ;

<sup>1</sup> & on.<sup>2</sup> takis oute.

<sup>3</sup> & smyte with knife þrou bak or.  
 leaf 47, col. 2.] After, *brest* P. adds,  
*att gate þat ȝee him slo.*  
*no poer haue ferer to go.*

<sup>4</sup> whan þis treson to þem was said.<sup>5</sup> man.<sup>6</sup> felichip.<sup>7</sup> said on þat.<sup>8</sup> takis oute.<sup>9</sup> ne wist.<sup>10</sup> sessions.<sup>11</sup> drohe . . . slohe.<sup>12</sup> toke him.<sup>13</sup> be traist.<sup>14</sup> So sodenly þei were o beist.<sup>15</sup> & þer liues so sone.<sup>16</sup> baroñs.

<sup>17</sup> quatre cens, *Wace*, i. 346, l.  
 7438 ; quadringentos, *Galf. Mon.*  
 vi. 15.

<sup>18</sup> att riche men.



|                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| but some<br>escape, defend-<br>ing themselves<br>with stones. | . ffor whilk þe lond made mykel mone ;<br>& þo þat ascaped out of þe place,<br>Wyp stones foughte as <sup>1</sup> þey had space ;                                                                                                 | 7896 |
| Eldok, earl of<br>Gloucester,<br>gets hold of a<br>tree,      | ffyghtyng þey fledde, þey hadde al <sup>2</sup> nede.<br>þe Erl <sup>3</sup> of Gloucestre was in þat drede ;<br>A tre he laughte, & þer-wyp smot,<br>& his dint on þe Saxons <sup>4</sup> bot ;                                  | 7900 |
| and with it kills<br>30 men.                                  | Sire Eldok, þe noble Erl so <sup>5</sup> hight,<br>. His dint wyp-stonde, no Saxon <sup>6</sup> myght,<br>ffor he slow þer of Hengistes <sup>7</sup> men,<br>Als hit telles, twenty <sup>8</sup> & ten.                           | 7904 |
|                                                               | He bar hym so in þat pres [leaf 34, back, col. 2.]                                                                                                                                                                                |      |
| He escapes to<br>Gloucester.                                  | pat of wounde he was wem-les,<br>þey seye he scaped so <sup>9</sup> wyp þe lyf,<br>& kesten after hym many a knyf ;<br>þer his hors was, þider he gan <sup>10</sup> spede,<br>& to Gloucestre on þat hors he zede ; <sup>11</sup> | 7908 |
| Vortiger's life<br>is saved by<br>Hengist,                    | And so he warnyscht al þat toun<br>. þat þey ne dredde no Saxoun. <sup>12</sup>                                                                                                                                                   | 7912 |
|                                                               | þen Saxoyns <sup>12</sup> wolde han slayn þe kyng,<br>Bot Hengist wold nought for no þyng ;<br>He bad hem "leue, do him bot god,                                                                                                  |      |
|                                                               | " ffor he hap auanced mykel my blod :<br>" Als in lawe he ys my sone,                                                                                                                                                             | 7916 |
| but he is pri-<br>soned in Lon-<br>don ;                      | " Elles he scholde oþer weys mone."<br>þey ledde hym þenne to London,<br>& þer þey dide hym in prison.                                                                                                                            | 7920 |
|                                                               | London was þeirs, to Lincolne þey hasted,<br>Wynchestre & zork þey toke & wasted.                                                                                                                                                 |      |

<sup>1</sup> *wit stonis fauht wen.*<sup>2</sup> *ffehtand þei fled as þei had.*<sup>3</sup> *Erett.*<sup>4</sup> *Sessons.*<sup>5</sup> *þis eritt sir Eldok he.*<sup>6</sup> *to stond his dint non ne.*<sup>7</sup> *þe Hengist.*<sup>8</sup> *seuenti.* (soixante dis, *Wace*, l.7449 ; septuaginta, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 16.)<sup>9</sup> *þei sau he was schapid.*<sup>10</sup> *þer his hors was þidir him.*<sup>11</sup> *on him to gloucestre he fled.*<sup>12</sup> *sessoun . . Sessons.* [lf. 47, bk.]

(These readings will not be given again.)



- ffortyger saw how þat hit foor;<sup>1</sup>  
 What þey hym asked, he þem swor. 7924  
 ffor to ben out of þer prisoun, and, to get free,  
 & quit of alle manere raunsoun,  
 He graunted þem þanne to haue Southsex, 7928 gives the  
 Oxenfordschire,<sup>2</sup> & Middelsex, Saxons Sussex,  
 ffor þey marchen vpon<sup>3</sup> Kent Oxfordshire,  
 þat he gaf Ronewenne to rent. and Middlesex,  
 & forto mene ȝyt of þe tresons which border  
 Of þe sexes & of þe Saxons, 7932 on Kent.  
 þo countres haue þer-of þe<sup>4</sup> name,  
 Sexes, fo[r] þe Saxons schame.  
<sup>5</sup> Sire ffortiger þe kyng þankede God þo, Vortiger thanks  
 . þat so quit & sker had lat hym go.<sup>5</sup> 7936 God he is quit  
 Toward Walys þen fledde he ȝerne, of the Saxons,  
 ffer away byȝonde Seuerne; flees to Wales,  
 pere he dwelled & made soiour:  
 . Now hereþ how he þer made his tour. 7940 and builds a  
 tower there.

¶ De castello ffortygerny in Wallia.

- He dide sende after þe clergie,  
 þe wysest men of astronomye;  
 At hem alle, conseil he took, Vortiger asks  
 his wisest  
 astronomers  
 ' How he myghtym safliest lok<sup>6</sup> 7944 how he can  
 ' A-geyn his enemis for to fende, best defend  
 ' ȝyf host byseged hym as he wende.' himself against  
 þus redde hym þenne his conseillours: his enemies.  
 ' To make a strong castel wiþ tours 7948 They advise  
 ' þat non wyþ force mighte hit take, him to make a  
 ' Ne wyþ engyns hit perebrake;<sup>7</sup> strong castle,

<sup>1</sup> fore . . . suore.

<sup>2</sup> & estsex. (Essex, Wace, i. 348, l. 7474, from MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.)

<sup>3</sup> merched opon.

<sup>4</sup> haf þo cuntres þerfor to.

<sup>5-5</sup> Whan þe kyng sir Vortiger.  
 was laten go quyte & clere.

<sup>6</sup> sauely loke.

<sup>7</sup> non engine perbrake.



|                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| and fortify it.                                                                                                                                                                           | ' & when hit [was] <sup>1</sup> dight at his auys,<br>' To warnyschit <sup>2</sup> ageyn his enemis.'                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 7952               |
| Vortiger<br>chooses the hill<br>Mount de Tyre,<br>and sets masons<br>to work at his<br>castle.                                                                                            | In fele stedes þenne ches he<br>Where was best & most ese.<br>On an hil hight Mount de Tyre, <sup>3</sup><br>þer-on was his moste desire ;                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 7956               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                           | Masons brought he þenne <sup>4</sup> þer-tille,<br>Bygonne þat castelwerk o <sup>5</sup> þat hille ;<br>Morter þey made, & ston dide fet,<br>& spedde hem faste þer-on to set.                                                                                                                                                                   | 7960               |
| But all that<br>they build up<br>in the day, falls<br>down at night.                                                                                                                      | Alle þat þey made a day vpright,<br>ffallen was doun vpon þat nyght ;<br>Often þey les al þeyr iornes,<br>þat what [þei] <sup>6</sup> made, lay doun on knes.                                                                                                                                                                                    | 7964               |
| Vortiger sends<br>for his wise<br>men,<br>and asks them<br>why the work<br>falls,                                                                                                         | þat saw þe kyng hit misferde <sup>7</sup> so ;<br>þe maistres he dide eft com hym to,<br>& preide þem telle ' what þyng hit deres<br>' þat þe erþe þys werk ne beres ;                                                                                                                                                                           | [leaf 35.]<br>7968 |
| and what'll<br>make it stand.                                                                                                                                                             | ' & ȝif þey mighte, þey scholde fonde<br>' To wyte what myghte don hit stonde.'<br>þys wyse maistres þer bokes kest, <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                           | . Why þat werk ne wolde nought lest ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 7972               |
| They search<br>their books, and<br>answer<br>that if a child,<br>not begotten by<br>a man,<br>can be found<br>and killed,<br>the work will<br>stand on mortar<br>mixed with his<br>blood. | . þey fondyt þenne in þer musyng, <sup>9</sup><br>. A gret selcoup, & telde þe kyng :<br>" ȝyf ani man myghte a child fynde<br>" þat hadde no fader of mankynde,<br>" ȝyf he were taken & slayn sone, <sup>10</sup><br>" & menged his blod wyþ mortar & stone,<br>" Vpon þat mortar þat blod wer inne,<br>" þat werk men mygh[t] safly bygynne." | 7976<br>7980       |

<sup>1</sup> *whan it were.*<sup>2</sup> *warnissed.*<sup>3</sup> Mont de Rir, *Wace*, i. 349, l. 7510 ; ad Erir montem, *Galf. Mon.*, vi. 17.<sup>4</sup> *slie he brouht.* [lf. 47, bk., col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *began a kastett opon.*<sup>6</sup> *þat þei.*<sup>7</sup> *þe kyng sauh it misfare.*<sup>8</sup> *maistres lotes caste.* (ont deviné et sortoi, *Wace*, i. 351, l. 7529.)<sup>9</sup> *fond in þer lotes kestynge.*<sup>10</sup> *on one.*



- þe kyng als sone his sonde sent,  
 ffro toun to toun þorow Walys went;  
 In ilka contre, þorow euery<sup>1</sup> schire,  
 He hadde spyres for to spyre;  
 & in oper landes seeres  
 Sente þe kyng his messegers:  
 Two to-gyder, aboute þey zede,  
 þe bettere for to spirre & spede.  
 Two of þyse wente þorow Walys,  
 Of swylk a child zif þey herde tales.  
 So fer in to þe lond þey nam,  
 Atte last to Kermerdyn þey cam:  
 By-fore þe zates y þe way  
 Sawe þey manye childre play;  
 Bytwyxt to þer a stryf þey herde,  
 Of grete reprefs<sup>2</sup> ilk oper onswerde;  
 þey wyþ-stode, & gon abyde  
 . ffor to here þe children<sup>3</sup> chide.  
 . When wraþe bygynneþ, þen comeþ vmbreyd;<sup>4</sup>  
 . Al þat men wot, ys þen forþ seyð;  
 . So dide þey þat weren wroþe,—  
 Dynabus, Merlyn, (þus hight þey boþe,)—  
 ¶ Dynabus seyde, “ Let be, Merlyn!  
 . “ zyf þou me vmbreyde,<sup>5</sup> þe schame ys þyn.  
 “ Y am born of heyer kynde  
 “ þan any man of þe may fynde.  
 “ Hit aughte þe schame in al þy lyue  
 “ þat þou, Merlyn, wyþ me wilt stryue;  
 “ ffor y am come of kynges blod,  
 “ & þou, Merlyn, art nought so god;  
 “ þy kynde & myn ys no þyng euen,  
 “ Ne þy fader canstow nought neuene,  
 “ Ne neuere hym seye, ne hym ne knew,
- Vortiger sends  
 7984 spies all over  
 Wales and  
 other countries  
 7988 to find such a  
 child.  
 Two of the  
 spies see, at  
 Kermerdyn in  
 Wales,  
 7992  
 many children  
 playing.  
 Two children  
 7996 quarrel,  
 and as when  
 wrath rises, re-  
 proaches  
 follow,  
 so one child,  
 Dynabus, says  
 to the other,  
 Merlin,  
 8004 **Merlinus.**  
 “ I’m better  
 born than you!  
 8008  
 I come of  
 king’s blood!  
 8012 But nobody  
 knows who  
 your father  
 was,

<sup>1</sup> þorgh ilk a.<sup>2</sup> vpbreide. [leaf 48.]<sup>3</sup> childir.<sup>4</sup> wrath comes þan is vpbreid.<sup>5</sup> þou vpbreid.



|                                                                              |                                                                  |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                              | " Ne of what kynde þat he grew !                                 |      |
|                                                                              | " þer wot no man of wham þart come, <sup>1</sup>                 |      |
| You are no<br>man's son !"                                                   | " þer-fore y halde þe no mannes sone !"                          | 8016 |
| The messengers                                                               | þe messegers lystned, & þought                                   |      |
|                                                                              | þat swylk a child hadde þey sought ;                             |      |
| ask the citizens                                                             | þey spird <sup>2</sup> at men of þat cite,                       |      |
|                                                                              | þat Dynabus seyde, ȝyf hit myght be,                             | 8020 |
| about Merlin's<br>father.                                                    | þat ffader wystey hym haue <sup>3</sup> non.                     |      |
| They say they<br>don't know his<br>father, but they<br>do his mother,<br>who | þey of þe cite seyde ylkon,                                      |      |
|                                                                              | " His moder we knowe, þat hym bare ;                             |      |
|                                                                              | " Of his fader ne wyte we whare ;                                | 8024 |
|                                                                              | " Hys moder kynde alle we knawe, <sup>4</sup> [leaf 35, col. 2.] |      |
|                                                                              | " Bot his ffader we neuere sawe.                                 |      |
| is the daughter<br>of king Dy-<br>menice,                                    | " Scheo was þe kynges doughter, Dymenice, <sup>5</sup>           |      |
| and now a nun<br>at St. Peter's<br>church.                                   | " Of Walys he hadde half partye ;                                | 8028 |
| The messengers<br>take Merlin                                                | " Scho ys nonne of relygion                                      |      |
|                                                                              | " At Seint Petres kirke of þis toun."                            |      |
|                                                                              | þey ȝede to þe Meyre of Kermerdyn,                               |      |
|                                                                              | O þe kynges halue asked Merlyn                                   | 8032 |
|                                                                              | þat neuere ȝit no fader had ;                                    |      |
| and his mother                                                               | His moder also wyþ hym þey lad.                                  |      |
|                                                                              | þe Meyre þen wolde þem nought werne,                             |      |
|                                                                              | Bot sped þem on þer wey ful ȝerne.                               | 8036 |
| to Vortiger,                                                                 | þey come to þe kyng ffortyger,                                   |      |
|                                                                              | & he welcomed hem on faire maner :                               |      |
| and he asks her                                                              | ¶ " Dame," seyde þe kyng, " welcome be þou !                     |      |
|                                                                              | " Nedlike at þe y mot wyse how, Dicta                            |      |
| who begat<br>Merlin on her.                                                  | " Who þan gat þy sone Merlyne, Matr'is                           |      |
|                                                                              | " & on what manere was he þyne." Merlyny.                        |      |
|                                                                              | His moder stod a þrowe, & þought,                                |      |
|                                                                              | Er sche to þe kyng onswered ought.                               | 8044 |
|                                                                              | When scheo had stande <sup>6</sup> a litel wyght,                |      |
| She says "I<br>never saw or                                                  | Sche seyde, " by Marye bright, <sup>7</sup>                      |      |

<sup>1</sup> ne no man of þe may kone.<sup>2</sup> þe spired.<sup>3</sup> wist þei him haf.<sup>4</sup> knowe . . . sowe.<sup>5</sup> demetic.<sup>6</sup> standen. [leaf 48, col. 2.]<sup>7</sup> bi ihesu in Mari liht.



- " þat y ne sey, ne neuere knew,  
 " Hym þat þis child on me sew;<sup>1</sup> 8048 knew the be-  
 " Y ne wiste neuere, ne y ne herde, getter of my  
 " What maner wyght<sup>2</sup> wyþ me so ferde; boy.  
 " Bot þis þyng am y wel of graunt,  
 " Whon y was of elde auenaunt, 8052  
 " On com þer to my bed, y wyst, A being came  
 " & wyþ force me clipte<sup>3</sup> & kyst; to my bed,  
 " Als a man y hym felt, who felt like a  
 " & als a man he me welt, 8056 man,  
 " And als a man he spak to me, spoke like one,  
 " Bot what he was myght y nought se.  
 " So often to my bed he cam,  
 " & ofte me kyste, in armes nam, 8060 and kissed and  
 " & knew me als a man schold do, knew me as a  
 " Byfore ne syþen did neuere non so: man would.  
 " Al þus<sup>4</sup> conseyued y þys knaue, But I never  
 " & als y wiste, told y ȝow haue." saw him, though  
 8064 my child by I conceived  
 þen dide þe kyng a maister calle, him."  
 Magait<sup>5</sup> he highte, wysest of alle; Vortiger asks  
 He asked ȝyf hit myghte be so, his wisest man,  
 þat þyng þat scheo<sup>6</sup> telde þem to. Magait,  
 8068 this is possible. whether  
 " ȝe,"<sup>7</sup> seyde þe Maistere to þe kyng, Magait says  
 " Hit may bityde, swylka<sup>8</sup> þyng. "yes;  
 " ffor we fynde writen in our scrytes  
 " Of swylk manere of spyrites; 8072 there are spirits  
 " Bytwyخته þe mone & þe erþe þei wone— living between  
 " So telleþ vs our bokes þat we kone;— the moon and  
 " Som what tak þey of mannes kynde, earth,  
 " & mengyt wyþ angles, as we fynde; 8076 who have  
 " ffor þeyr wonyng ys in þe eyr, partly man's  
 " Vmwhile to þe erþe þey make repeir. nature, and  
 " Mykel skape do þey nought; partly angel's.

<sup>1</sup> *knaue on me sewe.*<sup>2</sup> *schap.*<sup>3</sup> *he me halsed.*<sup>4</sup> *þusgaie.*<sup>5</sup> *Magaunt.* (Malgant, *Wacc*, i. 356, l. 7623.)<sup>6</sup> *als scho.*<sup>7</sup> *ȝa.*<sup>8</sup> *of suilk a.*



|                                                                        |                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| When they take<br>man's nature,                                        | " Drecchyng by tymes haue <sup>1</sup> þey wrought. 8080   |
|                                                                        | " Mannes nature vmwhile þey take ;                         |
|                                                                        | " þat ys þer myght þey may so make,                        |
|                                                                        | " Whan hit ys tyme of here powere,                         |
| they are like<br>bodies here,                                          | " To haue lyknesse of bodyes here. <sup>2</sup> 8084       |
|                                                                        | " What tyme þey tak hit, wot noman                         |
|                                                                        | " Bot he þat al may wyte & kan.                            |
| and can do<br>women shame.                                             | " þise spyrites do women schame ; [leaf 35, back, col. 1.] |
| <i>Incubi</i> they are<br>called, or                                   | " Incuby / demones, ys cald þer name, 8088                 |
| <i>Fiends-in-Bed</i> .                                                 | " ffendes-in-bedde, as our bokes <sup>3</sup> sayn,        |
|                                                                        | " þat many woman han forlayn.                              |
| One of them<br>may have be-<br>got Merlin."                            | " On þis manere myghte Merlyn                              |
| Merlin bids<br>Vortiger tell<br>him plainly<br>why he sent for<br>him. | " Be geten & born, by <sup>4</sup> oure deuyn." 8092       |
|                                                                        | ¶ þen seide Merlyn : " Sire kyng ! þou has                 |
|                                                                        | " Sent after me ; sey me þy <sup>5</sup> cas ! Dicta       |
|                                                                        | " What þou wilt, sey me þy wille, Merlynny.                |
|                                                                        | " Wheþer hit is for god oþer ylle !"                       |
| Vortiger says<br>" To find out<br>from you why<br>my castle-work       | þen seid þe kyng, " þou schalt here ; 8097                 |
|                                                                        | " ffor þe y sente, at þe to lere.                          |
|                                                                        | " A castel y haue bygonne, <sup>6</sup>                    |
|                                                                        | " & lore þer-on þat y haue wonne ; <sup>7</sup> 8100       |
| set up in the<br>day,<br>falls down at<br>night.                       | " Al þat þey make þer on a day,                            |
|                                                                        | " O nyght alone <sup>8</sup> stand hit ne may ;            |
|                                                                        | " & eft when þey gynne <sup>9</sup> þe walles,             |
|                                                                        | " Eyþer hit synkes, or cleues, or falles ; 8104            |
|                                                                        | " & ffayn y wolde þe werk haue hasted,                     |
|                                                                        | " & mykel of myn þer-fore ys wasted.                       |
| My diviners                                                            | " Bot þus seide alle my dyuinours,                         |
|                                                                        | " þat þer ne schal stande wal ne tours 8108                |
| say your blood<br>must be shed<br>on the walls."                       | " Bot þy blod þer-on be schad,                             |
| Merlin answers,                                                        | " þow þat neuere no fader had."                            |
|                                                                        | þenne seide Merlyn, " þat wold nought God,                 |

<sup>1</sup> *poynes haf.* [leaf 48, back.]<sup>2</sup> *sere.*<sup>3</sup> *so þei.*<sup>4</sup> *in.*<sup>5</sup> *what.*<sup>6</sup> *begunnen.*<sup>7</sup> *& lost þerfor þat .I. haf wunnen.*<sup>8</sup> *holy.*<sup>9</sup> *begyn.*



- . " þat swylk a fals schold be bytrowd,<sup>1</sup> 8112 " God will not  
 " þat þorow þe mengynge of my blod have such a lie  
 " þy tour schold stande strong & god. believed.  
 " Y schal proue þem fals fur-sworn  
 " ȝyf þou brynge þem me byforn: 8116 Bring your  
 " þo þat on me lotes cast, diviners here,  
 " & seyde my blod myght makyt<sup>2</sup> fast, and I'll prove  
 " Y schal þem proue for lyeres olde, them old liars."  
 . " pylke<sup>3</sup> maistres þat þe so tolde." 8120  
 þe kyng dide þem come ilkone, Vortiger has up  
 Ageyn Merlyn hym self alone. the diviners,  
 " Maistres," he seyde, " what haue ȝe seyde, and Merlin says  
 " What lotes haue ȝe on me leyde, 8124 " What have to 'em:  
 " ffor þys þyng ys þus ffarand, you been saying  
 " þe kynges werk hit may nought stande? about this work  
 " Con ȝe sey non oper enchesoun<sup>4</sup> tumbling  
 " Whi þat þis castel þus falles down? 8128 down?  
 " & ȝyf ȝe can non oper sey If you know  
 . " Why þat hit falles som certeyn wey, nothing certain  
 " How couþe ȝe wyte þat þorow my blod about it,  
 " þis tour myght stande stark & god? 8132 how can you  
 " Seys what þyng ys on<sup>5</sup> þe ground tell that my  
 " þat hit ne may stande hol ne<sup>6</sup> sound, blood 'll make  
 " & seyþ what þyng hit helpe myght, it stand?  
 " þat þys castel myght stande vpright. 8136  
 " & ȝyf ȝe ne conne nought do hym wyte  
 " What þe fallyng may wyþ-syt,<sup>7</sup>  
 " þat ȝe haue seyde, hit ys bot fable, That is a mere  
 " þat my blod schold make hit stable! 8140 fable.  
 " Seys now hym al þe desturblaunce,<sup>8</sup> Tell the king  
 " & where-of cometh þat wonder chaunce!" now what is the  
 þise maistres of astronomie & of deuyne<sup>9</sup> wonder!"

<sup>1</sup> *suilk fals worde so suld be trod.*

<sup>2</sup> *mot.*      <sup>3</sup> *þo ilk.*

<sup>4</sup> *cheson.* [leaf 48, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *in.*

<sup>6</sup> *may not be hole &.*

<sup>7</sup> *with site.*

<sup>8</sup> *disturbance.*

<sup>9</sup> *þat said þat deuyne.*



The astro-  
nomers can't  
say a word.

Onswered<sup>1</sup> nought o word to Merlyn. 8144  
When Merlyn sey þey ne onswered<sup>1</sup> nought,  
Right to þe kyng he sayde his þought :

¶ Dicta Merliny ad Regem. [lf. 35, bk., col. 2.]

Merlin explains  
that at the  
foundation of  
the work is a  
running stream.

If they dig,  
they'll find it.  
Vortiger's  
miners do dig,  
and do find the  
water.

"Now you  
diviners," says  
Merlin,  
"tell us what  
wonder is in  
this stream !"

They can't  
answer a word.

Merlin says,  
"Scoop out the  
water, and turn  
the bourne."

This is done.

"Syre kyng," he saidē, "gyf now entent !"<sup>2</sup>  
"By-neþe þe erþe, atte ffundement, 8148  
"Is a water rennyng dep,<sup>3</sup>  
"þat makes þy werk slyden o slep.<sup>4</sup>  
" & serteyn þer-of [þat] þou be,  
"Do graue þe erþe al vp, & se." 8152  
þe kyng dide come mynours<sup>5</sup> ynowe,  
þat þe erþe vp caste & drowe.  
As Merlyn seyde, þe water þey fond.  
"ze maistres," seid Merlyn, "of þys lond, 8156  
"zyf ze con telle vs now here  
"What merueille ys in þys ryuere,  
"Seyþ now þe righte certeynete,  
"ze þat diuined þe dep of me !" 8160  
þe maistres alle stille þey stod,  
þey seyden neyþer yuel<sup>6</sup> ne god.  
þen to-ward þe kyng Merlyn gan turne :  
"Do scope þis water, & turn þe borne."<sup>7</sup> 8164  
"Sykes do ze graue & groupe,<sup>8</sup>  
"þe water þer-inne<sup>9</sup> men schal scoupe."  
þe kyng dide come folk ynowe,  
þat þe water wip scopes vp drowe. 8168

<sup>1</sup> *ansuerd . . . ansurd.*

<sup>2</sup> *þi tent.*

<sup>3</sup> *rynnand depe.*

<sup>4</sup> *to slide o slepe.* (Par quoi ta  
tor en terre font, *Wace*, i. 359, l.  
7694.)

<sup>5</sup> *grauers.*

<sup>6</sup> *seid noiþer itt.*

<sup>7</sup> *burne.* [leaf 49.]

<sup>8</sup> *MS. groupes. P. groupe.*

<sup>9</sup> *in þam.*



¶ *De diuersitate duorum Draconum.*

|                                                           |      |                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------------|
| When þe water was oute clene,                             |      |                   |
| Merlyn schewed what hit wold mene :                       |      | Then says         |
| He telde þe folk alle atones,                             |      | Merlin,           |
| þat " y þe ground leye two hole <sup>1</sup> stones ;     | 8172 | " Two stones      |
| " By-twyrte þe stones were to dragons,                    |      | are there ;       |
| " þat dide hym make al þe <sup>2</sup> somons.            |      | and betwixt       |
| " Do þat þo stones weren a twynne,                        |      | them, two         |
| " þe dragons schul ȝe fynde wyþynne." <sup>3</sup>        | 8176 | dragons.          |
| þey brast þe stones vp al so tyt,                         |      | Break the         |
| & founde a red dragon & a whyt. <sup>4</sup>              |      | stones, and       |
| þis rede dragon was grym to se ;                          |      | you'll find the   |
| ffel to fyghte þen semed he ;                             | 8180 | dragons."         |
| þe white was nought so grym of <sup>5</sup> sight,        |      | The people do     |
| Ne so fel semyng <sup>6</sup> to fyght.                   |      | so: a red         |
| " Sire kyng," seid Merlyn, " to me þou herk !             |      | dragon, grim      |
| " þyse two dragons fordede þy werk !                      | 8184 | and fell ;        |
| " ffor whan þy werk on heyght[e] larged,                  |      | and a white       |
| " þen schok þe ground, <sup>7</sup> & þeym ouer charged ; |      | not so fell.      |
| " þen meued þey hem, þe water al quok,                    |      | " These two       |
| " & þe werk abouen al schok ; <sup>8</sup>                | 8188 | dragons upset     |
| " Of þat y seyde, nought y ne ley." <sup>9</sup>          |      | your work,"       |
| Vp in to þe eyr þe dragons þen fley,                      |      | says Merlin,      |
| & foughte so þat hit was selcouþ ;                        |      | " by moving       |
| fflaumes as fyr fley fro <sup>10</sup> þer mouþ.          | 8192 | when it gets      |
| Al þe folk seide comunly,                                 |      | heavy on          |
| þey hoped þe rede schold haue þe maistri.                 |      | them."            |
| When þey hadde longe to-gyder smyten,                     |      | The dragons       |
| Spatled, spouted, belewed, <sup>11</sup> & byten,         | 8196 | then fly into the |
|                                                           |      | air, and fight    |
|                                                           |      | fiercely          |

<sup>1</sup> *tuo holle.* [leaf 49.] (hole-y, Fr. *chaves.* Wace, i. 360, l. 7712.)

<sup>2</sup> *þis.*

<sup>3</sup> *þer Inne.*

<sup>4</sup> The explanation and dragon-fight are not in Geoffrey of Monmouth.

<sup>5</sup> *grimly in.*

<sup>6</sup> *semand.*

<sup>7</sup> *þe grounde satled.*

<sup>8</sup> *to schoke.*

<sup>9</sup> *say nouht .I. leih.*

<sup>10</sup> *of fire com of.*

<sup>11</sup> *spouted sperkes bolned.*



|                                                                             |                                                                                                                 |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                             | . Wyppying wyþ wenges, ouer-wepen <sup>1</sup> & went,                                                          |      |
|                                                                             | . Cracchyng wiþ clawes, rubbed, & brent; <sup>2</sup>                                                           |      |
| all that day and<br>night.                                                  | . þe bataille lasted day & nyght,                                                                               |      |
|                                                                             | . Vntil þat oþer day was lyght.                                                                                 | 8200 |
|                                                                             | . þe folk wondred þat þe white dragoun                                                                          |      |
|                                                                             | . To þe rede had any foysoun.                                                                                   |      |
| At last, the<br>white dragon<br>burns up the<br>red one,                    | . At þe ende, þe white a fflaume out cast, [leaf 36.]                                                           |      |
|                                                                             | . þat þe rede bolnede & brast.                                                                                  | 8204 |
|                                                                             | . When he was ded, þe rede dragoun,                                                                             |      |
|                                                                             | . þe white zede & leyde hym doun;                                                                               |      |
| and dies him-<br>self three days<br>after.                                  | . þre daye þen lyued he, & na mo,                                                                               |      |
|                                                                             | . þe ferþe he deyde, y trowe, for wo.                                                                           | 8208 |
| Vortiger asks<br>Merlin the<br>meaning of this.                             | ¶ Vortyger sey þanne þis chaunce;<br>He askede Merlyn þe signifiunce,<br>& preyed hym telle what hit wild mene, |      |
|                                                                             | . Wheþer hit tokned ioie or tene.                                                                               | 8212 |
| Merlin then<br>speaks pro-<br>phecies<br>that are in the<br>books of Blase, | þenne seyde Merlyn many thynges,<br>What y þis lond schuld tide of kynges,                                      |      |
|                                                                             | . þat are in Blase bokes write, <sup>3</sup> —                                                                  |      |
|                                                                             | . þey þat hauyt, mowe hit wyte, <sup>4</sup> —                                                                  | 8216 |
| Tolomer, and<br>Amytayn,                                                    | . And in Tolomer & sire Amytayn; <sup>5</sup>                                                                   |      |
|                                                                             | . pyse hadde Merlynnes bokes playn,                                                                             |      |
| who wrote<br>them, and were<br>his masters.                                 | . ffor þyse þre write his prophecyes,                                                                           |      |
|                                                                             | . And were his maistres in ser <sup>6</sup> partyes.                                                            | 8220 |
|                                                                             | . Som men haue þem mykel in hande,                                                                              |      |
|                                                                             | . þat con nought þem wel vndestande.                                                                            |      |
| But I have no<br>wit to undo the<br>knots that<br>Merlin knit.              | Y sey for me, y naue no wyt<br>To open þe knottes þat Merlyn knyht.                                             | 8224 |
|                                                                             | . Men may sey more þan he haþ seyde,                                                                            |      |

<sup>1</sup> *wipped . . . ouerwarpen.*<sup>2</sup> *kracchid with clawes rombed & rent.*<sup>3</sup> See Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Liber septimus, qui est de Prophetiis Merlini." Wace leaves it out too:

Ne voil son livre tranlater,

Quant jo n'elsai entrepréter:

Nule rien dire ne volroie

Qu'issi ne fu com jo diroie.

Wace, i. 361, ll. 7733-6.

<sup>4</sup> *þo þat it haf þei it witen.*<sup>5</sup> (?) *Auntayn.*<sup>6</sup> *were maistres at sere.*



|                                         |      |
|-----------------------------------------|------|
| . þat noþyng þer-to may be leyð.        |      |
| . Merlyn spak on swylk a manere,        |      |
| . þat til hit be gon, non may hit lere. | 8228 |

He spoke so,  
that till the  
thing happened,  
no body knew  
it.

¶ *De interpretacione draconum per Merlynnum.*

|                                                                                                 |      |                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| þe kyng held Merlyn in mikel pris,<br>ffor his seynge was god & wys.                            |      | Vortiger                                                                          |
| . (In ffortiger tyme, men hit <sup>1</sup> told,<br>He was þat tyme bot twolf ȝer old.)         | 8232 |                                                                                   |
| þe kyng bisoughtym þat he wold seye<br>What manere deþ þat he schold deye. <sup>2</sup>         |      | asks Merlin<br>how he (the<br>king) shall die.<br>Merlin says,                    |
| . " Sire kyng, to wyte hastow <sup>3</sup> desir:<br>" Al way war þe <sup>4</sup> wel fro fyr   | 8236 | " Beware of<br>fire from Con-<br>stant's children,<br>who will soon<br>land here. |
| " ffro Constantes childre, <sup>5</sup> þat ar comand,<br>" þat sone schul aryuen here on land. |      | You are the red<br>dragon,                                                        |
| . " þou signefiest <sup>6</sup> þe rede dragoun,<br>" þat ffader & broþer slowe wyþ tresoun ;   | 8240 | You slew their<br>father and<br>brother.                                          |
| . " & hit menes, þer bataille strong,<br>" þat þou hast halde <sup>7</sup> þer lond wyþ wrong.  |      |                                                                                   |
| . " þe white dragon ys syngnefaunce<br>" þat þey schul take of þe vengauce :                    | 8244 | They are the<br>white dragon,<br>and shall take<br>vengeance on<br>you.           |
| " fful yuel þou slowe þer ffader & broþer, <sup>8</sup><br>" & madest þe kyng, þat was anoþer.  |      |                                                                                   |
| " þe þridde combraunce þat ȝit þe mones,<br>" þou receyuedest þe Payens Saxones.                | 8248 |                                                                                   |
| " On alle halue comes þy wo :                                                                   |      |                                                                                   |
| " þe Saxoyns wyl waite þe to slo ;                                                              |      | The Saxons<br>will try to kill<br>you too.                                        |
| " I þat oþer halue þe eyres schul come,<br>" & aske þer lond of þe þorow dome ;                 | 8252 | Constant's heirs                                                                  |

<sup>1</sup> *Merlin men.*  
<sup>2</sup> *dede he suld dye.*  
<sup>3</sup> *haues þou.*  
<sup>4</sup> *war þe wer þe.* (Garde-toi, dist-  
il, garde-toi, *Wace*, i. 361, l. 7742.)  
<sup>5</sup> *Constant Childir.*

<sup>6</sup> *signifise.*  
<sup>7</sup> *þou haues.*  
<sup>8</sup> *An euell þou didis þou slou þer  
broþer.* (The second scribe began  
again in P. at line 8229.)



- will land to-morrow at Totness, and march after you.
- Flee at once to your best hold.
- Aurelius shall reign first, but only a short time.
- Then Uther shall succeed,
- and after him his son (Arthur) from Cornwall,
- who shall destroy all his enemies."
- Vortiger starts at once.
- . " þey ar now saylynge<sup>1</sup> in þe se ;  
 " Away by tyme y rede þow fle.  
 . " þey schul<sup>2</sup> aryue vp at Toteneys  
 . " To morn, wyþ hors & wyþ harneys ; 8256  
 . " To renne on þe [þey] schul<sup>2</sup> þem rengen ; [lf.36, cl.2.]  
 . " ffader & broþer þey schul<sup>2</sup> þan venge.  
 . " þer þou wenst best recet<sup>3</sup> to haue,  
 . " ffele now faste,<sup>4</sup> þy self to saue. 8260  
 . " ȝyt schal y warne þe of þys þynge,  
 " Aurelius schal<sup>2</sup> first be kyng ;  
 " & he schal<sup>2</sup> lyue nought bot a stounde ;  
 " þorow poyson schal<sup>2</sup> he be brought to grounde.  
 " Vter, his broþer, after hym schal<sup>2</sup> be 8265  
 " Kyng, & regne als dide he.  
 " Vter sone schal com fro Cornewaille,  
 " As a fyghtyng bor<sup>5</sup> in bataille ; 8268  
 " þe traiturs of þyne þat he may fynde,  
 " He schal furdo, and al þer kynde ;  
 " Of prowesse he schal haue þe pris,  
 " & destruye alle his enemis." 8272  
 Merlyn stynte,<sup>6</sup> & spak namore.  
 þen fforteger tok his<sup>7</sup> leue þore ;  
 ffo[r] þes tydynges dwelt he<sup>8</sup> nought,  
 . On Merlyn's wordes was al his þought. 8276

### ¶ Hic de Aurelyo Rege.

- Next day, Aurelius, Uther, and their host, land at Totness,
- þat oþer day, as Merlyn seyde,  
 Totenesse was vmbyleyd<sup>9</sup>  
 Wyþ schipes wyþ þe children<sup>10</sup> host,  
 . & spred aboute by al þe cost. 8280

<sup>1</sup> sailand. [leaf 49, back.]

<sup>2</sup> sall.

<sup>3</sup> wote best refute.

<sup>4</sup> suyth.

<sup>5</sup> als a feihtand bore.

<sup>6</sup> left.

<sup>7</sup> at Vortiger he toke. (Et Vortiger d'iloc torna, Wace, i. 363, l. 7778.)

<sup>8</sup> ne Vortiger duellid.

<sup>9</sup> be layd.

<sup>10</sup> childir.



- Bretons þat herde, & weren blyþe;  
 . þey gadered þem, & þyder swyþe;  
 þo þat were a-sondred ful<sup>1</sup> wyde,  
 Com to Toteneys on ilka syde;  
 . Lordes riden, & fotmen ran,  
 . Bretons were bliþe ilka man.  
 Hengist byforn had don hem skulke  
 In wodes, in hilles, to crepe in hulke,<sup>2</sup>  
 & had ney slayn al þer barons  
 Wyþ þe sexes of þe Saxons.<sup>3</sup>  
 . þen were þey bolde of þe cominge;  
 . þey tok Aurelius, & made hym kyng.  
 . Wyþ þe Bretons was blisse ynough,<sup>4</sup>  
 . & þretten Hengist to wake hys wough.<sup>5</sup>  
 ¶ þys tidying com to ffortiger,  
 . þat Aurelius & sire Vter  
 . Were comen, & hadde seysed þe lond,  
 . þeym to venge, ȝyf þey hym fond.  
 ffor þo tydynges & þo tales  
 He fledde & warnyschet hem<sup>6</sup> in Wales;—  
 Genoyre hight þe castel name,  
 . (I not ȝyf hit haue ȝit þe same;)  
 þe hil hight Cloart, þer men hit kennes,  
 & byside þe water of Weye<sup>7</sup> rennes;  
 þe contre þat hit standes yn,  
 þe name þer-of hight Dergryn;<sup>8</sup>—  
 þider gadered his folk & þaire vitaille,  
 & warnyschet<sup>9</sup> hem, ȝyf ought myght vaille.  
 ¶ þe ȝonge kyng & his broþer,  
 . Wyþ mania Breton, on & oþer,  
 . & folk wyþ hym þat he brought,
- and all the  
 Britons in great  
 joy resort to  
 them.
- 8284
- Till then,  
 Hengist has  
 made the Bri-  
 tons skulk in  
 woods and  
 corners:
- 8288
- 8292
- now they'll  
 wake his woe[?]  
 [See l. 8558.]  
 Vortiger hears  
 of this,
- 8296
- and flees to his  
 castle Genoyre,  
 in Wales,
- 8301
- on the hill  
 Cloart,  
 near the Wye,
- 8304
- in Dergryn,  
 and garrisons  
 it.
- 8309
- Aurelius and  
 Uther,  
 with their Bri-  
 tons,
- De Morte  
 ffortygerny.**

<sup>1</sup> or *sundird*.

<sup>2</sup> to *krepe* & *hulk*.

<sup>3</sup> Wace, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.  
 De Lincy's No. 27 has 'Des castiax  
 ot la signorie,' Wace, i. 364, l.  
 7790.)

<sup>4</sup> *eneughe*. [leaf 49, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *wakin his wough*.

<sup>6</sup> *wanisid him*.

<sup>7</sup> *be side wye a water þat*.

<sup>8</sup> *Hergrin*.

<sup>9</sup> *warnisid it*.



march to Wales  
and besiege  
Vortiger.

Eldok the Earl  
of Gloucester  
(who escaped  
from the  
slaughter at  
Ambresbury,  
p. 278) is in the  
host,  
and Aurelius  
appeals to him

(for Constant's  
gifts to him,

and the Saxons'  
treachery,) to  
avenge Con-  
stant's death.

They shout "to  
arms,"

fill up the  
castle ditch  
with brush-

In Walys fforteger þey sought. 8312  
þey byseced straite his castel;<sup>1</sup> [leaf 38, back, col. 1.]  
ffele arewes þey schotten, & quarel<sup>2</sup>  
þey caste þer-to, on manie a gate,  
ffor þey had þer-to ful gret hate. 8316  
I þe ost was þe erl<sup>3</sup> of Gloucestre,—  
In Walys he knew al þe estre,—  
Eldok he highte, man of honour,  
. And hardy knyght & god werroure. 8320  
þe kyng Aurelius asked hym red  
. ffor to venge his fader ded,  
& seyde, "Sire Erl,<sup>3</sup> þou furgetest ylk del  
" þat my fader feffed þe wel, 8324  
" & gaf þe armes, & made þe knyght;  
" Syþen my broþer, in al his myght;  
" & ȝif þou louedest<sup>4</sup> hym feyþfully,  
" Help me to venge his enemy! 8328  
" Let now no god wille be wane,  
" Bot help to venge my fader bane!  
⁵. " þenk o þe Payens þat sexes drow,  
" & at þe Parlement þe lordes slow!"<sup>5</sup> 8332  
When Eldok herde, he made swilk mone,  
þey cried "as<sup>6</sup> armes" euerylkone,  
. To gyue<sup>7</sup> assaut to þem wyþynne;  
. Bot þe castel was yuel<sup>8</sup> to wyne. 8336  
þey comaunded to al men lyk,<sup>9</sup>  
Wip brusch to come,<sup>10</sup> & fyllen þe dyk.  
When hit was ful, fir þey set,

<sup>1</sup> besegid his castell Genoie.

<sup>2</sup> & foudit ȝif þei might it peire.

<sup>3</sup> erell (still in the second scribe's hand).

<sup>4</sup> louedis.

<sup>5-5</sup> & þink hov he ȝe paiens droughe

þat Hengist at þe parlement slouh.

(leaf 50, where the first scribe begins again.)

<sup>6</sup> Has.

<sup>7</sup> mak.

<sup>8</sup> itt.

<sup>9</sup> þat att olike.

<sup>10</sup> brusche suld com.



- . & on a lowe at ones hit set ;  
 þe lowe was mikel, & vp-ward stey,  
 So þat hit in to þe castel fley,  
 & vp in to þe tour hit went,  
 þat alle þe houses aboute brent ;  
 Castel, houses, wyþ al þer atyr,  
 . Man & best, al was on fyr ;  
 . Til al was brent, woldit nought lynne.<sup>1</sup>  
 þe kyng hym self was brent þer-ynne,  
 & alle his folk euerylkone,  
 . Brente to deþe, body & bone.  
 . Of ilka traytour swilk ys þe ende !  
 . Last of his lyue wyþ wo schal<sup>2</sup> wende !  
 . Of a traitour ys al of spoken ;  
 . Of Hengist wolde þe kyng be wroken.

8340 wood, and set  
 fire to it.  
 The flames  
 mount up,

8344 and burn all  
 the castle,  
 house, man,  
 beast, and king  
 Vortiger and all  
 his folk, to  
 8348 death.

So end traitors!

8352

When Aurelius & sire Vter

Were venged on sire ffortyger,

Al þe land, ouer al aboute,

Wyþ loue he did hit til hym loute.

. Whan he wyste þat al þe land

. Was til his wille bowand,

. He seide, ' he wolde no lenger abide ;

' Agayn þe Saxons wold he ryde,

' Deliuere þe land of þem al klene ;

. ' þey han vs do ful<sup>3</sup> mykel tene.'

Hengist herde þo tydynges seye,

Toward Scotland he nam<sup>4</sup> his weye ;

þe soup contre al he fursok,

& ouer Humber þe way he tok ;

Of<sup>5</sup> Scottes & of Peytes þere

He hoped of help, ȝyf nede we[re].

þe kyng hym spedde,<sup>6</sup> when he hit wiste,

8356

All the land  
 submits lov-  
 ingly to Au-  
 relius,

8360

and he resolves

8364 to drive the  
 Saxons clean  
 out of it.

Hengist goes  
 to Scotland,

8368

in hope to get  
 help of the  
 Scots and Picts.  
 Aurelius

<sup>1</sup> wald it not blynnē.

<sup>2</sup> itt satt.

<sup>3</sup> haf vs wrouht.

<sup>4</sup> toke.

<sup>5</sup> at.

<sup>6</sup> spied.



follows him,  
[lf. 36, bk., col. 2.]

and finds the  
whole country,  
churches and  
all, destroyed  
by the Saxons.

Aurelius vows  
to restore it if  
he lives.

Hengist fears,  
and doesn't  
know which  
way to turn.

But, as he *must*  
fight, he calls  
his men  
together, and  
says,  
"These Britons

will give us  
battle ;

but if we stand  
well, they'll  
soon flee.  
You know  
what Britons  
are :

Toward þe northe after Hengyste. 8372

When Bretons herde þe kyng passed Humbre,  
So fele to hym come, men myghtem nowt  
noumbre.

Towards þe northe al ways[te] þey<sup>1</sup> fonde,  
Were þere non left myght tyle þe londe, 8376

Casteles broken, tounes<sup>2</sup> brent,  
Holy kirke was broke & schent ;  
pyse Payens Saxoyns al had reft.

. þen sey þe kyng nought waster<sup>3</sup> left : 8380

Al he highte to restore,

ʒyf he myght lyue, & eft come<sup>4</sup> þore,

¶ Whan Hengist wyste þat<sup>5</sup> þe kyng cam,  
. ffor drede he ne wyste what<sup>6</sup> wey he nam ;  
. ffor to fle myght hit nought vaille, 8385

Bot ned he mest byde<sup>7</sup> bataille.

He calde his felawes,<sup>8</sup> & bad þem rest,  
& seide, "felawes, what ys þe best ? 8388

. " þis Bretons folewe vs faste & ney ;

. " Vs by-houes be queynte & sley.

. " In bataille now þey<sup>9</sup> wil vs frayst,  
. " Lok þat ʒe be trewe & traist ; 8392

" Dredeþ nought þer gret compaignye ;

. " ʒyf we wel stande, sone schul þey flye.

" Wel wot ʒe what Bretons are ;

. " þey feynte ful sone ʒyf non þem spare. 8396

" Standeþ styf & truely<sup>10</sup> ageyn,

" We schul þen of hem make feldes pleyn.<sup>11</sup>

" Wyþ fewe, we han seyn many<sup>12</sup> tyme,

<sup>1</sup> waste he. [leaf 50, col. 2.] (Mult  
trova li rois pais gaste, Wace, i.  
368, l. 7867.)

<sup>2</sup> MS. þey breken tounes þey. P.  
wisely leaves out the two þeys.

<sup>3</sup> was there. P. has was only.

<sup>4</sup> if he had life eft to com.

<sup>5</sup> herd.

<sup>6</sup> for him he wist þe.

<sup>7</sup> nede bord him stand to.

<sup>8</sup> called his folk.

<sup>9</sup> we.

<sup>10</sup> standes stifly a þrow.

<sup>11</sup> þan gif þei bak & þe felde att  
playn.

<sup>12</sup> with lititt folk many a.



- " We haue þeym sondred & smyten in swyme.  
 " Tak ȝe non hede<sup>1</sup> of þeyr grete host, 8401 nothing but  
 " ffor wel ȝe wot þei ar bot bost, brag and feeble  
 " & fals folk, wyþ feble heuede; polls!  
 " ffor þem our wed schal nought be leued. 8404 *Nota.*  
 " He ys a child þat hem ledes! They're led by  
 " He can nought ȝit on swylk[e] dedes!<sup>2</sup> a child,  
 " & we ar noble werreours and we are  
 " þat han be<sup>3</sup> proued in many stours! 8408 proved war-  
 " Standes now wel ageyn ȝour fo! riors.  
 " Raunsom for vs non may go. Stand well,  
 " Defende oure lyues, best is to chese, and defend  
 " Now al to wyne or al to lese!" 8412 your lives! It's  
 When Hengist had confortd hem þus, 'win all, or lose  
 þey armed þeym alle att o frusch,<sup>4</sup> all' with us!"  
 & riden fol softe & semly Hengist's men  
 Ageyn þe Bretons wyþouten cri. 8416 arm, and ad-  
 þey hoped vnarmed þe Bretons mete, vance quietly,  
 & al vnwarned on þem schete; hoping to catch  
 Bot þe Bretons, ilka conrey, the Britons un-  
 Were as wel armed as þey; 8420 armed.  
 þey hadden of þe Payens drede, But the Britons  
 Night & day armed þey ȝede. are well armed,  
 þe kyng herde seye þey come þat syde, and Aurelius  
 And to bataille þey wolde abide; 8424  
 A feld he ches, fair & brod, chooses a broad  
 He wente þyder, & þere abod. plain to fight  
 in.

### De Bello inter Aurelium Regem & Hengystum.

- þre hundred<sup>5</sup> knyghtes of his meyne  
 þat wyþ hym comen ouer þe se, 8428  
 Alle doughty knyghte, fro ferne he fet.<sup>6</sup> [leaf 37.]

<sup>1</sup> *Mak ȝe no force.*

<sup>2</sup> *of suilk dedis.*

<sup>3</sup> *& has ben.*

<sup>4</sup> *at a frusse.*

<sup>5</sup> *þousand.* [leaf 50, back.] (mil,  
Wace, i. 370, l. 7915.)

<sup>6</sup> *ferne fette.*



He sets two  
companies of  
Welshmen to  
stop the pagans  
taking to the  
hills and woods,

and keeps the  
stalwartest men  
in his own line.

Aurelius lets  
his trusty kins-  
men bear his  
banner.

Earl Eldok  
hopes he may  
meet Hengist,  
and repay him  
for his treacher-  
ous slaughter  
of the Britons  
at Ambresbury.

. Boþe batailles þen sone wer set;<sup>1</sup>  
Of þe Walsche he tok to<sup>2</sup> companies,  
. Papes to waite, & stretes, & styas, 8432  
þat Payens schulde for no nede  
þe hylles take, ȝyf þeym fel drede.  
& þe wodes he dide so loke  
. Al so wel þat non þem toke, 8436  
þat ȝyf ony þider drowe,  
þe Walsche men sone þem slowe,  
þe star-worþest<sup>3</sup> to fyght & fende,  
& his owen bataille þen schulde<sup>4</sup> be hende. 8440

When his batailles<sup>5</sup> wer set & dight,  
Renged & redy for<sup>6</sup> to fyght,  
þe men of kuythe<sup>7</sup> þat he wel knewe,  
þat he wyste were gode<sup>8</sup> & trewe, 8444  
þem dide he bere his baner,  
& fro þo was he nought fer;  
Sire Eldok was euere hym by,  
& oþer barons also were ney. 8448  
“ Lord,” seide Eldok, “ had y þat grace,  
“ Hengist for to mete in place!  
“ Wel oughte<sup>9</sup> me þe treson mene  
“ þat on þe playne ȝit is wel sene: 8452  
“ þe flour of al þis Emþyre  
“ Wer slayn bysydes Ambresbyre<sup>10</sup>  
“ þe firste day of clene May.  
“ Wyþ mikel wo<sup>11</sup> y scaped away; 8456  
“ Vnepes to Gloucestre y wan,<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> bi þe to side aȝt were sette.  
<sup>2</sup> toke tuo.  
<sup>3</sup> stalworthest.  
<sup>4</sup> his awen bataile suld.  
<sup>5</sup> barons.  
<sup>6</sup> renged aȝt redi to.  
<sup>7</sup> kith. (Od ses homes fu naturax,  
Wace, i. 370, l. 7931.)

<sup>8</sup> treist.  
<sup>9</sup> Wele burd. (mene = A.-Sax.  
mænan, mind, remember, Bosworth.)  
<sup>10</sup> ambirschire.  
<sup>11</sup> with mykitt.  
<sup>12</sup> cam.



- "Elles had we be<sup>1</sup> slayn, ilkaman."  
 Als Sire Eldok þus mente his mone,  
 Com Hengist & his men ylkone, 8460 Hengist comes  
 & vmbyleyden al þe feld, with his host,  
 . Redy armed wyþ spere<sup>2</sup> & scheld.  
 Sone after þat<sup>4</sup> þey were comen,  
 þe bataille bytwyhte þem was<sup>3</sup> nomen. 8464 and a battle to  
 . Boþe partys ful felly<sup>5</sup> hated, the death  
 þe sonner to-gedere þey þem raped:<sup>6</sup> begins ;  
 þer myghte men se strokes set  
 . Bytwyxt enemis þat scharply<sup>7</sup> met ; 8468  
<sup>8</sup> [sore he smote, þat smerte couht \* smyte ; [\* So in MS.]  
 bitterly bote, þat best myght bite ;  
 Ilkone peyned oþer to slo,  
 for euerilkone was oþer[es] fo ;] <sup>8</sup> 8472  
 . Mercy was non on neyþer partye,  
 . Ne no raunsom, bot al schold deye. no mercy is  
 porow plate & hauberk þe spere out<sup>9</sup> brast ; given, or ran-  
 Ilkon oþer to dep doun cast ; 8476 som taken.  
 þat doun was<sup>10</sup> cast, þem lye most<sup>11</sup> nede,  
 ffor hors & man vpon þem zede.  
 . fful wel foughte þe Payen men,  
 . & mykel better þan dide<sup>12</sup> Cristen ; 8480 The Pagans  
 . Bot sone after, þer force gan falle.<sup>13</sup> fight well at  
 Vpon þer Godes þen cried þey alle ; first, but soon  
 þe Crysten cried [for] help to Crist fail.  
 . A-gayn þe Payenes<sup>14</sup> force Hengist. 8484 The Christians  
 þe Cristenmen þeir bataille brak ; call on Christ,  
 When þey wer sondred, þey turd þe<sup>15</sup> bak ; and the Pagans  
 break, and flee.

<sup>1</sup> þat þei were. [lf. 50, bk., col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> helm. <sup>3</sup> nouht full long sen.<sup>4</sup> was with þam.<sup>5</sup> parties felonly.<sup>6</sup> abated. <sup>7</sup> smertli.<sup>8-8</sup> From the Petyt MS.<sup>9</sup> þorgh schelde & hauberk launces.<sup>10</sup> MS. wast.<sup>11</sup> was cast die suld.<sup>12</sup> mykelt bettere þe. (Et assés mius  
li Crestien, Wace, i. 372, l. 7964.)<sup>13</sup> þe paien force fast gan falle.<sup>14</sup> paien.<sup>15</sup> & sondred þam þat þei gaf.[? tur the base of tur-n. See tur-de  
. 8509.]



- . ffele were slayn als þey fledde,  
 . & fleyng þey sparplyed<sup>1</sup> & spredde. 8488  
 Hengist takes  
 refuge in  
 Coningsburgh  
 castle,  
 whither Au-  
 relius  
 pursues him.  
 When Hengist saw his folk fleand,  
 & his force faille, & myght nowt stande,  
 He fley<sup>2</sup> to þe castel of Conyngesburgh,  
 ffor he wende saued haf ben þer-þorough. 8492  
 þat herde þe kyng, & after 3erne, [leaf 37, col. 2.]  
 . þe entre of þe castel him for to<sup>3</sup> werne,  
 & cried þen faste, "folewe we to<sup>4</sup> slo!  
 . ffor þyse ar þey þat dide vs<sup>5</sup> wo." 8496
- But Hengist  
 does not like  
 being in a  
 castle;  
 and resolves to  
 fight in the  
 open.  
 When Hengist wiste þe kyng hym sywed,<sup>6</sup>  
 . þorow castel þen wold he nought be rescowed:  
 . Hit was bot pyne; wel hadde he herd,  
 . Wypoute socour in castel be sperd; 8500  
 Leuere hym were holde hym wypoute;  
 . þat held he betere, & lasse<sup>7</sup> doute,  
 þan yn castel be closed yn,  
 ffor he nyste ho hym out schude wyn.<sup>8</sup> 8504  
 . 3it þoughtym best myght hym<sup>9</sup> a-uaille,  
 . To relye his folk, & gyue<sup>10</sup> bataille.  
 þen gedred he his folk þat weren o stray,  
 ffor he wolde 3it eft<sup>11</sup> make asay. 8508  
 þe Payens to bataille turde agayn  
 fful egrely, boþe knyght & swayn,  
 Agayn þe Cristen ful hardyly,  
 & ascryed þem þanne wyþ a gret cry.<sup>12</sup> 8512  
 At þat comyng<sup>13</sup> þe Cristen les,  
 So [s]toutly<sup>14</sup> þe Payens on þem gan pres:  
 . Grysly<sup>15</sup> & grym was hit to se,
- He rallies his  
 men;  
 they turn  
 eagerly to  
 battle,  
 and at first  
 beat the Chris-  
 tians,

<sup>1</sup> fleand þei sparpled.<sup>2</sup> þei fleh.<sup>3</sup> to entre þe kastell he wald him.<sup>4</sup> He cried & said folow fast &.<sup>5</sup> 3ow.<sup>6</sup> herd þe kyng him sued.<sup>7</sup> an enture him he was in. [leaf 51.]<sup>8</sup> he ne wist who suld him out wyne.<sup>9</sup> he sauh no þing mygh[t] more.<sup>10</sup> þan for to stand to.<sup>11</sup> & said he suld 3it.<sup>12</sup> & discried þam with a cri.<sup>13</sup> cryng.<sup>14</sup> stifly.<sup>15</sup> greuous.



- . Syn neyþer partye wold blyþely<sup>1</sup> fle. 8516  
 . In auenture þen was þe kynges syde,  
 . Bot his þre hundred knyghtes<sup>2</sup> holpe wel þat tyde  
 þat comen out of þe Lytel Bretayn;  
 . ffor, þis Paiens þey feld doun playn;<sup>3</sup> 8520  
 . Vpon þe Payens þey trauersed þe feld,  
 & þe kynges side wel vp þey held.  
 Bot þe Payens so faste þey fought,  
 . þey hoped of no socour þat dought, 8524  
 ffor wel þey wyste þat þe ne myght  
 Ascape wyþoute strengþe<sup>4</sup> of fyght;  
 . þer-fore þei foughte as þey were wode,  
 . Abated þem boldely,<sup>5</sup> & styfly stode. 8528
- who are in  
great danger,  
but are rescued  
by 300 knights  
of Britany,  
who ride  
through the  
Saxon host.  
But still the  
Saxons fight  
as if they were  
mad.

¶ De Pungna inter Eldok & Hengystum.

- . As þey were boldest in þer baret,  
 Eldok & Hengist to-gedere met;  
 Sire Eldok, Hengist ful wel knew,  
 His herte a-geyns hym gros & grew: 8532  
 . þey hit<sup>6</sup> so dide, ful wel hit aughte,  
 . Gret encheson mad þeym vnsaughte;  
 He preied to God his desir<sup>7</sup> fulfil,  
 þat he of Hengist might haue his wyl. 8536  
 Wyþ scharpe swerdes to-gyder þey<sup>8</sup> ran,  
 & Hengist kepte hym as a man;  
 Eldokes strok ful wel he sat,  
 . Hengist ageyn anoþer smat; 8540  
 þer myg[h]te men se fighteres bolde;<sup>10</sup>  
 . ffor dynt of deþ spare þey ne wolde;<sup>11</sup>
- Then Eldok  
and Hengist  
meet.  
They fight,  
fearing not  
death.

<sup>1</sup> *fo noiþer partie wald biþeli.*

<sup>2</sup> *his men.* (li trois mil, Wace, i. 373, l. 7990.)

<sup>3</sup> *opon þe paiens þei mad bargayn.*

<sup>4</sup> *ascaped þorgh force.*

<sup>5</sup> *bold.*

<sup>6</sup> *if it.*

<sup>7</sup> *He þanked god he hoped.*

<sup>8</sup> *with scharp spere titt him he.*

<sup>9</sup> *One stroke too many in the* MS. m.

<sup>10</sup> *se tuo Iuste & turne.*

<sup>11</sup> *for doute of dede non wild* scurne. [leaf 51, col. 2.]



|                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| The sparks fly<br>like fire from<br>flint ;                                                                                   | Wyþ swerdes of werre double <sup>1</sup> dyntes,<br>þe sparkles fleye as fir of flyntes ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 8544         |
| and Hengist is<br>winning, when<br>Eldok, heart-<br>ened by Earl<br>Corlyeus's<br>coming,                                     | . 3yf Eldokes help ne hadde be ney,<br>. Hengist had had <sup>2</sup> þe better party ;<br>Bot þe Erl Corlyeus <sup>3</sup> of Cornewaille,<br>Cam right y <sup>4</sup> þe moste trauaille.                                                                                                                                                | 8548         |
| rushes at<br>Hengist, seizes<br>him by the<br>vizor, and then<br>by the neck.                                                 | Whan Eldok sey þat þe Erl cam,<br>More hardynesse in herte he nam,<br>fful egrely þanne til Hengist he <sup>5</sup> went, [lf. 37, bk., cl.1.]<br>& by þe vyser <sup>6</sup> he hym hent,                                                                                                                                                  | 8552         |
| Eldok thanks<br>Jesus<br>that his yearn-<br>ing is fulfilled,<br>his worst foe<br>taken,<br>the hound that<br>never had pity. | & heldit til he had sesed his nekke :—<br>. þe Payens wer al mat <sup>7</sup> wyþ þat chekke :—<br>“ þanked be <sup>8</sup> Iesu, þat þou hit wylde !<br>“ þat y haue 3erned, now ys fulfild !<br>“ Now hauy take oure moste fo,<br>“ þat hap vs wakned many wo !<br>“ þis ys þe hound—wo mot hym be !—<br>“ þat neuere of vs hadde pyte ! | 8556<br>8560 |
| He sends<br>Hengist as a<br>present to Au-<br>relius.                                                                         | <sup>9</sup> . “ þis hound y soughte, now y hym fond,<br>“ He was heued to struye þis lond ! <sup>9</sup><br>“ Sire Erl, þys hound, þys comelyng,<br>“ O myn half present hym to þe kyng,<br>“ & sey his enemy ys ouer-comen<br>“ Now þys hound Hengist ys nomen !”                                                                        | 8564         |

¶ De capcione Hengisti per Comitem Gloucestrie.

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                                            |      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Aurelius keeps<br>him in chains. | þan was Hengist ful-like <sup>10</sup> schent,<br>þat ffetered to þe kyng was sent.<br>þen dide þe kyng kep hym ful streit<br>In cheynes bounden for deseit. <sup>11</sup> | 8568 |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|

<sup>1</sup> with *scharp* *suerdes* *þei* *dubled*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. (*h* altered) *hed*. P. has *had*.

<sup>3</sup> *erle Gorleus*.

<sup>4</sup> *com in alle*.

<sup>5</sup> *for belde of him to Hengist*.

<sup>6</sup> *nasett*. (nasal, Wace, l. 8012.)

<sup>7</sup> *were mate*.

<sup>8</sup> *Merci*.

<sup>9-9</sup> Not in the Petyt MS.

<sup>10</sup> *fouly*.

<sup>11</sup> *fo desceite*.



- Hengistes sone þat highte Octa,  
 & his cosyn sire Ebbesa,  
 8572 Wyþ gret pyne þey boþe ascaped,  
 & ȝork to take þey hem raped.  
 Bot whan þey hadde þe toun taken,  
 Warly wayted, & held þem waken,  
 8576 poþer þat lefte, fled her & þer,  
 By dounes & dales, by<sup>1</sup> wodes ay-wher.  
 þe kyng was ioyful þat he so spedde,  
 Hengist was taken, & his folk fledde;  
 8580 To Conyngesburghe þe kyng gan turne,  
 & þere þre dayes mad he soiourne,  
 þe wounded for to hele & reste,  
 8584 þe Payens fro þe Cristen keste.  
 In þat tyme þat þey þer lay,  
 þe Bretons<sup>2</sup> alle, þat oþer day  
 To conseil þe kyng cald hem to,  
 þe beste to wite<sup>3</sup> what were to do:  
 8588 Wheþer Hengist þey redder<sup>4</sup> hym<sup>5</sup> to slo,  
 Or hym enprisone,<sup>6</sup> or lete hym go.  
 A byschop onswered,—sire Eldadus,  
 Sire Eldokes broþer,—& seide right þus:  
 8592 “ I deme Hengist þe same wys  
 “ As in þe bible Samuel seys.  
 “ Samuel did Agag to þe ded—  
 “ Kyng of Amalek was þat qued,—  
 8596 “ A ful fers<sup>7</sup> kyng, riche & kene,  
 “ To Godes folk he wroughte al tene,<sup>8</sup>  
 “ He robbed here godes, þer tounes brent,  
 8600 “ & alle he slow þat he myght hent.  
 “ Swylk sorewe<sup>9</sup> myght nought longe dure;  
 “ He was taken at a desconfytur,

Hengist's son,  
 Octa, and his  
 cousin Ebbesa,

take York.

The other  
 Saxons hide  
 in dales and  
 woods.

Aurelius rests  
 three days at  
 Coningsburgh  
 to heal his  
 wounded.

He asks his  
 Britons

what shall be  
 done with  
 Hengist.

Bishop Eldadus,  
 Earl Eldok's  
 brother, answers  
 and says:

“ Hengist shall  
 be treated as  
 Samuel treated  
 Agag, the king  
 of Amalek,

who worried  
 God's folk.

When he was  
 taken, and Saul

<sup>1</sup> in.    <sup>2</sup> barons. [leaf 51, back.]

<sup>3</sup> Of Hengist.

<sup>4</sup> MS. reddem.

<sup>5</sup> whedir þei red him for.

<sup>6</sup> Hold him in prison.

<sup>7</sup> proude.

<sup>8</sup> tiff godes folk he did ay tene.

at all his myght wo þam wrouht.

& euer werre on þam souht.

<sup>9</sup> suilk mischefe.



|                                                                                  |                                                         |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                  | " & brought byfore Saul þe kyng,                        |      |
|                                                                                  | " ffor his mysdedes to haue demyng. <sup>1</sup>        | 8604 |
| asked what<br>judgment he<br>should have,<br>the prophet<br>Samuel               | " Saul asked what iugement                              |      |
|                                                                                  | " Schuld Agag haue, er þat he went.                     |      |
|                                                                                  | " þan ros þe prophete Samuel, ¶ <b>Exemplum de</b>      |      |
|                                                                                  | " Keper of þe folk of Israel, <b>Iudicio Hengisti.</b>  |      |
|                                                                                  | " And vpon Agag handes he leyd; [leaf 37, bk., col. 2.] |      |
| answered that<br>as Agag                                                         | " Tyl hym & alle, þise wordes he seyð:                  |      |
|                                                                                  | " ' Agag, þou has manion trauailed,                     |      |
| had made many<br>widows and<br>fatherless,                                       | " ' Manion slayn, manyon assayled; <sup>2</sup>         | 8612 |
|                                                                                  | " ' Many lond mad wast & wylde,                         |      |
|                                                                                  | " ' Many wydewe, many faderles childe;                  |      |
|                                                                                  | " ' þorow þe haue [many] ben lorn & slawen,             |      |
|                                                                                  | " ' Many soule & bodies brought of dawes. <sup>3</sup>  | 8616 |
|                                                                                  | " ' þe same wyse schal þy body <sup>4</sup> be refte!   |      |
|                                                                                  | " ' Childles for þe þy moder ys left!                   |      |
| so his mother<br>should be left<br>childless; and<br>he hewed Agag<br>in pieces. | " Agag sipen he al to-hew,                              |      |
|                                                                                  | " Thorow out þe contres þe peces þrew,                  | 8620 |
|                                                                                  | " & seide, ' oueral þou hast don wo,                    |      |
|                                                                                  | " ' Of þe oueral schal wonder <sup>5</sup> go.'         |      |
| Even thus shall<br>Hengist be<br>slain."                                         | " As þe prophete gaf dom þorow lawe,                    |      |
| Eldok at once<br>cuts off                                                        | " So schal ze do Hengist to-drawe." <sup>6</sup>        | 8624 |
|                                                                                  | When sire Eldok herd hym so say,                        |      |
|                                                                                  | & þat holy wryt schewed þat euene way,                  |      |
| Hengist's head,<br>and Aurelius<br>has him buried                                | Smertly wyþ þe dom al hot,                              |      |
|                                                                                  | Hengistes heued of he smot.                             | 8628 |
|                                                                                  | þen dide þe kyng þe body graue                          |      |
|                                                                                  | I þe manere of Payen lawe. <sup>7</sup>                 |      |
| Aurelius then<br>marches with<br>his host to<br>York,                            | Syþen quikly þe kyng hym spedde,                        |      |
|                                                                                  | He zared <sup>8</sup> his host, to zork þem ledde,      | 8632 |
|                                                                                  | þe toun & his enemys for to wynne; <sup>9</sup>         |      |

<sup>1</sup> *How he had don to here endyng.*<sup>2</sup> *essillié, Wace, l. 8082, from MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb.*<sup>3</sup> *many saule of body drawen.*<sup>4</sup> *satt þi soule.*<sup>5</sup> *satt wondryng.*<sup>6</sup> *so suld ze do Hengist of dawes.*<sup>7</sup> *on þat maner þat paien satt haue.*  
[leaf 51, back, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> *Dight.*<sup>9</sup> *P. leaves out this line.*



- ffor Hengistes sone was þer-ynne,  
<sup>1</sup> & oþer manye lordynges þer ware,  
 . & somme y þe contre in mykel kare.<sup>1</sup> 8636  
 þen Octa studied in his þought :  
 . To stonde to fens auailed nought;  
 Socour to sende he wyste of non,  
 . þer socour was for euere gon ;  
 He couþe se no bettere bote,  
 Bot aunte, & <sup>2</sup> falle þe kyng to fote ;  
 . ffel hit to wysdom or to folý,  
 He schulde aunte hym mercy to cry : 8640  
 & alle his men red hym þer-tyl,  
 . Napeles hit was his owen wyl.  
 Out of þe tour<sup>3</sup> ilkon cam ;  
 . As prisoners, barfot<sup>4</sup> þey nam. 8648  
 Octa had don, in stede of streng,  
 Aboute his nekke a chayne heng,  
 . & on his knes fel mekely,<sup>5</sup>  
 & seide, "Sire kyng ! Mercy ! Mercy !  
 " Alle oure Godes ar vs failed ;  
 " þat we on trowe, haue vs nought vailed ;  
 " ȝour God ys of wel more myght ;  
 . " þat we in leue, ar nought so right ; 8656  
 " He scheweþ miracle for þy loue ;  
 " We ar byneþe, & ȝe<sup>6</sup> aboue ;  
 " We ar ouer-comen, þer-fore we<sup>7</sup> com ;  
 " Mercy to craue,<sup>8</sup> to þe we nom. 8660  
 " Haue here þys cheyne, & do þy wylle,  
 " Wheþer þat ȝe wil<sup>9</sup> vs saue or spille !  
 " We ar payed, wheþer þou wylt ;  
 . " We arn aknowe we haue agilt.<sup>10</sup> 8664

as Hengist's  
son, Octa, holds  
it.

Octa sees  
he can't defend  
the city, and  
that he

8640 has no chance  
of help,  
so he resolves  
to chance it,  
and ask Au-  
relius's mercy.

8644

8648 Octa and his  
men come out  
barefooted,

8652 and he, with a  
chain round his  
neck, kneels to  
Aurelius, and  
asks his mercy :  
" Our Gods  
have failed us ;

8656

8660 and we are  
overcome.  
You may save  
or kill us ;

8664 we confess our  
guilt ;

<sup>1-1</sup> & many lordes of his kynd.  
& som in þe cuntre myght men  
fynd.

<sup>2</sup> bot for to.

<sup>3</sup> toun.

<sup>4</sup> als prisons bare fote.

<sup>5</sup> full myldely.

<sup>6</sup> MS. we. P. has þou.

<sup>7</sup> .I.

<sup>8</sup> haf.

<sup>9</sup> whedir þou wilt.

<sup>10</sup> I am oknowe .I. haf þe gilt.



but if you will  
spare our lives,  
we'll serve you  
till we die."

Aurelius asks  
counsel of his  
lords:

"Are the  
Saxons to  
live?"

Bishop  
Eldadus says,

"He who  
craves mercy  
should have it.

Britain has  
many waste  
places.  
Give of these to  
the Saxons to  
till;  
but take  
hostages from  
them.

"To haue oure lyues, ȝyf þou wilt graunt,  
"What so þou saist, we holde couenaunt<sup>1</sup>  
"To serue [þe]<sup>2</sup> til oure lyues ende,  
"Ne neuere more ageyn þe wende." 8668  
þe kyng was of ful gret pite;  
He saide: "lordynges, what sey ȝe?  
"What conseil wil ȝe me gyue?" [leaf 38.]  
& seide, "rede ȝe þat þey lyue?" 8672

þenne spak þe Byschop Eldadus  
Vnto þe kyng Aurelius:  
"Wel ys worþy, mercy to haue,  
"þat mekely mercy wyl craue. 8676  
"Agayn mercy who-so ys grym,  
"God wyl haue no mercy of<sup>3</sup> hym.  
"To þy mercy þey made asay,  
"Mercy þey seke haue, ȝyf þe[y]<sup>4</sup> may. 8680  
"ffor Bretaigne ys large & long,  
"& many stedes wast among,  
"Deliuere þeym lond þer þay<sup>5</sup> se skil,  
"Let þem trauaille þer-on to tyl. 8684  
"Bot y rede, hostages ȝe take;  
"Sykernesse þey schul<sup>6</sup> ȝow make,  
"In alle seruise to be trewe;  
" & ȝour mercy schal hem be newe. 8688

### ¶ Exemplum Byblie.

The folk of  
Gibeon  
wronged the  
Jews,  
and then asked  
mercy for it.

"In þe bible ensample bygan:  
"þe folk of Gabaoth, þat wyþ wrong wan  
"Of þe Iewes, & syþen hit les;  
"At þe Iewes þey bysoughte pes, 8692  
"Of þer wrong bysoughte<sup>7</sup> mercy,

<sup>1</sup> *sais we hold conant.*

<sup>2</sup> *þe.*

<sup>3</sup> *god has not mercy on.* [leaf 52.]

<sup>4</sup> *þei.*

<sup>5</sup> *ȝe.*

<sup>6</sup> *satt.*

<sup>7</sup> *asked.*



- " & þey *graunted* hem al redy.  
 " Syn þey had mercy & pyte,  
 " Wirse þan þey, schul nought do we.<sup>1</sup>  
 " At þe Iewes, ensample nymes,  
 " Graunt hem mercy, lyf & lymes."  
 þe kyng *graunted* þem þanne his pes  
 As þe bischop Eldade ches.  
 Bysyde Scotlond he gaf hem londes;  
 þey tyled, & were grete husebondes;<sup>2</sup>  
 Er þey wente, þey geue hostage,<sup>3</sup>  
 Children of þeyres, of best lynage.<sup>4</sup>  
 ffiftene dayes his court gan ly,  
 þen dide he somone al þe clergy,—  
 & gaf þem landes, rentes, & fees,<sup>5</sup>—  
 Bischopes, abbotes, of þe contres.<sup>5</sup>  
 Schirreues, baillifs, he sente<sup>6</sup> ay-whore,  
 His rentes to gadere & to restore;  
 Masons, whrightes, kyrkes dide make,  
 þat þe Payens dide doun schake;  
 þat fordon were þorow Hengist,  
 Were wrought a-geyn to *serue Crist*.  
 ffro þenne<sup>7</sup> to Londone euene he went:  
 þe toun he fond peyred & schent;  
 Kyrkes, houses, were beten doun;  
 To þe kyng þey mente hem of þe toun,  
 þat many of þe beste burgeys  
 Were fled, euery man his weys.<sup>8</sup>  
 He bigged eft þat er was playn,—  
 Clerkes, burgeys, dide come agayn,—  
 & gaf ilkon ageyn þer estre.  
 Syþen he wente<sup>9</sup> to Wyncestre,  
 & bygged kirkes & houses<sup>10</sup> þere,
- The Jews  
 granted it;  
 8696 and you must  
 not be worse  
 than Jews."  
 Aurelius for-  
 gives the  
 Saxons,  
 8700 settles them on  
 the Scotch  
 border,  
 but takes  
 8704 hostages of  
 them.  
 Aurelius then  
 endows the  
 clergy,  
 8708  
 sends bailiffs to  
 collect his rents,  
 makes masons  
 rebuild  
 8712 churches,  
 and then goes  
 8716 to London,  
 8720 which he re-  
 pairs.  
 8724 He does the  
 same at  
 Winchester,

<sup>1</sup> *suld we not be.*<sup>2</sup> *gode hosbondes.*<sup>3</sup> *he toke ostages.*<sup>4</sup> *childere of þer best lynages.*

P. transposes these lines.

<sup>6</sup> *sett.*<sup>7</sup> *þiþen.* [leaf 52, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> *& ilk man ȝede his weis.*<sup>9</sup> *turned.*<sup>10</sup> MS. *housed.* P. *houses.*



Als he had don elles where.  
 Syþen he ȝede to Salesbury,  
 and then goes  
 to Ambresbury,  
 & til þe abbey of Aumbresbury ; 8728  
 & til þat stede he tok his waye<sup>1</sup>  
 pere Hengist dide þe Bretons deye.  
 where he wishes  
 to build an  
 everlasting  
 memorial over  
 the Britons'  
 graves.  
 þeyr buryels he þoughte for to honure [lf. 38, col. 2.]  
 Wyþ som þyng þat ay myght dure, 8732  
 . & ffryþe þe<sup>2</sup> stede þer þey lay,  
 . þat hit myght laste til Domesday.  
 . He dide masons diuise a cast  
 . What werk myghte lengest last. 8736

¶ *De consilio Tremorii Episcopi.*

Wyþ þe kyng a clerk was þore,  
 Archbishop  
 Tremore  
 His name<sup>3</sup> was sire Tremore,  
 Was Erchebischop of Kerlyon ;  
 He seyde the kyng a god<sup>4</sup> reson : 8740  
 . “ ȝyf he wolde make a werk fyn,<sup>5</sup>  
 . “ Do send ȝour sonde after Merlyn.  
 . “ To make þis werk, may no man  
 . “ Gyue swylk conseil als he can ; 8744  
 . “ He can þe telle what schal bityde :  
 . “ After hym, y rede, ȝour werk abyde.”

¶ *Rex mysit hic pro Merlyno.*

þen seyde þe kyng, “ hit scholde so be ;  
 The king  
 agrees,  
 “ Mikel y desire Merlyn to se ; 8748  
 “ Of his wysdam woldy here,  
 . “ He telleþ wondres<sup>6</sup> on many manere.”  
 At a welles<sup>7</sup> fer in Walys—  
 and his mes-  
 senger finds  
 Merlin at the  
 ‘ Baynes’ hit highte by olde tales— 8752

<sup>1</sup> ? MS. *a* altered to *e*, or first *e* to *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *frithe* þat. (*frithe*, preserve.)

MS. *mame*. <sup>4</sup> he did þe king in.

<sup>5</sup> if he wild mak a werk of fyne.

<sup>6</sup> *sais selcouthes*.

<sup>7</sup> *well*. (a Labenes, une fontaine, Wace, l. 8217.)



|                                                     |      |                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pe messeger þen Merlyn fond:                        |      | well of Baynes<br>in Wales.                                                      |
| "Cum, spek wyþ þe kyng! he sent his sond."          |      |                                                                                  |
| When he com byfore þe kyng,                         |      | Merlin comes.                                                                    |
| He made ioye for his comyng,                        | 8756 | Aurelius<br>makes much<br>of him,                                                |
| & honoured hym, for he was wys,                     |      |                                                                                  |
| & cherished him ouer alle opere of pris;            |      |                                                                                  |
| He praaied hym wel wyþ louely <sup>1</sup> speche,  |      | and begs him to<br>tell him what<br>will happen.                                 |
| What scholde bytide, he wolde hym teche.            | 8760 |                                                                                  |
| ¶ "Syre kyng," he seyde, <sup>2</sup> "certes nay,  |      | Merlin says,                                                                     |
| "To opene my mouþ y ne dar ne may,                  |      | "I dare not<br>open my mouth<br>except in case<br>of real need,                  |
| "Bot hit [be] a byhouely <sup>3</sup> þyng at nede, |      |                                                                                  |
| "þat were warnyng or tokene of dede,                | 8764 |                                                                                  |
| "& ȝit wyþ gret lownesse of hert,                   |      | and with low-<br>ness of heart;                                                  |
| "þat pruyde turne hit nought ouerthwert.            |      |                                                                                  |
| "ffor ȝyf y spak þorow pride or bost,               |      | for if I were<br>to speak from<br>pride,                                         |
| "Oper for scorn, ageyn my gost,                     | 8768 | the spirit in me<br>that teaches me<br>everything,<br>would leave<br>me.         |
| "þat ilke gost þat in me wones,                     |      |                                                                                  |
| "þat al me kennes & al me mones,                    |      |                                                                                  |
| "Out of my mouþ hit wolde hym drawe,                |      |                                                                                  |
| "Of my connyng reue me my sawe,                     | 8772 |                                                                                  |
| "þat namore myght y þen spek wyþ mouþ               |      |                                                                                  |
| "þan an oper þat nought ne coup.                    |      |                                                                                  |
| "þer-fore of swyilk priuete                         |      | Therefore, Au-<br>relius, think<br>not of such<br>secrets,                       |
| "þenk nought þer-on, but let hit be.                | 8776 | but only of<br>what you sent<br>for me for.                                      |
| "þenk on þat why þou me soughtest; <sup>4</sup>     |      | If you want to<br>set up an ever-<br>lasting work<br>here,                       |
| "Bryng þat til ende whi þou me broughtest:          |      | send for the<br>stones that the<br>Giants brought<br>to Ireland from<br>Africa." |
| "ȝyf þou wilt make a werk stedefast,                |      |                                                                                  |
| "þat fair wyl be, & euere to last,                  | 8780 |                                                                                  |
| "Sent for þo <sup>5</sup> stones, þere þey stande,  |      |                                                                                  |
| "þat þe Geaunt <sup>6</sup> brouhte til Irlande.    |      |                                                                                  |
| "Rounde aboute, þen ar þey set;                     |      |                                                                                  |
| "Out of Aufryke were þey fet;                       | 8784 |                                                                                  |
| "Ilkon on oper ys set vpright,                      |      |                                                                                  |

<sup>1</sup> *full louand.* [leaf 52, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *said Merlyn.*

<sup>3</sup> *bot if it be a behouely.*

<sup>4</sup> *soughtes . . . brouhtes.*

<sup>5</sup> *send for þe.*

<sup>6</sup> *Geantz.*



Aurelius  
laughs, and  
says,  
"That's  
strange!  
Why, the stones  
are so heavy  
that no one can  
move 'em, and  
are so far off!  
Who's to bring  
'em here?"

"No man in erþe haþ no myght  
"ffor to take doun a ston;  
"Ne sette þeym eft ys þer non." 8788  
þen seyde þe kyng, & on hym low: <sup>1</sup> [leaf 38, bk., col. 1.]  
"Sertes, þat were selcouþ ynow <sup>2</sup>  
"þat þo stones þat þou of seys,  
"Ar so heuy, & of swylk peys, 8792  
"þat non haþ force ne fuyssoun  
"To remue þem vp ne doun,  
" & ar so fer ouer þe se!  
"Who myghte þem þanne brynge to me?" 8796

### ¶ Prudencia superat omne Robur.

Merlin answers,

"What  
strength can't  
do,  
sleight and  
knowledge can.  
Sleight can  
bring the stones  
to Britain,  
while strength  
can't move 'em  
their own  
length.

þen seide Merlyn vnto þe kynge,  
"Queyntise ouer-comeþ alle þynge.  
"Strengþe ys god wyþ <sup>3</sup> trauaille;  
"þer strengþe ne may, sleyght wil auaille; 8800  
"Sleyght & connyng doþ many a chare,<sup>4</sup>  
"Bygynneþ þyng þat strengþe ne dar;  
"Wyþ sleyght myght þou þe stones wynne,  
" & in Bretaigne set þem inne, 8804  
"þer þou ne schalt wyþ no strengthe  
"Remewe hem a stones lengthe.

### ¶ Exe virtus de Stonhenges.

"Giants first  
brought these  
stones from  
Africa to Ire-  
land,

"In Aufrik were þey compassed & wrought;  
"Geauntz til Irland þennes hem <sup>5</sup> brought,  
" & sette þem on an hil ful hey 8809  
"Wip engyns ful queyntely.  
"ffirst when þey ware compassed newe,  
"þey dide gret god to þem þat knewe; 8812

<sup>1</sup> *lauh.*

<sup>2</sup> *it were þan grete ferly how.*

<sup>3</sup> *vnto.* [leaf 52, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> Engins et ars font mainte cose,  
*Wace*, i. 386, l. 8265.

<sup>5</sup> *fro þiþen þam.*



- “ þo þat were seke, or had laught<sup>1</sup> skapes,  
 “ Wasche<sup>2</sup> þe stones, did hit in bapes;  
 “ þat felde hem greued of grettere<sup>3</sup> þynges,  
 “ Wasched þem<sup>4</sup> of þe selue waschinges, 8816  
 “ & warysched<sup>5</sup> wel of al þer pyne;  
 “ Had þey non oþer medycine.”  
 ¶ When þe kyng herde of þer vertu,  
 þat þey myght falle þe folk to prw, 8820  
 He had longyng for þem to go,—  
 & of þat wyl wer oþer mo,—  
 þe stones to Bretaigne for to brynge,  
 þat Merlyn made of sermonyng. 8824  
 þey chosen<sup>6</sup> Vter, þe kynges broþer,  
 þe kyng ofred hym self þat oþer;  
 Of folk þey ladde fyftene þousand,  
 Agayn þe Irische<sup>7</sup> for to stand; 8828  
 Wyþ þem wente daunz Merlyn,  
 ffor þo stones to make engyn.  
 When Vter wyþ his folk was ȝare,  
 To schip þey went, ouer se to fare, 8832  
 & aryued vpon þat cost.  
 þe Irisch<sup>7</sup> kyng gadered his host;  
 Ageyn þe Bretons þey cam right ȝerne,  
 þe lond ȝyf þey myghte þem werne. 8836  
 þe Irisch kyng þat regned þar,  
 His name was sire Gwylomar;  
 When he wyste why þat he cam,<sup>8</sup>  
 & so fer viage for stones nam, 8840  
 He scorned þem on his langage,<sup>9</sup>  
 ‘ So fer for stones to make passage,<sup>9</sup>  
 ‘ Ouer se til an oþer lond,  
 ‘ ffor þey no stones hender<sup>10</sup> fond;’ 8844
- and sick men  
 were cured by  
 water that had  
 washed the  
 stones.”  
 Aurelius then  
 longs to send  
 and fetch the  
 stones to  
 Britain.  
 So Uther is  
 sent,  
 with 15,000  
 men,  
 and Merlin,  
 in ships to  
 Ireland.  
 The Irish king  
 Gwylomar  
 scorns them for  
 coming over to  
 fetch stones,  
 as if they’d got  
 none in their  
 own land.

<sup>1</sup> & lauht.

<sup>2</sup> wesh.

<sup>3</sup> felt þam greued of grete.

<sup>4</sup> bathed þam.

<sup>5</sup> heled.

<sup>6</sup> ches.

<sup>7</sup> Iris (but Irisch l. 8837).

<sup>8</sup> whi þei kam. [leaf 53.]

<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> ne stones hender.



|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 'But they shall<br>buy the stones<br>here dear.' | . & seyde, "þe stones þey schold haue here, [lf. 38, bk.,<br>col. 2.]<br>. " þey schul by hem first ful dere;<br>" ffor ȝyf we may, þey schul nought spede,<br>" þe stones out of my land to lede." 8848                                                                                                                                        |
| At last the<br>hosts meet,                       | . He scorned & seyde, "hit schal be nought,<br>" þey schul faille þat þey haue sought."<br>pys kyng byhig[h]t hem foul despit, <sup>1</sup><br>Bot wykke þey were to desconfyt. <sup>1</sup> 8852<br>So longe he manased & þret,<br>Atte laste to-gydere þey met.<br>At þeyr metyng, hit was nought lyte<br>When þey gonne to-gyder smyte. 8856 |
| and the Britons<br>soon win.<br>The Irish        | . fful wel foughte boþe partys,<br>. Bot þe Bretons wan sone þe pris;<br>þe Irische <sup>2</sup> coupe nought so wel feight,<br>Ne of armure þey hadde no sleight, 8860<br>. Ne þer-of were so wel bone,                                                                                                                                        |
| flee, and                                        | per-fore þe Irische <sup>2</sup> fledde ful sone;<br>ffro stede to stede þey fledde to sculk,<br>. On heþ & hilles to hyde in <sup>3</sup> hulk. 8864                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| hide in holes.                                   | When Bretons hadde don þat chace,<br>& rested peym a gret[e] <sup>4</sup> space,<br>Merlyn had þem alle at ones<br>To þe hil to se þe stones.— 8868<br>Kylomare highte þe hyl<br>per þe geauntz broughte þem tyl.—                                                                                                                              |

¶ De asportacione lapidum de Stonhenges, de  
Hybernia in Brytanniam.

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| They look at<br>the circle of<br>stones, | þys Bretons aboute renged þe feld,<br>þe carole of þe stones byhe[l]d. <sup>5</sup> 8872<br>fful often ȝede þey <sup>6</sup> aboute,<br>. Byhelde wyþynne & eke <sup>7</sup> wyþoute; |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> *Iris*.<sup>3</sup> *on hii hilles to hide &.* (*hulk*,  
cubile, tugurium, hovel, sty.)<sup>4</sup> *long*.<sup>5</sup> *beheld*.<sup>6</sup> *many tyme ȝede þam*.<sup>7</sup> *within biheld*.



- Alle þey seyde, so seyde þe kyng,  
 ‘ þey sey<sup>1</sup> neuere so selcoup þyng.’ 8876 and say they  
 How þey were reysed þey had wonder, never saw such  
 & how þey scholde be brought a-sonder.<sup>2</sup> a strange thing.
- Merlyn seyde, “now makeþ assay  
 “ To potte þe stones, ȝyf þat<sup>3</sup> ȝe may; 8880 Merlyn bids  
 “ & wyþ force fondeþ þem to bere: them try and  
 “ þer force ys mykel, lesse wyl þem<sup>4</sup> dere.” push the stones  
 . þe host atones to þe hil þey went, down.  
 & ilk man tok þat he myght hent, 8884 The Britons  
 . Ropes to drawe, tres to potte,<sup>5</sup> get ropes to  
 þey schouued, þey þriste, þey stode o strot,<sup>6</sup> pull, trees to  
 On ilka side, byhynde, by-forn; push.  
 Al for nought; þer trauail was lorn. 8888 They shove and  
 . When þey ofte hadde<sup>7</sup> put & þryst, thrust.  
 & ilk man do what hym do lyst, All no good!  
 & left þer pottyng<sup>8</sup> many on, Push as they  
 ȝit stirede þey nought þe leste ston. 8892 no stone stirs.  
 Bot Merlyn wiste hit scholde nought vaille: Merlin tells  
 . Strengþe of body ne myght nout vaille.  
 He bad hem alle drawe þem o drey; them to stand  
 “ þorow strengþe come ȝe neuere þem ney.” 8896 aside.  
 Al stille<sup>9</sup> he stod, syþen hym bywent,  
 & spak, but non wist what he ment; He speaks;  
 His lippes þey seye stire vp & down, they see his lips  
 Bot non herde his coniurysoun. 8900 move, but do  
 When he had gon alle aboute, not hear his  
 . Wyþynne þe carole, & wyþoute, conjurings.  
 & seide his coniurisouns,  
 Ageyn he calde al þe Bretouns, 8904 Then he tells  
 And seyde, “now may ȝe lyghtly bere [leaf 39.] the Britons  
 they can easily

<sup>1</sup> *sauh.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,—  
*with þat worde þei þam rescued.*  
*þei ne wist how þei suld remued.*<sup>3</sup> *putte þis stones down if.*<sup>4</sup> *þe lesse wiȝt.* [leaf 53, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> *put* (push).<sup>6</sup> *o strut.*<sup>7</sup> *aȝt þe had.*<sup>8</sup> *puttyng.*<sup>9</sup> *a lititt.*



|                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| carry the<br>stones to their<br>ships.                                                                  | " þe stones to schip wypouten dere.<br>" Gop now alle, & spedep ȝow,<br>" ffor ȝe schal welde þem wel ynow." 8908                                                                         |
| They do so,                                                                                             | Als Merlyn þem taughte & seyd,<br>In <sup>1</sup> to þe schypes þem lyghtly leyd;<br>. þen had þey wonne þat <sup>2</sup> fer had sought.                                                 |
| and carry them<br>to Ambresbury,                                                                        | . To þe playne of Salesbury þem brought, 8912<br>Of Aumbresbyri bysyde an abbay,<br>& hit was atte Whitemonday. <sup>3</sup>                                                              |
| on Whitsunday.<br>Aurelius sum-<br>mons all his<br>bishops and<br>nobles ;                              | þen dide þe kyng make somons<br>Of bischopes, erles, & barons, 8916<br>& oþer lordes of þe nobleste, <sup>4</sup><br>& dide hym coroune at þat feste.                                     |
| is crowned ;                                                                                            | pre dayes laste þe feste fode ; <sup>5</sup><br>þe ferþe day he gaf <sup>6</sup> gyftes gode— 8920<br>Croces [riche] to clerkes of pris,<br>To seint Saunsom <sup>7</sup> & seint Dubris. |
| and gives St.<br>Dubrice the<br>see of Kaerlyon,<br>and St. Saunson<br>the see of York.                 | Seint Dubrice he gaf Kaerlyon,<br>ȝork he gaf to seint Saunson ; <sup>7</sup> 8924<br>. þys gaf he at his coronement,<br>. & many mo, þorow <sup>8</sup> comun assent.                    |
| Merlin sets the<br>stones as they<br>were before, in<br>Ireland ;                                       | . Byfore þe lordes þat come þyder,<br>Merlyn sette þe stones to-gyder ; 8928<br>Als þey were or, in þat certeyn,<br>So stande þey now vpon þe pleyn.                                      |
| and within their<br>circle are<br>buried the<br>bones of the<br>lords whom<br>Hengist slew<br>(p. 277). | . Wȳþynne þe compas of þe stones<br>. Ar byried alle þo lordes bones 8932<br>. þat Hengist atte Parlement slow ;<br>. Here byforn ȝe herde wel how.                                       |

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Im.*<sup>2</sup> *won þei.*<sup>3</sup> & was at þe whitsonenday. (à  
Pentecoste, *Wace*, i, 391, l. 8370.)<sup>4</sup> *folk of noble geste.*<sup>5</sup> *sat þe feste of fode.*<sup>6</sup> *on þe ferth day gaf he.*<sup>7</sup> *Sampson.*<sup>8</sup> *bi.*



¶ De Pascencyo, filio ffortygerny.

- Of ffortyger, þat þe kyng had brent,  
 Was left a sone þat highte Passent. 8936 Vortiger's son  
 Passent,  
 ffor drede of Aurelius & of Vter,  
 Vntil Alemayne he fledde fer,  
 & purchaced hym folk on þe se,  
 & aryued vp y þe northe contre, 8940 who had fled  
 to Germany,  
 and raised men  
 at sea,  
 lands in North  
 Britain, and  
 wastes it; but  
 hearing that  
 Aurelius is  
 after him,  
 he sails  
 to Ireland, and  
 persuades its  
 king  
 8944  
 8948 to join him  
 in invading  
 Britain.  
 Vpon Bretaine a route to reнге,  
 & on þe Bretons for to venge.  
 Passent calanged<sup>3</sup> his fader wones,  
 þe kyng for robberye of þe stones;  
 8952  
 Trupe to-gydere boþe þey plyght,  
 To take vengauce at þer myght.  
 Wyþ al þe force þei myght gete,  
 In Walsche lond<sup>4</sup> aryued þer flete.  
 8956 They land  
 in Wales,  
 take Meneue,  
 þey spirde aboute in ilka contre;  
 Meneue þey tok, was a<sup>5</sup> cite;  
 Meneue ys langage on Bretoun,  
 & now hit hatte Seint Dauy toun.  
 8960 now St. David's  
 (see p. 110,  
 l. 3097).  
 In þat tyme þat þey cam þus,  
 Syk lay oure kyng Aurelius  
 Aurelius lies  
 sick at Win-  
 chester,  
 At Wynchestre mani a day;  
 [leaf 39, col. 2.]  
 8964  
 Longe bedrede þer he lay,

<sup>1</sup> & þider.

<sup>2</sup> flete.

<sup>3</sup> chalanged.

<sup>4</sup> & in wales.

<sup>5</sup> toke þat.



- and hears that  
Pascent and  
the Irish  
king are in  
Wales.
- pat he ne myghte neyþer couere ne deye,  
. Bot euer<sup>1</sup> more languished on<sup>2</sup> weye.  
As he lay sek, bode hym was sent  
pat ffortigeres sone, sire Passent, 8968  
In Walys was, & þe Irische<sup>3</sup> kyng,  
. On hym to make a chalangyng;  
. He chalanged hym of robbery,  
. & sire Pascent<sup>4</sup> of felony. 8972  
þe kyng seide, "Vter for me schal go,  
" ffor y ne may, me ys ful wo."  
Sire Vter seyde, "y am redy;"  
His folk somonde al pryuely, 8976  
. Wyþ hors & armes redy to ryde,  
. & com til hym; he scholde þem byde.  
Longe hit was y þe somouns,  
& þe buschyng<sup>5</sup> of þe barouns;<sup>6</sup> 8980  
God whyle<sup>7</sup> hit was er he þem wan  
In-til Walys, ilka man.
- He sends  
Uther against  
them, as he  
cannot go  
himself;
- but a long  
time goes  
by before  
Uther gets all  
his host into  
Wales.

### ¶ Appas traditor.

- So I'll tell you  
about Appas,  
  
an artful  
Saxon,  
  
who pretends  
to be a doctor,  
and can speak  
many tongues.
- ¶ In al þys drechyng als þey gan dwelle,  
Of on Appas y schal ȝow telle: 8984  
Appas he highte, & was a Saxon,<sup>8</sup>  
& well coupe contreue a treson;  
He ffeyned hym to be [a]<sup>9</sup> leche,  
& coupe speke diuerse speche. 8988  
A day to Pascent þis Appas spak,—  
. Treson he þoughte, & out hit brak,—

<sup>1</sup> MS. ouer.<sup>2</sup> euer *languet one*.  
[leaf 53, back, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> *Iris*.<sup>4</sup> *passent of dede*.<sup>5</sup> *buskyng* (preparing, getting  
ready).<sup>6</sup> P. adds these two lines, not re-  
presented in Wace's text, ii. 3,—*dred þei were þe kyng suld die.**& in to wales fer was þe weic.*<sup>7</sup> *gude stound*.<sup>8</sup> *Appas was a sesson*.<sup>9</sup> *fened him to be a*.



- " Passent," seyde Appas, " wel y wot,  
 " Bytwixt þe kyng & þe ys hatrede<sup>1</sup> hot. 8992 He asks  
 " What wiltow gyue me, & y schal go, Pascent  
 " þe kyng Aurelyus for to slo?" " What'll you  
 Passent seyde, " y schal gyue þe give me to kill  
 " A þousand pound of god mone, 8996 " £1,000." Aurelius?"  
 " Wyþy<sup>2</sup> þy word be certayn  
 " To sey me when þou hast hym slayn."  
 Appas seyde " wel y graunt;" The bargain is  
 Seide Passent, " y holde couenaunt." 9000 struck.  
 . Appas spak Latyn parfit, Appas, who  
 & clad hym in a monkes habyt; knows Latin,  
 Als a monk he dide hym schauē, disguises him-  
 Contenaunce coupe he ful wel haue.<sup>3</sup> 9004 self as a monk,  
 . Venyn<sup>4</sup> for salue wyþ hym he nam,  
 Als a monk to court he cam;  
 ffor yueles<sup>5</sup> he coupe medicine make,  
 þe kyng he seyde he wolde vndertake: 9008 and undertakes  
 ' ȝyf he wolde do after<sup>6</sup> his queyntise, to cure him.  
 ' Sone he scholde<sup>7</sup> do hym vp ryse.'  
 He tasted his pous, saw his vryn,  
 He seide he knew his medycyn.<sup>8</sup> 9012 He feels the  
 king's pulse,  
 looks at his  
 urine, and says  
 he knows the  
 cure for him.

¶ De Morte Aurelij Regis per Appas traditorem  
 Saxonem.

- þe kyng ȝerned his hele mykel,<sup>9</sup> Aurelius puts  
 He wende nought a monk were fykel;  
 He dide hym in kepyng of þe feloun, himself in  
 & he gaf hym drynke poysoun, 9016 Appas's hands

<sup>1</sup> *hated.*

<sup>2</sup> *with þi* (with that, so that).

<sup>3</sup> *Od* contenance monial, *Wace*, ii. 5, l. 8465.

<sup>4</sup> *Venom.* [leaf 54.]

<sup>5</sup> *Iuels.*

<sup>6</sup> *at.*

<sup>7</sup> *so he wild.*

<sup>8</sup> A bit from the Normandy of *Wace's* time.

<sup>9</sup> 'Si com cascuns de vous vol-  
 'droit,' adds *Wace*, ii. 5, l. 8476.



Appas gives  
him poison and  
bids him sleep,  
that the poison  
may work.  
Then Appas  
flees.  
And Aurelius  
soon knows  
that he must  
die.

At Stonehenge

he is buried.

& happed hym warme, & bad hym slepe,  
ffor in his lymes hit schold al lepe.  
When þys Appas his nedes had sped,  
Al so swyþe a-wey he fled; 9020  
And sone after in a þrowe [leaf 39, back, col. 1.]  
þe kyng hit wiste, & men wel sowe,<sup>1</sup>  
þat he scholde al-gate deye.  
þen preied he men þey scholde hym leye 9024  
At Stonhenges in a graue,  
His byriels for to mene & saue.  
On þys manere þe kyng was ded,  
& beryed als after his red. 9028

### ¶ De stella Cometa que apparuit.

When Aurelius  
dies, men in  
Wales see a  
star called a  
Comet, which  
shows a king's  
death.  
From it goes a  
beam

like a dragon,

with brands out  
of its mouth,  
1. stretching  
over France,  
and to Italy,  
2. over Ireland,  
this second  
dividing into  
seven branches.

Vter þat tyme in Walys was  
pat þe kyng was poysond wyþ Appas.  
Als he was ded, þen ros a sterne  
pat many a man biheld ful ʒerne, 9032  
'Comete' ys cald in astronomye,  
Kynges dep<sup>2</sup> wil hit signefye.  
ffro þat cam a bem ful bryght,  
Onlyke on, þat lemede lyght; 9036  
þe lemyng was boþe red & schir,  
Lyke a dragon þat sparkled fyr;  
Was þer neuere erl ne<sup>3</sup> baroun  
pat þey ne lykned hit til a dragoun. 9040  
Two brondes come out of his moup  
pat lightned Est, West, &<sup>4</sup> Soup:  
Vpon ffraunce lygh[t]ned<sup>5</sup> pat on;  
pat oper vntil Moungow schon; 9044  
þe þridde, þat vntil<sup>6</sup> Irland ʒede,  
In seuen braunches gan it<sup>7</sup> sprede,

<sup>1</sup> knowe.

<sup>2</sup> dede.

<sup>3</sup> was noȝer erle no.

<sup>4</sup> est with þe.

<sup>5</sup> lighted.

<sup>6</sup> þrid vnto.

<sup>7</sup> MS. þey. P. has it. (see 9096.)



- & alle were þey schynand  
 On þe water & on þe land. 9048  
 pys ilke merueille þat þus was sene,  
 Men wondred what hit wolde<sup>1</sup> mene.  
 Sire Vter, þe kynges broþer,  
 Hym merueilled more þan anoþer;<sup>2</sup> 9052  
 Merueillyng, he was affrayed;  
 . Of þat affray he was nought payed;  
 He preyed Merlyn ful specialy  
 þe toknyng þer-of to telle,<sup>3</sup> & why. 9056  
 þen sey Merlyn þat<sup>4</sup> sire Vter  
 Sore sykede, & feightit<sup>5</sup> fer,  
 And stod as he were in dwale,  
 . No word ne seide, bot wax al pale. 9060  
 When his spirit was comen ageyn,  
 . & þoughte, 'þat may nought helpe, ys veyn,'  
 Seid Merlyn, "Sorewe<sup>6</sup> may þey mone,  
 " Alle þat now in Bretaigne wone! 9064  
 " Lore þey haue þer noble kyng  
 " þat brought hem of Saxons<sup>7</sup> encombrynge,  
 " Out of þe false Payens<sup>8</sup> handes,  
 . " þat manion broughte in<sup>9</sup> bitter bandes!" 9068  
 When Vter herde his broþer was ded,  
 He bycom as heuy as led:  
 . " Alas!" he seide, "now haþ Bretaygne  
 . Loren þer noble cheuentayne!"<sup>10</sup> 9072  
 He syked<sup>11</sup> for sorewe, deol was to se.  
 þen seyde Merlyn, "Vter, let be,  
 . " þer no bote ys ouer sore ne sorewe!  
 . " þy lyf may no man bye ne borewe; 9076

Men wonder  
 what this comet  
 means;  
 and Uther is

afraid and ill at  
 ease.

He asks Merlin  
 about it.

Merlin sighs,  
 and at first says  
 nothing, but  
 turns pale.

Then his spirit  
 comes again,

and he tells  
 Uther that

Aurelius is  
 dead.

Uther turns as  
 heavy as lead,

laments, and

sighs sorely.

Merlin tells him

**Nota.**

"sorrowing  
 is no good,

<sup>1</sup> *mot.* [leaf 54, col. 2.]  
<sup>2</sup> *any oþer*; and leaves out the next  
 two lines.  
<sup>3</sup> *to telle him what it ment.*  
<sup>4</sup> *Merlyn sauh it with sir vter.*  
<sup>5</sup> *Sore sighyng he fecched it.*  
<sup>6</sup> *Ihesu he said sore.*

<sup>7</sup> *yam of.*  
<sup>8</sup> *þe paiens sessions.*  
<sup>9</sup> *to.*  
<sup>10</sup> *lorn hym þat was a noble chef-*  
*tayn.*  
<sup>11</sup> *sighed.*



attack your foes  
at once.

You'll win the  
battle,

and then be  
crowned king.

“ Of deþ may non þe<sup>1</sup> bale bete,  
 “ þe sorewe nedly byhoueþ men<sup>2</sup> lete;  
 “ Bot haste þe swyþe on þyn enemis!  
 “ Of þe bataille þou getest þe prys, 9080  
 “ To morewen schul þey boþe be schent, [lf. 39, bk.,  
 “ & al þer folk boþ sleyn & hent.<sup>3</sup> col. 2.]  
 “ Syþen schaltow þe coroune take,  
 “ þe pes to menteyne & to make. 9084

¶ De interpretacione Comete per Merlynum.

“The comet be-  
tokened Aure-  
lius's death;  
the dragon  
yourself,  
the first brand

your future son  
(Arthur),  
whom France  
and Italy shall  
obey;  
the second  
brand with  
seven branches,  
your daughter,  
who shall  
marry the king  
of Scotland,  
and have seven  
sons, all kings.”  
Uther

next morning

“ þe sterne þat þou seye<sup>4</sup> so red,  
 “ Bytokneþ euere þe kynges ded.  
 “ þe dragon, þat semeþ<sup>5</sup> so hey,  
 “ py self hit menes, þat ys so hardy; 9088  
 “ þe brond þat schyned out of his mouþ,  
 “ þat spreden<sup>6</sup> boþe Est & South,  
 “ þat ys, of þe schal<sup>7</sup> come a sone  
 “ Doughty of dede, many on schal mone; 9092  
 “ Alle ffraunce þen schal<sup>7</sup> hym loute,  
 “ Vntil Mongow men schal<sup>7</sup> hym doute.  
 “ þat oper, þat schon West so euen,  
 “ Toward þe Norþ hit spredde in seuen, 9096  
 “ A doughter hit ys, y vnderstande,  
 “ þat maried schal<sup>7</sup> be bysyde Scotlande;  
 “ Hure eyres bymene þo<sup>8</sup> seuen brondes,  
 “ þat schullen<sup>7</sup> welde alle þo londes.” 9100  
 ¶ Syre Vter listned ilka del  
 How Merlyn confortd hym wel;  
 He bad his host reste al þat nyght,  
 On morn erlik<sup>9</sup> to bataille þem dight. 9104

<sup>1</sup> dede may non no.

<sup>2</sup> sorow þos men nedes.

<sup>3-3</sup> of þe Iris kyng & passent.  
to morne saþt þei boþe be  
schent.

<sup>4</sup> ses.

<sup>5</sup> P. inserts *flaumand*.

<sup>6</sup> spredes.

<sup>7</sup> saþt.

<sup>8</sup> mene þe. [leaf 55, back.]

<sup>9</sup> arely.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>þe Irische<sup>1</sup> wyste whan þey schold come,<br/> &amp; made hem redy alle &amp; some;<sup>2</sup><br/> Stalworthly to-geder þey fought,<br/> Bot þe Irische<sup>1</sup> sone were brought to nought,<sup>3</sup> 9108<br/> ffor þe Irische<sup>1</sup> kyng &amp; Passent<br/> Were slayn, &amp; þer host al to-schent;<sup>4</sup><br/> &amp; þo þat wyþ þe lyf ascaped,<sup>5</sup><br/> To þer schipes faste þem raped.<br/> Of þo þat fledden<sup>6</sup> to þe se,<br/> þat was ouer-taken, slayn was he.<br/> Whe[n] al were slayn þey myghte hent,<sup>7</sup><br/> To Wynchestre sire Vter went.<br/> I þe weye he mette a messeger,<br/> þat teldyt al to<sup>8</sup> sire Vter<br/> What manere þat þe kyng deyde,<br/> &amp; byryed [was]<sup>9</sup> þer (als he seyde)<br/> At Stonhenges so louely,<sup>10</sup><br/> Wyþ þe byschopes &amp; al þe clergy.<br/> As Vter com rydyng<sup>11</sup> y þe stret,<br/> þe folk on hym sore gon<sup>12</sup> gret,<br/> &amp; seyde, "sire, haue mercy on vs!<br/> " Ded ys þy broþer Aurelyus<br/> " þat mayntende vs in al his myght;<br/> " Tak þou þe coroune, hit ys þy right,<br/> " &amp; be our heued, for we hit ȝern,<br/> " &amp; fend vs from our enemys fern."</p> | <p>attacks the<br/>Irish and<br/>Pascent,<br/>defeats them,<br/>and kills Pas-<br/>cent and the<br/>Irish king.</p> <p>9112 Only a few<br/>Irish escape to<br/>their ships.</p> <p>9116 Uther goes<br/>to Winchester,</p> <p>9120 and hears how<br/>Aurelius was<br/>poisoned, and<br/>buried at<br/>Stonehenge.</p> <p>9124 Uther is prayed<br/>by the folk</p> <p>9128 to take the<br/>crown, and<br/>defend them<br/>from their foes.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *Iris.*

<sup>2</sup> *þei dight þam & agayn þam nom.*

<sup>3</sup> *sone nouh ne douht.*

<sup>4</sup> *MS. alto schent. P. alle schent.*

<sup>5</sup> *with þe life scaped.*

<sup>6</sup> *& þei þam folowed in.*

<sup>7</sup> *mot ouerhent.*

<sup>8</sup> *tald att titt.*

<sup>9</sup> *was.*

<sup>10</sup> *þe stonhenges solemPLY.*

<sup>11</sup> *ridand.*

<sup>12</sup> *gon sore.*



¶ *Vter apud Wyntoniam cepit coronam.*

Uther is

crowned at  
Winchester,and has two  
dragons made;one to be borne  
before him in  
war,the other hung  
in St. Peter's  
church;and from this  
cause he is  
called Uther  
Pendragon.

Syre *Vter* sey hit was to do,  
 . ffor his heritage hit was of blod al so. 9132  
 . Hys barons þyder he dide somoune,  
 & made a feste, & dide hym coroune.  
 ffor *Merlyn* tolde þat toknyng  
 þat *Vter* scholde be doughty kynge, 9136  
 & of hym swylk heyres schold be,  
 . Alosed þorow-out<sup>1</sup> al *Cristiante*,  
 . And for þat dragon he sey in syght [leaf 40.]  
 . Bytokned hym self kyng þorow right, 9140  
 He dide make two dragons  
 By conseil of hys barouns;  
 þat on he dide byfore hym bere,  
 & ilka<sup>2</sup> tyme he zede to were; 9144  
 þat oper dragon he did wyrk,  
 & heng hit<sup>3</sup> at seinte Petres kirk.  
 ffor þat skyl & þat enchesoun<sup>4</sup>  
 Was he cald *Vter Pendragoun*: 9148  
 Pen ys heued in *Walsche* langage;  
 Dragon ys seyð on oure vsage;  
 . Pendragon was his to-name  
 . In all his lyue for þat same. 9152

¶ *De Octa, filio Hengysty.*Octa, Hengist's  
son,

Octa, Hengystes sone þat was,  
 When *Aurelius* furgaf<sup>5</sup> his trespas,  
 & had hym gyuen,<sup>6</sup> & his meyne,  
 Londes y þe norþ. contre; 9156  
 When he wyste þat he was ded

<sup>1</sup> named þourh. [leaf 54, back, col. 2.]<sup>2</sup> at ilk.<sup>3</sup> it hang. (A l'iglise de l'Eves-  
quié, *Wace*, ii. 11, l. 8610.)<sup>4</sup> cheson.<sup>5</sup> Forgyuen before.<sup>6</sup> & þe kyng gaf him.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |      |                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pat þeym þe lond furst furbed,<br>Of hym he gaf nought, þat was newe,<br>Til hym þoughte he neuere be trewe.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 9160 | pooh-poohs<br>Uther,                                               |
| . What dide þis schrewe, þe false Octa?<br>Conseilled wyþ his cosyn Ebessa, <sup>1</sup><br>Wyþ alle þo of his owen kynde,<br>& oþer Saxons þat þey myght fynde;<br>& fele of þo wyþ hem went<br>pat scaped atte <sup>2</sup> slaughter of Passent;<br>pat fro Vter handes <sup>3</sup> fled,<br>þey com til Octa, & he þem led.<br>By-ʒonde Humber al þe land<br>Octa tok vntil hys hand,<br>Al til Scotland in lengþe & bred.<br>To ʒork syþen al þey ʒed,<br>pat [toun] for to bysege <sup>4</sup> & to wyn;<br>þey defended hem faste wyþyn; <sup>5</sup><br>þe kyng þe sege wolde remewe,<br>þe toun a-geynes þeym rescuwe;<br>He þoughte nought longe fort <sup>6</sup> abyde,<br>Bot gadered folk on ilka syde.<br>When he was comen, he abod nought,<br>Bot on þe Payens bataille sought;<br>& þe Payens egre & stout,<br>þorow þe Bretons held þem out;<br>Payens & Cristen, many were slawen,<br>& many a sowle fro <sup>7</sup> body drawen. | 9164 | consults with<br>Ebessa, and<br>gathers a large<br>host of Saxons. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 9168 | They seize all<br>Northumbria,                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 9172 | and besiege<br>York.                                               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 9176 | Uther collects<br>his folk,                                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 9180 | and attacks the<br>Pagans,                                         |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 9184 |                                                                    |

<sup>1</sup> *Cosa*. (Eossa, *Wace*, ii. 12, l. 8640; Eosa, *Galf. Mon.* viii. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> *fro þe*.

<sup>3</sup> *in weles*.

<sup>4</sup> *þe toun for to sege*.

<sup>5</sup> *fended it that was þer-In*.

<sup>6</sup> *long to*. [leaf 55.]

<sup>7</sup> *Many saule of*.



¶ *Obsitus est Vterus Rex super collem qui vocatur  
Damer; et exe saluati sunt per consilium  
Gorleni Comitiss.*

but is driven  
back

þe Bretons þat tyme myght nought sped;  
Bak þey turnde, þey saw ned;  
þe Payens after folewed fast,  
& many vn-to dede cast. 9188

to a hill called  
Damer.

. Whider to fle þey were al wyl;<sup>1</sup>  
þe Payens hem chased vntil an hyl,<sup>1</sup>  
'Damer'<sup>2</sup> þe hil so hight.

þe Bretons tok hit þo þat nyght; 9192  
Hey & streit, ful narow<sup>3</sup> to prykke,  
Aboute y-busched wyþ þornes<sup>4</sup> þykke.

There the  
Pagans  
besiege them,  
but cannot  
assault, because  
of the night.

When þe Bretons þe hil had taken,  
Wyþ sege þe Payens held þem waken, 9196  
. Bot hit was atte þe nyght,

. þeym to saille þey ne myght;  
þey logged þem stille in þe playn, [leaf 40, col. 2.]  
& þe Bretons were y þe mountayn; 9200

. þe Payens to þer loggyng<sup>5</sup> gan lep;  
. Wery þey were, & fulle on slep.

Uther is  
anxious about  
saving his men,

þe kyng had of hym self gret drede,  
& of his folk þat he schold<sup>6</sup> lede, 9204

. How he scholde<sup>6</sup> a-scape þem fro;  
. þer weyes wer stopped þer þey schold<sup>6</sup> go.

and asks Gor-  
lens, the Earl  
of Cornwall,  
for advice.

þe Erl of Cornewaille was o þat hyl,  
Gorlens he highte, a man of skyl, 9208

Wysest he held hym of ylkon;  
To hym for conseil þey mente þer mon,

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> Daniens, *Wace*, ii. 13, l. 8675; *Damen, Galf. Mon.*

<sup>3</sup> *hiie & narow full strayte.* (agus en som, *Wace*, ii. 13, l. 8676.)

<sup>4</sup> *bushed with hesils.*

<sup>5</sup> *loges.*

<sup>6</sup> *suld.*



- . ffor he was man of gret queyntyse,<sup>1</sup>  
 & neuere louede no cowardyse.<sup>1</sup> 9212  
 He seide "for conseil ze com me to;  
 " Y schal zow conseil, zyf ze wil so.  
 " ¶ Mercy to God, first we schal cry,  
 " & mende vs of al oure foly, 9216  
 " & preye Iesu our Saueour  
 " To schulde vs fro<sup>2</sup> mysauentour,  
 " & gif vs grace & powere  
 " Ageins þe Payens þat sege vs here, 9220  
 " þat vs often wo han vs<sup>3</sup> wrought,  
 " & hym for Lord ne knowe þey nought;  
 " þat he to day stonde vs by,  
 " On hys enemys to haue maystri. 9224  
 " zyf he wyl helpe, our Lord Ihesus,  
 " Who may þanne ageyns vs?"  
 To his conseil þei graunted alle,  
 & faste on Iesu þen gon þey calle, 9228  
 & highte to make amendement,  
 . þat tyme to schape zyf<sup>4</sup> he þem lent.  
 " Arme zow," he seyde,<sup>5</sup> "pryuely,  
 " & go we stille, wyþouten cry;  
 " þey arn a<sup>6</sup> slepe, y am right siker;  
 " þey trauailed faste to gyue vs byker,  
 " & wene nought we dur vs abate,  
 " ffor þey desconfit vs so late; 9236  
 " þey hope to morn atte sonne rysyng  
 " Vs to slo, or<sup>7</sup> take our kyng.  
 " Arme vs swyþe, & go we doun,<sup>8</sup>  
 " Wyþoute any more sarmoun!" 9240  
 ¶ þey armed þenne<sup>9</sup> knyght & swayn,

Gorlens bids  
the Britons  
ask God's  
mercy,

and pray to  
Jesus

for strength  
against the  
Pagans,

his enemies.

The Britons  
accordingly  
pray, and pro-  
mise amend-  
ment if they  
escape.

Gorlens then  
tells them to  
arm, and  
attack the  
sleeping and  
weary Pagans.

The Britons  
arm,

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> Wace invents this piece of piety; but puts it (ii. 15) after Geoffrey's and his advice to attack by night.

<sup>3</sup> vs cristen wo has.

<sup>4</sup> scape. if. [leaf 55, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> vs he said now.

<sup>6</sup> ere on.

<sup>7</sup> &.

<sup>8</sup> MS. douns.

<sup>9</sup> þam sone.



come down to  
the sleeping  
and unarmed  
Pagans,

Pryuely com doun in to þe playn,  
& fond hem slepyng,<sup>1</sup> als he sayd;  
Vnarmed, ilkon were þey leyd.

9244

¶ *Occisio Paganorum.*

and slaughter  
them pitilessly.

. When þe Bretons were spred aboute  
. In þer host, wyþynne<sup>2</sup> & wyþoute,  
þen was slaughtere wyþoute pite;  
Was non for merci ȝolden fre;  
þorow wombe & breste þe speres bot,  
Hedes, handes, fet, of smot.

9248

To arme þeym þey nadde no space,  
Ne to fle had þey no grace;

9252

ȝyf any fledde þat fle myght,<sup>3</sup>  
þe merknesse saued [hem] þat nyght.<sup>3</sup>

Octa and  
Ebessa are  
taken, and  
prisoned in  
London.

Octa & Ebessa<sup>4</sup> o lyue þey tok,  
At Londone in prison he dide þem lok.

9256

Uther goes  
through North-  
umberland and  
Scotland,

¶ When þis Payens were desconfit,  
Toward þe norþ þey went ful tyt;  
Northumberland, Scotland, þorow þey rod,  
Als hit was fer, [boþ] long & brod.

9260

takes the un-  
ruly into his  
own hands,  
and establishes  
peace.

þo þat myghte no men<sup>5</sup> iustise,  
Al he drow til his seruise;  
Ouer al he sette swylk pees, [leaf 40, back, col. 1.]  
Bettere neuere no man ches.

9264

Then he returns  
to London for  
Easter,  
and bids all his  
nobles, bishops,  
and burgesses,  
with their

When he was kyng kyd & coup,  
He tok his gate toward þe soup;  
At Londone his Pasches he held,  
Wyþ erl & baron, & knyght of scheld;  
Byschopes, abbotes, he dide somoune,  
. & riche burgeyses, & oþer in<sup>6</sup> toune;

9268

<sup>1</sup> *slepand.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *wyþynne & wyþynne.*

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out  
these lines; but they are in Wace,  
ii. 17, l. 8761-2.

<sup>4</sup> *cosa.*

<sup>5</sup> *non myght ore.* (La gent qui  
estoit sans justice, Wace, ii. 17, l.  
8773.)

<sup>6</sup> *of.* [leaf 55, back.]



|                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| He dide comaunde, vpon þer lyf,                   |      |
| pat wedded men schold bryng þer <sup>1</sup> wyf, | 9272 |
| <sup>2</sup> & opere honeste of his meyne,        |      |
| . Man or woman, wheþer þey be ;                   |      |
| Al he bad vntil his feste,                        |      |
| pat were worþy & honeste. <sup>2</sup>            | 9276 |

wives, to his  
Feast.

¶ De festo Vtery Regis.

|                                                   |      |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|
| When alle were comen þat schold or wylde,         |      | When all are     |
| . Innes taken, ne <sup>3</sup> fulfild,           |      | come, and Mass   |
| & at þe kirke þer seruise seyde,                  |      | is said,         |
| . In halles & hailes bordes leyde,                | 9280 |                  |
| þe kyng was set, & serued of mees,                |      | Uther is seated  |
| & at þat oper ende was a dees ;                   |      |                  |
| þer set þe barons of pris,                        |      | and opposite     |
| þe Erl of Cornewaille ageyn his vys ;             | 9284 | him, Earl Gor-   |
| By hym sat Igerne his wyf,                        |      | lens (who        |
| . Of whas fairhede was speche ryf ;               |      | rescued him),    |
| In al þe reome, <sup>4</sup> so fair was non,     |      | with his lovely  |
| Ne of swylk kynde, bot scheo al on. <sup>5</sup>  | 9288 | countess Igerne. |
| Often þe kyng had herd hure preyse,               |      |                  |
| pat sche was fair, god, & curteyse ;              |      | Uther has often  |
| Mikel desired he hure to se.                      |      | wished to see    |
| When he hure sey, <sup>6</sup> more louede he ;   | 9292 | her,             |
| . þe sight of hure hym al to-blast ; <sup>7</sup> |      | and when he      |
| His herte on hure ageyn he cast ;                 |      | does so, the     |
|                                                   |      | sight of her     |
|                                                   |      | blows him all    |
|                                                   |      | to pieces.       |

<sup>1</sup> his.

<sup>2-2</sup> & if he wylde his opere meigne  
pat were auenant in courte to se.  
Man or woman þat were  
honeste  
att he bed vnto his feste.

<sup>3</sup> &.

<sup>4</sup> regne.

<sup>5</sup> ne of suilk was þer non.

<sup>6</sup> hir sawe.

<sup>7</sup> att to brast.



¶ De Igerne, Comitissa Cornubye.

Eating or  
drinking,  
Igerne is always  
in Uther's head,  
and he can't  
take his eyes  
off her.  
He sends her  
presents,  
smiles at her,  
and looks  
loving;  
but she'll have  
none of him.

Earl Gorlens  
sees Uther's  
little tricks,

and at once  
starts up from  
the board,  
takes his wife,  
calls his  
knights, and  
goes off  
to Cornwall.  
But before he  
goes,  
Uther orders  
him back again,

or he'll be his  
enemy,

Wheþer he et or drank, spak ought or nought,  
Igerne was euere in his þought, 9296

Ne cam sche neuere out of his hert,  
To hure was his eye euere ouer-thwert.  
By his priues often [he] hure<sup>1</sup> grette,  
& his presentes byforn hure sette, 9300  
Often hure lout,<sup>2</sup> & on hure low,  
& made semblaunt of loue ynow.

Hure contenaunce was, & hure semblaunt,  
Sche nought ne seyde, ne nought wold graunt;  
þe kyng of hure nought vnderstod 9305  
In contenaunce but<sup>3</sup> stable & god.

What for laughynge & oþer tyhtes,  
What for presentes & oþer delites,<sup>4</sup> 9308  
þe Erl perceyued & þoughte ful ȝerne  
þe kyng louede his wyf Igerne;  
& þoughte<sup>5</sup> no feyþ til [him] wold<sup>6</sup> bere,  
But he in pes his wyf myght were. 9312

Vp þen stirt he fro þe bord—  
To þe kyng ne spak he word,—  
His wyf by þe hand he hent,  
& calde his knyghtes, & þennes<sup>7</sup> went. 9316

Hastely þer hors were bone,  
& to Cornewaille þey come sone.  
Er he was redy for<sup>8</sup> to wende,  
þe kyng comaunded, as he was hende, 9320

‘ þat he schold comen to court a-geyn,  
‘ Or he dide vylenye<sup>9</sup> til his souereyn;  
‘ And ȝyf he ne wolde come bleþely, [lf. 40, bk., col. 2.]  
‘ Waite hym wel as for<sup>10</sup> his enemy.’ 9324

<sup>1</sup> of he hir.

<sup>2</sup> oft on hir luke.

<sup>3</sup> bo.

<sup>4</sup> sightes.

<sup>5</sup> þoughte = þought he. P. He þouht.  
[leaf 55, back, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> þat faith he ne wild him.

<sup>7</sup> þien.

<sup>8</sup> ȝare redy.

<sup>9</sup> els did he vilt.

<sup>10</sup> kepe him wele he were.



- þe kynges sonde he wolde nought here,  
 He made no force of his preyere.  
 When þe kyng wyste þat he wold nought  
 . Come ageyn, as he bisought, 9328  
 He manased hym wyþ [felle]<sup>1</sup> herte,  
 . & seyde he schold hit<sup>2</sup> sore smerte.  
 . ffor no<sup>3</sup> manace ne wolde he byde;  
 . Bot he ne wyste what scholde bytide. 9332  
 Two casteles he hadde in Cornewaille,  
 þo he warnished wyþ vitaille;  
 In þe castel of Tyntagel  
 He dide his wyf to kepe wel; 9336  
 Of defens hit hadde<sup>4</sup> gret los,  
 Wyþ dyk & se hit<sup>5</sup> ys in clos;  
 Who-so kepes þat [zate]<sup>6</sup> in nede,  
 In oper stede dar<sup>7</sup> hym nought drede; 9340  
 þer-inne scheo was<sup>8</sup> zemed & sperd,  
 & he til his oper castel ferd;  
 pider he ledde his souders,  
 . To kepe þe kyng at sautes sers; 9344  
 I þat castel was, þat he to cam,  
 þe force of al his erldam.  
 with all his  
 forces.

Gorlens dis-  
regards Uther's  
orders,

and Uther de-  
clares he shall  
smart for it.

Gorlens puts  
his wife Igerne  
in his impreg-  
nable castle of  
Tyntagel,

and goes him-  
self to his other  
castle,

¶ De obsisione Gorlencii Comititis per Regem.

- þe kyng wyste he made purueaunce  
 A-gayns hym to stande<sup>9</sup> to chaunce. 9348  
 þe kyng also sone purueyed his host;  
 . þer þe Erl was, byseged þe cost;  
 þe castel þat þe Erl was in,  
 He byseged hyt for to wyn. 9352  
 There Uther  
 besieges him;

<sup>1</sup> felle.

<sup>2</sup> it suld him.

<sup>3</sup> att þe.

<sup>4</sup> it his.

<sup>5</sup> see & fen it.

<sup>6</sup> þe zate. (la porte, Wace, l. 8852.) See l. 9412 below.

<sup>7</sup> þar.

<sup>8</sup> he did hir be.

<sup>9</sup> at stand.



but after a week  
wins nothing.

Gorlens ex-  
pects the Irish  
king's help.

Uther is in a  
hurry to get  
Igerne,  
and is disgusted  
at losing his  
time.  
He tells Ulfyn

how bad he is.  
"I love Igerne  
so much that I  
shall die if it  
lasts long.

I can't eat or  
drink.  
Love has  
brought me to  
death's door,  
What shall I  
do?"  
Ulfyn says:  
"You love  
your foe's wife,  
and think to  
win her by  
war!  
You're too late.  
Who put this  
way of making  
love in your  
head?  
I can't advise  
you about it.  
No doubt  
Merlin can,

Al a wyke<sup>1</sup> þe kyng þer lay,  
. He spilte his tyme, sped of no pray;  
Of þe Erl nought he ne wan,  
. Ne dide scape til no man, 9356  
ffor þe Erl kepte euere þe comyng  
Hy[m]<sup>2</sup> to socoure þe Irische kyng.  
þe kyng sey þe sege was wast;  
Igerne to haue he wilde hym hast; 9360  
He was ful gretlyk onoyed  
. þat his tyme so was destroyed.  
He calde Vlfyn, his priue baroun,  
To conceille hym of som resoun: 9364  
"Vlfyn," he saide, "þou conseil me;  
" My beste conseil y take at þe.  
" On Igerne y am enamured<sup>3</sup> strong,  
. " I deye ȝyf hit me laste long; 9368  
" Y ne may slepe, wyþ wo y wake,<sup>4</sup>  
" So am y in hure loue y-take;  
" Ete ne drynke ne may y nought,  
" So lowe hure loue haþ me<sup>5</sup> brought; 9372  
" Loue dereþ me so, to deye<sup>6</sup> y dred;  
" Y aske conseil how y may sped."  
Seyd Vlfyn þen, "y here merueilles!  
" þou louest his wyf þat þou<sup>7</sup> assailles! 9376  
" Wenestow þer-wyþ to ben aboue?  
" þorow werre wynne<sup>8</sup> his wyf to loue?  
. " Hure to loue þou com to late;<sup>9</sup>  
" Hure loue to gete, hure lord to take.<sup>9</sup> 9380  
. " At wham toke þou þis conseil, [leaf 41.]  
. " To loue in tene & in<sup>10</sup> turpeyl?  
" Conseil of þis can y non kest;  
" Of swylk conseil Merlyn can best; 9384

<sup>1</sup> *seuenyght.* [lf. 56.]

<sup>3</sup> *anamorde.*

<sup>4</sup> *slepe wo .I. waken.*

<sup>5</sup> *hir luf benethen has me so.*

<sup>6</sup> *luf has me wonded dede.*

<sup>2</sup> *him.*

<sup>7</sup> *lufes his wife & him.*

<sup>8</sup> *to wyn.*

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> *with.*



- " He can ynow of swylke craftes,  
 " Of alle *vigures*<sup>1</sup> he turnes þe schaftes.  
 " ȝyf he can kenne þe no weye,<sup>2</sup>  
 " Igerne to wynne, can no man seye."<sup>2</sup> 9388 If he can't, no  
 þorow þe conseil of sire Vlfyn one else can."  
 þe kyng dide sende after Merlyn.  
 Merlyn com þe kyng byforn;  
 He seide, " Merlyn, y am ner lorn!<sup>3</sup> 9392 So Uther sends  
 " Conseille me, syn þat þou can, for Merlin,  
 " & y schal euere-more be þy man! and tells him,  
 " Y haue ner lorn wyt & lyf " I've nearly  
 " ffor Igerne, þe kynges<sup>4</sup> wyf! 9396 lost  
 " Help me now, þat y hure haue; wit and life for  
 " & what þou wilt, y vouche saue." Igerne.

## Dicta

- " Syre,"<sup>5</sup> seid Merlyn, " God furbede  
 " þat þou for hure schold be in drede,  
 " ffor Igerne to haue þe ded!<sup>6</sup> 9401 Merlin says:  
 " Er schold y don anoper red; " God forbid  
 " þou schalt hure haue wypoute pyne, that you should  
 " & ȝit wol y haue nought of þyne. 9404 die for Igerne!  
 " Bot, sire Vter, þou wost hit wel, I'll manage it.  
 " Strong ys þe hold of Tyntagel; You shall have  
 " & scho ys loken þer-yn so strait, her.  
 " Bot þorow queyntise or deseit 9408 But you know  
 " Noman ne may hure out[e] take, Tyntagel is so  
 " þorow non engyn þat men can make; strong that you  
 " ffor two men þat oughtes<sup>7</sup> be, 9412 can only get her  
 " May kepe þe issue<sup>8</sup> & þe entre; by stratagem.  
 " & þey al hit be wykke to wynne,  
 " fful wel schal y þe brynge<sup>9</sup> þer ynne. Two brave men  
 can keep the  
 castle gate.  
 But I'll take  
 you in.

<sup>1</sup> *figures*.<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leave out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *am forlorn*.<sup>4</sup> *erles*.<sup>5</sup> *Sir kyng*. [leaf 56, col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> *in drede for to haf þi dede*.<sup>7</sup> *without (aht, oht, brave)*.<sup>8</sup> *issheu*.<sup>9</sup> *I. sall do þe*.



¶ *De transfiguracione Merlynny.*

I can turn any  
form into  
another ;

can change the  
face, body, and  
speech of any  
one,

so that they  
shall be thought  
another's.  
Now Earl Gor-  
lens has two  
trusted knights,  
Bertel and  
Jordon.

I'll make you,  
Uther, like the  
Earl ; I'll be  
Bertel ; and  
Ulfin shall be  
Jordon.  
We'll all three  
go to Tyntagel,

and you shall  
work your will  
with Igerne."

Uther gives his  
host in charge  
to a leader.

" ffor alle manere forme þat ys,  
" Kan y turne til oper<sup>1</sup> lyknes: 9416  
" A face to be like anoþer,  
" & a body vnto þat oper;<sup>2</sup>  
" Stature of body, speche & leryng,<sup>3</sup>  
" & contenaunce of ylka þyng,<sup>3</sup> 9420  
" Y schal chaunge, what so þey are,<sup>3</sup>  
" Ilkon schal wene þat oper ware.<sup>3</sup>  
" þe Erl cherly<sup>4</sup> wyþ hym ledes  
" Two knyghtes, doughti of dedes; 9424  
" Sire Bertel þen hat þat on,<sup>5</sup>  
" þat oper heyghte sire Iordon;  
" þis are his priue conseillours:  
" Til þeir lyknesse y schal turne oures; 9428  
" Y þe Erles lyknesse y schal þe dight,  
" Y schal be lyke Bertil<sup>6</sup> his knyght,  
" Lyke Iordan schal<sup>7</sup> be Vlfyn;  
" þus schal we come þe castel yn; 9432  
" Alle þre at euen schol<sup>7</sup> we go  
" To þe castel, wyþouten mo,  
" & speke þer speche & þer facounde;  
" We schul<sup>7</sup> come in þen on a stounde. 9436  
" Dred þe nought of no man,  
" ffor no queyntise þat any can;  
" And þou schalt haue hure to<sup>8</sup> þy wyll, [lf. 41, col. 2.]  
" þy grete desir<sup>9</sup> to fulfille." 9440  
Al þat euere Merlyn teld,  
As gospel þe kyng hit held:  
þen comaunded he til on certeyn,  
þe host to kepe til he com ageyn. 9444

<sup>1</sup> turne þe.

<sup>2</sup> & his agayn vnto þe toþer.

<sup>3</sup> (? MS. *heryng*.) The Petyt  
MS. leaves out these four lines.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *chly*. P. þe erle specially.

<sup>5</sup> *bretett hate þe ton*.

<sup>6</sup> & .I. satt be *bretett*.

<sup>7</sup> *satt*.

<sup>8</sup> *at*.

<sup>9</sup> *þernyng*.



- pem charmed Merlyn þorow vertue,  
 & colour & cloþyng dide remue,  
 Contenaunce, speche, þe same assise;  
 . He *turnde* þe kyng on þe Erles wyse,  
 . & he & Vlfyn, to alle<sup>1</sup> sightes,  
 . As Bertel & Iordan, þe Erles knyghtes.  
 At euen þey come to Tyntagel,  
 & þo þat wende haue knowe þem wel,  
 Receyued þeym wyþ glad[e] chere,  
 As hit were þe Erl lef & dere.  
 . What þey wilde, non wold þem werne;  
 þe kyng lay þat myght by Igerne,  
 & scheo conseyued of hym þat nyght  
 Arthur, þat was so mykel of myght. **Concepcio  
 Arthury.**  
 In þe host was told anon,  
 ‘ þat non wiste whider þe kyng was gon : ’  
 His ordynaunce þey al fursok,  
 þat þe kyng þe kepyng took;  
 þey armed hem to make asaut,  
 . ffor þat þey hadde of heued default,  
 & went forþ y þe morn[e]<sup>2</sup> tyde;  
 . Non for oþer<sup>3</sup> wold oþer abyde;  
 Of bataille sette þey no right<sup>4</sup> reнге,  
 . Bot ilkon forþ, þe kyng to venge.  
<sup>5</sup> þen gon þey assaille boþ fer & hende.  
 þe Erl ageyn þem faste ga[n] fende:  
 As he stod, er he lest<sup>6</sup> wende,  
 He was schot to deþe, & made his ende.<sup>5</sup>  
 . When he was ded, his side gan slaken;  
 Lightly was þen þe castel taken.
- Merlin charms
- 9448 Uther into Gorlens, himself into Bertel, and Ulfyn into Jordon.  
 They go to Tyntagel, are received gladly, and
- 9452 Tyntagel, are received gladly, and
- 9456 get all they want.  
 Uther lies by Igerne, and begets Arthur on her.
- 9460 Uther’s men hear that he’s away;  
 they won’t attend to his substitute,
- 9464 but go to assault Gorlens’s castle, all out of proper formation.
- 9468 Gorlens defends his castle,
- 9472 but is shot and killed,  
 and his castle soon won.

<sup>1</sup> *be þo.* [leaf 56, back.]

<sup>2</sup> *morne.*

<sup>3</sup> *honour.*

<sup>4</sup> *ne bataile set ne rightly.*

<sup>5-5</sup> *was þer non held right aray.  
 bot ilkone went to þe assay.*

*on ilk a side þei gaf batayle.*

*þe erle agayn gan fast assaile.*

*as he & his stode þam to fende.*

*he was slayn or [þat] þei  
 wende.*

<sup>6</sup> MS. *left* (*lest*=least).



¶ De Morte Comit̃is Cornubye.

Gorlens's men  
that escape tell  
Igerne that her  
husband is  
dead, and his  
castle taken.

Uther (per-  
sonating Gor-  
lens) starts up,  
says "Thank  
God, I'm alive!

Don't believe  
such lies!  
No doubt my  
men are in  
trouble. When  
I left, I never  
told any one  
where I was  
going;

and as I haven't  
come back yet,  
they think I'm  
dead.  
It is a sad  
thing that my  
men and castle  
are lost;  
but I'm alive,  
thank God!

I'll go now, and  
make peace  
with Uther,  
and be friends  
with all."

Igerne agrees.

þo þat askaped wyþ þe lyf,  
Brought tydyng to the Erles wyf, 9476  
' Hure lord was slayn y þe mornynge,  
' þe castel taken vnto þe kyng.'  
þe kyng hym selue þe tydyng herd,  
He styrt vp, & þem answerd: 9480  
" Let be þour tales to tene my wyf,<sup>1</sup>—  
" Y þank God y am her on lyf!<sup>2</sup>—  
" To telle swylk tales for to greue!  
" Lesynges ar nought to byleue! 9484  
" Y wot wel þey are in doute;  
" Vnwarned fro þeym y went oute;  
" ffor when y out of þe castel zede,  
" Y spak to non,—þat ys þer drede,— 9488  
" Ne seyde whider þat y wold<sup>3</sup> go,  
" ffor doute & treson<sup>4</sup> of my fo;  
" & for y cam nought sone<sup>5</sup> agayn,  
" Wene þey now þat y be<sup>6</sup> slayn. 9492  
" Bot þat my folk doun ys born,  
" Slayn, & [eke] þe castel lorn,  
" Hit may do tene & greuaunce;  
" Bot y lyue, God þanky þe<sup>7</sup> chaunce! 9496  
" I schal me haste, out y schal<sup>8</sup> wende,  
" Pes for to seke; þe kyng ys hende.  
" Er any more skape falle, [leaf 41, back, col. 1.]  
" Y wyl acorde me wiþ þem alle. 9500  
" ȝyf he wyþ sege sperre me her-yn,<sup>9</sup>  
" More wo þan ys, þen scholde bygyn."<sup>9</sup>  
To þat conseil Igerne redde,—  
Alle tymes þe kyng scheo dredde;— 9504

<sup>1</sup> þei be not trod.

<sup>2</sup> I. am o life .I. tanke it god.

<sup>3</sup> suld. [leaf 56, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> drede.

<sup>5</sup> suyth.

<sup>6</sup> am.

<sup>7</sup> lyf þank god þat.

<sup>8</sup> witt .I.

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.



In armes boþe ilk oþer hent,  
 þe kyng hure kyste, & out he went.  
 ¶ When þey<sup>1</sup> passed, alle þre,  
 Ilkon was, as fel to be,<sup>2</sup>  
 & come dryuande vntil þe host;  
 After þe Erl he spyrd most,  
 Who gaf conseil for to go,  
 þe castel to take, þe Erl to slo?  
 þe soþe þenne<sup>3</sup> was hym told,  
 Of on & oþer, symple & bold.  
 þe kyng þer-fore was wo ynow,  
 He wraped wyþ hem þat hym slow;  
 Bot longe nold he þer-fore mourne,  
 To Tyntagel a-geyn gan tourne,  
 & to þeym of þe castel spak  
 & seide: "y rede ȝe turne ȝour bak,  
 . ffor he þat bataille on me bed,  
 " þe Erl ȝour lord, [he] ys now ded<sup>4</sup>;  
 " Now schol ȝe of non fynde socour  
 . " Agayn[e]s me to stande in stour."  
 When þey herde þe kyng þus seyd,  
 þer socour lorn, þer heued<sup>5</sup> doun leyd,  
 þe castel anon til hym þey ȝolde,  
 . & leet hym do what þat he wolde.  
 He ȝede anon to dame Igerne;  
 . Als he had don, he teld hire ȝerne,  
 . Al how he by hure lay,  
 . & how he wente from hure away:

Uther kisses  
and leaves her.

9508 He, Merlin, and  
Ulfin, take their  
own forms,  
and Uther asks  
his men who  
advised the  
9512 attack on Gor-  
lens.

9516 He is angry at  
first,

but soon turns  
back to Tyn-  
tagel,

9520 tells the folk  
that their Earl  
is dead, and  
they can't  
resist any  
longer.

9524

9528 They give up  
Tyntagel to  
Uther,  
and he tells  
Igerne

9532 how he lay by  
her,

¶ Rex desponsauit Igerniam.

. " Y am," he seide, " wyþouten wyf,  
 . " & þou art a sengle woman of lyf;

and offers to  
wed her.

<sup>1</sup> þei were.

<sup>2</sup> com estre dut, *Wace*, ii. 28, l.  
9022.

<sup>3</sup> sone.

<sup>4</sup> he is dede.

<sup>5</sup> hede.



|                                                                    |                                                   |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| She consents.                                                      | " Y wol þe wedde, ȝyf þou wilt so."               |      |
|                                                                    | Dame Igerne consented þer-to :                    | 9536 |
|                                                                    | " Of no deseite nere wist y ;                     |      |
|                                                                    | " Bot of þy weddyng, sire, graunt mersy."         |      |
|                                                                    | þe child scheo <sup>1</sup> conseyued byforn,     |      |
| Arthur is born ;                                                   | When tyme fel, hit was born :                     | 9540 |
|                                                                    | Arthur was þe childes name,                       |      |
|                                                                    | A noble man, of ful gret fame.                    |      |
| then a daughter<br>Anna, who is                                    | A doughter þey hadde,—Anne sche hight,—           |      |
|                                                                    | pat gyuen was til a doughti knyght,               | 9544 |
| married to sir<br>Loth, and has a<br>son, Gawain<br>the courteous. | Vntil sire Loth of Lonneys ;                      |      |
|                                                                    | Hys sone was Wawayn þe Curteys.                   |      |
|                                                                    | Syþen regned Vter ful longe,                      |      |
| Uther falls ill,<br>and lies bed-<br>ridden.                       | & þan fel hym <sup>2</sup> an yuel stronge ;      | 9548 |
|                                                                    | Bedrede doun ful longe he lay,                    |      |
|                                                                    | & languissed so forþ fro <sup>3</sup> day to day. |      |

### ¶ D[e] Octa, filio Hengisty.

|                                                                |                                                                                     |                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| The keepers<br>of Octa and<br>Ebessa (see p.<br>324, l. 9256). | þo pat kepte Octa, Hengistes sone,<br>& Ebessa, <sup>4</sup> at Londone in prysone, | 9552                     |
|                                                                | þey greued þem of þer <sup>5</sup> longe loking,                                    |                          |
|                                                                | And Octa gaf þem mykel þynge.                                                       |                          |
|                                                                | ffor gyftes gyuen ofte & gret,                                                      | [leaf 41, back, col. 2.] |
| let them out of<br>prison, and go<br>with them to<br>Saxony.   | þey leet hem scape of þe prison sket,                                               | 9556                     |
|                                                                | & wente wyþ hem ouer þe se                                                          |                          |
|                                                                | In-til Saxoyne, þeyr contre.                                                        |                          |
| Octa gathers a<br>host,                                        | þer gadered Octa ful gret host ;                                                    |                          |
|                                                                | Toward our kyng þey blewen <sup>6</sup> bost ;                                      | 9560                     |
| gets a fleet,                                                  | He purchased <sup>7</sup> hym a flute on flod ;                                     |                          |
|                                                                | Wyþ men of armes & <sup>8</sup> archers god                                         |                          |

<sup>1</sup> *scho had.* [leaf 57.]<sup>2</sup> *in.*<sup>3</sup> *languysced fro.*<sup>4</sup> *Cosa.*<sup>5</sup> *þei were greued of.*<sup>6</sup> *he lewe.*<sup>7</sup> *purueid.*<sup>8</sup> *with knyghtes & with.*



- Toward Scotland þey gan vp ryue,  
 Pyled & brent, men broughte of lyue. 9564
- Our kyng þat lay in langoryng,<sup>1</sup> ¶ De langore  
 Of hym was non help ne socuring Vtery Regis. Uther lies ill,  
 His lond for to fende &<sup>2</sup> were, and  
 . He myghte nought ryse armes to bere; 9568 cannot rise.  
 per-fore he bad alle his barouns  
 Don after Lotes<sup>3</sup> somouns,  
 ffor he was doughti, noble & wys,<sup>4</sup>  
 & sley cheuentayn of god auys.<sup>5</sup> 9572 a skilful chief-  
 Sire Octa þat hadde folk ynowe, tain.  
 Oueral þe Bretons þei pyled<sup>6</sup> & slowe; Octa pillages  
 He bolded hym wyþ mykel pryde, the Britons  
 þat þe kyng ne myghte go ne ryde; 9576  
 To meschef he putte al þat he fond,<sup>7</sup>  
 . Man & wyf, þorow al þys lond.<sup>7</sup>  
 Bot often Lot wyþ hym met,  
 & ofte hym chaced þorow<sup>8</sup> baret. 9580  
 Many tyme of hym he wan,  
 & eft on hym þat oper ran:—  
 Hit ys custume þat werre bygynne,<sup>7</sup>  
 Somme to lese, & somme to wynne:—<sup>7</sup> 9584  
 Lot ful often<sup>9</sup> dide hym fle,  
 & chaced hym vnto þe se;  
 Bot gret dedeyn [was] of þe barouns,  
 þat wold nought come for Lotes somouns,—  
 þey þought hem al [so]<sup>10</sup> gentil of blod, 9589  
 & al so mykel in stede stod  
 At ylka tyme, or more þan he,  
 . & also mykel of rente & fe;— 9592  
 pus þey delayed,<sup>11</sup> long was þe drede,

lands in Scot-  
land, and  
ravages it.

Uther lies ill,  
and

cannot rise.

He bids his  
barons  
obey his son-  
in-law, Loth,

a skilful chief-  
tain.

Octa pillages  
the Britons

and slays all  
the folk he  
finds.

Loth often  
beats him,

and then he  
beats Loth,  
(as is the cus-  
tom in war).

But the British  
barons will not  
obey Loth,  
think them-  
selves as good  
as he,

or better,

and delay their  
musters,

<sup>1</sup> langoure . . . socoure.

<sup>2</sup> fend no.

<sup>3</sup> to do after sire loth. [lf. 57, cl. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> knyght of gode auys.

<sup>5</sup> douhty man large & wys.

<sup>6</sup> þe bretons ouer robbed.

<sup>7</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>8</sup> with.

<sup>9</sup> son.

<sup>10</sup> als.

<sup>11</sup> deleyd.



|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| till Octa wins<br>all the north,<br>and the south<br>to St. Alban's.                | Til <sup>1</sup> þe kyng sey how þat hit zede;<br>. ffor Octa, al þe Norþ he wan,<br>. & of the Southe to seint Alban;<br>. þys wan he for þe barons defaut,<br>. þat for Lot nolde gyue <sup>2</sup> assaut. | 9596               |
| The land cries<br>to Uther,                                                         | Al þe lond, to þe kyng þey pleyned<br>þat þe barons alle <sup>3</sup> feyned.                                                                                                                                 | 9600               |
| and he, though<br>sick, rises<br>from his bed,<br>has a litter<br>made,             | ƿ Bot hereþ now of þe kynges wyl,<br>þat lefte <sup>4</sup> for syknesse ne for yl<br>þat he ne ros vp ful auster,<br>& dide hym make a liter                                                                 | 9604               |
| and says he'll<br>see who'll<br>neglect his<br>summons.                             | Corneled <sup>5</sup> as an hors bere,<br>& seyde þis word þat alle myght here:<br>“ Now schal y se ho schal wyþstonde,<br>“ & ho wyl come for my sonde!”                                                     | 9608               |
| He summons<br>first those who<br>disobeyed<br>Loth.<br>They all come<br>to Verulam, | He somounde firste þo til his werre<br>þat deyned nought for Lot come nerre.<br>þey come, & were ful sore agrysen<br>. Whan þey wyste þe kyng was rysen.                                                      | 9612               |
| where St.<br>Alban lies,                                                            | To þe toun of Wyrolhram <sup>6</sup><br>þe kyng & alle þe barons cam:<br>Seint <sup>7</sup> Albon, þer lygges he,<br>þat highte Wyrolhram <sup>6</sup> þe cite.                                               | [leaf 42.]<br>9616 |
| and where Octa<br>and his host<br>are.<br>Uther besieges<br>St. Alban's,            | þer com þey to þe toun wyþ wyn; <sup>8</sup><br>Octa & hyse were alle þer-yn.<br>þe kyng bysegged hit aboute,<br>Dide make engyns stronge & stoute.                                                           | 9620               |
| but the town is<br>so strong,                                                       | þe toun was þanne so strong & fyn,<br>Hit hadde no dere <sup>9</sup> of non engyn;<br>Octa & hyse were ryght <sup>10</sup> bolde,                                                                             |                    |
| and Octa and<br>his men so<br>bold,                                                 | . þey hadde god folk & syker holde,                                                                                                                                                                           | 9624               |

<sup>1</sup> to.<sup>2</sup> wild gif non.<sup>3</sup> att þam.<sup>4</sup> He ne left.<sup>5</sup> kirneld.<sup>6</sup> Verolhram.<sup>7</sup> At saynt. [leaf 57, back, col. 1.]<sup>8</sup> þe kyng com þat toun to wyn.<sup>9</sup> doute.<sup>10</sup> full.



- & seyde, 'hit was neuere [to] fere<sup>1</sup>  
 ' Of half a dedman lyggyng on<sup>2</sup> bere,  
 ' Ne for swyche on to kepe þe<sup>3</sup> gates loken ;  
 . " Cowardyse of vs scholde<sup>4</sup> be spoken, 9628 it would be  
 . " ffor to haue of swylkon drede, cowardice to  
 " pat in a bere to bataille zede." keep the gates  
 . Alas ! hit<sup>5</sup> was no Cristen man, shut for him.  
 . þes<sup>6</sup> Octa þat so fer wan. 9632  
 His ouerwenyng & his pryde  
 Dide þem opene þe gates wyde,  
 & com stoutly vnto þe byker ;  
 . Bot þer hap was al vnsyker ;<sup>7</sup> 9636  
 . ffor synne of Octa, fals & fursworn,  
 Dide al his felawes & hym be lorn ;  
 ffor slayn was þere sire Octa,  
 & his cosyn sire Ebessa ; 9640  
 Oper ynowe zit þey skaped,  
 Vntil Scotland þey hem raped,  
 & ches þeym a prynce, sire Colgroyn,  
 pat was sire Octa cosyn. 9644  
 . Longe þey lendend<sup>8</sup> by þat cost,  
 . & gedered þere<sup>9</sup> anoþer host.  
 ¶ But for þis noble ouercomyng  
 pat God gaf Vter oure kyng, 9648  
 ffor ioie he stirte vp<sup>10</sup> of his bere  
 Als he hadde be<sup>11</sup> hol & fere,  
 . Al armed in ire[n]<sup>12</sup> & stel,  
 & bolded alle his barons wel, 9652  
 & seyde, þus standynge, & low :<sup>13</sup> and says,  
 " It is more

that they say  
they've no fear  
of a half-dead  
man on a bier :

For pride they  
open their gates,  
and attack  
Uther ;

but Octa's sin  
is their destruc-  
tion,  
and he and  
Ebessa are also  
slain.

Some of their  
men escape to  
Scotland, and  
choose Col-  
grym king.

For joy of this  
noble victory,  
Uther starts  
from his bier as  
if he were well,

**Dicta  
Vtery.**

<sup>1</sup> it was schame to bere fere.

<sup>2</sup> for a half dede man in a.

<sup>3</sup> For to hold þer.

<sup>4</sup> of þam.

<sup>5</sup> he.

<sup>6</sup> þis.

<sup>7</sup> was not siker. For the next  
two lines P. has—

þer fals trouth did þam misfalle.

þat fett to wyn he wan þam alle.

<sup>8</sup> lenged.

<sup>9</sup> þam.

<sup>10</sup> out.

<sup>11</sup> had bene.

<sup>12</sup> Irne.

<sup>13</sup> standand & louh.



honour to lie  
in a bier, and  
win,

than be whole,  
and lie dead on  
the ground.  
Octa despised  
me, and

held me only a  
half-dead man;  
but the half-  
dead man has  
slain his whole  
foes,  
and lives still!  
I'll follow the  
fleers too,

and pay hard  
measure to the  
destroyers of  
our lands."

But the barons  
persuade Uther  
to keep still till  
he is cured,  
while

they chase  
the Saxons.

The pursuit  
ended, the  
Saxons gather  
again, and con-  
sult how to put  
Uther to death

" More worschip ys, as me þynkeþ<sup>1</sup> now,  
" In a bere for to lye,  
" In syknesse wyne þe maistríe, 9656  
" þan be a man hol & sound,  
" & schamely lygge ded on<sup>2</sup> ground.  
" Octa despised me many a day,  
" ffor þat y sek in bedde lay; 9660  
" Skornful wordes þey me bed,  
" & held me bot an half man<sup>3</sup> ded.  
" þe half dedman ful felonlyk  
" Hap slayn his fos, boþ hol & quyke. 9664  
" þe hole & quyke ar dede & fled;  
" ȝyt lyueþ þe syke þat lay in bed;  
" ȝit schal<sup>4</sup> y folewe þem þat fle!  
" Do dight ȝow alle, & wendeþ wyþ me! 9668  
" ffor no þyng ne schal<sup>5</sup> y leue  
" þat y ne schal exyle<sup>6</sup> & reue,  
" & ȝelde þem ful harde stoures,  
" þat my lond destruyde,<sup>7</sup> & ȝoures." 9672  
¶ When þe kyng had seyð his wille,  
Hys barons bed hym byleue stille  
Til he were warysched of his syknesse,  
Or his penaunce y-swaged lesse.<sup>8</sup> 9676  
þus departed alle þe barouns,  
& chased after þe Saxouns.  
When þe chas was al lefte, [leaf 42, col. 2.]  
& þe Saxoyns were gadered eft, 9680  
þey conseilled hem, & toke þer red,  
How þey might do þe kyng to ded:  
þey seide, 'ȝyf þey myghte þe kyng destruye,  
' He hadde non eir þat scholde þem noye; 9684  
' & al so lange as he myght lyue,  
' Bataille dirste þey neuere hym gyue,

<sup>1</sup> men say.

<sup>2</sup> schamfully leid to þe.

[leaf 57, back, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> cald me bot a man half.

<sup>4</sup> witt. ]

<sup>5</sup> no sekenes satt.

<sup>6</sup> .I. satt exille þam.

<sup>7</sup> My lond þei destroyed.

<sup>8</sup> or a partie suaged les.



- ‘ Bot ȝif hit were þorow tresoun,<sup>1</sup> 9688  
 ‘ To gyue hym venym & <sup>2</sup> poyoun.’ **Consilium** by poison.  
 ¶ þen ches þey men þat couþe swilk dede; **explora-** They choose  
 To go þider þey gaf þem mede: **torum.** assassins,  
 To Wyrolhram<sup>3</sup> þey bad hem go, bid them go to  
 & fonde<sup>4</sup> þe kyng for to slo. 9692 Verulam, and  
 In pouere<sup>5</sup> wede þey dide þem dight, kill Uther.  
 & þyder þey come byn<sup>6</sup> seuenyght; The assassins  
 Alle manere langage þey couþe come in poor  
 . þat semeþ<sup>7</sup> wel in traytours mouþe. 9696 clothing,  
 þey ȝede aboute þe court to spye and spy about  
 Wher þey myght do þer trayterye. the court.  
 So yuel þey spedde of<sup>8</sup> þer pray, They can’t get  
 þat þey ne myght come þer þe kyng lay. 9700 to the king,  
 So longe al wey to þe<sup>9</sup> court þey ferde, but they find  
 þat þey perceyued & often herde that he always  
 þat for certeyn was hit told, drinks cold  
 þe kyng drank nought bot water cold, 9704 water  
 þat was best for his peyne, from a well  
 & euere of o welle certeyne near his hall.  
 þat sprong vp byside his halle, 9708  
 . & beste water forby alle;  
 Non oper þyng þought hym so god,  
 . þat best ageyn his yuel stod.  
 When þo þat his deþ so sought,  
 Wip þer wyles auailed nought, 9712 This well they  
 þey wente & venymed þat welle poison,  
 . Of þat he drank, als þey herd telle.  
 ¶ When þey had don þat wykked dede, 9715 and then leave  
 Out of toune sone þey ȝede, **De morte** the town,  
 & ay lystned what<sup>10</sup> þey herd seye, **Vtery.** and listen to  
 hear of the  
 king’s death.

<sup>1</sup> poyson.<sup>2</sup> or.<sup>3</sup> Verolhram.<sup>4</sup> to fond.<sup>5</sup> pure.<sup>6</sup> & com þidir þat day.<sup>7</sup> comes.<sup>8</sup> wele þei sped neuer. [leaf 58.]<sup>9</sup> all gate so long to.<sup>10</sup> were listenand whan.



340 *Arthurus nobilissimus Rex Christianitatis.*<sup>1</sup>

|                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| When Uther<br>drinks the<br>poisoned water,<br>he turns black<br>and dies ;                                                                                                        | How þe kyng schold <sup>2</sup> sone deye.<br>þe kyng, whan he þe water drank,<br>He wax al blak, & bolned rank,                                                 | 9720 |
| and so do<br>many others<br>that drink of it,<br>till the wile is<br>found out.<br>Then the peo-<br>ple fill up the<br>well with earth<br>and stones, and<br>make a hill of<br>it. | & deyde sone yn <sup>3</sup> a þrowe<br>. Byfore his meyne þat hit <sup>4</sup> sowe ;<br>& so dede <sup>5</sup> fele oper mo<br>þat drank þerof, to deþ gon go. | 9724 |
| Uther is                                                                                                                                                                           | . & þis lasted a god whyle<br>Til men aperceyued þat gyle.<br>þen ȝede þe comune alle atones,<br>& stopped þe welle wyþ erþe & stones.                           | 9728 |
| buried at Stone-<br>henge.                                                                                                                                                         | So longe ber þey erþe þer til,<br>þat er was welle, now ys an hil.<br>When sire Vter oure kyng<br>Was ded, & don his endyng,                                     | 9732 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                    | At Stonhenges, as he seyde,<br>Bysyde his broþer men hym leyde.                                                                                                  |      |

¶ *Arthurus, filius Vtery, factus est Rex, & coronatus  
apud Cyrencestriam.*

|                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                    |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| A great Parlia-<br>ment                                                                                               | The Erchebishop his conseil held, [leaf, 42 back, col. 1.]<br>Of erles, barons, & knyghtes of scheld ;                                                             | 9736 |
| is held at<br>Cirencester,<br>and Arthur is<br>crowned king<br>by common<br>agreement.<br>He is only 15<br>years old. | . Ilkon after oper sent<br>To come to comune Parlement,<br>& after sire Vteres sone Arthorghe <sup>6</sup><br>To come to Circestre, þe noble <sup>7</sup> burghe ; | 9740 |
|                                                                                                                       | & þere bitaught hym þe coroun,<br>. þorow comun graunt of ilka baroun.<br>. fful ȝonge þen was he, lond to welde ; <sup>8</sup><br>ffyftene ȝer þan was his elde ; | 9744 |

<sup>1</sup> This is the heading to the page  
in the MS.

<sup>2</sup> þe kyng were ded or suld.

<sup>3</sup> son within.

<sup>4</sup> men þat þei.

<sup>5</sup> did.

<sup>6</sup> *Arthure.*

<sup>7</sup> to *Cecestre.*

<sup>8</sup> ȝelde. [leaf 58, col. 2.]



- . At Circestre þat tyme þar  
 . Was first tyme þat he croune bar;<sup>1</sup>  
 Some of his þewes y wil descrye;  
 I trowe y schal nought mykel lye:<sup>2</sup> 9748  
 ¶ Craftily dide he mannes dedes,  
 Doughtiest knyght at alle nedes;  
 . þan of myrþe most was<sup>3</sup> in halle,  
 . Glad-chered, louely, & lordlyest of alle;<sup>4</sup> 9752  
 Ageyn þe proude, proud herted<sup>5</sup> was he;  
 Ageyn þe meke, debonere<sup>6</sup> & ese;  
 þe hardiest man hym self to fende,  
 . Bleþely gaf, largely wold spende; 9756  
 þat nedful was, & hym bysought,  
 þat he myghte, he werned hym<sup>7</sup> nought;  
 Mykel loued he ioie & worthly<sup>8</sup> þynge,  
 Doughti dedes made of menyng;  
 Nobliche his court he ledde,  
 Richely alle hyse he fedde;  
 . Ilka day come tydynges newe;  
 . Gestes of ioie, wyþ knyghtes trewe; 9764  
 Ouer alle prynces þe pris he nam  
 Of curteseye & of wysdam;  
 Was no þyng so noble of þewes,<sup>9</sup>  
 As men reden of hym, & schewes.<sup>9</sup> 9768

I'll tell you  
 some of his  
 ways, and  
 think I sha'n't  
 lie much.  
 He is the  
 doughtiest man,  
 the merriest,  
 handsomest,  
 and lordliest.  
 Proud to the  
 proud, gentle to  
 the meek;  
 bold, generous,

a helper of the  
 needy,

9760 a doer of  
 doughty deeds,

and above all  
 princes in  
 courtesy and  
 wisdom.

When he had take þe regalte,  
 & mad op by<sup>10</sup> his wille fre,  
 ' þat Saxons schulde neuere haue pes  
 ' In stede of his þer þey ought ches,'—  
 Hys fader & his em þey slow,

9772 Arthur swears  
 the Saxons  
 shall never  
 have peace in  
 his land.

<sup>1</sup> *croune on hede nouht he ne bare.*

<sup>2</sup> *Noiant ne vous en mentirai,*  
*Wace, ii. 39. l. 9250.*

<sup>3</sup> *Man of myrth most.*

<sup>4</sup> *& glad to gle his gestis alle.*

<sup>5</sup> *man.*

<sup>6</sup> *suete.*

<sup>7</sup> *warned he.*

<sup>8</sup> *worþi.*

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
 lines. Wace has for them,

“Et de valor et de largece.”

ii. 40, l. 9264.

<sup>10</sup> *an othe he mad.*



|                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Arthur summons his folk,                                                                  | & oþer wo þey wroughte y-now,—<br>He dide somoune þe folk, & fette;<br>Largely he gaf, & wel þem hette,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 9776         |
| passes York<br>and meets the<br>Saxons, under<br>Colgrym, with<br>the Scots and<br>Picts, | . & bad hem be redy wyþ hym to wende:<br>þey passed ȝork toward <sup>1</sup> þe norþ ende.<br>Colgrym of Saxons was <sup>2</sup> cheuetayn<br>Syn Octa was at Wyrolhram slayn;<br>¶ þe Scottische men wer at his cry, ¶ Colgrim<br>þe Peytes wyþ hem were ay redy princeps<br>A-geyn Arthur, & <sup>3</sup> al þer myght, Saxonum.<br>& redy wyþ hym for to fyght. | 9780<br>9784 |
| near the river<br>Douglas.                                                                | Bysyde þe water of Douglas,<br>pere þey mette att a pas:<br>þe partys were bolde, & þoughte wel <sup>4</sup> byde;<br>Many on wer slayn on ilka syde.                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 9788         |
| Colgrym is<br>defeated,<br>and flees to<br>York,                                          | Desconfit was þer sire Colgrym,<br>. Vnneþe he scaped <sup>5</sup> wyþ mykel pyn;<br>Toward ȝork Colgrym fley,<br>Arthur hym pursued faste & ney; <sup>6</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 9792         |
| where Arthur<br>besieges him.                                                             | ȝork he tok for drede & doute, [leaf 42, back, col. 2.]<br>& Arþur byseged hym wyþoute.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |              |

## ¶ De Balduk fratre Colgrym.

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Colgrim's<br>brother Balduk               | Colgrim had a broþer on þe se,<br>Balduk, þat hadde gret meyne;                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 9796 |
| hears of<br>Arthur's be-<br>sieging York, | He abod þe kyng of Alemayne,<br>. þat cam wyþ host toward Bretayne.<br>Son hym was told of on & oþer<br>þat Arþur byseged Colgrim <sup>7</sup> his broþer,<br>How in bataille [he] was <sup>8</sup> disconfit.<br>. To londe he drow hym þenne as <sup>9</sup> tyt: | 9800 |

<sup>1</sup> to.<sup>2</sup> After þat Octa.<sup>6</sup> folowed bi bank & beghe.<sup>3</sup> at.<sup>7</sup> had biseged.<sup>4</sup> þat wele wild. [leaf 58, back.]<sup>8</sup> How he was in bataile.<sup>5</sup> vnneþis fled he.<sup>9</sup> drouh full.



- In a wode by þat cost,  
 ffyue mile Balduk busched<sup>1</sup> fro þe host ; 9804 and puts 6,000  
 & many were in his compayny, men in ambush,  
 Six þousand armed redy,  
 þat scholde haue stolen þat ylke nyght to attack  
 Vpon Arþur, al redy dight. 9808 Arthur at  
 A man perceyued þer enbuschment, night.  
 & til Arþur þe bodeword sent. Arthur is told  
 When Arþur wyste þat þey wer þer, of this wile.  
 He calde to consail þe Erl Cador 9812 He bids Earl  
 þat was lord of Cornewaille: Cador  
 Hys lyf to lese ne wold he faille.  
 . " Cador," he seyde, " Balduk wyþ gyle  
 . " Ys enbusched fro vs four<sup>2</sup> myle. 9816 take a force,  
 " Tak sex hundred of gode knyghtes,  
 " þre þousand oþer,<sup>3</sup> ȝyf þou myghtes ;  
 " Al vnwarned on þem falle,  
 . " Lightly may þou wynne þem alle." 9820 and fall on  
 . Sire Cador dight þem al redy, Balduk's men  
 & wente wyþoute noyse &<sup>4</sup> cry. when unarmed.  
 . Al vnwarned right þore þey ware ; Cador does so,  
 Sore<sup>5</sup> to smyte wold he nought spare ; 9824  
 þe most del was slayn of<sup>6</sup> þat frape, and slays more  
 Vnneþes myghter<sup>7</sup> any a-scape ; than half the  
 ȝyf any of hem ascape myght, Saxons.  
 þe derknesse<sup>8</sup> saued hem þat nyght, 9828 A few escape  
 & wode letted þem to renne ;<sup>9</sup> by help of the  
 . þe redy wey coup þey nought kenne.<sup>9</sup> darkness  
 ¶ Balduk fledde, & durst nought byde, and a wood.  
 ffro busche to busche<sup>10</sup> on ilka syde ; 9832 Balduk flees  
 Lorn he hadde<sup>11</sup> his men ilkon, from bush to  
 bush,

<sup>1</sup> *he bussed.*<sup>2</sup> *es bussed hiþen bot fyue.*<sup>3</sup> *de la geude* (foot-soldiers),  
*Wace*, ii. 42, l. 9317.<sup>4</sup> *or.*<sup>5</sup> *wele.*<sup>6</sup> *More þan half was slayn.*<sup>7</sup> *myght.*<sup>8</sup> *mirknes.* [leaf 58, back, col. 2.]<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>10</sup> *busk to busk.*<sup>11</sup> *lost he had.*



|                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                       |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| and doesn't<br>know how to<br>help,                                                                         | Conseil coupe he take at non<br>How he moughte his broþer helpe,—                                                                                                                     |                    |
| or to get to,<br>his brother<br>Colgrym.                                                                    | . Of gret los <sup>1</sup> mighte he make his ȝelpe,—                                                                                                                                 | 9836               |
| So, as he can<br>sing and harp,                                                                             | ffayn he wolde wyþ hym speke,<br>. Bot of his enemis ne <sup>2</sup> myght him wreke.                                                                                                 |                    |
| he feigns him-<br>self a juggler,<br>and comes to<br>Arthur's camp<br>with head and<br>beard all<br>shaven. | He coupe of notes & of layes,<br>& of harpe he knew þasayes; <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                             | 9840               |
|                                                                                                             | He feyned hym as a iogelour, <sup>4</sup><br>& cam to þe ost of kyng Arþour;<br>His hed, his berd, he dide al <sup>5</sup> schaue;<br>Men wend a <sup>6</sup> were a folted knaue;    | 9844               |
|                                                                                                             | . Als a gleman gan he synge,<br>& coupe a party of harpyng.<br>Longe he ȝede þus aboute,<br>Non ne wende of gyle ne doute;                                                            | 9848               |
| He gets to the<br>wall of York,<br>and Colgrym's<br>men let down a<br>rope,                                 | . Bot he was boþe wyly & sley; <sup>7</sup><br>þe wal he neighede ful ney; <sup>7</sup><br>. He spak to þeym, & þey hym knew,                                                         | [leaf 43.]<br>9852 |
| and draw him<br>into the city.                                                                              | Doun to hym a rop þey þrew,<br>& he knytte hym þer-inne al,<br>& þey drow hym ouer þe wal.<br>Netheles þey were at meschef,                                                           |                    |
| They want to<br>escape;<br>but soon hear<br>that their ally<br>Cheldrik has<br>landed with a<br>great host. | ffor to ascape þem were ful lef;<br>Bot sone com þem tydynges gode,<br>þat sex hundred schipes on flode <sup>8</sup><br>Out of Alemayne were comen,<br>& in Scotland had hauen nomen. | 9856<br>9860       |

<sup>1</sup> *of tynsetþ* (loss).<sup>2</sup> *he ne.*<sup>5</sup> *half.* (par mi, *Wace*, ii. 43, l. 9341.)<sup>3</sup> *att þe saies.*<sup>6</sup> *he.*<sup>4</sup> *him a Ioguloure.* (comme jonglère, MS. du Roi, 27; come Juglères, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; *Wace*, ii. 43, l. 9336.)<sup>7</sup> *slehi . . . neghi.*<sup>8</sup> *schippes gude.* (â cinq cent nes, *Wace*, ii. 44, l. 9355.)



¶ *De potestate Cheldryk contra Arthurum.*

- . Til Arthur cam bode als quyk,<sup>1</sup>  
 . pat þider schold come þe child <sup>2</sup> Cheldrik  
 . Wyþ mykel people <sup>3</sup> on ilka syde,  
 . pat Arthur schold nought dur abyde. 9864  
 . pe beste frendes þat were hym couþ,  
 . Conseilled hym turne toward þe South,  
 . & gyue no bataille at þat tyme,  
 . Bot let his folk sprede & ryme: 9868  
 . " Hys folk ys fresche <sup>4</sup> & ful auster  
 . " & twyes so fele <sup>4</sup> as we haue her;  
 . " & ȝyf þey folewe vs ouer Humber,  
 . " þe sonner schul we þem a-comber;  
 . " þen schal vs come folk ay fresche,  
 . " & þey schul euere wexe þe lesse."  
 . To þat conseil he gaf god tent,  
 . & to Londone right fro þenne <sup>5</sup> he went. 9876  
 . ¶ pe folk hadde sorewe & wo,  
 . pe drede <sup>6</sup> þat al to deþe schold go;  
 . pat hadde castele, þider þey drow;  
 . pat non ne hadde, þey hem slow;  
 . To holes & hilles men crep <sup>7</sup> for nede;  
 . pat sykerest was, had ful gret drede. <sup>8</sup> 9880

Arthur too  
hears of Cheld-  
rik's coming,

and is advised  
by his friends,

not to give  
battle at once,

but to retreat  
over the Hum-  
ber, and get  
fresh folk there,  
while Cheld-  
rik's men

grow less.  
So Arthur  
retreats to  
London.

His men are  
much afraid;

some are slain,  
others hide  
themselves.

¶ *Hic Arthurus misit pro Ohele, Rege Mynoris  
 Brytannie.*

- . But men gaf Arthur in conseil,  
 . To sende for his cosyn Ohel,<sup>9</sup>  
 . Kyng of Bretayne, his sister sone:  
 . By lettre his nedes gan hym mone, 9884

Arthur sends  
to his cousin  
Ohel, king of  
Britany,

<sup>1</sup> com tīþinges att quike.

<sup>2</sup> com kyng.

<sup>3</sup> folk mykitt.

<sup>4</sup> fett.

<sup>5</sup> fro þīþen to london. [leaf 59.]

<sup>6</sup> þei dred.

<sup>7</sup> crept.

<sup>8</sup> had grete nede.

<sup>9</sup> Oheile.



|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| and prays for help,                           | . & preyed hym of help a stounde,<br>. Or elles he scholde go to grounde: <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                           | 9888 |
| or he will lose his land.                     | “ Bot y som help of þe now haue,<br>“ Or of som oþer, my lond to saue,<br>“ Wypynne a þrowe hit schal be lorn,<br>“ þat oure aunstres han had byforn;<br>“ & schame hit were til oure lynage<br>“ So sone to lese myn heritage.” | 9892 |
| Ohel at once starts with all his forces,      | fful wel he <sup>2</sup> vnderstod his nede.<br>Wyþ al þe poer þat he myght spede                                                                                                                                                | 9896 |
| 15,000 knights and other men,                 | He made no long soiournynge,<br>Hors & harneys <sup>3</sup> he dide bryng,<br>ffyftene þousand helmes clers, <sup>4</sup><br>Wypoute seriauntz & archers.                                                                        | 9900 |
| and lands at Southampton. Arthur is rejoiced, | God wynd þey hadde þat gan hem dryue,<br>At Southaumptone þey dide vp ryue.<br>Mikel ioye made sire Arthurgh, <sup>5</sup><br>& feire receyued hym in toun & burgh.                                                              | 9904 |
| summons his folk, and they come.              | Wolde þey make no lenger <sup>6</sup> delay,<br>. ffor þey nadde neyþer drede naffray; <sup>7</sup><br>Bot sende messegers [ful] smert, <sup>8</sup><br>& folk com til hym wyþ ful god hert.                                     | 9908 |

¶ *De bello apud Lyncolniam per Arthurum.*

|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| The Britons and Bretons march quietly to Lincoln, which Cheldrik is besieging, | To Lyncolne wente ilka baroun,<br>T ffor Cheldryk hadde biseged þe toun.<br>Wypoute noise, sp[e]che, or cry,<br>þey come to Lyncolne al stillely; <sup>9</sup><br>No scape ȝit þe toun had taken,<br>. ffor þey wypynne held þem wel waken. | 9912 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out this line.

<sup>2</sup> *Ohel.*

<sup>3</sup> *armes.*

<sup>4</sup> Douse mil orent chevaliers.

*Wace, ii. 46, l. 9392.*

<sup>5</sup> *kyng Arthoru.*

<sup>6</sup> *long.*

<sup>7</sup> *þei had no drede of non affray.*

<sup>8</sup> MS. *snert.*

<sup>9</sup> *stilli.*



- þe host was aryued on a þrowe,  
 Bot horn ne trompe dide non<sup>1</sup> blowe, 9916 arrive there,  
 . Ne oþer dene in<sup>2</sup> none manere,  
 . Til alle were splayed ilka banere,  
 . Alle þey wroughte at on a-vys,  
 & priuely þe felle o<sup>3</sup> þeyr enemys. 9920 and fall privily  
 Neuere ȝyt byfore of no Saxon on the Saxons.  
 Was er<sup>4</sup> so gret destruccion, Never before  
 In no stude þer men wyst whare; was such a  
 . ffor sex þousand wer slayn þare. 9924 6,000 Saxons  
 þey caste<sup>5</sup> þer armes, þer horses let, are slain,  
 Naked þey fledde on þer fet,  
 In to þe water faste þey ran,  
 Of þeym were drenkled many a<sup>6</sup> man; 9928 and others  
 þe Bretons on þem were euere prest, drowned.  
 þey suffred þem nought<sup>7</sup> to haue no rest.  
 A wode byside hight Calydoun,  
 . þat now men calleþ hit ffyskertoun; 9932 Some take  
 By þe water side þe wode was set, refuge in the  
 þer-inne had þey gret recet. wood Calydon,  
 þe Bretons byhalued þe wode aboute, now Fiskerton.  
 . þat no Saxon dirst come wyþoute; 9936 The Britons  
 Arthur dide hit loke so streit; surround the  
 ffor þe<sup>8</sup> nyght he dredde deseit, wood with  
 He dide hewe tres & pykke,  
 & palysed hit aboute ful þykke; 9940 a palisade  
 Tre ouer tre, stok ouer stok,<sup>9</sup>  
 As pikke as men myghte hem schok.<sup>9</sup>  
 His ost was logged to þat oþer<sup>10</sup> party,  
 þat non com in, ne ȝede forby. 9944 so that no one  
 þo in þe wode hadde no mete, can come out.  
 The Saxons in  
 the wood have

<sup>1</sup> þat trompe ne horn non did.  
[leaf 59, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> dyn on.

<sup>3</sup> priuely fett on.

<sup>4</sup> are.

<sup>5</sup> kest.

<sup>6</sup> was dronkeld many.

<sup>7</sup> þei þoled þam.

<sup>8</sup> for on þe.

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> on þe toþer.



no food,  
can provide  
none, on ac-  
count of their  
rapid flight.

For three days  
they taste  
nothing,  
and then, see-  
ing death be-  
fore them,

offer to leave  
their arms,  
go quietly to  
their ships,  
give hostages,

and pay Arthur  
tribute.

Arthur agrees  
to this,

takes hostages  
of them,

gives them  
their ships, and  
takes their  
arms.

. Ne non þem broughte þat mought out gete,  
Ne nought had purueyd þer byforn,  
Neyþer bred, [ne] mele ne corn; 9948

. þey were so hasted, faste þey fley,<sup>1</sup>  
. Bot helpless weren fer or ney.<sup>1</sup>

pre dayes hit was þey nought ete,  
. Ne nought drank þat was wete; 9952

þey sey wel alle þat þey schuld deye,  
þorow force myghte þey make no weye.  
þey toke conseil oþer weys,

‘ To leue armes & harneys, 9956

‘ In pes to þer schypes to go

. ‘ Wypouten any more wo,  
‘ & þey schold leue þem god hostage,<sup>2</sup>

. ‘ þer best men of noblest lynage,<sup>3</sup> 9960

‘ & gyue hym truwage ilka ȝer

‘ In pes, wypouten wo & wer.’

And Arþur gaf hem þe grauntyse  
ffor to wende forþ on þat wyse: 9964

Ostage he tok atte remenaunt,<sup>4</sup> [leaf 43, back, col. 1.]

þat þey schold holde þe couenant;

He deliuered þem schipes wypoute mo harmes,  
& lefte þer robes, & harneys of<sup>5</sup> armes; 9968

Al senglely<sup>6</sup> to schipe þey went,

No þyng was þem gyue ne lent;

. & ȝit he dide gret curtesy

. þat wyþ þe lyf gaf hem merci. 9972

### ¶ De reuercione Regis Cheldryk apud Totenes.

Cheldrik and  
his men set  
sail,

. þey set vp sail, þe wynd hem blew,  
So fer þei seyled þat non þem knew.  
When þey were so fer born

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>2</sup> suld leue gode ostages.

<sup>3</sup> þer lynages.

<sup>4</sup> One stroke too many in the  
second MS. n.

<sup>5</sup> herneis &. [leaf 59, back.]

<sup>6</sup> Sengli.



|                                                       |        |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| pat we of þeym þe sight had lorn,                     | 9976   |                  |
| ʒut þoughte þey more treson & gyle,                   |        | but afterwards   |
| þey turnde þer flute wyþynne a while                  |        | traitorously     |
| Bytwix Ingeland & Normandye,                          |        | turn back,       |
| þey dighte eft hydeward þer nauie,                    | 9980   |                  |
| & entred in til Dertemuthe; <sup>1</sup>              |        | land at Dart-    |
| . Neyþer fond þey arest ne <sup>2</sup> rescue;       |        | mouth,           |
| At Totenes toke þey hauen & <sup>3</sup> lond;        |        |                  |
| Al ʒede to dep þat by-forn hem <sup>4</sup> fond.     | 9984   | kill the in-     |
| In þe contres þey spredde aboute;                     |        | habitants,       |
| To go to dep <sup>5</sup> al was in doute;            |        |                  |
| Robes þey refte, armure þey tok, <sup>6</sup>         |        | rob, burn, and   |
| Tounes brente, houses doun schok. <sup>6</sup>        | 9988   | destroy the      |
| þe contres trauersed þey ouerþwert,                   |        | towns.           |
| . Ouer al was wo, & no whar <sup>7</sup> quert;       |        |                  |
| Deneschire, <sup>8</sup> & Somersete,                 |        | They waste       |
| & a partie of Dorsete,                                | 9992   | Devon, Somers-   |
| Al þey wastes, <sup>9</sup> & robbed þe god;          |        | set and Dor-     |
| Was þer non þat hem wyþstod;                          |        | set,—            |
| þe knyghte þat aughten haue <sup>10</sup> ben at hom, |        | the English      |
| To Scotland wyþ Arþur þey nom.                        | 9996   | knights being    |
| þe Saxons dide so mykel scape,                        |        | with Arthur in   |
| þey robbed in to þe toun of Baþe;                     |        | Scotland,—       |
| Bot þey of Baþe held þem wyþoute,                     |        |                  |
| . & þey byseged hit alle aboute.                      | 10,000 | and besiege      |
| ¶ Arthur werred vpon þe Scottes,                      |        | Bath.            |
| . ffor þey had don as foule <sup>11</sup> sottes,     |        | When Arthur      |
| Holpen <sup>12</sup> Colgrim & Cheldryk,              |        | hears of this in |
| & ageyns þer lord do so wyk;                          | 10,004 | Scotland,        |

<sup>1</sup> *Dertmue.*<sup>2</sup> *was þer non mad þam rescue.*<sup>3</sup> *Toteneis þei toke.*<sup>4</sup> *to dede bifer þam.*<sup>5</sup> *dede.*<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>7</sup> & *noure.*<sup>8</sup> *Douerschire.* (Neversire, MS. du Roi, 27; Venescire, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb.; *Wace*, ii. 50, l. 9480.)<sup>9</sup> *wasted.*<sup>10</sup> *fett haf.*<sup>11</sup> *þei did as fole.*<sup>12</sup> *helped.*



**.War.**

he hangs the  
Saxon host-  
ages,  
and marches  
south,

leaving Ohel  
sick in Aclud  
(Dumbarton),

to raise the  
siege of Bath.

Arthur halts  
his men near a  
wood,  
to arm and  
arrange them.

He himself is  
armed in mail  
foot-, leg-,  
thigh-, and  
knee-pieces,  
breeches,  
hauberk, lower,  
upper, and side  
arm-pieces,  
and an aketon,  
and is girt with  
Caliburn, his  
good sword  
made in Ram-  
esey, 10 feet  
long,

Bot when he wyste þat þe Saxons  
. Brek couenaunt, & dide tresons,  
& hadde byseged þe toun of Baþe,  
. Hei seyde, "þe Saxoyns false me ful raþe."  
per ostages ilkon he heng 10,009  
. Heye on galewes, wyþ rop & <sup>1</sup> streng.  
. When þer ostages to deþ wer done,  
Toward þe souþ he hyed hym sone 10,012  
Ohel his cosy[n], & his meyne,  
He lefte sek in a cite,  
In Aclud, þer-inne he lay,  
. þat was þe name by þat day. 10,016  
Wyþ al þe folk Ohel myght spare,  
Toward Baþe, Arþur was ȝare.  
Cheldrykes sege he wolde remue,  
His men wyþynne he þoughte rescue. 10,020  
In a playn by a wode syde  
Arthur dide his folk abide,  
To arme þem, & til ordeyne  
Whylk schuld go, & wyþ whilk seyne. 10,024  
Hym self was armed fynly wel [leaf 43, back, col. 2.]  
<sup>2</sup> Wyþ sabatons, & spores, & iaumbers of stel,  
. Doublet & quysseux, wiþ poleyns ful riche,  
. Voydes, breche of maille, wyþ paunz non liche  
Hauberk wiþ plates y-burnuscht ful wel, 10,029  
. Vaumbras & rerbras, wyþ coters of stel,  
. þer-opon an aketon wyþ stof & al sylk,  
. His cote of armes þer-on; in world was no swylk; <sup>2</sup>  
& þen girt<sup>3</sup> wyþ Caliborne, þat gode brond; 10,033  
. A bettere cam neuere in no kynges hond;  
Ten fote longe was þen þe blade,  
In <sup>4</sup> Ramesey & oþer stedes þe merke ys ymade; <sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> with *a*. [leaf 59, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2-2</sup> with *gode chambres of Iren & stele.*

& a *Hauberk þat non was sui lk. abouen an acton mad of silk.*

For *swylk*, l. 10,032, L. has *swyik*.

<sup>3</sup> & *gird*.

<sup>4</sup> *Im* in the MS.

<sup>5</sup> in *Rameseie þe merk is made.* (En l'ile d'Avalon fu faite, *Wace*, ii. 52, l. 9516.)



- ffro þe hilde vnto þe pomel 10,037  
 . Was twenti vnche large, meten ful wel;<sup>1</sup>  
 þe brede of þe blade was seuen inche & more; seven inches  
 . Wond was hit y þat world smite ful<sup>2</sup> sore.<sup>3</sup> 10,040 broad,  
 An helm he had on his hed, no betere vp on<sup>4</sup> His helm is  
 molde; of jewels  
<sup>5</sup> A riche corounal wiþ perre, al of brent golde,  
 þe nase & bendeles of gold ful bryght, and gold; on it  
 per-apon a dragoun selcoup of sight;<sup>5</sup> 10,044 a dragon.  
 Aboute his nekke heng his scheld, On his shield  
 . Pryd-wenne<sup>6</sup> hit highte, many hit byheld; Prydwenne  
 per-on was purtrayd, next hym by, is an image  
 þe ymage of oure swete leuedy, 10,048 of the Virgin.  
 In nede to byholde hure face,  
 Ageyn his enemis to haue grace.  
 Hys spere was gret,<sup>7</sup> he cald hit Ron,<sup>8</sup> His spear Ron  
 Wyþ an hed by-fore, ful noble per-on; 10,052  
 Hit was long, & swyþe gret,<sup>9</sup>  
 per was no scheld þat he ne þorow schet.<sup>9</sup> will pierce any  
 shield.

¶ De recuperacione belly & montis per Arthurum.

- When Arthur<sup>10</sup> was armed wel, Arthur bids his  
 & his folk dight ilka del, 10,056 folk  
 Al softly he bad þem go,

<sup>1</sup> *Tuelue Inche grete þat tyme as  
fett.*

<sup>2</sup> *I trow þat wild smyte.*

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. adds two lines  
not in Wace, ii. 52,—

*Arthure luffed it wele Inouh.*

*Mishapped him neuer whan he it  
drouh.*

<sup>4</sup> om in the MS. P. has, *His helme  
was gode non better on.*

<sup>5-5</sup> *þe nasett befor was att of golde.  
þe bendeles of gold burnyst  
bright.*

*a dragon aboun selcouth in  
sight.*

<sup>6</sup> *pridwen.*

<sup>7</sup> *his lance grete.* [leaf 60.]

<sup>8</sup> Roit, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé;  
Roil, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup> Colb.;  
Rederon, MS. de Ste.-Genevieve, Y,  
f. 10; Wace, ii. 54, note c.; Ron,  
*Galf. Mon.* vii. 2.

<sup>9</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>10</sup> *þe kyng.*



|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| advance in an<br>unbroken line.                       | pat non schulde byfore oper þro<br>Til þey come vnto þe bataille.                                                                                                                                                                                        |                      |
| The Saxons<br>flee to a hill,                         | Bot þe Saxons durst nought assaille,<br>Bot fledde vntil an hey hyl,<br>pat non myghte wel wynne þem til.                                                                                                                                                | 10,060               |
| and hold it like<br>a castle.                         | þey helde þat hil als castel strong,<br>& defended þem ferly <sup>1</sup> long,<br>As þey were closed wyþ <sup>2</sup> a wal;<br>Bot atte þe laste hit stod no stal.                                                                                     | 10,064               |
| Arthur dislikes<br>this delay,                        | . Arthur saw þe hil was taken,<br>& longe þere þey held hem <sup>3</sup> waken;<br>Tene hym þoughte þey fro hym brak,<br>& til his men þus he spak:                                                                                                      | 10,068               |
| and says,<br>"This hill is<br>high;                   | . ¶ "Lordynges," he seide, "þis hil ys hey,<br>" & we may nought wel com þem ney<br>" Bot hit were þorow long destresse.                                                                                                                                 | 10,072               |
| but we must<br>attack it at<br>once.                  | . " þe lengþe fayn woldy schorte <sup>4</sup> lesse;<br>" Ageyn to Scotland woldy <sup>5</sup> be,<br>" Ohel my cosyn, fayn woldy <sup>5</sup> se."<br>He bad <sup>6</sup> þem wyþ wordes smert<br>. pat [þey] schold alle <sup>7</sup> be gode of hert: | 10,076               |
| There are the<br>foes who have<br>wasted our<br>land, | " Lo! here byforn vs þan ar þo<br>" pat han vs wrought ful muche wo!<br>" pyse are þat han wasted our lond, <sup>8</sup><br>" pat riche was, & farre vs fond! <sup>8</sup>                                                                               | 10,080               |
| slain our an-<br>cestors,                             | " þise are þat slowe our auncessours, <sup>8</sup><br>" Als wel myne als zoures! <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                            | 10,084               |
| assailed us!                                          | " þis ar þo þat vs assailed, <sup>8</sup><br>" & often in werre vs trauailed! <sup>8</sup>                                                                                                                                                               |                      |
| Take venge-<br>ance on them!                          | " Venge vs now we se hem here!<br>" Let hem aby <sup>9</sup> our godes dere!                                                                                                                                                                             | [leaf 44.]<br>10,088 |

<sup>1</sup> *futt.*<sup>2</sup> *with in.*<sup>3</sup> *& long mot þei hald þam.*<sup>4</sup> *wald .I. schorten.*<sup>5</sup> *wald .I.*<sup>6</sup> *monessed.*<sup>7</sup> *& bad þam.*<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>9</sup> *late þam bie.*



" Lat þeym bye þey toke byforn,<sup>1</sup>  
 " & let hem now lese, for we haue lorn!<sup>1</sup>  
 " & y schal zelde, zyf þat y may,  
 " þe fals op<sup>2</sup> þey swore þe toþer day; 10,092  
 " þer turnyng y wole rescowe,<sup>3</sup>  
 " þat þey come til Dertemuwe.<sup>3</sup>  
 " zyf y may ought wyþ hem mele,  
 " Hand of hand strokes schul<sup>4</sup> dele, 10,096  
 " þey schul neuere eft haue power  
 " In bataille to neighe me ner!"

I will pay them  
for their false  
oath, and turn-  
ing back to  
Dartmouth,

if I can but get  
at them."

¶ *De occisione Saxonum apud Bathoniam.*

Wyþ þat word he smot his stede,  
 Byforn þem alle vpward he zede; 10,100  
 Hys launce ful wel he bar þe point,  
 Hys scheld byfore ful wel was ioynt;  
 þe firste Saxon þat wyþ hym met,  
 His dayes were no lenger set. 10,104  
 þen bygan Arþur to crye,  
 " A-geyn þes Payens, helpe,<sup>5</sup> Marie!"  
 . & bar on hem þe breste byfore.  
 . After hym þe Bretons gon bore: 10,108  
 " þe firste strok þann ys myn!"  
 On he mette, & m[a]de hys fyn;  
 þen myghte men se þe Bretons strike,  
 & felle þe Saxons doughtilyke.<sup>6</sup> 10,112  
 . Arthur þen egred þem<sup>7</sup> so wyþ sawe,  
 . ffo[r] schame ne myghte þey hem<sup>8</sup> wyþdrawe;

Arthur spurs  
up the hill,

kills the first  
Saxon he  
meets,

calls on Mary  
to help,

and so cheers  
on his men

<sup>1</sup> For these lines the Petyt MS. has—

*þei haf don vs many trauaile  
quyte þam þat þei scored on taile.*

<sup>2</sup> þat othe.

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>4</sup> to hand strokes.

<sup>5</sup> ? MS. *helper*. P. *help me*. [leaf 60, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *felled þe sessions douhtilike*: and P. adds—

*Ilkon wald haf bien þe breste  
& at his power Arthure neste.*

<sup>7</sup> & he þam egred.

<sup>8</sup> *non mot þam*.



|                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| that they<br>charge through<br>and rout the<br>Saxons,<br>while Arthur,<br>with Caliburn, | pey byhalued þem aboute,<br>& ryden þorow þe Saxons route. 10,116<br>On ilka syde doun þey fley,<br>& euere Arthur vpward stey<br>Wyþ Caliborn drawen in his hond;<br>Was non his dynt þat myghte wyþstond,<br>þat hym ne byhoued nedly deye; 10,121<br>per-fore þey fledde, & gaf hym weye;<br>. So fele he slow, & broughte til schame,<br>ffor þus þey counted þat coupe þem ame, 10,124<br>ffour <sup>1</sup> hundred he slow, mo allone<br>pan his host dide ilkone.<br>Ded was Balduk, slayn was Colgrym,<br>& Cheldrik fledde wyþ mykel pyn; 10,128<br>Toward þer schipes to Toteneys<br>. þey fledde, & lefte al <sup>2</sup> oper harneys;<br>. Lyghtly to go, wightly to fle,<br>. þey leften al, & fledde to þe se. 10,132<br>Arthur perceyued wel ynow<br>þat to þer schipes þey fledde & drow;<br>þen bad he sire Cador of Cornewaille<br>Take ten þousand of gode apparaille; <sup>3</sup> 10,136<br>. & after hem swyþe hey spedde,<br>. & ouertoke þo þat fledde;<br>ffor Arthur to Scotland went:<br>Ohel a messeger hym sent, 10,140<br>& seyde 'þe Scottes byseged þe castel,<br>' & hadde ner taken sire Ohel.'<br>Cheldrik fledde til his nauye;<br>But Cador was queynte & wyly; 10,144<br>By a bywey <sup>4</sup> to Totenes lay,<br>Cadon & hyse toke þat way,<br>And to þe hauen wel raper <sup>5</sup> cam |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

[leaf 44, col. 2.]

<sup>1</sup> fyue.<sup>2</sup> þer.<sup>3</sup> aparaille.<sup>4</sup> bigate. [leaf 60, back.]<sup>5</sup> ore.



|                                                       |        |                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| Er any Saxon to schipe nam.                           | 10,148 | gets there      |
| Sire Cador, þe mene folk he tok,                      |        | before the      |
| He gaf þem þe schipes for to loke,                    |        | Saxons,         |
| & bad þem ryde <sup>1</sup> fer fro þe land,          |        | and sends their |
| . þat Saxons ne raughte no bot wyþ <sup>2</sup> hand. | 10,152 | ships out to    |
| Syþen went he wyþ alle his ost,                       |        | sea.            |
| . & y þe contres kepte þe cost,                       |        | He then         |
| & kepte þem euere as þey come ;                       |        | watches for the |
| By ten, by twelue, <sup>3</sup> vm-while þey nome ;   | 10,156 | Saxons as they  |
| Armure & robes hadde þey cast,                        |        | come in         |
| þat þey were lyght to fle right fast ;                |        | by tens and     |
| þey hadde but swerdes on þer hypes,                   |        | twelves,        |
| Sone to come vnto þer schipes.                        | 10,160 | armed only      |
| Als þey passed þe water of Teyne,                     |        | with their      |
| Were þey war of Cadores seyne. <sup>4</sup>           |        | swords.         |
| When þey hit sey, þey held hem schent,                |        |                 |
| Hider & þyder a-wey þey glent.                        | 10,164 |                 |
| As þey tok þe hil of Teynewyk, <sup>5</sup>           |        | Cheldrik is     |
| þer was he slayn, þe kyng Cheldryk ;                  |        | slain,          |
| þe opere þat wende wel haue scaped,                   |        | and all the     |
| To deþe were þey al to-fraped ;                       | 10,168 | other Saxons    |
| þo þat ascaped to þe hauen vnslayn, <sup>6</sup>      |        | are put to      |
| . When þey com þere, þey were vnfayn, <sup>6</sup>    |        | death,          |
| . ffor þey kept [hem] atte brynke,                    |        |                 |
| In to þe water þey dide hem synke.                    | 10,172 | drowned,        |
| . On alle halue wax þem wo ;                          |        |                 |
| To wodes & hilles fledde somme of þo,                 |        |                 |
| . þeym to hyde, þat non ne wylt,                      |        |                 |
| Tyl þey deyde for hunger & þirst. <sup>7</sup>        | 10,176 | or starved.     |

|                                     |            |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| When Cador had mad þe contre clene, | Cador hies |
| þat no Saxon were more sene,        |            |

|                                                        |                         |                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <sup>1</sup> <i>houe.</i>                              | <sup>2</sup> <i>in.</i> | <sup>5</sup> <i>tenwik.</i>                 |
| <sup>3</sup> Dui et dui, trois et trois, <i>Wace</i> , |                         | <sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. transposes these |
| ii. 58, l. 9616.                                       |                         | lines.                                      |
| <sup>4</sup> <i>Cador syne.</i>                        |                         | <sup>7</sup> <i>thrist.</i>                 |



|                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| to Scotland,<br>and finds<br>Arthur and<br>Ohel in Aklud,                              | He hyed hym faste toward Scotland.<br>In Aklud, Arthur he fond,<br>& Ohel wyþ hym, his cosyn,<br>Of his seknesse warisched fyn.                                                                 | 10,180 |
| the Scots                                                                              | þe Scottes <sup>1</sup> þer sege remued<br>When Arthur cam, Ohel rescued ;                                                                                                                      | 10,184 |
| having fled to<br>Moray,                                                               | Al þe contre gan þey weyue,<br>& fledde a-wey vn to Murreyue, <sup>2</sup><br>. þer þey hoped best to be,                                                                                       | 10,188 |
| to a strong<br>city, which<br>they hope to<br>hold against<br>Arthur ;                 | . & closed þem in a strong cite ;<br>þere þey hoped Arthur to byde, <sup>3</sup><br>A-geyns þem what wolde bytyde. <sup>3</sup><br>Arthur wyste hit certeynly<br>þey gadered ageyns hym party ; | 10,192 |
| but on his ad-<br>vancing, they<br>flee to the<br>wondrous<br>Loch Lumine<br>(Lomond), | He hyed hym þide[r]ward ful ʒerne,<br>& þey herd hit seye, & fledde ʒit ferne<br>Right vnto þe Louh Lumyne : <sup>4</sup><br>. A selcouþ þyng hit ys to see.                                    | 10,196 |

¶ *De admiracione Lacus Lumine in Scotia.*

|                                                                  |                                                                                                                                     |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| wherein are 60<br>isles,                                         | <sup>5</sup> ¶ In þat louh ar sexti iles—<br>. In þo þe dwelte longe <sup>6</sup> whyles—<br>& ilk an yle hap a rocher <sup>7</sup> | 10,200 |
| and in each isle<br>a rock,                                      | . & a water dep & cler.<br>In þo roches foules reste,<br>& ernes brede, & make þer neste ;<br>ʒyf any sorewe or any wo,             | 10,204 |
| where eagles<br>breed,<br>and when any<br>woe or war<br>befalls, | Or any werre or any þro,                                                                                                            |        |

<sup>1</sup> *sessons*.

<sup>2</sup> Murif, *Wace*, ii. 59, l. 9652.

<sup>3</sup> P. leaves out these two lines.  
[leaf 60, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> En l'estang de Lymonoi, *Wace*,  
ii. 60, l. 9660.

<sup>5</sup> The next fourteen lines are not  
represented in the MS. du Roi, 27,

but are in four of De Lincy's other  
MSS., du Roi, 73, Cangé; 7515<sup>3-3</sup>.  
Colb.; de l'Ars. 17, B.-L.; de  
Ste.-Genev. Y. f. 10. *Wace*, ii. 61,  
note a.

<sup>6</sup> in þo þei duelled long.

<sup>7</sup> *rochere*.



- Schal in þat lond tyde or gynne,  
 Alle þe ernes þat brede þer-inne  
 Schul crié & zelle, & make rere, [leaf 44, back, col. 1.]  
 þat al þe contre aboute schal here, 10,208  
 & feighte to-gydere four daies or fyue,  
 . & al to-pulle þe feþeres,<sup>1</sup> & ryue.  
 þys lough, Luminie men calle,  
 Sexti watres þer-inne falle, 10,212  
 & alle dwelle þer-inne ilkon;  
 Non rennes out to þe se but on.  
 Wyþynne þis lough had þey dwellynge,<sup>2</sup>  
 þe Scottes, for Arthur oure kyng.<sup>2</sup> 10,216  
 Arthur byseged alle þe loughes,  
 & gadered botes, chalans,<sup>3</sup> & trowes,  
 . þat non myghte brynge þem ne gyue  
 . Mete ne drynke, wyþal to lyue. 10,220  
 So wyþynne a lytel while  
 So mykel hunger was yn þe ile,  
 Men sey<sup>4</sup> by hundredes & þousandes  
 Ly<sup>5</sup> ded for hunger on þe sandes;  
 . Men seye þem go & falle right doun<sup>2</sup>  
 . ffor hunger, þat was lord of toun.<sup>2</sup>
- Gwylomar,<sup>6</sup> þe Irische kyng,  
 . Com ouer þe se wyþ many lordyng 10,228  
 To helpe þe Saxons<sup>7</sup> in þer nede.  
 . Lytel, y wene, myghte þey<sup>8</sup> spede!  
 He aryued<sup>9</sup> vp by þat cost  
 þer Arthur lay, & al his host. 10,232

these eagles  
cry and yell,

and fight for  
four or five  
days.

Sixty streams  
also fall into  
Loch Lumine.

Here Arthur

besieges the  
Scots,  
collecting all  
the boats and  
barges so that  
no food may  
get to the Isles.

The Scots soon  
die by hundreds  
and thousands.

The Irish king

lands with a  
force to help  
the Saxons;

<sup>1</sup> þer *fedres*.

<sup>2</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>3</sup> The heavily-laden boats that navigate the Seine from Paris to Havre, are still called *chalans*. De Lincy, *Wace*, ii. 61, note <sup>1</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *sauh þam*.

<sup>5</sup> *lig*.

<sup>6</sup> Diramaurus, *Wace*, (ii. 61, l. 9690), MS. du Roi, 27; Gillamurus, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; Ghilomar, MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb.

<sup>7</sup> *scottis*.

<sup>8</sup> *he mot*.

<sup>9</sup> *ryued*.



but Arthur  
soon drives  
them back to  
Ireland.

Arthur & hyse a-geyn hym nomen,  
Bot þe Irische wer sone ouer-comen;  
He dide þe Irische wyþ force to fle  
A-geyn til Irland, ouer þe se. 10,236

¶ De vastacione Scocie, & lamentacione Scotorum.

Arthur keeps  
up his siege of  
the Isles;  
but bishops

But ȝyt Arthur nought ne left  
þat he þe Scottes bysegged eft.  
þen come þe byschopes of þe land,  
& religious relikes bryngand, 10,240

and ladies bare-  
foot and bare-  
headed,

And preyed Arthur of mercy;  
& als wyþ hem com many ledy,  
Alle barfot, & bare þe<sup>1</sup> heued,  
þer her to-rent,<sup>2</sup> or litel leued; 10,244

with young  
children, come  
weeping,  
fall at Arthur's  
feet, and pray  
him to have  
mercy:

ȝonge childre wyþ hem brought,  
& reuly gretyng,<sup>3</sup> mercy bysought,  
Mekely fulle doun til his fet.  
Byschops, abbotes, & ladis<sup>4</sup> alle gret, 10,248  
& asked hym 'mercy & pes,  
' To saue þo childre helples:

"Give us those  
who live! Let  
not all die!  
Let us not buy  
so dear the  
Saxons' felony!  
Not by our will  
did they harm  
you.

" þyse ladies þat þis sorewe haue,  
" ȝeld þem þer lordes, þer lyues<sup>5</sup> to saue! 10,252  
" ȝeld vs þo þat are on lyue!<sup>6</sup>  
" Let hem nought alle to depe dryue!<sup>6</sup>  
" Let vs nought alle so dere a-bye<sup>7</sup>

They harmed  
us;

" þe false Saxons felonye! 10,256  
" ffor hit was neuere by our wille  
" þat þey com here to do ȝow ylle!  
" Of þer comyng had we no frame,  
" þer dwellyng dide vs mykel schame; 10,260

<sup>1</sup> & att bare. [leaf 61.]

<sup>2</sup> vestéures descirées, *Wace*, ii. 62,  
l. 9706, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé.

<sup>3</sup> gretand.

<sup>4</sup> abot &.

<sup>5</sup> life.

<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>7</sup> bie.



- " Al day were we wyþ hem noyed,  
 " Oure lyf[e]lode<sup>1</sup> þey ete & stroyed, eat our living,  
 " Catel þey bar a-wey, & spended; and spent our  
 " Had we non heued<sup>2</sup> þat vs defended! 10,264 goods,  
 " þat we þem halp,<sup>3</sup> ys no trespas; [lf. 44, bk., col. 2.]  
 " Maugre oures, forsoþe hit was; in spite of us,  
 " þeir force was more þan oures, being stronger  
 " We nyste of non to haue socoures. 10,268 than we.  
 " ȝe wot þey are of þe lawe Payen, They are  
 " & we, as ȝe, ar men Crysten; Pagans, we  
 " þer-fore þey dide vs þe more wo. Christians:  
 " At ilka tyme, boþe to & fro, 10,272 therefore they  
 " Wo dude þey vs! & worse haue [we]<sup>4</sup> now! did us woe.  
 " & þat ys non honour til ȝow, But we suffer  
 " Vs to slo þat crye mercy, worse now  
 " & deye for hunger so deolfoly. 10,276 from you,  
 " þou hast vs wonnen; lef vs þe lyf, and die for  
 " Lord to lady, husebande to wyf! hunger.  
 " & gyue vs lond on for to lyue! Leave us life!  
 " Trewe hostage we wol þe gyue. 10,280 Give us land to  
 " þorow righte reson þou scholde vs spare, live on!  
 " ffor we ar Cristen as ȝe are; We are  
 " & ȝyf we deye in swylk destresse, Christians, so  
 " Cristendam ys mykel þe lesse; 10,284 are you.  
 " þan ys þy peryl mykel þe<sup>5</sup> more, Destroy not  
 " þat þou wraþest<sup>6</sup> Crist so sore." Christendom!  
 " Wrath not  
 " Christ!"
- Arthur wiste þey seide reson, Arthur  
 . A & wel excused hem of þe Saxon. 10,288  
 ffor byschope & clerkes þat hym bysought,  
 & þe relikes þat þey brought,  
 . & of þe lauedies<sup>7</sup> hym rewed sore, pities the ladies  
 . & ȝonge childre þat þer wore, 10,292 and young  
 children,

<sup>1</sup> lifelade.

<sup>2</sup> we had no hede.

<sup>3</sup> servis, Wace, ii. 63, l. 9736.

<sup>4</sup> wars haf we.

<sup>5</sup> þe peritt mykett. [leaf 61, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> wrethis.

<sup>7</sup> ladies.



|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                    |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| and grants<br>them all they<br>ask.                        | He graunted þem alle þat þey ches,<br>Lyf & lymes, & his pes.                                                                                                                      |        |
| Ohel tells<br>Arthur                                       | ¶ Ohel byheld þe lough, þat lake, <b>De primo</b><br>& til Arthur þer-of he spak : <b>Lacu in Scocia.</b>                                                                          |        |
| that he wonders<br>at the Lake,<br>its isles,              | " Arthur," he seyde, " y haue merueille<br>" Of þis lough & of þis entaille :                                                                                                      | 10,296 |
|                                                            | " So many yles, y telde sixty,<br>" & ilkon haþ a roche hey ;                                                                                                                      | 10,300 |
| and eagles,<br>with their cry.                             | " & so manye ernes nestes,<br>" & þer cri þat ilkon kestes :                                                                                                                       |        |
| Ohel thinks it<br>a wonder.                                | " A wonder me þynkeþ hit <sup>1</sup> may be,<br>" Of ilka þyng þat y se ! " <b>De secundo</b>                                                                                     | 10,304 |
| But Arthur<br>tells him of<br>a greater :                  | ¶ þen seyde Arthur vnto Ohel, <b>Lacu ibidem.</b><br>" Of þis ne merueilleþ me no del ; <sup>2</sup><br>" But of an oþer ys selcouþ more,                                          |        |
| a 20-foot<br>square Loch<br>with four<br>corners,          | " & so schaltow seye when þou comes þore :<br>" þat lough ys here yn þys contre,                                                                                                   | 10,309 |
|                                                            | " Cornerd as a cheker quarre ;<br>" Twenty fot of lengþe, as þe <sup>3</sup> brede, es,<br>" & fyue fot hit haþ of depnes ;                                                        | 10,312 |
| in each of<br>which is a<br>different kind<br>of fish ;    | " In þe water, atte <sup>4</sup> corners,<br>" Are fisches inne foure maners :                                                                                                     |        |
| and none of<br>the four kinds<br>ever mix with<br>another, | " þo þat are y þat o corner,<br>" Neuer more come þat oþer ner ;                                                                                                                   | 10,316 |
| though there's<br>no partition<br>between them.            | " Ne þe fisches alle foure,<br>" Ne wyþ oþer menge ne voure ; <sup>5</sup><br>" Ne no partyng ys þem bytwene<br>" Of erþe ne ston, but water clene,                                | 10,320 |
|                                                            | " Ne oþer þyng þat may bywyte, <sup>6</sup><br>" þat myghte þer mengyng wyþ-sitte ;<br>" I ne wot ȝyf hit be þorow kynde,<br>" Or craft of clergie, as men may <sup>7</sup> fynde. | 10,324 |
| What the<br>reason of it is,<br>Arthur doesn't<br>know.    |                                                                                                                                                                                    |        |

<sup>1</sup> þink how it.<sup>2</sup> me mervailles neuer a dele.<sup>3</sup> P. has þe, no as. " Vint piés de  
lonc, et vint de lé," Wace, ii. 65,  
l. 9780.<sup>4</sup> at foure.<sup>5</sup> meng noure.<sup>6</sup> man may wite. [leaf 61, back.]<sup>7</sup> of clerk þat he mot.



¶ De terciio lacu versus Walliam iuxta<sup>1</sup> Seuerne.

|                                                    |            |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------|
| ¶ “ Of anoper ys more selcouþ,                     | [leaf 45.] | But a third       |
| “ & þat lough ys in þat souþ,                      |            | Lake in Wales,    |
| “ Toward Walys, bysyde Seuerne.                    |            | near Severn, is   |
| “ When þe flod flowes þider <sup>2</sup> in ȝerne, | 10,328     | more wondrous     |
| “ þe water wexes noþyng on hey,                    |            | still.            |
| “ þan þe flod come neuere þer ney; <sup>3</sup>    |            | While the flood   |
| “ Als longe as flod þer-ynne flowes, <sup>4</sup>  |            | flows into it, it |
| “ þe water of þe lough no þyng ne growes,          |            | never rises at    |
| “ In no stede, by bank ne bre,                     | 10,333     | all;              |
| “ þat any man may perceiue or se.                  |            |                   |
| “ But when þe flod drawes ageyn,                   |            | but when the      |
| “ & ys atte þe ebbe <sup>5</sup> certeyn,          | 10,336     | flood has         |
| “ þenne bygynnes þe lough to flowe,                |            | ebbed,            |
| “ & ouer þe bankes to renne & rowe;                |            | then the lake     |
| “ Wyþ rysyng <sup>6</sup> wawes, & wyþ grete,      |            | begins to rise,   |
| “ ffer aboute hym wil he wete.                     | 10,340     | and overflows     |
| “ ȝyf hit beo a couþ man of þe contre              |            | with great        |
| “ þat goþ þider þe water to se, <sup>7</sup>       |            | waves.            |
| “ & feleþ <sup>8</sup> þe wawes þat so wetes,      |            | If a native of    |
| “ Hit rennes on hym, & doun hym betes.             |            | the country       |
| “ Of-ten of þo þat so haue gon,                    | 10,345     | goes to see it,   |
| “ Han be drenkled manion.                          |            | (with his face    |
| “ ȝyf any connyng <sup>9</sup> man of þo           |            | towards it,) it   |
| “ Standeþ stille, or sidlyng can <sup>10</sup> go, | 10,348     | runs on him,      |
| “ He may stande on þe brynkes                      |            | beats him         |
| “ Al so lange as hym god þynkes :                  |            | down, and         |
|                                                    |            | drowns him.       |
|                                                    |            | But if an artful  |
|                                                    |            | man goes side-    |
|                                                    |            | ways to it,       |

<sup>1</sup> MS. *iux* with *a* contraction, above. P. has *walliam mirabili*.

<sup>2</sup> *fleues* þer.

<sup>3</sup> þan þe flode . . . *nehie*.

<sup>4</sup> *fleues* . . . *grewes*.

<sup>5</sup> & *es* þe ebbe in.

<sup>6</sup> *risand*.

<sup>7</sup> Qui véir l'aut, le vis torné, *Wace*, ii. 66, l. 9809; Si gens totius

patriæ illius, facie versa, prope astaret, *Galf. Mon.* ix. 7.

<sup>8</sup> *fles*.

<sup>9</sup> *conand*.

<sup>10</sup> or *sidelynges*. Se home i vient, le dos avant, Les talons tornés, reculant, &c., *Wace*, ii. 66, l. 9816-7; Tergo autem verso, non est irro-ratio timenda, *Galf. Mon.* ix. 7.



it'll never wet  
him at all."

Ohel thinks  
this a real  
wonder.

Arthur has the  
"retire"  
sounded,

and bids his  
barons

go home to  
their wives.

His host goes  
homeward  
merrily, prais-  
ing Arthur  
to the skies.

Arthur spends  
his Christmas  
at York,  
has a feast on  
on Christmas-  
day;  
and as the  
houses and  
churches had  
been beaten  
down,

he has them  
rebuilt.

"Schal he neuere take<sup>1</sup> scathe,  
"Ne haue wetyng<sup>2</sup> ne wape."  
Ohel seyde, "yt is wonder<sup>3</sup> þyng,  
" & selcouþ ho made þe gynnyng<sup>4</sup>!"<sup>4</sup>

10,352

þan dide Arthur bemes blowe,  
Hornes, belles, þat men myght knowe  
þat he wolde þennes<sup>5</sup> turne,  
. & remue his host fro þat burne.

10,356

His barons þat come fro ferne,  
He bad hem renne hom ryght<sup>6</sup> ȝerne,  
. To wyte how hit for<sup>7</sup> at home,  
. & glade þer wyues whan þey come.

10,360

Wyþ mykel ioie & mykel play  
Wente þe ost homward þer way;  
. Of Arthur made þey mykel pris,  
. How he was hardy, large, & wys,

10,364

& seyde "neuere or in Bretaigne  
"Was so noble a cheuentayne!"  
Vntil ȝork Arthur gan turne;

10,368

pere al þe ȝol he made<sup>8</sup> soiourne.  
¶ On þe ȝol day he made his feste  
. Wyþ þe<sup>9</sup> barons of his geste.

10,372

fful mykel enpeired was þe toun,  
Kyrkes, houses, were beten doun;  
. þer burgeyses were bygged riche,  
. Wast & Eyuere [?] was hit liche.—<sup>10</sup>

10,376

. þe bischop was slayn wyþ þe Saxons,  
. & opere manye religions;—  
. Aþ he dide hit bigge ageyn  
. As hit was byfore<sup>11</sup> certeyn.

10,380

<sup>1</sup> latche.

<sup>2</sup> haf wettenes.

<sup>3</sup> selcouth.

<sup>4</sup> MS. gymnyng. P., ferly who  
mad þe gynnyng.

<sup>5</sup> wild þien.

<sup>6</sup> þam wend home.

<sup>7</sup> fore.

<sup>8</sup> ȝole mad þer. [leaf 61, col. 2.]

<sup>9</sup> many.

<sup>10</sup> wasten & way was att o liche.

<sup>11</sup> in þe right.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hym serued a prest, a ful god man, <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                          | Arthur makes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Hys name was cald sire Pyran; <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | [leaf 45, col. 2.]                                       | Pyran arch-<br>bishop of York,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| He gaf hym þe erchebishops se,<br>& bad hym 'kepe þat dignite,<br>' & holy kirke a-geyn restore,<br>' þat þe Saxons had wasted byfore.'                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 10,384                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| . Pes he dide oueral <sup>3</sup> crye,<br>. þat non dide oþer vylenye,<br>But in lawe, right, & skyle; <sup>4</sup><br>Husebande men, bad hem tyle; <sup>4</sup><br>ffrankeleyns þat hadde desheritison,<br>He dide þem seke <sup>5</sup> in ilka toun,<br>& gaf hem a-geyn þer heritage,<br>Restored þem þer oþer damage.<br>pre þer were, doughti & gode,<br>Noble men, of kynges blode,<br>Loth, Aguisel, & Vryen,<br>þe northe langed to þyse pre men;<br>þyse pre departed þe northe lond<br>þorow Arthures gift, y vnderstond. <sup>6</sup><br>To Lothe he gaf al Lounes, <sup>7</sup><br>Al þe contre, right as hit es.<br>Scotlond he gaf sire Anguisel;<br>Vryen had Murreue vntil <sup>8</sup> his del;<br>. & alle to holde of hym þer þynge,<br>. ffor Arthur was þer chef[e] <sup>9</sup> kyng.<br>Sire Lothe þat weddede Anne,<br>Wawayn þer sone at Rome was þanne<br>. To norise, als þe romaunce seys,<br>. & he highte Wawayn þe curteys. | 10,388<br>10,392<br>10,396<br>10,400<br>10,404<br>10,408 | proclaims<br>peace over all<br>the land,<br>bids husband-<br>men till,<br>reinstates<br>franklins in<br>their holdings,<br>and divides all<br>the north coun-<br>try between<br>Loth, Anguisel,<br>and Urien.<br>Loth gets<br>Lownes;<br>Anguisel,<br>Scotland;<br>Urien, Murreue.<br>All hold their<br>lands of<br>Arthur.<br>Loth, who<br>wedded<br>Arthur's sister<br>Anne, has his<br>son, Wawayn<br>the Courteous,<br>at Rome. |

<sup>1</sup> *a gode man.*<sup>2</sup> *Piran.* (Pyram, *Wace*, ii. 68, l. 9842.)<sup>3</sup> *alle.*<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> *did þam.*<sup>6</sup> *þorgh Arture gift as .I. fond.*<sup>7</sup> tot Loënois, *Wace*, ii. 69, l. 9874. Lot . . . ad consulatum Londone-siæ, ceterarumque comprovinciarum, quæ ad eum pertinebant, reduxit, *Galf. Mon.* lib. ix. § 9.<sup>8</sup> *Morey titt.* (Morayshire?)<sup>9</sup> *chefe.*



¶ *Hic desponsauit Guenneueram.*

Arthur then  
weds

Genoyre, a

cousin of Earl  
Cador's, born  
of the Roman  
line,

fair, courteous,  
generous,  
lovely of  
speech, and  
sweet to look  
on.

But, alas!  
they could get  
no heir.

When Arthur hadde his lond iustised,  
& don als he hadde auised, 10,412

Genoyre<sup>1</sup> he wedded, & mad hure quen:  
Norysched wyþ Cador had scheo ben;  
Sche was sire Cadores cosyn,  
& born was of þe Romainys lyn, 10,416

ffor hure moder was of Romainys<sup>2</sup> kynde.  
So fair as scheo myght no man fynde;  
Y-now scheo couþe of curtesy,  
Large gyuere, & spak<sup>3</sup> louely; 10,420

. Of body was scheo swyþe auenaunt,  
. ffair contenanced,<sup>4</sup> wyþ swete semblaunt.  
Alas! þey myghte non heyr haue,  
Neyþer maide<sup>5</sup> child, ne knaue. 10,424

¶ *Deucit Hyberniam.*

Next summer  
Arthur pre-  
pares a fleet

to conquer  
Ireland.

He summons  
his folk;

When wynter cold was al away,  
& hete comen of someresday,  
& fair weder on se to fare,<sup>6</sup> 10,428

A flute on flode Arthur dide ȝare;<sup>6</sup>  
He seide he wolde til Irland,  
& wyne hit al to Bretons hand.

Longe tyme wolde he nought waste,  
He dide somoune his folk on haste, 10,432

. Erles, barouns, knyghtes, squiers,  
Alle þe ȝongest bachelers  
pat wel myghte, & best couþe  
Stonde in werre, & were of ȝouþe. 10,436

<sup>1</sup> Genièvre, *Wace*, ii. 69, l. 9882;  
*Guanhumara*, *Galf. Mon.* lib. ix.  
§ 9.

<sup>2</sup> *roman.* [leaf 62.]

<sup>3</sup> *giffer spekand.*

<sup>4</sup> *contenance.*

<sup>5</sup> *maiden.*

<sup>6</sup> P. transposes these lines.



- Vpon Irland his flute gan lende; [leaf 45, back, col. 1.] they land in  
 Swyþe vp to lande gon þey wende, Ireland,  
 Vitaille to seke, & mele & corn; and go forag-  
 Bestes slayn to schipe were born, 10,440 ing.  
 Lyflode al þat þey myghte gete, They kill  
 . To sustinaunce vntil þer mete, beasts,  
 . Ilkadel to schipe þey drow, and victual  
 . & vitailled hem wel y-now. 10,444 their ships.  
 To Gwylomar, þe Irische kyng, King Gwylom-  
 Com bode sone of þeir comyng; mar hears of  
 þat Arthur was aryued þere, this,  
 . Al his lond for to conquere. 10,448  
 þe folk pleynded hem aboute;  
 þer godes were lorn,<sup>1</sup> & þey in doute. and of his  
 þe Irische kyng dide folk somoune people's losses.  
 . þorow-out þe lond, of ylka toune, 10,452 He summons  
 . Of vpland & of burghe,<sup>2</sup> his folk  
 To giue bataille to kyng Arthurghe.<sup>2</sup> to fight Arthur.  
 When boþe partis come to þe fight,  
 þe naked Irische were nought dight; 10,456 The Irish are  
 Hauberk ne scheld ne myghte þey bere, naked and un-  
 Ne fro þe arewes coupe þem nought were; armed.  
 þey nadde neuere seen non ar.  
 O syde þey fledde here<sup>3</sup> & þar; 10,460 They flee at  
 . Ilkon made oþer agast, once,  
 . & conseilled hem to fle ful fast  
 To wodes, to hilles, þer lyues to saue; to save their  
 Oþer socour þey wyste non haue. 10,464 lives.  
 þe kyng fley til a wode syde;  
 Arthur hym folewed, & dide hym byde, Gwylomar  
 & al wyþ force hym þer tok; flees too; but  
 & he swor hym vpon þe bok, Arthur takes  
 To holde of hym his heritage him,  
 & zelde hym ilka ȝer truwage. 10,468 and he swears  
 fealty to  
 Arthur, and

<sup>1</sup> was lost. [leaf 62, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>3</sup> hider.



gives hostages  
to secure it.

*per*-til he gaf hym god hostage,  
To holden his fewte & homage. 10,472

¶ *Hic transfretauit, & Orchades cepit.*

Arthur then  
goes to Iceland,  
and soon wins  
it.

When þat was pesed & brought til ende,  
Til Island<sup>1</sup> [Arthur] dight hym to wende.  
Island<sup>2</sup> sone al he wan,

ffor lord þey knew hym ilka man. 10,476

And there,  
Goneweys, king  
of Orkney,  
Doldan, king of  
Gothland,  
and Rumarek,  
king of Went-  
land,

Goneweys<sup>3</sup> þe kyng of Orkeneye,  
. How Arthur wan, wel herde he seye;  
So dide Doldan of Gotland,  
& Rumarek þe kyng of Wentland;<sup>4</sup> 10,480

Tyl alle þre was hit told  
þat Arthur was a conquerour bold.  
þyse þre kynges, þey hym dredde  
ffor þe gret host þat he ledde; 10,484

come and sub-  
mit themselves  
to him.

þey durste nought stande hym ageyn,  
Ne þey ne hadde non host certeyn,  
Ne þey ne wolde þer lond destruye,  
Ne hym ne þeym to-gedere noye. 10,488

Arthur takes  
their fealty in  
lovely wise.

þe beste consail þey toke on hand,  
& wente to Arthur into Island,<sup>2</sup>  
& for þeyr landes made alle pes.  
Arthur þem þanked þat þey so ches; 10,492  
Louely tok he þer alle here fewte,  
. ffor þey come alle so wyþ wylle fre.

He then returns  
to England,

When al was syker & certeyn, [leaf 45, back, col. 2.]  
Til Inghland he turnde<sup>5</sup> ageyn; 10,496  
. & when þey wyste þat he cam,  
Wyþ ioie alle a-geyn<sup>6</sup> hym nam.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Ingelond*. *Island*, P.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *Irland*. *Island*, P. *Islande*,  
*Wace*, ii. 72, l. 9941.

<sup>3</sup> *Geneweis*. *Gonvals*, *Wace*, ii.  
72, l. 9945.

<sup>4</sup> Et Doldamer rois de Gollande  
Et Romarec de Guenelande.

*Wace*, ii. 72, l. 9946-7.

<sup>5</sup> *com.* [leaf 62, back.]

<sup>6</sup> MS. *ageym*. P. *ageyn*.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Twelf ȝer <sup>1</sup> after þat comyng,<br>In reste & pes he regned kyng,<br>þat neuere on hym no werre bygan, <sup>2</sup><br>Ne he ne werrede vpon no man.<br>He tok so mykel of curtesy,<br>Wypoute techyng of any hym by,<br>. þat non ne mighte conne more,<br>. Neyþer þorow kynde, ne craft of lore.<br>. In alle answeres he was right wys,<br>Of alle manhede he bar þe pris;<br>Of non þat tyme ne was swylk speche,<br>þat til his nobleye mighte reche,—<br>Nought of þe Emperour of Rome,—<br>. þat he ouer hym ne bar þe blome;<br>. In alle manere þat kynge schold do,<br>. Non oþer hadde such grace þer-to.<br>He ne herde neuere speke of knyght<br>þat losed was of dedes wyght,<br>þat he ne ȝerned hym for to se,<br>& for to haue hym of meyne; <sup>3</sup><br>ȝyf he for mede serue hym wolde,<br>He ne lefte for seluer ne for golde. | 10,500<br><br><br><br><br>10,504<br><br><br><br><br>10,508<br><br><br><br><br>10,512<br><br><br><br><br>10,516<br><br><br><br><br>10,520 | and reigns for<br>12 years in<br>peace.<br><br><br><br>He knows so<br>much courtesy<br>that no one can<br>know more.<br><br>He is wise,<br>most manly,<br>and more re-<br>nowned than<br>the Emperor of<br>Rome.<br><br><br><br><br>Whatever<br>doughty knight<br>he hears of,<br>he strives to<br>get him in his<br>household. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### ¶ Hic ordinatur Tabula Rotunda.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                      |                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| For his barons þat were so bolde,<br>þat al þe world pris of þem tolde,<br>ffor noman wyste who was best,<br>. Ne in armes doughtiest,<br>Dide Arthur ordeyne þe round table<br>þat ȝit men telle of many a fable.<br>At þer bord in tyme of mete,<br>Alle þis noble knyghte schold <sup>4</sup> ete; | 10,524<br><br><br><br><br><br>10,528 | For his bold<br>barons, of<br><br>whom no man<br>knows which<br>is best,<br>Arthur ordains<br>the Round<br>Table.<br>At this table at<br>meals, |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> Trente ans, *Wace*, MS. du Roi, 27; Douze ans, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé, &c. (*Wace*, ii. 73, note a).

<sup>2</sup> *neuer no were on him nam.*

<sup>3</sup> *of him mercy.*

<sup>4</sup> *þo doughty knyghtes suld.*



|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                               | Non sat wyþynne, non sat wyþoute,<br>Bot alle euene rounde aboute ;                                                                            |        |
| no knight sits<br>above another,                                              | . Non sat first, ne non sat last,<br>But per by per, in euen cast ; <sup>1</sup>                                                               | 10,532 |
|                                                                               | Non sat heye, non sat lowe, <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                       |        |
| but all sit as<br>equals ;                                                    | . But alle euenlyk men myghte þem knowe ; <sup>3</sup><br>. Non was set at non ende,<br>. But alle a round, for <sup>4</sup> alle were hende ; | 10,536 |
|                                                                               | . Non wyste whiche of pris <sup>5</sup> most was,<br>. þer-fore þey sete alle in compas ;                                                      |        |
| all sit down,<br>all rise, at<br>once,<br>and all have the<br>same allowance. | . Alle at ones doun þey seten,<br>. At ones ros when þey hadde eten ;<br>Alle were þey serued of o seruise,<br>Euenly, alle of on assise.      | 10,540 |

### ¶ De gloria Curye Arthury.

|                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Of whatever<br>repute any<br>knight may be,<br>whether he is<br>French, Flem-<br>ing,<br>Angevine, | What knyght had ben in al þe werld,<br>. Had his los be neuere so wel byherd, <sup>6</sup><br>Were he ffrenche, <sup>7</sup> were he Bretoun,<br>Normaund, fflemyng, or Burgoiloun,<br>Spaynard, Gascoyn, or Angeuyn, <sup>8</sup> | 10,544               |
| Irish, Picard,<br>Zeelandish,<br>Catalan,                                                          | Scot, Irische, Pykard, or Peyteuyn, <sup>8</sup><br>. Daneys, Norneys, or Selander, <sup>8</sup><br>. Henner, ffryson, or Katelaner, <sup>8</sup><br>. Arragoneys, Lombard, or Brabaunt, <sup>8</sup>                              | 10,548               |
| Provinçal,                                                                                         | . Prouyncial, Nauerner, or Alemaunt, <sup>8</sup><br>Of wham he held his fe, or how,<br>ffro þe Weste [or] Est vntil <sup>9</sup> Mounchow,<br>He was told of non honour                                                           | 10,552<br>[leaf 46.] |
| he is held of no<br>honour unless<br>he has been<br>with Arthur.                                   | Bot he had ben wyþ kyng Arthour,                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 10,556               |

<sup>1</sup> *pere bi pere euen kast.*<sup>2</sup> *lawe.* [leaf 62, back, col. 2.]<sup>3</sup> *euenly for to knawe.*<sup>4</sup> *o round &.*<sup>5</sup> *who of þam.*<sup>6</sup> *þof his los had bene wele herd.*<sup>7</sup> *frankis.*<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>9</sup> *west vnto.*



- & hadde taken of his liuere,  
 Cloþ or queyntise,<sup>1</sup> þat knowe myght be.  
 Of ferne landes many on namen,<sup>2</sup>  
 & til þat court for worschyp camen,<sup>2</sup> 10,560 To him come  
 To lere honour & curtesy,<sup>2</sup> many from far  
 & here þe prowesse of knyghtes hardy,<sup>2</sup> lands to learn  
 . & to here þe faire gestes<sup>2</sup> courtesy,  
 . þat knyghtes broughte & telde at festes.<sup>2</sup> and hear  
 Somme come to se his faire wonyng,<sup>2</sup> 10,565 fair tales at  
 . & se & here þere selcoup þynge;<sup>2</sup> feasts.  
 Pouere men, þey louede hym alle,  
 & riche honoured hym in halle; 10,568 Poor men love  
 ffele kynges of ferne stede<sup>3</sup> Arthur;  
 Sent hym gyftes for doute & drede;  
 . þey wylt hit wel, ȝyf þey wold ryde,<sup>2</sup> many kings  
 . His werre durste no kyng abide;<sup>2</sup> 10,572 send him gifts,  
 . Kynges aforced þer casteles aboute,<sup>2</sup>  
 . ffor alle landes of hym hadde doute,<sup>2</sup>  
 þat ȝyf he come, he scholde þem lese,<sup>2</sup> and all lands  
 Or gyue hym truwage as be wold chese;<sup>2</sup> fear him.  
 . þer-fore ilkon at þer myght<sup>2</sup> 10,577  
 . Aforced þer cites, & wel þeym dight.<sup>2</sup>

### ¶ De nobilitate Arthury.

- But in þyse twelf ȝeres tyme  
 ffele auentures þat men rede in ryme;  
 . In þat tyme were herd & sen 10,581 In these 12  
 þat somme seye, þat neuere hap<sup>4</sup> ben. adventures,  
 Of Arthur ys seid many selcoup told in ryme,  
 . In diuerse landes northe & soup 10,584 that some say  
 þat men holdeþ now for fable, are lies.  
 And yet many  
 of these strange  
 tales, held false,

<sup>1</sup> þing.<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> thede.<sup>4</sup> had.



are true.

All arn't true ;  
but all arn't  
lies ;  
yet all may be  
put to good use.

Arthur's deeds  
were greater  
than other  
men's, and if  
they'd not been  
written of, we  
shouldn't have  
known of 'em.  
Geoffrey of  
Monmouth  
wrote of him,  
and blamed  
Gildas and  
Bede  
for not writing  
of Arthur, who  
was greater  
than any men  
they did write  
of (save saints.)

Arthur is  
written of  
everywhere,  
and specially in  
France ;  
but not here.

We have to go  
to strangers'  
books for him.

But till Doooms-  
day shall men  
write of Arthur.

. Be þey neuere so trewe ne stable.  
. Al ys nought soþ, ne nought al lye,  
. Ne al wysdam, ne al folye ; 10,588  
. <sup>1</sup>þer nys no þyng of hym seyð  
. þat hit ne may be to godnesse leyð.<sup>2</sup>  
. More þan opere were his dedes,  
. þat men of hym so mykel redes ; 10,592  
. Ne were his dedes hadde be writen,<sup>3</sup>  
. Of hym no þyng men scholde haue wyten.<sup>4</sup>  
. Geffrey Arthur of Monemu,  
. He wrot his dedes þat were of pru, 10,596  
. & blamed boþe Gyldas & Bede,  
. Why þey wolde nought of hym rede,  
. Syn he bar þe pris of alle cristen<sup>5</sup> kynges,  
. & write so litel of<sup>6</sup> his preysynges, 10,600  
. & more worschip of hym spoke þer was<sup>7</sup>  
. þat of any of þo þat spekes Gildas,  
. Or of any þat Bede wrot,  
. Saue holy men þat we wot. 10,604  
. In alle landes wrot men of Arthur,  
. Hys noble dedes of honour :  
. In ffraunce men wrot, & zit men wryte,  
. But herd haue we of hym but lyte ;<sup>8</sup> 10,608  
. pere-fore of hym more men fynde<sup>9</sup>  
. In farre bokes, als ys kynde,<sup>9</sup>  
. þan we haue in þys lond :<sup>9</sup> [leaf 46, col. 2,]  
. þat we haue, þer men hit fond ;<sup>9</sup> 10,612  
. Til Domesday men schalle spelle,  
. & of Arthures dedes talke<sup>10</sup> & telle.

<sup>1</sup> See the lines 10,040-7 in *Wace*,  
ii. 76-7 from MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé,  
against the embellishers of the  
Arthur story throwing discredit on  
it by their fables.

<sup>2</sup> þat ne it may to gode laid.

<sup>3</sup> P. leaves out this line and the  
next.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *wryten*.

<sup>5</sup> *siþen he was pris of att.* [lf. 63.]

<sup>6</sup> *þei wild not write.*

<sup>7</sup> *of him was.*

<sup>8</sup> *Here haf we of him bot lite.*

<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>10</sup> MS. *takke*. P. *talk*.



- . Now ys Arthur of pleyn age,  
 . He conseilled wyþ his baronage ; 10,616 Arthur says  
 . & his gode knyghtes hym redde,  
 . þat he had fostred & forþ fedde.  
 He seyde he wolde ouer se<sup>1</sup> to Fraunce, he'll conquer  
 & wynne hit al wyþ dynt of launce. 10,620 France ;  
 But first he seide 'he wolde<sup>2</sup> to Norweye, but will first  
 ' þe kyng had sent hym bode<sup>3</sup> he hoped to deye ; win Norway  
 " & Loth, myn neuw, schal he his eyr ; for his nephew,  
 " To make hym kyng y am in speyr ; 10,624 Loth,  
 " His neuw he ys, of next degre, who is next in  
 " Of blod ys non nerrer þan<sup>4</sup> he." blood to the  
 Right as he seyde, also he<sup>5</sup> þought, dying king.  
 . He wende þe barons wolde so haue wrought ;  
 But when þey seye þat he was ded, 10,629 But when the  
 þey toke þem til anoþer red : king does die,  
 Loth to haue, þey hym forsok, the Norse  
 . & anoþer kyng þey tok ; 10,632 barons choose  
 . ffor alle<sup>6</sup> þey seide wyþ o mouþ, a native king ;  
 ' þey wolde haue no kyng<sup>7</sup> vncouþ ; they wo'n't  
 . ' þey hoped nought þey schold hym fynde<sup>8</sup> have a stranger,  
 . ' Als godliche as þer owen kynde.<sup>8</sup> 10,636  
 ' Alyens,' þey seyde, 'he wolde auaunce, who'll promote  
 ' þat schulde be þeire appurtynaunce. aliens, and not  
 ' A heued þey wolde haue þem aboue, them.  
 ' þat hem wolde auaunce & loue.' 10,640  
 þorow þat consail & þat reson, So they crown  
 Rycolf þey ches, was a baron, Rycolf king ;  
 & coroned hym, & now ys<sup>9</sup> kyng ;  
 & þus haþ Lot<sup>10</sup> lorn þat þyng. 10,644

<sup>1</sup> *he wald wend.*<sup>2</sup> *bot first he wild.*<sup>3</sup> *þe kyng sent.* (Sicelins li rois mors estoit, *Wace*, ii. 77, l. 10,052.)<sup>4</sup> *non heire bot.*<sup>5</sup> *Sichelyn said & þus.*<sup>6</sup> *þus.*<sup>7</sup> *man.*<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>9</sup> *mad him.*<sup>10</sup> *þus gate hast.*



but Arthur  
declares

he'll lay Ry-  
colf's crown  
low.

“ ffor help,” seid Arthur, “ Loth haþ bysought ;<sup>1</sup>  
 . “ ffaille hym by no weye wol y nought ;  
 “ Y wolde his honur & [his]<sup>2</sup> right,  
 “ & þat schal y he[l]pe at my<sup>3</sup> myght. 10,648  
 “ Rycolfes coroune y wolde abate,  
 . “ þat þe Noreys gef hym so late.”

### ¶ De conquestu Norganie.

Arthur and his  
folk sail to

Norway,

slay Rycolf and  
his men,

and make Loth  
king.

Sir Wawyn  
[Gawein], who  
has been at  
Rome with  
Pope Sim-  
plicius

now comes  
home to Bri-  
tain.

Tyl Arthur com þer folk ynow ;  
 To schipes on flode faste þey drow ; 10,652  
 . þe wynd blew, & gan hem dryue,  
 Vp in Norweye gon þey aryue.  
 Ricolf was god, & wolde nought fle  
 Ne remue hym out of þe contre ; 10,656  
 He gadered host, for wel he wende  
 Ageyn Arthur hym self defende ;  
 . But his wenyng was al<sup>4</sup> veyn,  
 ffor Ricolf & hise wer alle þer sleyn. 10,660  
 When Arthur hadde Norweye wonnen,  
 þe barons alle ouer riden & ronnen,  
 Loth, his neuew, he gaf þe croun,  
 . After Ricolf þat was down. 10,664  
 Loth made Arthur þenne feute,  
 Als til his chef ouer al þat fe.  
 ¶ Lothes sone, sire Wawayn,  
 Had ben at Rome to lere Romain, 10,668  
 Wyþ Supplice þe Apostoille<sup>5</sup> to wone,  
 . Honur to lere, langage to kone ;  
 & þere was he dubbed knyght.  
 And holden hardy, strong, & wyght. 10,672  
 . When Supplice had don his ende, [leaf 46, back, col. 1.]  
 . Tyl Bretayne-ward Wawayn<sup>6</sup> gan wende.

<sup>1</sup> *has souht.*

<sup>2</sup> *his.* [leaf 63, col. 2.]

<sup>3</sup> & *help þerto þat .I.*

<sup>4</sup> *alle.*

<sup>5</sup> *pape.* (St. Simplicie, pope, 468-483 A.D. De Lincy, *Wace*, ii. 79.)

<sup>6</sup> *to bretayn Wawan home.*



Now ys Wawayn comen hom,  
 .fful blithe ys Loth al of his com; 10,676  
 Noble he was, & ful curteys, He is noble  
 Mykel honour of hym euere men seys:<sup>1</sup> and courteous,  
 He loued mesure & faire beryng;  
 Pruyde ne bost loued he no þyng; 10,680 hates pride  
 . Vnkynde, false, & fykele,<sup>2</sup> he hated;  
 . Lesynges, alle swilk he abated;<sup>3</sup> and lies,  
 More he gaf þan he by-hette, and gives more  
 Wel more he dide þan terme of sette. 10,684 than he pro-  
 mises.

Now ys Loth in Norweye seised,  
 . & Wawayn comen, þat mykel ys preised.<sup>4</sup>  
 Alle þo men þat were of myght, Arthur gathers  
 þat weren ȝonge, & coupe<sup>5</sup> of fyght, 10,688 a host of young  
 & loueden<sup>6</sup> more werre þan pes, fighting men,  
 Arthur til hym alle swyche<sup>7</sup> ches;  
 Of swylk gadered he many on,  
 & schipes on se ful god won. 10,692  
 . When his host was styf & stark, and ships them  
 He schiped to-wardes Denemark. over to Den-  
 Achil, þat þen was kyng of Danes, mark.  
 Saw Bretons & Noreys come alle at anes 10,696 The Danish  
 king, Achil,  
 Wyp Arthur, to wynne his lond,  
 . & for to destruye al þat he<sup>8</sup> fond.  
 But Achil þoughte, as kyng ful wys,  
 þat<sup>9</sup> Arthur oueral hadde þe prys; 10,700  
 He wiste wel he schulde conquere  
 His lond of hym, ȝyf he come þere;  
 But he seide 'he wolde nought<sup>10</sup> so  
 ' Hym seluen ne his lond fur-do,<sup>11</sup> 10,704 He says he  
 won't have his  
 land destroyed,

<sup>1</sup> honour of him men rede & seis.

<sup>2</sup> fals & fikett lesyng.

<sup>3</sup> auantour alle swilk he bated.

<sup>4</sup> is comen & preised.

<sup>5</sup> in youth þat couth ouht.

<sup>6</sup> þat lufed. [leaf 63, back.]

<sup>7</sup> Arthure att swilk men.

<sup>8</sup> þei.

<sup>9</sup> He sauh.

<sup>10</sup> if he suld not.

<sup>11</sup> P. leaves out this line.



|                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| his folk slain,<br>his treasure<br>spent,                                                     | ‘ Ne suffre his folk to be slayn,<br>‘ Ne his tresor spende in vayn,<br>‘ Ne his casteles beten <sup>1</sup> doun,                                                                                     |        |
| and his towns<br>burnt.<br>So he submits<br>to Arthur,                                        | . ‘ Ne kirke robbed, <sup>2</sup> ne brenne toun ;<br>But faire he spak, & wel he hette,<br>& wysly gaf giftes wel bysette, <sup>3</sup>                                                               | 10,708 |
| and is allowed<br>to hold his land<br>in peace,                                               | So þat of Arthur he had grauntise,<br>þe lond in pes for his seruise ;<br>& Arthur þen his seruise tok,                                                                                                | 10,712 |
| after swearing<br>homage to<br>Arthur.                                                        | Omage he swor hym on þe bok.<br>¶ Arthur was glad þat he þus wan,<br>So sone þe kyng bicam his man ;                                                                                                   | 10,716 |
| Arthur then<br>picks out the<br>best Danish<br>knights and<br>archers,                        | But ȝut he þoughte to wynne wel <sup>4</sup> more.<br>Of þe beste knyghtes he ches þore,<br>& squiers bolde, & gode <sup>5</sup> archers,<br>. þat louede werre, & knew þe maners—                     | 10,720 |
|                                                                                               | I ne wot how manye <sup>6</sup> þousandes<br>þat he so gadered y þo landes ;—<br>. Of gret folk mad he purueaunce,<br>ffor he seyde he wolde to ffraunce :                                             | 10,724 |
| and wins<br>Flanders and<br>Boulogne ;                                                        | fflaundre he wan, Boloyne he tok ;<br>Tounes, casteles, for hym þey quok ;<br>. His folk so wysly gan he lede,                                                                                         |        |
| but he plunders<br>no land,                                                                   | Struyed he no lond als he ȝede,<br>He tok no þyng fer ne hende,                                                                                                                                        | 10,728 |
| takes only<br>food for horse<br>and man, and<br>pays for it all.                              | But mete & drynke, & hors prouende ;<br>ȝit toke þei non wyþ no maistríe,<br>But bought hit þere hit was to bye.                                                                                       | 10,732 |
| France is then<br>called Gaul, is<br>held by the<br>Romans, and<br>has no king of<br>its own. | þat tyme þat þis chaunce gan falle,<br>þat now hat ffraunce, þo hight hit Galle ;<br>þe Romainys þat ilke tyme hit held, [lf. 46, bk., col. 2.]<br>Was þer <sup>7</sup> no kyng bar croune ne scheld ; | 10,736 |

<sup>1</sup> be casten.<sup>2</sup> to robbe.<sup>3</sup> giftes gaf & wisly sette.<sup>4</sup> he wild wyn.<sup>5</sup> gode & slie.<sup>6</sup> þe hundrethes ne.<sup>7</sup> þan. [leaf 63, back, col. 2.]



. & ilk ȝer toke þey þer-of truage,  
 . Syþen<sup>1</sup> Iulius wan hit in seruage.

¶ De ffrollo, Romano Regente ffrancie.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Frolle, a doughti bachelor,<br/>                 Had hit in kepyng many a ȝer;<br/>                 To Romayns<sup>2</sup> byhoue gadered þer rent,<br/>                 &amp; at termes to Rome<sup>3</sup> hit sent,<br/>                 Or bar hit hym self to þe Emperour.<br/>                 ffrolle was a ful hardy man in stour,<br/>                 He was comen of Romayns blod,<br/>                 He dredde<sup>4</sup> non þat ageyns hym stod.<br/>                 Al day tydyng men hym told,<br/>                 þat Arthur com wyþ host ful bold,<br/>                 . &amp; þat no man myghte dwelle ne be<br/>                 . But ȝif he helde of hym in fe.<br/>                 . þat herde ffrolle, &amp; was ful<sup>5</sup> wo,<br/>                 . &amp; seide hit schuld nought þat wey<sup>6</sup> go.<br/>                 He dide somoun<sup>7</sup> alle to come<br/>                 Til hym, þat helde þer fe of Rome,<br/>                 . ffor to brynge hors &amp; armes,<br/>                 . þe lond for to fende fro harmes,<sup>8</sup><br/>                 . &amp; doughtily to-gydere stande<br/>                 . Ageyn Arthur þat was comande.</p> | <p>10,740<br/>                 10,744<br/>                 10,748<br/>                 10,752<br/>                 10,756</p> | <p>Frolle holds<br/>                 France for the<br/>                 Romans,<br/>                 gathers their<br/>                 rent, and sends<br/>                 it to Rome.<br/>                 He is a brave<br/>                 man,<br/>                 and is told that<br/>                 no one can<br/>                 stand against<br/>                 Arthur.<br/>                 But he says he<br/>                 will.<br/>                 He summons<br/>                 his host<br/>                 to fight<br/>                 doughtily<br/>                 against Arthur.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ Hic gens ffrolly cecidit.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |               |                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>¶ Hit was nought longe bytwyxt hem set<br/>                 Ar<sup>9</sup> þer hostes<sup>10</sup> to-gedere met.<br/>                 ffrolle mysfel atte firste pres,<br/>                 ffor ner alle his beste folk he les,</p> | <p>10,760</p> | <p>The hosts soon<br/>                 meet,<br/>                 and Frolle is at<br/>                 once defeated.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> sen.

<sup>2</sup> þer.

<sup>3</sup> termes home.

<sup>4</sup> douted.

<sup>5</sup> right.

<sup>6</sup> said it suld not so gate.

<sup>7</sup> did somond.

<sup>8</sup> P. leaves out this line.

<sup>9</sup> þat.

<sup>10</sup> ? final s added by a later hand.



|                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                                                               | What y-slayn & ouer schaken,<br>. & nerhande hym self had ben taken.                                                                                                                              | 10,764 |
| No wonder<br>either! For<br>Arthur's host is<br>so great that<br>none can<br>number it.                                       | Hit was no wonder <sup>1</sup> þat he fledde,<br>ffor þe gret host þat Arthur ay ledde;<br>. Was non þat coupe hit noumbre <sup>2</sup> ne seye,<br>þe folk he tok, comynge in <sup>3</sup> weye; | 10,768 |
| Wherever he<br>finds a doughty<br>man, will he,<br>nill he, forth<br>he must with<br>Arthur!<br>Some come to<br>him for love, | Hit was no lond þat he þorow sought,<br>Euere þe beste wyþ hym he brought;<br>þat doughti was on horse or fote,<br>. Wold he, nold he, <sup>4</sup> forþ he mote:                                 | 10,772 |
|                                                                                                                               | Somme wente for his fair speche,<br>. & somme for drede of oþer wreche,<br>& somme for he gaf largely,<br>& somme for his grete curtesy, <sup>5</sup>                                             | 10,776 |
| and some for<br>fear;                                                                                                         | & somme for los & doute of ded, <sup>6</sup><br>Knowlechyng til hym þey bed:<br>Of ffraunce many a lordyng<br>Comen to holde <sup>7</sup> of hym þer þyng.                                        | 10,780 |
| and many<br>French lords<br>hold their fees<br>of him.                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |

¶ De obsidione ffrolly per Arthurum.

|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                            |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Frolle flees to<br>Paris, his<br>strongest city, | ffrolle fledde faste to Parys,<br>. Hit was þe strengest cite of pris;<br>He knew no bettere recet to haue <sup>8</sup><br>Ageyn Arthur, þat myghte hym saue; <sup>8</sup> | 10,784 |
| and victuals it.                                 | Night & day dide his trauaille<br>To warnische <sup>9</sup> þe toun wyþ vitaille.<br>Mykel folk to Paris fledde,<br>& Arthur þider faste hym spedde;                       | 10,788 |
| Arthur follows<br>him,                           | & Arthur vnderstod ful wel<br>þe purueaunce of ffrolle <sup>10</sup> ilka del;                                                                                             |        |

<sup>1</sup> was ferly.

<sup>2</sup> couth noumbre it.

<sup>3</sup> comand i þe.

<sup>4</sup> wild he ne wild he.

<sup>5</sup> tant por la noblesce de lui,  
Wace, ii. 84, l. 10,210.

<sup>6</sup> tynsett & doute of dede. [leaf 64.]

<sup>7</sup> com & held.

<sup>8</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>9</sup> store.

<sup>10</sup> þer purueiance.



|                                                           |                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| . <i>per</i> -fore he hasted his sege to sette,           |                             |
| . His <i>purueaunce</i> for to lette.                     | 10,792                      |
| Arthur byseged hym so streit                              | [leaf 47.] and besieges     |
| <i>pat</i> <i>ffrolle</i> mighte <i>wyþ</i> no deseit     | him in Paris so             |
| Of vitaille helpe hym at nede,                            | straitly that               |
| By londe ne by water lede                                 | <i>Frolle</i> can get       |
| Ner al a monþe, as men teld,                              | 10,796 in no provi-         |
| . <i>pat</i> <i>ffrolle</i> þe cite of Paris held ;       | sions                       |
| & al <i>pat</i> tyme Arthur <i>per</i> lay,               | during the                  |
| . He ne remued night ne day.                              | month that                  |
| So mykel folk was <i>per</i> -ynne,                       |                             |
| þe raper bigan <i>per</i> fight to gynne; <sup>1</sup>    | Arthur lies                 |
| Hit was despended, <i>pat</i> þey in drow ;               | 10,800 before the           |
| þey hadde no tyme to drawe inow ;                         | town.                       |
| ffor hunger gan þey make mone,                            |                             |
| Men, women, & childre, ilkone.                            | Food fails;                 |
| ȝyf <i>ffrolle</i> wylde as þey wolde,                    |                             |
| þe toun had ben ful sone ȝolde;                           | 10,804                      |
| þey preied <i>ffrolle</i> þorow <sup>2</sup> þe burghe    | the people                  |
| To make pes <i>wyþ</i> kyng Arthurghe.                    | moan for                    |
| <i>ffrolle</i> saw þey pleyned þem sore,                  | hunger,                     |
| & <i>per</i> vitaille was namore,                         |                             |
| & seye wel þey <sup>3</sup> alle wylde                    | 10,808                      |
| þe toun vntil Arthur ȝylde ;                              | and pray                    |
| . & [ <i>pat</i> ] <sup>4</sup> þought hym schame & vyl ; | <i>Frolle</i> to make       |
| Hym self had leuere be in peril,                          | peace with                  |
| & auenture hym his deþ to take,                           | Arthur.                     |
| þan <i>wyþ</i> his wille Parys fursake ; <sup>5</sup>     | 10,812 <i>Frolle</i> sees   |
| “ Strengþe of body or wille y fonde.”                     | their distress,             |
| Tyl Arþur he sente his sonde :                            | and that they               |
| ‘ ȝyf <i>pat</i> he wilde bytwyxt þem to <sup>6</sup>     | want to give up             |
| ‘ To-gedere fighte, <i>wyþoute</i> mo,                    | the town to                 |
|                                                           | Arthur.                     |
|                                                           | 10,816 <i>Frolle</i> thinks |
|                                                           | he’d rather risk            |
|                                                           | his life than be            |
|                                                           | disgraced,                  |
|                                                           |                             |
|                                                           | 10,820 and accord-          |
|                                                           | ingly challenges            |
|                                                           | Arthur to                   |
|                                                           | single combat.              |

<sup>1</sup> *soner gon þer faute begynne.*  
(Et de viande poverté, *Wace*, ii. 85,  
l. 10,239.)

<sup>2</sup> *þorhout.*

<sup>3</sup> *pat þei.*

<sup>4</sup> *pat.*

<sup>5</sup> *þe toun fōrsake.* [leaf 64, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *tuo.*



Whoever wins  
is to have all  
France.

' & whilk of þem were ouer-come,  
' Or slayn, or wyþ force nome, 10,824  
' Tak hym þe lond til his wylle,  
' So þat þe folk nought ne spille.'

Arthur gladly  
accepts the  
challenge.

þat bode cam Arþur wel to hert;  
His gloue he gaf vp al so smert, 10,828  
& tok hostage o boþe partys,  
Of Arthures host<sup>1</sup> & of Parys,  
. þe bataille scholde be in a pleyne  
. Bytwyxt two watres, Marne & Seyne. 10,832

¶ De bello inter Regem Arthurum & ffrollum.

When they are  
ready armed,  
the French  
folk tremble,

When þey were armed & redy dight,  
& were comen þer þey schold fyght,  
Men myght þer<sup>2</sup> se folk tremble & quake,  
. On boþe partis gret deol to make, 10,836  
. Handes wrynge, on knes to<sup>3</sup> falle,

and pray to  
God  
that he who  
wishes peace  
may win.  
Arthur's folk  
pray that he  
may win.

On Godes name to crie & calle,  
' þat he myght wynne, þat pes wold haue,  
' & þe lond fro werre myght saue.' 10,840

Both knights  
are nobly  
armed  
for their trial;

Arþures folk stode & byheld,  
. Redy [digh]t<sup>4</sup> wyþ helm & scheld,  
& by[sought]e God inderly<sup>5</sup>  
To [graunt] Arþur þe maistri. 10,844

none better are  
in their time.

py[se two] knyghtes þat forþ were fet,  
N[obilly] dilght, on horse wel set,  
. T[o assay]e þem how þey were wyght,  
[þe lanc]e to reyse, þer scheld to ryght. 10,848  
[Who myg]hte<sup>6</sup> wel telle, & soþ to seye,  
. [þat sui]lk<sup>7</sup> wer non þat tyme als þey;

<sup>1</sup> of *Arthure*. (cil de l'ost, *Wace*,  
ii. 86, l. 10,274.)

<sup>2</sup> *men mot*.

<sup>3</sup> *wreng on knes*.

<sup>4</sup> A long piece has been torn out  
of the MS. The gaps are filled in

from the Petyt MS., except as noted  
below.

<sup>5</sup> *praied god interly*.

<sup>6</sup> *ho mot*.

<sup>7</sup> *Suilk*.



. [Ilk o]f þeym was horsed wel,  
 . [Had a]rmes<sup>1</sup> stronge as any stel; 10,852  
 By sight myght non þer chese þe best, [lf. 47, col. 2.] You can't tell  
 . Ne whilk þen semed doughtiest; by look which  
 Ne whilk schold wyne, ne haue þe gre,<sup>2</sup> is the doughtier.  
 . By sighte myghte þer non hit se.<sup>2</sup> 10,856

When þey were bone, redy to smite,  
 & þer hors<sup>3</sup> sondred a lyte, They charge.  
 Wyþ speres þey smot,<sup>4</sup> þe bridel brayd,  
 þer scheldes sette, þer launces<sup>5</sup> forþ layd; 10,860  
 þer horses at þer power runnen,  
 þe partis wende haue<sup>6</sup> lorn or wonnen;  
 But ffrolle failed of his dynt,—  
 I trowe his stede a syde stynt,— 10,864 Frolle's thrust  
 & Arthur smot hym in þe scheld. misses,  
 . þe hed<sup>7</sup> was god, & ful wel held, and Arthur  
 & ffrolle out of his sadel cast unhorses him.  
 So fer so þe launce might last. 10,868  
 ffrolle vp stirte, & sydlynges glent, Frolle jumps  
 His scheld dressed, his launce vp<sup>8</sup> hent; up,  
 Til Arþures stede þe point he bar, stabs Arthur's  
 þorow þe breste þe herte he<sup>9</sup> schar. 10,872 horse,  
 Arþur fel; he moste nede; and Arthur  
 . He was a fote, ded was his stede. falls.  
 þe Bretons seye he had þat fal, The Britons  
 þem þoughte for wo þey al to-swal,<sup>10</sup> 10,876 shriek for woe,  
 . þe erþe dunede<sup>11</sup> for þeir cry,  
 To passe þe water þey were redy, want to cross  
 þe trewes to breke þey were ful wylde, the river, and  
 To haue gon ouer in to þe ilde; 10,880 break the truce.

<sup>1</sup> *in armes.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *horses.*<sup>4</sup> MS. *snot.* P. *smote.*<sup>5</sup> *on lance.*<sup>6</sup> *aſt.* [leaf 64, back.]<sup>7</sup> *Iren.*<sup>8</sup> *schelde dight his lance he.*<sup>9</sup> *it.*<sup>10</sup> *to sualle.*<sup>11</sup> *stonyed.*



|                                                                                          |                                                |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--------|
| But Arthur is<br>soon up again,                                                          | . But þey sawe hym sone vp a-geyn ;            |        |
|                                                                                          | . þey wyþstod þen, & were fayn.                |        |
|                                                                                          | . When he was vp, he hadde no rest,            |        |
|                                                                                          | . Wyþ ffrolle to fighte he was ful prest,      | 10,884 |
| draws Caliburn,                                                                          | He leyde his hand to Caliborne,                |        |
|                                                                                          | . þat neuere for armes wolde scurne.           |        |
| and attacks<br>Frolle.                                                                   | þer-wyþ on ffrolle ful sore he sought,         |        |
|                                                                                          | & ffrolle a-geyn ne dredde hym nought ;        | 10,888 |
|                                                                                          | . Agayn Arthur he stod & stynt,                |        |
|                                                                                          | Nought abaischt hym for <sup>1</sup> no dynt ; |        |
| Frolle strikes<br>Arthur,                                                                | His swerd had drawen, he lyft hit heye,        |        |
|                                                                                          | On Arþur he let hit sore fleye :               | 10,892 |
|                                                                                          | þe dynt was gret, for he was strong,           |        |
|                                                                                          | þe fir out fley, þe sparkles sprong,           |        |
|                                                                                          | þe helm he claf, & þe basyn,                   |        |
| cleaves his<br>helm, basci-<br>net and coif,<br>and cuts into<br>Arthur's fore-<br>head. | & þe coyfe þat was so fyn.                     | 10,896 |
|                                                                                          | . þe swerd was scharp, & ful wel bot,          |        |
|                                                                                          | In þe forehed Arþur he smot,                   |        |
|                                                                                          | . þorow þe flesche, vnto þe pan ;              |        |
|                                                                                          | After þe strok þe blod out ran.                | 10,900 |

¶ *De occisione ffrolly, Regentis ffrancie.*

|                                               |                                                    |        |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Arthur                                        | When Arthur felde <sup>2</sup> þat he was wounded, |        |
|                                               | . Nopyng he ne <sup>3</sup> stinte ne stounded ;   |        |
| gets angry,                                   | ffor, ful of yre, wyþ colour teint,                |        |
|                                               | Was he neyper abaischt ne feint ;                  | 10,904 |
| and with Cali-<br>burn                        | Caliborne he hadde in hande,                       |        |
|                                               | . He tok hym byre þe strok teysande ; <sup>4</sup> |        |
|                                               | Abouen <sup>5</sup> his helm ful faste he dref ;   |        |
| cleaves Frolle<br>through head<br>and breast. | Hed & nekke & breste he clef. <sup>6</sup>         | 10,908 |
| The Parisians<br>grieve ;                     | þey of þe cite mad deol ynow,                      |        |
|                                               | & þe Bretons þer-fore þey low ;                    |        |

<sup>1</sup> *abaist for him.*

<sup>2</sup> *felte.*

<sup>3</sup> *Noiþer he.*

<sup>4</sup> *bir þe stroke teisand.*

[leaf 64, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> *Aboun.*

<sup>6</sup> *to þe girditt þe body clefe.*







and does not  
leave even the  
vines.  
Gwitard then

Al was destroyed, & al was reft,  
þe selue vynes<sup>1</sup> þey ne left.

10,940

goes to Arthur,  
falls at his feet,  
and does him  
homage.

When Gwytdard<sup>2</sup> saw ner al was lorn,  
. So þat he ne mighte be byforn,<sup>3</sup>  
He saw hit was non oper bote,

10,944

Arthur wins all  
the countries  
south of  
France.

. Bot zede & fel Arthur to fote,  
& dide<sup>4</sup> hym homage & feute,  
. Of hym to halden al<sup>5</sup> his fe.  
Syþen loued Arthur Gwytdard<sup>2</sup> ful wel,  
. Non so mykel, but only Ohel.  
þo opere contres south fro ffraunce,  
Arthur þem wan til his alliaunce.

10,948

¶ *Hic remuneravit Arthurus famulos & seruientes.*

Arthur pays  
off his old  
soldiers,

When Arthur had geten alle þo landes,  
& wonne hem wyþ dint of his handes,

10,953

and bids them  
go home.

Til þo men þat trauailed sore,  
Wel of elde þat wyþ hym wore,  
zald hem þer sond & þer seruise,  
Vnto þer contres he bad þem wyse.

10,956

The wild young  
men he

But þo þat were zonge & wylde,  
þat neyþer hadde wyf ne childe,  
& louede to bere spere<sup>6</sup> & scheld,  
Nyne zer in ffraunce he þem held.

10,960

keeps in France  
for nine years ;  
and in that  
time many  
wonders befall,

Manye wondres by times<sup>7</sup> sers  
Bytydde Arthur þo nyn[e] zeres ;  
Many a proud man lowe he brought,  
Til many felon, wo he wrought ;  
. Enuyous men he hated alle,<sup>8</sup>  
. þe mysproude ful lowe dide falle.<sup>8</sup>

10,964

<sup>1</sup> þe vineis.

<sup>2</sup> Witard.

<sup>6</sup> lufed to bere helm.

<sup>3</sup> he myght not be forborn.

<sup>7</sup> selcouth be tyme.

<sup>4</sup> mad. [leaf 65.]

<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.

<sup>5</sup> hold att.



|                                                    |        |                        |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------------|------------------|
| . þer haue men bokes of al his lyf,                |        |                        | about which      |
| . þer are his merueilles red ful ryf; <sup>1</sup> | 10,968 |                        | there are books  |
| . þat we of hym here alle rede,                    |        |                        | in France.       |
| . þere were þey writen ilka dede.                  |        |                        | The Arthur-      |
| . þyse grete bokes so faire langage,               |        |                        | books we have    |
| . Writen & spoken of ffraunces <sup>2</sup> vsage, | 10,972 |                        | were written in  |
| . þat neuere was writen þorow Englischemen,        |        | [leaf 47, bk., cl. 2.] | France,          |
| . Swilk stile to speke, kynde ne <sup>3</sup> can, |        |                        | and never by     |
| . But ffrensche men wryten hit in prose,           |        |                        | Englishmen.      |
| . Right as he dide, hym for to alose;              | 10,976 |                        | It's not their   |
| . In prose al of hym ys writen, <sup>4</sup>       |        |                        | nature to write  |
| . þe bettere til vnderstande & wyten. <sup>4</sup> |        |                        | so well as       |
|                                                    |        |                        | Frenchmen        |
|                                                    |        |                        | wrote Arthur's   |
|                                                    |        |                        | deeds in prose,  |
|                                                    |        |                        | the better to be |
|                                                    |        |                        | understood.      |

¶ *Hic diuisit Arthurus Prouincias, & dedit Ducibus Comitibus, Baronibus, Militibus, & aliis, secundum probitates suas.*

|                                                   |        |  |                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------|--|------------------|
| A rthur at Pasches, <sup>5</sup> at Parys,        |        |  | One Easter at    |
| He held his feste of gret[e] <sup>6</sup> pris :  | 10,980 |  | Paris, Arthur    |
| Til alle þo þorow hym had lorn,                   |        |  | holds a noble    |
| Restored he als þey were <sup>7</sup> byforn ;    |        |  | feast.           |
| . Riche or pore, gentil or þral,                  |        |  | He restores to   |
| . þat he þem aughte, he ʒald <sup>8</sup> þem al. | 10,984 |  | all their losses |
| After þat he was worthy,                          |        |  | by him,          |
| He ʒald þer seruise largely :                     |        |  |                  |
| To Kaye þat was his stywarde,                     |        |  | gives Anjou to   |
| Aungowe he gaf hym til his part ;                 | 10,988 |  | Kay ;            |
| He gaf also sire Beduer,                          |        |  | to Beduer        |
| þat was of fe his boteler,                        |        |  | Normandy,        |
| He gaf hym in fe all Normandie,                   |        |  |                  |
| But þenne hit was cald <sup>9</sup> Neustrie ;    | 10,992 |  | (then called     |
|                                                   |        |  | Neustria) ;      |

<sup>1</sup> *hid full rise.*  
<sup>2</sup> *on france.*  
<sup>3</sup> *no kynde.*  
<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *At þe pasch.*  
<sup>6</sup> *fest of grete.*  
<sup>7</sup> *had.*  
<sup>8</sup> *paid.*  
<sup>9</sup> *þat tyme men say it hight.*  
[leaf 65, col. 2.]



to Holdyn,  
Boulogne;  
to Borel,  
Maine;  
and gifts to  
under-vassals.

Boloyne he gaf to sire Holdyn,  
And Mayne<sup>1</sup> to Borel his cosyn;  
He gaf giftes of honurs,  
& landes & rentes, to vauasours. 10,996

¶ *Reuersio Arthury in Angliam, in Mense Aprilis.*

Arthur

comes back  
to England.

The Britons  
rejoice at  
Arthur's re-  
turn.

Wives kiss  
their husbands,  
mothers their  
sons,

sweethearts  
their lovers,

friends their  
friends.  
Everyone is  
out, asking  
Arthur's men  
how they have  
fared,

and what they  
have won.

When he had feffed his barouns,  
& mad his priues lordes of touns,  
þe nexte April, when somer gan,  
Til Ingeland wente ilka man. 11,000  
When men wiste þat þey wer comen,  
. Ageyn Arthur faste þey nomen;  
þey made suche ioye, non myghte be more;  
. Hys longe dwellyng þem for-þoughte sore;  
Ladyes kyste þer lordes swete, 11,005  
Modres & childre for ioye gon<sup>2</sup> grete,  
Sones welcomed þer fadres home,  
& made al murthe for þer come;<sup>3</sup> 11,008  
. Lemmans leue ilk oþer kest,<sup>4</sup>  
. Of more þey esed hem when þem lest;<sup>4</sup>  
Neueus nyftes,<sup>5</sup> sistres broþer,  
Ilka frend welcomede oþer; 11,012  
þey stode in ilka strete & sty,  
In grete routes men passed for-by,<sup>6</sup>  
þey spirde<sup>7</sup> at hem 'how þey hadde faren,  
' & whi þat þey so longe waren, 11,016  
' & how þey spedde of þeyr conquest,  
' & what þey wonne<sup>8</sup> so fer est,  
. ' & how þey ferde in al þer wo:  
. " We wole namore ȝe fare vs fro." 11,020

<sup>1</sup> þe *Mannes*. (Le Mans, *Wace*,  
ii. 92, l. 10,422.)

<sup>2</sup> on childir for Ioy.

<sup>3</sup> at þer tocome.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> A.-Sax. *nefa*, a niece.

<sup>6</sup> in gashadles men passed bie.

<sup>7</sup> to spir.

<sup>8</sup> whan þei wan.







|                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Its meads and<br>land are very<br>fertile.                           | Venisoun þer was ynow,<br>Plente of fysche in water þey drow ;<br>Large medes wyþ gras plente,<br>Lond to tile, non bettere myght be.                                                                                        | 11,052 |
| It has two<br>churches,                                              | Two kyrkes were in þe toun,<br>þat tyme had þey gret renoun ;                                                                                                                                                                |        |
| St. Julius's                                                         | Of seint Iuly was þat on,<br>þat oþer was of seint Aaron.                                                                                                                                                                    | 11,056 |
| and St. Aaron's,                                                     | Seint Iuly in martirdam gan deye,<br>Nonnes were at his abbeye ;<br>Seint Aaron, þer was þe byschopes se, <sup>1</sup><br>þe heued kyrke of þe cyte ;                                                                        | 11,060 |
| and at the<br>latter<br>are learned<br>astronomers,                  | . þer-of Arthur was [þe] ffoundour,<br>. & <sup>2</sup> set hit in seint Arons honour ;<br>þer were chanons of clergie,<br>& knewe þem wel in <sup>3</sup> astronomye ;                                                      | 11,064 |
| who tell Arthur<br>how things will<br>turn out.                      | To knowe þe sternes, þer tente þey <sup>4</sup> leyd,<br>& til Arthur often <sup>5</sup> seyde,<br>þat what þyng he was aboute,<br>He schulde spede wyþoute doute :                                                          | 11,068 |
| Fine times then<br>at Kaerlyon !<br>But it's gone<br>down now.       | Wel was þat tyme at Kerlyoun ! <sup>6</sup><br>But sip <sup>7</sup> þat tyme hap hit go down.<br>. ffor þe plente of ffysche & flesche,<br>Of wode & water, hey & gres,                                                      | 11,072 |
| Arthur resolves<br>to hold a feast<br>and be crowned<br>at Kaerlyon. | Of housyng, & of oþer aysement<br>. By water & londe men broughte & sent.<br>þen seide Arthur he wolde þer holde<br>ffeste wyþ alle his barons bolde,<br>. & at þat selue samenyng<br>. He seyde he wolde be corouned kynge. | 11,076 |

<sup>1</sup> at saynt Aaron was þe bisshop  
see.

<sup>2</sup> did.

<sup>3</sup> þat knewe wele of.

<sup>4</sup> þer wittes.

<sup>5</sup> oft tymes.

<sup>6</sup> Fele was þan a karlioun.

<sup>7</sup> sen.



¶ Exe quot Reges Comites & Barones venerunt ad coronacionem Arthury.

|                                                         |                    |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Messegers <sup>1</sup> he dide sende                    |                    | Messengers are  |
| ffor kynges & ducs, fer & hende,                        | 11,080             | sent to fetch   |
| And for erles & barouns,                                | [leaf 48, col. 2.] | kings and       |
| Knyghtes of castels, lordes of touns.                   |                    | nobles to       |
| A legat fro Rome was sent <sup>2</sup>                  |                    | Arthur's feast. |
| ffor to make þe corounement/;                           | 11,084             | A legate come   |
| Erchebischofes were þer þre,—                           |                    | from Rome,      |
| At Londone was þenne þe se,                             |                    | three arch-     |
| pat oper was at Euerwyk,                                |                    | bishops,        |
| At Kaerlioun was seynt Dubryk/;—                        | 11,088             |                 |
| Of Scotland king Agusel, <sup>3</sup>                   |                    | kings Agusel,   |
| pat til Arthur was ful lel;                             |                    |                 |
| Of Murreue þe kyng Vrian,                               | 11,092             | Urien (and his  |
| Wyþ hym com his sone Ywayn;                             |                    | son Ywayn),     |
| Stater of Southe Walys al,                              |                    | Stater, and     |
| Of North Walys þe kyng Cadwal,                          |                    | Cadwal,         |
| Cador þe Erl of Cornewaille,                            | 11,096             |                 |
| ffor Arthur hadde many trauaille;                       |                    | Moryond,        |
| Sire Moryond þe Erl of Gloucestre,                      |                    | Maurice,        |
| Sire Mauryce þe Erl of Wyncestre,                       |                    | Gurgoynt,       |
| Gurgoynt þe Erl of Hereforde, <sup>4</sup>              | 11,100             | Beus,           |
| & sire Beus of Oxenforde, <sup>4</sup>                  |                    | Urgence,        |
| Sire Vrgence þe Erl <sup>5</sup> of Bathe, <sup>4</sup> |                    |                 |
| pere þe Saxons dide scape;                              |                    | Cursal,         |
| Sire Cursal of Chestre was, <sup>4</sup>                | 11,104             | Jonatas,        |
| Of Dorcestre sire Ionatas, <sup>4</sup>                 |                    | Emoraund,       |
| Emoraund þe <sup>6</sup> Erl of Salesbury, <sup>4</sup> |                    |                 |

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Messe essegers*. P. *Messengers*.

<sup>2</sup> See Wace, ii. 100, l. 10,563. He gives the "legation" to Archbishop Dubrice.

<sup>3</sup> *Anguisett.* [leaf 65, back, col. 2.]

<sup>4</sup> These lines are from the Arsenal MS. of Wace, 171 B.-L. *Wace*, ii. 97-8, note (c).

<sup>5</sup> *bat was.*

<sup>6</sup> *Amorand.*



|             |                                             |        |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|--------|
| Kynmar,     | & Kynmar, kyng of Kaunterbury, <sup>1</sup> |        |
| Baruk,      | Sire Baruk, Erl of Circestre, <sup>1</sup>  |        |
| Jugens, and | & sire Jugens of Leycestre, <sup>1</sup>    | 11,108 |
| Ergal.      | Sire Ergal, þe Erl of Warewyk/ <sup>1</sup> |        |
|             | . Hys men come to court ful þyk/.           |        |

### § De filiis Magnatum.

|                |                                                      |        |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Of the mag-    | Of þer childre hit seis þe names ;                   |        |
| nates' sons,   | . To nemne hem here, litel hit <sup>2</sup> frames : | 11,112 |
| come           | per was Porfodes <sup>3</sup> sone, Donaunt ;        |        |
| Donaunt,       | & sire Regines <sup>4</sup> sone, Elaunt ;           |        |
| Elaunt,        | & Coyles <sup>5</sup> sone highte Keneus ;           |        |
| Keneus,        | & Catel sone, Catellus ;                             | 11,116 |
| Catellus, &c., | . & oþer names selcoup to telle,                     |        |
|                | . But hit ys nought on þem to dwelle ;               |        |
|                | pyse serued atte rounde table ;                      |        |
| who serve at   | To rekene þem alle hit ys but fable.                 | 11,120 |
| the Round      | So manye þer were in chaumbre & halle,               |        |
| Table.         | Men schuld yrke to telle þem alle ;                  |        |
| So many there  | . What of þo þat y fond writen, <sup>6</sup>         |        |
| are, it would  | . & of þo þat fewe men wyten, <sup>6</sup>           | 11,124 |
| be a bore to   | . Hit are but fewe þat can þem telle, <sup>6</sup>   |        |
| name them all. | . & þo þat can, þer-to ne wyl dwelle. <sup>6</sup>   |        |

### § Nomina Regum.

|               |                                                     |        |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Of outlandish | . Outlandische <sup>7</sup> kynges þat of hym held, |        |
| kings come    | . þat bowed vntil Arthures scheld,                  | 11,128 |
|               | . þo þat he wan wyþ his hand, <sup>8</sup>          |        |
| Gwylomar,     | Gwylomar þe kyng of Irland, <sup>8</sup>            |        |

<sup>1</sup> These lines are from the Arsenal MS. Wace, 171 B.-L. Wace, ii. 97-8, note (c).

<sup>2</sup> here it ne.

<sup>3</sup> Porsud.

<sup>4</sup> Regin.

<sup>5</sup> Cohel.

<sup>6</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>7</sup> Outlandes. [leaf 66.]

<sup>8</sup> P. transposes these lines.



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| þe kyng of Demark, sire Askyl,<br>Loth of Norweye com hym tyl,<br>Goneweys þe kyng of Orkeneye,<br>(By Irland he cam in his weye),<br>Doldan þe kyng of Gouthland,<br>& Reumarek, <sup>1</sup> kyng of Wentland,<br>Of Nauare þe kyng, & of Gascoigne, <sup>2</sup><br>Sire Liger, þe Erl <sup>3</sup> of Boloyne, <sup>2</sup><br>And of fflaundres, þe Erl Holdyn, [leaf 48, bk., col. 1.]<br>Of Chartres, þe Erl Geryn,—<br>He was a man noble & fers,<br>Wyþ hym come alle þe dusze pers,—<br>Sire Gwyward, <sup>4</sup> þe Erl of Peyters,<br>& sire Caye, <sup>5</sup> lord of Aungers;<br>Of Normandie, sire Beduer,<br>(Of fe þe kynges boteler),<br>& of Manns, <sup>6</sup> þe Erl Borel,<br>Of Bretaigne, sire Ohel; <sup>7</sup><br>Sire Ohel & þo of ffraunce, <sup>7</sup><br>þey were of noble contenaunce, <sup>7</sup><br>Wel clad & arayed y þe richest, <sup>7</sup><br>& horsed alle for þe best. <sup>7</sup> | 11,132<br><br><br><br><br>11,136<br><br><br>11,140<br><br><br>11,144<br><br><br>11,148<br><br><br><br>11,152 | Askyl,<br>Loth,<br>Goneweys,<br><br>Doldan,<br>Reumarek,<br>and the king<br>of Navare.<br>Of earls, come<br>Liger,<br>Holdyn,<br>Geryn,<br><br>Gwyward,<br>Caye,<br>Beduer,<br><br>Borel,<br>Ohel, and others<br>of France. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ *Pro quantis comoditatibus venerunt ad Curiam  
Arthuri.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                        |        |                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hit was no baron in al Spaigne,<br>Ne þennes in-til <sup>8</sup> Alemaigne,<br>pat he til Arthures feste ne ferde,<br>pat doughti was, & þer-of herde;<br>Somme, hym seluen for to se, | 11,156 | Every baron<br>from Spain to<br>Germany comes<br>to Arthur's<br>feast.<br>Some come to<br>see Arthur; |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> *kynmare.*<sup>2</sup> P. transposes these lines.<sup>3</sup> MS. *Erk.* P. *erle.*<sup>4</sup> *witard.*<sup>5</sup> *Key.*<sup>6</sup> þe *Mans.* (Del Mans, *Wace*,  
ii. 101, l. 10,591.)<sup>7</sup> P. leaves out these lines, though  
they are in *Wace*, ii. 101, l.  
10,593-6.<sup>8</sup> *þien vntitt.*



|                                                           |                                                        |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                           | . & to byholde <sup>1</sup> his meyne ;                |        |
|                                                           | . & somme, to se on <sup>2</sup> what wyse             |        |
|                                                           | . þey ordeigned þer faire seruise ;                    | 11,160 |
| some to see the<br>Table Round ;                          | . & some, to se þe Table Rounde                        |        |
|                                                           | . þat neuere byforn þat tyme <sup>3</sup> was founde ; |        |
|                                                           | & somme, to se his faire paleys ;                      |        |
|                                                           | . Somme, to biholde his riche harneys ;                | 11,164 |
| some to see the<br>folk ;                                 | . Somme, þe folk to by-howe ;                          |        |
|                                                           | & somme, his knyghtes for to knowe ;                   |        |
|                                                           | & somme, for his geftes gode ;                         |        |
| some, for<br>Arthur's noble<br>food ;                     | . & somme, for his noble fode ;                        | 11,168 |
| and some, to<br>learn courtesy.                           | & somme come for to haue bailly ;                      |        |
|                                                           | & somme, to lere þere curtesy.                         |        |
| When all the<br>guests are<br>come,                       | ¶ When Arthures court was <sup>4</sup> plener,         |        |
| the earth<br>shakes with the<br>tramp of their<br>horses. | & alle were comen, fer & ner,                          | 11,172 |
|                                                           | þe erþe abouen <sup>5</sup> stired & quok,             |        |
|                                                           | So faste hors & man þer schok :                        |        |
|                                                           | þer was puttynge, þristinge, & þro,                    |        |
|                                                           | Wyþ fot-folk þat come to & fro,                        | 11,176 |
| Those who<br>can't get inns,<br>pitch tents.              | Innes for to teme & take ;                             |        |
| Marshals are<br>busy about.                               | þat non hadde, paulions did make ;                     |        |
|                                                           | þer maistres mareschals ferde aboute,                  |        |
|                                                           | Deliuered innes <sup>6</sup> wyþynne & wyþoute ;       | 11,180 |
|                                                           | . Bordes broughte, cordes & cables,                    |        |
|                                                           | & made mangers <sup>7</sup> to stande in stables.      |        |
| Laddies wash<br>palfreys and<br>steeds,                   | þen mighte men se þe ladies <sup>8</sup> lede          |        |
|                                                           | Many fair palfray & stede                              | 11,184 |
|                                                           | . In mud, in mires, to soille & dasche, <sup>9</sup>   |        |
|                                                           | Sipen in wayers to watre & wasche, <sup>9</sup>        |        |
| tie 'em up,<br>and feed 'em.                              | Syþen to wype, & to mangers teye, <sup>9</sup>         |        |
|                                                           | Hey & prouende byfor þem leye. <sup>9</sup>            | 11,188 |

<sup>1</sup> *be holden of.*<sup>2</sup> *of.*<sup>3</sup> *ore or þat.*<sup>4</sup> *Arthure courte was att.*<sup>5</sup> *about.*<sup>6</sup> *stedes.* [leaf 66, col. 2.] (*soliers et cambres*, *Wace*, ii. 102, l. 10,616.)<sup>7</sup> *mad maniores.*<sup>8</sup> *þan mot men laddes.* (*escuiers*, *Wace*, ii. 102, l. 10,619.)<sup>9</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.



¶ þenne come chaumberleyens & squiers, Chamberlains  
 Wiþ riche robes of<sup>1</sup> mani maners, and squires  
 To folde, to presse, & to pyke, fold up clothes  
 & somme to hange, & som to strike, 11,192  
 Manteles, forours<sup>2</sup> of riche pris, and furs, mini-  
 Of meneuer, stranlyng, veyr, &<sup>3</sup> gris; ver, stranlyng,  
 Oper pelure ynowe þer were,<sup>4</sup>  
 . þe names of þem y ne wot what are,<sup>4</sup> 11,196  
 . Lomb or boge, conyng or hare,<sup>4</sup> budge, rabbit,  
 . Y ne knowe me nought in swylk chaffare.<sup>4</sup> or hare.

þe<sup>5</sup> morn when þe feste schuld be, [leaf 48, bk., col. 2.] On the morn of  
 Come þe Erchebischofes of þer<sup>6</sup> degre; 11,200 the Feast,  
 . Wyþ hym,<sup>7</sup> of Rome cam þe legat;  
 And oper bischofes of mener stat;  
 &, right als þe story seys,  
 Dubrice corouned hym in his paleys; 11,204 Archbishop  
 . A legat of Rome & he Dubrice and the  
 . Dide þer pat solempnete. legate of Rome  
 . When he was corouned on pat wyse, crown Arthur  
 To þe kyrke þey zede to þer seruise; 11,208 in his palace.  
 þe two Erchebischofes pat þer war, Then they go  
 þey ledde hym, ys armes vp bar,<sup>8</sup> to church.  
 & sette hym in a riche chayer, Two arch-  
 . þer he scholde his seruise her. 11,212 bishops lead  
 ffoure swerdes of golde were born Arthur to a  
 Wyþ foure kynges hym byforn,— chair;  
 pat seruise fel to þer<sup>9</sup> scheld  
 When pat Arthur his feste held,— 11,216  
 þe kyng of North Walys & of Scotland, four swords are  
 & of Southe Walys (þus wryten y fand), borne before  
 him by  
 the kings of  
 North Wales,  
 Scotland, and  
 South Wales,  
 and duke Cadur  
 of Cornwall.

<sup>1</sup> on.<sup>2</sup> forres.<sup>3</sup> strinkled with.<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> On þe.<sup>6</sup> Archbisshop of his.<sup>7</sup> him.<sup>8</sup> Chascuns un bras li sostenoit, *Wace*, ii. 103. l. 10,643 (from the MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; whence the next line comes too).<sup>9</sup> *fett ilk a.* (Cist mestiers lor apartenoit, *Wace*, ii. 104, l. 10,649.)



|                                                             |                                                                                             |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Dubrice and the<br>Romish legate<br>perform the<br>service. | Of Cornewaille, þe Duk Cador,<br>þe fferþe swerd bar he þor ;                               | 11,220 |
|                                                             | þaw <sup>1</sup> his stat were nought so hey,<br>ʒit was he man ful wel <sup>2</sup> worþy. |        |
|                                                             | Dubrice, þat was a noble prelat,<br>& of Rome þe Legat, <sup>3</sup>                        | 11,224 |
|                                                             | þat office þey dide, þey myghte best,<br>. Of dignete þey were heyest.                      |        |

### ¶ De Regina Guenore.

|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                          |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Queen Guenore<br>is served by                              | þe Quen Guenore, on hure syde<br>Was serued of mykel pryde,                                                                                                              | 11,228 |
| ladies and<br>maidens,                                     | ffor scheo had byfore y-sent<br>After leuedys & maydens gent<br>þat were of hure owen <sup>4</sup> kynde,<br>& oþer of pris þat scheo myght fynde ;                      | 11,232 |
| queens and<br>countesses.                                  | . Quenes, cuntesses, oþer laydys mo, <sup>5</sup><br>Comen to mayntene þe fest þo ; <sup>5</sup>                                                                         |        |
| She is crowned<br>in her chamber<br>with a coronal,        | And in hure chaumbre vpon a pal<br>þey corouned hure wyþ a coronal.                                                                                                      | 11,236 |
| and then led to<br>St. Julius's<br>church to<br>hear Mass. | When <sup>6</sup> scheo was corouned, þe leuedys<br>Led hire to kyrke of Seint Iulys ;<br>þer were þe nonnes of religion,<br>& þer þe Messe schulde <sup>7</sup> be don. | 11,240 |

### ¶ De proessione eorum.

|                                            |                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Guenore and<br>Arthur are<br>crowned sepa- | To ben a twynne, <sup>8</sup> so þey ches,<br>ffor to departe þer mykel pres ; |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þof.<sup>2</sup> man most.<sup>3</sup> Dubric, qui de Rome ert légas,  
Et de Charlion ert prélas.

Wace, ii. 104, l. 10,658-9.

See p. 387, n.<sup>2</sup> above.<sup>4</sup> hir awen. [leaf 66, back.]<sup>5</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
lines.<sup>6</sup> with.<sup>7</sup> þer suld hir messe.<sup>8</sup> þer to be.



- . þey myghte nought be in o stede,  
 . ffor folk vnryde, & mykel crede.<sup>1</sup> 11,244 rately because  
 ffoure ladies wente þe same assise of the rough  
 . As þe kynges dide Arþures seruise, crowd.  
 ffour white douues byforn hure bare ;—  
 þe ladies, kynges wyues ware ;— 11,248 Four kings'  
 & after þem come oþer leuedys wives bear four  
 Richely cled in pourpre & bys, before her; and  
 . In clopes of golde þat schon so schene,<sup>2</sup> after them,  
 . & oþere in scarlet & in grene,<sup>2</sup> 11,252 come ladies,  
 Alle were þey richely y-dight; in purple, gold,  
 . þer was neuere seyen swyche a<sup>3</sup> sight! scarlet, and  
<sup>6</sup>. I trowe þer were many doude<sup>4</sup> green.  
 . þat proudly spak for noble schroude; 11,256 Many a dowd  
 . Ilkon<sup>5</sup> oþer faste byheld, speaks proudly  
 . And of þe faire, mykel was of teld.<sup>6</sup> for her noble  
 shroud.

## De Cantu ad Missam.

[leaf 49.]

- When þe Procession was gon,  
 þe Messe bygan sone anon: 11,260 After the pro-  
 þer myghte men se fair samninge cession, Mass  
 Of þo clerkes þat best coupe synge, begins.  
 Wyþ treble, mene, & burdoun,  
 Of mani on was ful swete soun; 11,264 Clerks sing  
 Of þo þat songe heye & lowe, sweetly, treble,  
 & þo þat coupe org[a]nes blowe, tenor, and bass;  
 and blow  
 organs.

<sup>1</sup> *krede* (crowd). A.-S. *cread*, a company, troop. *Lye*, in *Bosworth*.

<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines. Wace has others, ii. 105, instead of them.

<sup>3</sup> & *gay to behold in*.

<sup>4</sup> Common dowdy girl or woman. See the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 312. If she be never so fowlle a *dowde*, with hir kelles and hir pynnes The shrew hir self can shrowde,

both hir chekys and hir chynnes;

She can make it fulle prowde with japes and with gynnes, Hir hede as hy as a clowde.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *Ilkon*.

<sup>6-6</sup> For these four lines the Petyt MS. has,—

*Grete presse was at þe procession. Ilkon proudere þan þe lion.*



|                 |                                                       |        |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                 | . Inow þer was of menestralcie,                       |        |
|                 | . & of song gret <sup>1</sup> melodye.                | 11,268 |
|                 | þer myght men se folk come & go                       |        |
|                 | To þe kyrkes, boþe to & fro,                          |        |
| Knights listen, | Of knyghtes & [of] <sup>2</sup> squiers bolde         |        |
| look at the     | To listne song, leuedis <sup>3</sup> byholde ;        | 11,272 |
| ladies,         | ffro þat o kyrke to þe oþer þey ran ; <sup>4</sup>    |        |
| and run from    | Where was þe beste, wyste no man ; <sup>4</sup>       |        |
| one church to   | At neyþer þem þoughte þey dwelled longe, <sup>4</sup> |        |
| another         | Ne nought were ful to here þe songe ; <sup>4</sup>    | 11,276 |
| to hear the     | þyf hit had ben at her pay,                           |        |
| singing :       | þat song had lasted al þat day.                       |        |
| they want it to | ¶ When þe Messes were boþe done, <sup>5</sup>         |        |
| last all day.   | . & homward þey were al bone,                         | 11,280 |
| After Mass,     | þe kyng dide of his atir <sup>6</sup> þar             |        |
|                 | . þat he vntil þe kirke bar,                          |        |
| Arthur and      | & tok anoþer of lasse peys ;                          |        |
| Guenore         | þe quene dide þe same weys ;                          | 11,284 |
| change their    | þeir heuy atir þey dide of boþe, <sup>4</sup>         |        |
| heavy clothes   | & in lightere dide þem cloþe. <sup>4</sup>            |        |
| for lighter     | þe kyng com vntil his paleys                          |        |
| ones ;          | & sat atte þe mete þat ilke weys ;                    | 11,288 |
| he goes to one  | þe quene vntil anoþer zede,                           |        |
| feast with his  | & þe leuedis wiþ hure gan lede :                      |        |
| men, and she    | But custume was whilom in <sup>7</sup> Troye,         |        |
| to another with | þat when þey made feste of ioie,                      | 11,292 |
| her ladies,     | Men to-gydere schuld <sup>8</sup> go to mete,         |        |
| after the       | þe ladys by þem self schuld <sup>8</sup> ete ;        |        |
| manner of       | þe Bretons had þe selue vsage, <sup>4</sup>           |        |
| Troy,           | . þey were of þe Troiens lynage ; <sup>4</sup>        | 11,296 |
| which the Bri-  | . þat ilke vsage was at þer feste,                    |        |
| tons adopted.   |                                                       |        |

<sup>1</sup> faire.<sup>2</sup> of.<sup>3</sup> liste songe ladies to.

[leaf 65, back, col 2.]

<sup>4</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> were don.<sup>6</sup> tire.<sup>7</sup> Som tyme was custom of.<sup>8</sup> suld.



. No womman cam among *per* geste;  
*pe* wommen wypoute men schuld be,  
 But *seruiturs* of here meyne. 11,300

¶ *De nobile Conuiuio & seruientibus.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                       |        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| <i>pe</i> kyng was set vp at <i>pe</i> des,<br><i>per</i> was in ful <sup>1</sup> mykel pres,<br>But aboute hym <i>pe</i> lordynges sat,<br>Ilkon after his <i>astat</i> . <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                               | Arthur sits on<br>the dais ;                                          | 11,304 |
| Kay was styward, chosen of alle<br>. To serue byforn <i>pe</i> kyng in halle ;<br>Hys cloþyng was god <sup>3</sup> & fyn,<br>. & <i>pe</i> pelure of eremyn ; <sup>4</sup>                                                                                                                                                            | Kay is steward,<br><br>clad in ermine,                                | 11,308 |
| Wyþ hym <i>serued</i> byfore <i>pe</i> kyng<br>A þousand y <i>pe</i> same cloþyng ; <sup>5</sup><br>Out of the kechene <i>serued</i> sire Kay,<br>& alle his felawes <i>þat</i> day.                                                                                                                                                  | and has 1,000<br>servitors clad<br>like him.                          | 11,312 |
| ¶ Sire Beduer on <i>þat</i> oper partie,<br>He <i>serued</i> of <i>pe</i> botelerye ; <sup>6</sup><br>Wiþ hym was clad in eremin <sup>4</sup><br>A þousand <i>þat</i> <i>serued</i> of <sup>7</sup> <i>pe</i> wyn :<br>Was <i>þer</i> non <i>þat</i> <i>serue</i> bad, <sup>8</sup><br>But he in riche pelure were clad. <sup>8</sup> | Beduer is<br>butler,<br><br>has 1,000<br>ermine-clad<br>servants too, | 11,316 |
| <i>pe</i> kynges coupe sire Beduer bar,<br>& zede byforn al <i>þat</i> <i>þer</i> war ;<br>After hym come alle <i>pe</i> route<br><i>þat</i> <i>serued</i> <i>pe</i> lordes <sup>9</sup> alle aboute.                                                                                                                                 | [leaf 49, col. 2.]<br>and bears<br>Arthur's cup.                      | 11,320 |
| ¶ <i>pe</i> quene was <i>serued</i> ful richely,<br>Hure <i>seriauntz</i> were assigned <sup>10</sup> redy                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Guenore is<br>served richly<br>also                                   | 11,324 |

<sup>1</sup> about him *þe*.  
<sup>2</sup> *ilk* a lord after his state.  
<sup>3</sup> *riche*. (Vestus d'un vermel sig-  
 laton, *Wace*, ii. 107, l. 10,742.)  
<sup>4</sup> *pelore* of hermyne.  
<sup>5</sup> *vestu* d'ermine, *Wace*, l. 10,745.  
<sup>6</sup> *boterie*.

<sup>7</sup> *þat* brouht.  
<sup>8</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these  
 lines, but they are in *Wace*, ii. 108,  
 l. 10,755-6.  
<sup>9</sup> *barons*.  
<sup>10</sup> *hir* *seruantz* were signed.  
 [leaf 67.]



|                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                             |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                           | In alle offices for to serue,<br>· & byfore þe ladys kerue.                                                                                                                                 |        |
| with carvers,<br>coloured<br>vessels,                                                     | Many a vessel was þer riche,<br>· Of sere colours, nought alle y-liche;                                                                                                                     | 11,328 |
| many meats<br>and drinks.                                                                 | Of metes many manere seruise,<br>& seer drynkes of <sup>1</sup> þat wyse.                                                                                                                   |        |
| I can't tell you<br>all the grand<br>things, or<br>name the bold<br>men at this<br>feast. | Al þe nobleye couthe y nought telle,<br>Ne y naue no stounde <sup>2</sup> þer-on to dwelle,                                                                                                 | 11,332 |
| However high-<br>born a knight<br>is,                                                     | þe names to seye of þe richesse,<br>Ne of þe men of prowesse;<br><sup>3</sup> Was þer no lond in al þe werd,<br>Of gode knyghtes so mykel of herd. <sup>3</sup>                             | 11,336 |
| he gets no<br>honour unless<br>he has been<br>proved thrice<br>in fight.                  | Was þer no knyght of so hey blod,<br>Ne so mykel hadde of wordles <sup>4</sup> god,<br>þat þer fore scholde be holde in <sup>5</sup> pris,<br>But <sup>6</sup> he in dede were proued prys; | 11,340 |
| Then his arms<br>and clothing<br>are all of one<br>hue,                                   | pries y-proued atte þe leste;<br>þen was he alosed at þe feste,<br>þen schulde <sup>7</sup> his armes þat men knew,<br>& his clopyng [be] al on hew;                                        | 11,344 |
| and his wife's<br>too.                                                                    | þe same queintise his armes had,<br>In þat same schuld <sup>7</sup> he be clad;<br>· & his wyf clad y þe same colour,<br>· ffor hure lord was man of honour.                                | 11,348 |
| If he's un-<br>wedded, he<br>must choose a<br>sweetheart.                                 | zyf on <sup>8</sup> were doughti, & sengle man,<br>þen schuld <sup>7</sup> he chese hym a lemman;<br>Elles schold <sup>7</sup> he nought be byloued                                         |        |

<sup>1</sup> sere drinkes on.<sup>2</sup> Ne myght stonde.

<sup>3-3</sup> Ne þe curteisie ne þe honour  
of cristiente þer was þe flour.  
Wace (ii. 109, l. 10,772-82) puts it  
better for England :—

De biax homes et de noblèce,  
Et de plenté et de ricèce,  
De cortoisie et d'onor,  
Portoit Engleterre la flor.  
De tos les resnes environ,  
Et sor tos cels que nous savon.

Plus erent cortois et vaillant,  
Néis li povre païsant  
Que chevalier en autres regnes;  
Et autre si erent les fenes.

<sup>4</sup> werldes.<sup>5</sup> suld be holden of.

<sup>6</sup> Bod. (The treble proof is from  
the MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb. of  
Wace. See De Lincy's edition, ii.  
110, note (a).

<sup>7</sup> suld.<sup>8</sup> if ane.



|                                      |        |                 |
|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| But he had ben in bataille proued.   | 11,352 |                 |
| po leuedys þat were holden chast,    |        | Those ladies    |
| . ffor noþyng wolde do no wast,      |        | who are chaste  |
| po leuedis were clad al in on,       |        | are clad all in |
| . & by þeir cloþyng men knewe ilkon. | 11,356 | one colour.     |

¶ De diuersis Ludis ibidem.

|                                                 |        |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| When þey had eten, & schulde <sup>1</sup> rise, |        | After eating,    |
| Ilk man dight hym on þat wyse                   |        |                  |
| þat he best coupe inne playe. <sup>2</sup>      |        | they go to their |
| In to þe feld þey tok her <sup>3</sup> waye,    | 11,360 | games :          |
| & parted hem in stedes sers                     |        |                  |
| To pleye ilkon on þer maners :                  |        |                  |
| Somme iusted, þat coupe & myght,                |        | joust,           |
| ffor to schewe þer stedes wyght ; <sup>4</sup>  | 11,364 |                  |
| Somme skipte, & keste þe ston,                  |        | cast the stone,  |
| & somme skirmed <sup>5</sup> ful god won,       |        | fence,           |
| Dartes schoten, launces cast,                   |        | dart,            |
| . & þo þat coupe, wrastled <sup>6</sup> fast.   | 11,368 | wrestle, &c.     |
| Ilkon pleide þe gamen þey coupe,                |        |                  |
| . þat mest had vsed in his zoupe ;              |        |                  |
| þat best dide in his pleyng,                    |        |                  |
| He was brought by-fore þe kyng,                 | 11,372 | The best men     |
| & þe kyng gaf hym mede,                         |        | get prizes from  |
| þat he was paied er þat he zede.                |        | Arthur.          |
| ¶ þe ladies vpon þe walles stey                 |        |                  |
| ffor to biholde al þer pley ;                   | 11,376 | Ladies look on   |
| Who so hadde lemman þan <sup>7</sup> in place,  |        | from the walls,  |
| Toward hym turned boþe eye & face ;             |        | and look at      |
| . On boþe sides ilk oþer byhelde,               |        | their lovers.    |

<sup>1</sup> *suld.*

<sup>2</sup> *þat he couth in play.*

<sup>3</sup> *vnto þe felde he toke his.*

<sup>4</sup> *lyght.*

<sup>5</sup> *wrestrld.* [leaf 67, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> *skirmed.* (alèrent escremir,  
[faire des armes, se battre], *Wace*,  
l. 10,807.

<sup>7</sup> *þore.*



|                               |                                                     |        |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                               | . po on þe walles, þey in þe felde. <sup>1</sup>    | 11,380 |
| Jugglers are there,           | Iogelours were þere ynowe, [leaf 49, back, col. 1.] |        |
|                               | . þat þer queyntise forþ <sup>2</sup> drowe;        |        |
| and minstrels                 | <sup>3</sup> Many mynestrales þorow out þe toun,    |        |
| with clarions,                | Som blewe trompe & clarioun, <sup>3</sup>           | 11,384 |
| tabours,                      | Harpes, pypes, & tabours,                           |        |
| fiddles,                      | ffypeles, sitoles, sautours,                        |        |
| cymbals, &c.                  | Belles, chymbes, & symfan, <sup>4</sup>             |        |
|                               | & opere y-nowe, þat nemne-y ne can; <sup>5</sup>    | 11,388 |
| Singers sing,                 | Gestours, singers, þat merye sang, <sup>6</sup>     |        |
|                               | . So gret murþe was, þat ouer al rang; <sup>7</sup> |        |
| Fablers fable.                | Dysours y-nowe tolde þem fables,                    |        |
| Men play at dice,             | & somme pleide wyþ des & <sup>8</sup> tables,       | 11,392 |
| hazard, and                   | & somme pleide at hasard fast,                      |        |
|                               | & lore & wonne wiþ <sup>9</sup> chaunce of cast;    |        |
|                               | Somme þat wolde nought of þe tabler,                |        |
| chess, with knight and rook,  | Drowe forthe meyne for <sup>10</sup> þe cheker      | 11,396 |
|                               | . Wyþ draughtes queinte of knight & rok,            |        |
|                               | & oper sleighthes ilk oper byswok; <sup>11</sup>    |        |
|                               | At ilka mattyng <sup>12</sup> þei seide 'chek;'     |        |
| crying "check" at every mate. | þat most þer loste, sat y þe blek. <sup>13</sup>    | 11,400 |

<sup>1</sup> The next 20 lines are abridged from the Wace MSS., du Roi, 73, Cangé; du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb.; de l'Ars. 171, B.-L.

<sup>2</sup> forþe.

<sup>3-3</sup> *Mynstrals many with dyuers glew.*

*souns of bemes þat men blew.*

<sup>4</sup> *Chymes & synfan.* (Monacordes, cymbes, chorons, Wace, ii. 112, l. 10,832.)

<sup>5</sup> *Oper Inouh neuen .I. ne kan.*

<sup>6</sup> *Sangsters þat myry song.*

<sup>7</sup> *sounde of glew ouer att rong.*

<sup>8</sup> *deez at.*

<sup>9</sup> *lost & wan bi.*

<sup>10</sup> *of.*

<sup>11</sup> *with grete sleiht ilk oper suoke.*

<sup>12</sup> *matyng.*

<sup>13</sup> *most les sat in his nek.*



## ¶ De donis Arthury.

|                                                              |        |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| þre daies þe feste sat <sup>1</sup> —                        |        |                 |
| . I trowe neuere non was lyke <sup>2</sup> þat —             |        | After three     |
| & when hit cam to þe <sup>3</sup> Wodnesday,                 |        | days' feasting, |
| . þat þe people schuld parte, to wende þer <sup>4</sup> way, |        | people go,      |
| þe kyng þem gaf his giftes riche,                            | 11,405 | and Arthur      |
| þo þat til his seruise were briche,                          |        | gives them      |
| & for þer seruises held hem at fees; <sup>5</sup>            |        | gifts :         |
| & somme he gaf burwes & cites;                               | 11,408 | burghs and      |
| Bischopes & abbotes, auauunced þer <sup>6</sup> rent         |        | cities,         |
| . Er þan þey fro his court[e] went;                          |        | rent,           |
| And opere þat of strange landes <sup>7</sup> were,           |        |                 |
| þat for worschip were come þere, <sup>8</sup>                | 11,412 |                 |
| He gaf þem stede, <sup>9</sup> & coupes of golde,            |        | steeds, gold    |
| & opere iuels, þe beste on <sup>10</sup> molde;              |        | cups,           |
| Somme gaf he hauberks, & somme grehoundes,                   |        | jewels,         |
| Somme riche robes, wyþ <sup>11</sup> many poundes,           | 11,416 | greyhounds,     |
| Somme manteles wyþ veyr & gryns,                             |        | robes,          |
| & somme masers of riche pris,                                |        | furred mantles, |
| & somme helmes, & somme <sup>12</sup> hauberkes ;            |        | hauberks,       |
| . & gode palefrays he gaf to clerkes ;                       | 11,420 | palfreys,       |
| Bowes, arewes, he gaf to <sup>13</sup> archers,              |        | bows,           |
| Rounsyes <sup>14</sup> gode vnto squiers; <sup>15</sup>      |        | hack-horses,    |
| Som gaf he plates & swerdes <sup>16</sup> of plyght,         | 11,423 | armour,         |
| . Somme gyrdles & knyues ful <sup>17</sup> richely dight ;   |        | knives,         |

<sup>1</sup> lasted þe feste.<sup>2</sup> was neuer non as.<sup>3</sup> it com.<sup>4</sup> folk suld parte a.<sup>5</sup> seruise held þer feez. [lf. 67, bk.]<sup>6</sup> Abbot & bisshop auanced his.<sup>7</sup> þat of oper londes.<sup>8</sup> for luf com.<sup>9</sup> gaf stedes.<sup>10</sup> non richere aboun.<sup>11</sup> worth.<sup>12</sup> helmes &.<sup>13</sup> & arwes he gaf.<sup>14</sup> Runces (? for Wace's *chacéors*, hunters, ii. 115, l. 10,890.)<sup>15</sup> The Petyt MS. adds,—

som he gaf hauberions.

som plates &amp; som aktons.

<sup>16</sup> som he gaf knyues.<sup>17</sup> And som suerdes.



jugs, basins,  
ermine.  
To Tellers of  
Tales he gives  
clothes, or  
lions, leopards,  
bears, and apes.

. Somme gaf he ewer & basyn,<sup>1</sup>  
 . & somme pelure of fyn eremin.<sup>1</sup>  
 . Vnto disours þat telde þem gestes,  
 . Gaf he cloþes, or<sup>2</sup> wylde bestes, 11,428  
 Lyouns, leopards, þat wold þem take,<sup>3</sup>  
 Beres & apes boþe white & blake;<sup>3</sup>  
 Was þer non ought worthy  
 þat he ne gaf hym ful bleþely, 11,432  
 . & after þat his astat was lyft,  
 . Als he rewarded hym of<sup>4</sup> gyft.

¶ De Nunciis Lucii Inperatoris Rome.

As the gifts are  
in giving,

and Arthur is  
on the dais  
with all the  
kings and  
nobles round  
him,

come twelve  
messengers  
from the Em-  
peror of Rome,

with olive  
branches in  
their hands,

Ryght als þis giftes were in gyuyng,<sup>5</sup>  
 & alle y-serued, knyght & kyng, 11,436  
 Arthur sat [vp]on<sup>6</sup> þe des,  
 And aboute hym his mykel pres  
 Of kynges, dukes, erles,<sup>7</sup> & barouns, [leaf 49, bk., col. 2.]  
 . & of straunge lordes<sup>8</sup> & Bretons, 11,440  
 . & schulde haue taken leue, & went,  
 Twelue messegers til hym were sent  
 . ffro þe Emperour of Rome:  
 Two to-gydere, faire þey come 11,444  
 In to þe halle, Arthur byforn,  
 Wyþ olyue braunches in handes born,  
 Wyþ softe pas & [fulle] seine<sup>9</sup>  
 Gret þei Arthur & his meyne: 11,448  
 þey seide þei were "messegers,  
 " Comen in pes & in faire maners

<sup>1</sup> The Petyt MS. puts these two lines after l. 11,428, but varies them thus:—

*som gaf he pelore of hermyn.*  
*som lauour of siluer with bacyn.*

<sup>2</sup> *he gaf cloþes of.*

<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>4</sup> *so he rewarded him with.*

<sup>5</sup> *gyffying.*

<sup>6</sup> *opon.*

<sup>7</sup> *Of kynges erles.*

<sup>8</sup> *of vnkouth knyghtes.*

<sup>9</sup> *fulle seine (or seme).*



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                              |                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>“ Out of Rome, þenne<sup>1</sup> ful fer,<br/>         “ ffro þe Emperour Lucius Iber,<sup>2</sup><br/>         . “ þat ys oure lord lef &amp;<sup>3</sup> dere ;<br/>         . “ By vs he sendes his lettres here,<br/>         . “ &amp; þe comaundeþ on alle weys<br/>         . “ þat þou do as þis lettre seys.”<br/>         þe lettre in his hand þey leyde ;<br/>         List now what þe lettre seyde :</p> | <p>11,452<br/><br/><br/><br/><br/>11,456</p> | <p>and with a<br/>letter from the<br/>Emperor<br/>Lucius,<br/><br/><br/>who bids Arthur<br/>do as the letter<br/>says :<br/><br/>and it says,</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

¶ fforma litere Lucii Inperatoris.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>“ Lucius, þat Rome had<sup>4</sup> in baillie,<br/>         “ &amp; ouer þe Romans haþ<sup>5</sup> maistríe,<br/>         “ Sendeþ til Arthur þe Bretoun<br/>         “ Als on of his enemys feloun.<br/>         “ Me merueilles mykel, &amp; ilka Romain,<br/>         “ &amp; merueillyng, we haue<sup>6</sup> disdeyn<br/>         “ þat þou dar bere þe so heye,<br/>         “ Ageyns a Romain open þyn eye.<sup>7</sup><br/>         “ Y wondre at the bost þou makest,<sup>8</sup><br/>         “ &amp; at wham þou conseil takest,<sup>9</sup><br/>         “ Ageyn Rome to reyse strif,<br/>         “ þe whiles þou wost o Romain has lyf.<sup>10</sup><br/>         “ þou gaf þy self a sory chek,<br/>         “ Ageyns Rome<sup>11</sup> to reise cuntek,<br/>         “ þat al erthe þorow dom hit<sup>12</sup> demes,<br/>         “ &amp; as hed of al þe word hit<sup>13</sup> ȝemes !<br/>         “ þou wot nought, ȝit wist shal hit be,<br/>         “ Ne nought hast seyn, but þou schalt<sup>14</sup> se,</p> | <p>11,460<br/><br/><br/><br/><br/>11,464<br/><br/><br/><br/>11,468<br/><br/><br/><br/>11,472<br/><br/><br/>11,475</p> | <p>“ Lucius Em-<br/>peror of Rome,<br/><br/>to Arthur the<br/>Briton, his foe !<br/><br/>I marvel at<br/>and disdain<br/>your presump-<br/>tion in opening<br/>your eye<br/>against a<br/>Roman,<br/><br/>and in raising<br/>strife against<br/>Rome,<br/><br/>the judge of all<br/>the earth !<br/><br/>You shall see</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> þien. [leaf 67, back, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> ybere.

<sup>3</sup> lord & our.

<sup>4</sup> has.

<sup>5</sup> þe.

<sup>6</sup> meruailand we haf.

<sup>7</sup> ons open þin Ie.

<sup>8</sup> of þe bost þou makes.

<sup>9</sup> whom þou conseile takes.

<sup>10</sup> Whils þou wote a romeyn o lyfe.

<sup>11</sup> agayn Romeyns.

<sup>12</sup> þorh dome.

<sup>13</sup> & hede of aȝt þe world it.

<sup>14</sup> nouht þou sawe bot þou satt.



what it is to  
wrath Rome !

How dare you  
keep back our  
tribute, and  
rob us of our  
lands ?

What right  
have you to  
them ?

Do you think  
the wolf will  
flee for the  
wether,

or the grey-  
hound for the  
hare ?  
Not so !

Our ancestor  
Julius Cæsar  
won Britain ;  
and we've  
taken tribute of  
it 400 years.

But now you  
won't pay it ;  
and you've

slain our baron,  
Frolle, and  
taken France  
and Flanders !

“ How gret hit ys to wrathe Rome  
“ *pat* al þe werd schal iustice &<sup>1</sup> dome !  
“ Ageyn kynde hastou gon !  
“ Reson ne mesure hastou non ! 11,480  
“ Whepen come þou ? what þyng þe boldes ?  
“ Oure truage takes, & has, & holdes,  
“ Oure landes vs reues as þou wyldes,  
“ & til vs no þyng þou [*ne*] zeldes ! 11,484  
“ What right hastow þer vnto ?  
“ þy folye hit ys *pat* þou didest so !  
“ zyf þey may longe wyþ þe so leue,  
“ *pat* we þorow force þe þem nought reue, 11,488  
“ þen may þou seye, & scorne, þe wheper<sup>2</sup>  
“ *pat* þe wolf fleþ<sup>3</sup> for þe weper ;  
“ & zit *pat* he so longe slep  
“ *pat* durste nought wake to asaille a schep,  
“ Or *pat* a got þe wolf<sup>4</sup> dyd dare, 11,493  
“ & þe grehound<sup>5</sup> fledde for þe hare.  
“ But swilk a þyng may nought bitide !  
“ Namore schal hit on oure syde ! 11,496  
“ Oure auncestre Iulius Sesar  
“ Wan Bretayne (art þou nought war ?)  
“ And tok trewage þer-of longe— [leaf 50.]  
“ ffour hundred zer we gon hit fonge,— 11,500  
“ & of opere ildes aboute ;  
“ But now þorow þe we are wyþoute.  
“ zut hastou don vs more vilte  
“ þan al *pat* los<sup>6</sup> we telle to þe, 11,504  
“ *pat* þou ffrolle, our baroun,<sup>7</sup> slow,  
“ ffraunce & fflaundres<sup>8</sup> from vs þou drow !  
“ ffor þou hast of Rome no doute,  
“ Ne til his lordschip wil þou loute, 11,508

<sup>1</sup> *world iustise with.*

<sup>2</sup> *skorne & say to where.*

<sup>3</sup> *woulf fles.* (lions fuit, *Wace*,  
1. 10,948.)

<sup>4</sup> *goot þe woulf.* [leaf 68.]

<sup>5</sup> *lupars, Wace*, ii. 117, l. 10,950.

<sup>6</sup> *þe losse.*

<sup>7</sup> *seruant.*

<sup>8</sup> *et Bretagne, Wace*, l. 10,964.



- " Y make þe somouns vnto Rome, I summon you  
 " & comaunde þe þat þou come, to Rome  
 " ffolewyng atte<sup>1</sup> nexte heruest.<sup>2</sup> next harvest,  
 " Hit schal nought helpe cheson to kest; 11,512 without excuse,  
 " But com, & amende<sup>3</sup> þyn vnright, to amend your  
 " þat þou so slowe ffrolle oure knyght, unright.  
 " & als amende on oper weye  
 " Of þat we conne<sup>4</sup> to þe seye. 11,516  
 " But ȝif hit be so þou make delay, If you don't  
 " þat þou nelt<sup>5</sup> come at þy day, come,  
 " Ne come<sup>6</sup> til oure comaundement,  
 " þan telly þe outrely<sup>7</sup> schent! 11,520 I'll ruin you  
 " ffor, þorow force, ffraunce y schal<sup>8</sup> þe reue; utterly;  
 " Of Bretayne nought o fote byleue!<sup>9</sup> take France  
 " Y trowe<sup>10</sup> nought þou wilt abide, from you, and  
 " & ȝyf þou do, þou schalt þe hide, 11,524 leave you no  
 " & siker<sup>11</sup> on þys half þe se foot of Britain.  
 " þou schalt nought<sup>12</sup> dur schewe þe to me; If you resist,  
 " & ȝyf þou on þys half bes,<sup>13</sup>  
 " At my comyng<sup>14</sup> for soþe þou fles, 11,528  
 " þou schal nought tapice<sup>15</sup> a night to slepe  
 " þat y ne schal do þe sterte & lepe,  
 " & brynge þe to Rome in bondes,<sup>16</sup> I'll bring you  
 " & leue þe þer in Romaines hondes!<sup>17</sup> 11,532 to Rome in  
 bonds!"

At þat word was noise & cry  
 Of þe Bretons þat stoden ney;  
 Oþes þey swore þat "þey schold deye"<sup>18</sup>

The Britons  
 shout for wrath,  
 and swear  
 they'll hang the  
 messengers.

<sup>1</sup> folowand at þis.  
<sup>2</sup> a mi-aost, *Wace*, ii. 118, l.  
 10,969.  
<sup>3</sup> mend.  
<sup>4</sup> kon more.  
<sup>5</sup> & witt not.  
<sup>6</sup> bewe (bow).  
<sup>7</sup> tell .I. þe þat þou ert.  
<sup>8</sup> .I. witt.  
<sup>9</sup> a fote leue.  
<sup>10</sup> wene.

<sup>11</sup> I. trowe nouht.  
<sup>12</sup> þou saff.  
<sup>13</sup> halfe bees.  
<sup>14</sup> if .I. kom.  
<sup>15</sup> tapir (to crouch), *Wace*, ii. 119,  
 l. 10,985.  
<sup>16</sup> bandes.  
<sup>17</sup> þe in þe Romeyn handes.  
<sup>18</sup> Que cil seront deshonoré, *Wace*,  
 l. 11,993.



- But Arthur  
says the mes-  
sengers shall  
take no ill :
- their message is  
their lord's.
- Arthur then  
consults his  
wisest barons,
- in the Giant's  
Tower.
- " pat broughte pat lettre of vylenye ! 11,536  
 . " & for his loue pat sente ȝow hyder,  
 . " ȝe schul ben honged alle to-gyder !"  
 . Lytel letted þey nadde be slayn or hirt ;<sup>1</sup>  
 But Arthur þenne anon vp stirt : 11,540  
 " Bretouns !" he saide, " holdeþ<sup>2</sup> ȝow stille !  
 " þe messegers schul haue non ylle !  
 . " Ne neyþer ille haue ne<sup>3</sup> here,  
 . " But come & go in faire manere ; 11,544  
 " Messegers of Rome þey are,  
 " In pes þey come, so schul þey fare ;  
 " þer message pat þei haue seyd,  
 " A lord þey haue, on þem hit leyd." 11,548  
 When þe noyse<sup>4</sup> was wel pesed,  
 & eft hadde þeir sittynge<sup>5</sup> sesed,  
 þe kyng tok wyþ hym two or þre  
 Of his wysest barouns priue, 11,552  
 . pat best coupe conseil le til honour ;  
 Wyþ hym þey ȝede vntil a tour,—  
 þe name þer-of, hit was in haunt  
 As y fond writen, þe Tour Geaunt— 11,556  
 þer sat Arthur, & þey byside,  
 To conseil le how myghte best bytide.

¶ Dicta Cadoris Cornubye. [leaf 50, col. 2.]

Earl Cador of  
Cornwall  
says, "I've  
often feared

that idleness  
has made the  
Britons  
courageless.

- Sire Cador spak firste, & low,<sup>6</sup>  
 & seyde, " sire kyng, y schal sey ȝow : 11,560  
 " Often in studie haue y ben,  
 " And in gret drede ay bytwen,  
 " pat þorow ildelnesse<sup>7</sup> of pes  
 " Are Bretons feble & herteles ; 11,564

<sup>1</sup> letted pat men þam hirt.  
[leaf 68, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> hold.

<sup>3</sup> non ille haf non ille here.

<sup>4</sup> dynne.

<sup>5</sup> þei had þer setes.

<sup>6</sup> lough.

<sup>7</sup> Idelnes.



|                                                        |        |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------|
| “ ffor Ildelnesse <sup>1</sup> norischeþ but iuel ;    |        | It leads to      |
| “ Temptacion of flesche & <sup>2</sup> of þe deucl ;   |        | temptation of    |
| “ Idelnesse makeþ man ful <sup>3</sup> slow,           |        | the flesh and    |
| “ & dop prowesse falle right low ; <sup>4</sup>        | 11,568 | the devil,       |
| “ Idelnesse norischeþ lecherye,                        |        | cowardice,       |
| “ & dop vs tente to such <sup>5</sup> folye ;          |        | lechery,         |
| “ Ildelnesse <sup>1</sup> & long rest,                 |        |                  |
| “ zougþe in wast away wil kest,                        | 11,572 | waste,           |
| “ & dop men tente to folye fables,                     |        |                  |
| “ Tyl hasardrie, des, <sup>6</sup> & tables.           |        | dice and gam-    |
| “ We haue now al þis fyue zer                          |        | ing.             |
| “ Lyued in lechours <sup>7</sup> mester,               | 11,576 | For five years   |
| “ & <sup>8</sup> þorow rest & such soiour              |        | we’ve lived in   |
| “ Haue we lorn gret <sup>9</sup> honour.               |        | lechery,         |
| “ A long while <sup>10</sup> þen haue we slept,        |        | lost honour,     |
| “ pat noman wakyng <sup>11</sup> vs kept ;             | 11,580 | and slept.       |
| “ But, þanked be God <sup>12</sup> & oure lady,        |        |                  |
| “ Now ar we wakned a party ; <sup>13</sup>             |        | But, thank       |
| “ Som grace is ronne in Romayns herte <sup>14</sup>    |        | God!             |
| “ pat þey chalange vs so smerte, <sup>15</sup>         | 11,584 | We’re waked      |
| “ Vs to bynime oure landes <sup>16</sup> & fees,       |        | up now !         |
| “ & oure conquete of <sup>17</sup> oper contres.       |        | The Romans       |
| “ zyf Romayns be so coraious                           |        | have claimed     |
| “ pat þey wil do as þey send vs,                       | 11,588 | our lands !      |
| “ zit schul þe Bretons wynne þem los                   |        |                  |
| “ Of Romayns pat in Rome gos ;                         |        | If they try to   |
| “ ffor longe pes louede y neuere,                      |        | take ’em,        |
| “ Ne nought ne schal, þey y lyue <sup>18</sup> euere.” |        | we’ll beat them. |
| ¶ penne spak Wawayn þe curteys :                       | 11,593 |                  |
| “ Merueillike, Cador, þou seys !                       |        | I don’t like a   |
|                                                        |        | long peace.”     |
|                                                        |        | Wawayn the       |
|                                                        |        | courteous says   |

<sup>1</sup> *Idelnes* [no *ffor*.]

<sup>2</sup> & *mykett* temptacion.

<sup>3</sup> *mas* man right.

<sup>4</sup> *louh*.

<sup>5</sup> *dos* vs tent to *suilk*.

<sup>6</sup> to *deez*.

<sup>7</sup> *used* rioterie. [leaf 68, back.]

<sup>8</sup> *pat*.

<sup>9</sup> *haf* we lost grete.

<sup>10</sup> Piece, *Wace*, ii. 121, l. 11,031.

<sup>11</sup> *wakand* on.

<sup>12</sup> .*I.* þank god.

<sup>13</sup> un petit, *Wace*, l. 11,032.

<sup>14</sup> *ronen* in þe romens þouht.

<sup>15</sup> *challenge* on vs souht.

<sup>16</sup> *for* to haf our londres.

<sup>17</sup> *all* our conquest in.

<sup>18</sup> *sall* þof .*I.* lyf.



that he does  
like peace.

Men can fight  
for love then.

Arthur then  
speaks.

"Barons! you  
are my fellows,  
share with me  
in loss and  
gain,

take part in  
woe and war.

Through you  
have I won  
honour,

sped well in  
my need.  
Ever have I  
found you true.

The Romans

threaten both  
you and me.

"After werre, god ys pes;  
" & after wo, þe wele god ches; 11,596  
" In pes ys don gret vasselage,  
" ffor loue men doþ gret outrage."<sup>1</sup>  
& at þat word þey set hem doun,  
þe kyng & ilka baroun. 11,600

When þe kyng saw þem set,  
Alle þat were til conseil fet,  
þe kyng þoughte a þrowe,<sup>2</sup> þen lifte his hed,  
When þei hadde þer ianglyng leued:<sup>3</sup> 11,604  
"Barouns," he seide, "þat ben now here,  
" ze are my felawes, me<sup>4</sup> ful dere;  
" When y lese, ze haue part þer-ynne,  
" & felawes ze are when þat y wynne; 11,608  
" When wo or werre hap me comen,  
" zour part wyþ me haue ze nomen,  
" As felawes in prosperite<sup>5</sup>  
" & felawes in aduersete;<sup>5</sup> 11,612  
" ffor wheþer y haue wonne or loren,  
" zour hap wyþ me haue ze forþ boren;  
" þorow zoure help & god auys  
" Hauy wonnen mikel pris; 11,616  
" By water, by londe, haue y zow led,  
" þorow zow in nede haue y wel sped;  
" Euere y haue founde<sup>6</sup> zow trewe,  
" & euere zour conseil god & newe; 11,620  
" Alle þe londes þat y haue wonne,  
" Wyþoute zow was nought bygonne.  
" þe Romainys, as ze haue herd [leaf 50, back, col. 1.]  
" By þys lettre þat here ys sperd,<sup>7</sup> 11,624  
" Me & zow þey manace fast,  
" Wyþ grete wordes þey wene me gast.

<sup>1</sup> many rage.

<sup>2</sup> a while he þouht.

<sup>3</sup> carpyng leued.

<sup>4</sup> & me.

<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>6</sup> att tymes haf .I. fon.

[leaf 68, back, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> þat here is folden & vp sperd.



- “ ȝyf God wil helpe me & ȝow ;  
 “ þeir þret schal nought be for þer<sup>1</sup> pro w; 11,628 But if God helps us,  
 . “ Of vs gete þey neuere nought, they shall pay  
 . “ But ȝif hit be ouer dere abought.<sup>2</sup> for it!  
 “ þey haue gret power, & ar ful riche, They are  
 . “ þer nis no power to þeires<sup>3</sup> liche, 11,632 strong ;  
 “ þer-fore we moste<sup>4</sup> bifore þurueye so we must  
 “ What we wil do, what we wil seye, settle what  
 “ & auenauntly<sup>5</sup> & resonable, we'll do and  
 . “ & þat we seye, hold hit stable. 11,636 say,  
 “ A þyng for þought<sup>6</sup> þat men wil rede, and then hold  
 “ Hit is þe bettere mayntened at nede ; firm to it.  
 “ An arewe þat ys schoten, ȝe se, An arrow shot  
 “ Eyþer bihoues<sup>7</sup> hit men fendit or fle; 11,640 at you, must be  
 “ þat same weys byhoues<sup>8</sup> vs do. guarded or  
 “ þyse Romainys han yschoten<sup>9</sup> vs to ; avoided.  
 “ Now conseilte we, & keuere<sup>10</sup> vs rape, The Romans  
 “ So þat her schetyng do vs no scape. 11,644 have shot at  
 “ Trewe þey aske, so haue þey had ; us ; we mustn't  
 . “ þat ys bihinde, send þem þey bad, let 'em hurt us.  
 “ Of þis lond & opere mo ; They ask tri-  
 “ & ffraunce wil þey nought<sup>11</sup> furgo. 11,648 bute of us,  
 and demand  
 France.

¶ Dicta siue Responcio Arthury ad Romanos.

- “ For Bretaigne wil y first<sup>12</sup> answer, As to Britain,  
 . “ Writen in lettre þat þey schul bere,<sup>13</sup> I'll send them  
 “ Answering<sup>14</sup> for ȝow & me, this letter:  
 . “ þat lettre wil y þat hit so be. 11,652

<sup>1</sup> þer manace is no þing.

<sup>2</sup> bot it be fullt dere bouht.

<sup>3</sup> non is þer pere ne to þam.

<sup>4</sup> bus vs.

<sup>5</sup> Auant like. (avenanment, Wace.)

<sup>6</sup> þing be for.

<sup>7</sup> ouþer bos.

<sup>8</sup> þe sam wyse bos.

<sup>9</sup> haf schoten.

<sup>10</sup> couere.

<sup>11</sup> with not.

<sup>12</sup> with first.

<sup>13</sup> satt here.

<sup>14</sup> ansuere.



|                                                                                                  |                                                         |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                                  | . " þus wil y seye, þus wol y write                     |        |
|                                                                                                  | . " My skile ; leste <sup>1</sup> me a lite :           |        |
| ' Cæsar won<br>this land by<br>force.                                                            | " Cesar of Rome þis land first wan,                     |        |
|                                                                                                  | " A[l] þorow fight & force of man ;                     | 11,656 |
|                                                                                                  | " þe Bretouns mighte nought <sup>2</sup> defende ;      |        |
|                                                                                                  | " Trewe byhoued þem to <sup>3</sup> sende ;             |        |
| Force is not<br>Right ;                                                                          | " & force, 3e wite wel, ys no god right,                |        |
|                                                                                                  | " But pruyde out of mesure myght ;                      | 11,660 |
| does not make<br>Law ;                                                                           | " Hit is no skile, ne lawe non makes,                   |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þyng þat þou þorow force takes ;                      |        |
| but can be up-<br>set by Force.                                                                  | " & swylk giftes men schal furdo,                       |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þat wyþ wrong was taken so.                           | 11,664 |
| The Romans<br>upbraid us<br>with their con-<br>quest of our<br>ancestors.                        | " þey repreue <sup>4</sup> vs of our auncessours,       |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þat þey ouer-cam þem wyþ harde stours ; <sup>5</sup>  |        |
|                                                                                                  | " Of pouerte þey make vmbreyd, <sup>6</sup>             |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & of trewage <sup>7</sup> byfore seyde ;              | 11,668 |
|                                                                                                  | " & of þis þey make auauntement,                        |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þat here-byforn our fadres schent.                    |        |
| The more<br>reason that we<br>should harass<br>Romans now,<br>hate 'em,<br>and beat 'em<br>down. | " So mykel oughte <sup>8</sup> we greue þem þe more.    |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & þey ar halden vs to restore ;                       | 11,672 |
|                                                                                                  | " Wel oughte we hat hem þat hem han <sup>9</sup> hated, |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & bere hem doun <sup>10</sup> þat hem abated.         |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þey wolde don <sup>11</sup> vs þe same outrage,       |        |
|                                                                                                  | " & seye hit ys þer heritage                            | 11,676 |
| They say our<br>land is their<br>heritage !                                                      | " To haue oure godes, & vs to reuille !                 |        |
| By their reason,<br>I may claim<br>Rome ;                                                        | . " þey schul nought bide eft þat while ;               |        |
|                                                                                                  | " ¶ But by <sup>12</sup> þer resoun & þer dome,         |        |
|                                                                                                  | " Wyþ skile y may chalange <sup>13</sup> Rome ;         | 11,680 |
|                                                                                                  | " So wyþ skile & reson <sup>14</sup> y may wel          |        |
|                                                                                                  | " þe lond of Rome aske euery <sup>15</sup> del.         |        |

<sup>1</sup> *my skitt listens.*<sup>2</sup> *þat tyme mot not.*<sup>3</sup> *treuage bord þam to þam.*<sup>4</sup> *vpbraide.* [leaf 69.]<sup>5</sup> *hard schours.*<sup>6</sup> *vpbraide.*<sup>7</sup> *þe treuage.*<sup>8</sup> *awe.*<sup>9</sup> *We awe to hate þat þei haf.*<sup>10</sup> *& bete doun þo.*<sup>11</sup> *witt do.*<sup>12</sup> *with.*<sup>13</sup> *.I. witt set chalange on.*<sup>14</sup> *& with þer skitt.*<sup>15</sup> *ask ilk a.*



- “ Belyn was kyng of Bretouns, for Belyn  
 “ And Brenne duk of Burgoilouns ; 11,684 and Brenne,  
 “ pyse breþere, of Bretaygne born, [leaf 50, back, col. 2.] Britons born,  
 “ Conquered Rome here byforn, conquered  
 “ & of Rome tok<sup>1</sup> truages, Rome, and  
 “ & henge þer twenty of þeir hostages 11,688 took tribute  
 “ Byfore þer eyen, þat þey myght se, from it.  
 “ & siþen conquered al þe cite.  
 “ When Belyn turnde to Bretayne, Moreover,  
 “ Of Rome he made Brenne cheftayne, 11,692 Belyn made  
 “ & bad hym gouerne al þe honour, Brenne Em-  
 “ & he so regned as Emperour. peror of Rome.  
 “ Now wil y late of<sup>2</sup> Belyn,  
 “ & speke y wil of Constantyn, 11,696 Then again,  
 “ Constances sone & Eleyne,<sup>3</sup>  
 “ þat held Rome als his demeynes. through Con-  
 “ Constance, of Rome had seynurye fair, stant, who was  
 “ & Constantyn þen was his heyr, 11,700 lord of Rome,  
 “ & y am heir of Constantyn ; and whose  
 “ þorow þat desent Rome schal be myn. son's heir I am,  
 “ Maximyan, Leons<sup>4</sup> sone, Rome should  
 “ Kyng of Bretayne, at Rome gan wone ; 11,704 be mine.  
 “ He wan Neustrie, þe Lesse Bretayne, Thirdly, Maxi-  
 “ & al ffraunce & Alemayne, mian  
 “ & al Mongow & Lombardye,  
 “ And of Rome hadde þe seignurye ; 11,708 was Lord of  
 “ pyse were myn ancessours of scheld, Rome.  
 “ þat only þe<sup>5</sup> honour of Rome held. These are my  
 “ Now þorow skil haue ȝe knowen ancestors,  
 “ þat Rome by reson schold<sup>6</sup> be myn owen and Rome  
 “ Al so wel as Bretayne þeyres, 11,713 ought to be  
 “ þorow eld auncetrie til heyres. mine.  
If the Romans  
claim Britain,

<sup>1</sup> þe Romeyns toke.<sup>2</sup> .I. leue.<sup>3</sup> Constancius sonne & Elyns.<sup>4</sup> leonyne. [leaf 69, col. 2.]<sup>5</sup> þat þe.<sup>6</sup> Rome ouh to.



|                                                                                        |                                                        |        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|
|                                                                                        | " Rome had trewage, & hit fur-sok ;                    |        |
|                                                                                        | " & trewe of Rome myn auncestres tok ;                 | 11,716 |
| I claim Rome.                                                                          | " pey cleyne Bretayne, & y cleyne Rome ;               |        |
|                                                                                        | " pat we bope cleyne, 3ut <sup>1</sup> ys to come ;    |        |
| Let them take<br>Britain if they<br>can !                                              | " Let þem wynne hit 3if þat þey may,                   |        |
|                                                                                        | " 3it haue y kept hit al my day.                       | 11,720 |
|                                                                                        | " ffraunce y wan of frolle þer knyght ;                |        |
|                                                                                        | " To kepe hit lengere he hadde <sup>2</sup> no myght ; |        |
|                                                                                        | " porow force þey wonne hit, als y hit wan ;           |        |
|                                                                                        | " Wyþ force so mighte anoþer man.                      | 11,724 |
|                                                                                        | " Wherto chalange þey so bolde <sup>3</sup>            |        |
|                                                                                        | " pat þey ne myghte no lenger holde ? <sup>3</sup>     |        |
| Force is their<br>only title to it,<br>and that's free<br>to any one.                  | " porow right skil haue þey no seruise,                |        |
|                                                                                        | " But al þorow force & couetyse,                       | 11,728 |
|                                                                                        | " pat ys to anoþer al so fre <sup>3</sup>              |        |
|                                                                                        | " Als hit was to þeym or me. <sup>3</sup>              |        |
| The Emperor<br>threatens to<br>lead me bound<br>to Rome !                              | " þe Emperour makeþ vs gret <sup>4</sup> manace,       |        |
|                                                                                        | " Out of þis lond me for to chace,                     | 11,732 |
|                                                                                        | " & in bondes to Rome lede.                            |        |
|                                                                                        | " Nolde God he scholde <sup>5</sup> so spede !         |        |
| I value him<br>little, and fear<br>him less.                                           | " Y preyse hym litel, & drede hym <sup>6</sup> lesse ! |        |
|                                                                                        | " 3yf he on me wil <sup>7</sup> seke prowessse,        | 11,736 |
|                                                                                        | " Encountre he getes er þat <sup>8</sup> he go,        |        |
|                                                                                        | " pat eft ne schal he me manace ne <sup>9</sup> slo,   |        |
|                                                                                        | " Ne to none of myne do ylle ;                         |        |
|                                                                                        | " So schul we don hym chaunge his wille.               | 11,740 |
| Let him bring<br>Rome ! I'll<br>bring Britain.<br>And let the<br>winner have<br>both." | " But when þey come to chalangyng,                     |        |
|                                                                                        | " Bryng Rome, & y schal Bretayne bryng !               |        |
|                                                                                        | " & whilk of vs þat most may,                          |        |
|                                                                                        | " Bere Rome & Bretayne boþ a-way."                     | 11,744 |

<sup>1</sup> *it.*<sup>2</sup> *lengere þei.*<sup>3</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>4</sup> *makis his.*<sup>5</sup> *god witt not he.*<sup>6</sup> *lititt he me praises & dredes.*<sup>7</sup> *he to me.*<sup>8</sup> *a countir he getis or.*<sup>9</sup> *Me eft satt not manace to.*



§ Dicta Ohelys Regis.

- When Arþur had seid his resoun,  
 . Wel was hit alowed of ilka baroun.<sup>1</sup>  
 . Wip o word seide þei alle at ones,  
 . " Wel haue ze seid, sire, for þe nones!" 11,748  
 . When þei were stilled a party, [leaf 51.]  
 . ffirst spak sire Ohel þat sat hym by,  
 . & seide: " no man zong ne old<sup>2</sup>  
 . " Schuld ought amende þat ze haue told; 11,752  
 . " But syþen þou sest<sup>3</sup> þat þou art þret,  
 . " & may nought passe wypoute baret,  
 . " Somoun þy folk, & make þem zare,  
 . " & set þem day when þou wilt fare. 11,756  
 . " But make no long drecching þer-to,  
 . " ffor y wile, zif þat þou wilt so,  
 . " & passe Moungu in to þe mountz,<sup>4</sup>  
 . " & holde<sup>5</sup> day of þy somouns. 11,760  
 . " & zif we wende so alle<sup>6</sup> to-gyder,  
 . " & he se þat we come þyder,  
 . " So may bytide,<sup>7</sup> þen schal hym rewe  
 . " þat he bigan þis bale to brewe; 11,764  
 . " & hit bytydes many<sup>8</sup> stoundes,  
 . " þat who so bygynneþ,<sup>9</sup> hym self confoundes.  
 . " I trowe þat God wil vs auaunce;  
 . " Grace ys to-ward, & gode chaunce. 11,768  
 . " þe Emperour sendes after þe;  
 . " Sek hym þer-fore,<sup>10</sup> wher so he be,  
 . " & baldely bede we on hym þe bars;<sup>11</sup>  
 . " Sone schul we se þen ho ys chars;<sup>12</sup> 11,772

All Arthur's  
barons approve  
of his speech  
(or letter).

Ohel says,

" Summon  
your folk at  
once;

cross the Alps;

and when  
Lucius sees us  
all, maybe he'll  
be sorry that  
he brewed  
this bale.

He has sent  
for you; go to  
him,

<sup>1</sup> with *ilk breton*.

<sup>2</sup> *alde . . . talde*. [leaf 69, back.]

<sup>3</sup> *sen þou sees*.

<sup>4</sup> *Mongow in to þe mouns*.

<sup>5</sup> *hold þe*.

<sup>6</sup> *wend with þe*.

<sup>7</sup> *tide*.

<sup>8</sup> *it tides often*.

<sup>9</sup> *þat on bigynnes*.

<sup>10</sup> *þan*.

<sup>11</sup> *& bede baldlie oñ him bares*.

<sup>12</sup> *so may we se who vs chares*.



and frighten  
him well.

The Sibyl  
prophesied that  
Briton should  
govern Rome.

Four Britons  
have done so;  
and you shall  
be the fifth.

It is ordained.

Delay not  
then! Forward  
all!

We fear not  
blows or death!

I will bring  
10,000 full  
armed knights,

and will pledge  
all my lands  
to get you  
money."

(Archbishop  
Dubrice turns  
hermit,

" Set þe Emperour in swylk a drede  
" þat he tys court nere dur vs<sup>1</sup> bede.  
" Loke what seis þe prophesie,—  
" Sibille þe sage [þat]<sup>2</sup> wil nought lye:— 11,776  
" þe Bretons,<sup>3</sup> of Bretayne schul come,  
" & þorow<sup>4</sup> force gouerne Rome."  
" ffoure ar<sup>5</sup> passed, wel we mene;  
" þou art þe fifte schal<sup>6</sup> do þem tene; 11,780  
" þe fifte þou art, y wot hit we[l],<sup>7</sup>  
" þat Rome schal haue ilkadel.<sup>7</sup>  
" Syn so ys ordeyned to bityde,  
" Wher-to schold we longe<sup>8</sup> abide? 11,784  
" Auaunce now boþe þy self & ous!<sup>7</sup>  
" Oure wil to helpe ys coraious;<sup>7</sup>  
" Y dar wel seye, so hastou founde,<sup>7</sup>  
" ffor we ne doute no dynt ne wounde,<sup>7</sup> 11,788  
" Ne dep, ne prison, ne langour,<sup>7</sup>  
" So wilne we faste þyn honour!<sup>7</sup>  
" Leue nought now, but faste þe spede,  
" & y schal, ȝyf þat þou haue<sup>9</sup> nede, 11,792  
" Come wyþ ten þousand of gode knyghtes,  
" Horsed & armed<sup>10</sup> at alle rightes.  
" & ȝyf þou for tresour lette,  
" Al my lond schal y wed-sette 11,796  
" ffor gold & seluer, þe to take,  
" Er þou þis viage schuld fursake."<sup>11</sup>  
" (Seint Dubrice, þe holy man,  
" At kyng Arþur tok leue þan 11,800  
" ffor to chaunge his abyte,

<sup>1</sup> þat neuer to courte eft dur þe.

<sup>2</sup> þat.

<sup>3</sup> Que trois roi, *Wace*, ii. 128, l. 11, 210.

<sup>4</sup> þorgh fyne.

<sup>5</sup> tuo er. (Dui de cels, *Wace*, l. 11, 212.)

<sup>6</sup> ert þe thrid saß. (Tu es li ters, *Wace*, l. 11, 216.)

<sup>7</sup> P. leaves out these lines. They are in *Wace*, ii. 128-9.

<sup>8</sup> saß þou long.

<sup>9</sup> saß help if þou haf.

<sup>10</sup> with hors & armes.

<sup>11</sup> or þou þi wendyng forsake.



. & bycam anon <sup>1</sup> heremyte ;  
 . & Daid, Arthures em, hit tok,  
 . þe erchebischopriche <sup>2</sup> þat Dubrice fursok.) 11,804

and Arthur's  
 uncle David is  
 made Arch-  
 bishop of  
 Kaerlyon.)

¶ Dicta Aguselly, Regis Scocie.

After þe speche of sire Ohel,  
 Seyde þe kyng sire Agusel,<sup>3</sup>  
 Sire Lothes broþer, & sire Vrien,<sup>4</sup>—  
 . Alle þre were doughti men,<sup>4</sup>— 11,808  
 & seide, “ ȝyf þou wilt werre bygynne,  
 “ Spek now to þo þat ar here-ynne,  
 “ þe beste of alle þy baronage,  
 “ þat wyte & herden þe message, 11,812  
 “ And wite þer wille, what þey wil do, [leaf 51, col. 2.]  
 “ & what þat þey may helpe<sup>5</sup> þer-to. what help  
 “ Now ys tyme to purueye<sup>4</sup> they'll give  
 “ Of help, & god conseil to seye,<sup>4</sup> 11,816 you.  
 “ Alle þo þat of þe holde,<sup>4</sup>  
 “ Riche lordes, & barouns bolde,<sup>4</sup>  
 “ þat oughte to helpe þe þorow skile,<sup>4</sup>  
 “ & wel y trowe þat so þey wyle.<sup>4</sup> 11,820  
 “ No tydyngne neuere y ne vnderstod  
 “ þat gladed me so mikel in mod,  
 “ As wyþ þe Romainys for to werre,  
 “ þat alle men in þer daunger sperre. 11,824  
 “ Y ne may þem nought loue ne preise,  
 “ ffor þey ar proude & vncurteyse,  
 “ Gode men so mykel to <sup>6</sup> despise,  
 “ þat schul nought liue but <sup>7</sup> in þer seruise ;  
 “ & þey ar men of non honour, 11,829  
 “ But couetous to gedere tresour, and covetous,

King Agusell  
 of Scotland,  
 says to Arthur,

“ Ask all the  
 best of your  
 barons

They ought to  
 help you, and  
 I believe they  
 will.  
 I myself never  
 heard such  
 glad tidings  
 as that we're to  
 fight the Ro-  
 mans.  
 I don't like 'em.  
 They're proud,

<sup>1</sup> *bicome ane.* [leaf 69, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> *Archbisshop see.*

<sup>3</sup> *Anguisel.*

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *help þe.*

<sup>6</sup> *þei.*

<sup>7</sup> *þei may not lif bot.*



|                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| robbing men's<br>lands.<br>They'll come to<br>grief yet, | <p>" Gode men<sup>1</sup> wyþ-al to noye,<sup>2</sup><br/>         . " &amp; þer londres to robbe &amp; struye.<sup>2</sup> 11,832<br/>         " Y trowe þei schul ȝit<sup>3</sup> mis-bytide<br/>         . " ffor þer couetise &amp; þer pryde ;<br/>         " Of þys þat þey haue y-sent,<sup>4</sup><br/>         " þey schul be wrothe er hit be ent ;<sup>5</sup> 11,836<br/>         . " Wonder were elles, or art me failles,<sup>2</sup><br/>         . " But þey pleye wyþ repentailles.<sup>2</sup><br/>         " &amp; þaw þey<sup>6</sup> neuere had hit by-gonne,<br/>         " We scholde þorow right<sup>7</sup> on þem haue ronne<br/>         " ffor to venge our auncessours, 11,841<br/>         " &amp; bate þer pride as þey wolde ours.<br/>         . " þey seide þey had of þeym<sup>8</sup> trewage,<br/>         " &amp; chalange hit for here heritage : 11,844<br/>         " I trowe þat þey nere þem<sup>9</sup> non gaf,<br/>         " But þorow force þem ouer haf,<br/>         . " As þeues robbed þem, &amp; reft :<br/>         . " þat wil we chalange of þem now eft/; 11,848<br/>         " Wyþ force þey gaf hit to þe Romainys,<sup>2</sup><br/>         " Wyþ force we wil haue hit agayns.<sup>2</sup><br/>         . " So harde oure force may to þem byte,<sup>2</sup><br/>         . " þat alle oure scapes schul þey quyte ;<sup>2</sup> 11,852<br/>         " We haue wonnen many a stour,<br/>         " &amp; ouer al born a-wey<sup>10</sup> þe fflour,<br/>         " So schul we ȝit þer pride abate,<br/>         . " ffor þer couetise &amp; þeir hate. 11,856<br/>         . " þat we haue wonne, y sette at nought,<br/>         . " But ȝif þe Romainys to ryng<sup>11</sup> be brought ;<br/>         " Noþyng now desire y more<sup>12</sup><br/>         " þan þider-ward we redy wore, 11,860</p> |
| and have to<br>repent for it.                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| They got their<br>tribute from<br>Britain                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| by force, by<br>robbing like<br>thieves.                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| And by force<br>we'll have it<br>back again.             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| We'll lower<br>their pride !                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Nothing do I<br>want more than<br>to be at them.         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> MS. *mem.* P. *men.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *trowe þam saȝt.*<sup>4</sup> *haf vs sent.*<sup>5</sup> *ent* = ended.<sup>6</sup> *bot þof þe.*<sup>7</sup> *suld þorgh reght.*<sup>8</sup> *þei say þai had of vs.*<sup>9</sup> *þam neuer.*<sup>10</sup> *ouer aȝt we haf born.*<sup>11</sup> *rounge.* [leaf 70.]<sup>12</sup> *mare . . . ware.*



" & þat we were at þe bataille,  
 " To se who scholde<sup>1</sup> best assaille;  
 " þer schuld<sup>2</sup> we wynne prowess & prow,  
 " Hors, harneys, tresor ynow; 11,864  
 " ȝif God vs graunte our lyf to saue,  
 " þat we þem aske, we schul<sup>2</sup> wel haue,  
 " Rome & al þat þer-to langes; and Rome too.  
 " þen schul<sup>2</sup> we ryghte, þat now vs wranges.<sup>3</sup>  
 " ȝyf God wil graunte vs wel to<sup>4</sup> venge, 11,869  
 " Toward hym we schal<sup>5</sup> wynne Lorrenge  
 " & Alemayne, ȝyf þat we may;  
 " Algate, ȝut schul we make<sup>6</sup> assay! 11,872  
 " Als y seye, so wol y rede,  
 " & þat ilke<sup>7</sup> wil do in dede.  
 " ȝif God me graunte wel to spede,  
 " Two þousand<sup>8</sup> schal y wyþ me lede, 11,876  
 " & fot folk ynowe, gode at nede:  
 " ȝif God wyle, noman schul we drede!"<sup>9</sup>

I know we shall win their treasure,

and Rome too.

God helping me, I'll bring 2,000 knights, and good foot-folk too."

When þe Scottysche kyng had his tale<sup>10</sup> told, [lf. 51, bk., cl. 1.]

Alle þey seide wyþ tonge o fold, 11,880

' þat schent he schold be of hem alle,<sup>11</sup>

' On wham þat þe wendyng schulde nought<sup>12</sup> falle.' him.

When ilkon had seid his wylle,

Arthur listned, & sat ful stille, 11,884

Let calle<sup>13</sup> a clerk wyþ inke & penne,

& bad hym write he scholde hym kenne.

Als he had seyð in alle maners,

& bitaught hit<sup>14</sup> þe messegers 11,888

Arthur sends for a clerk, has his answer written,

and gives it, sealed, to the

<sup>1</sup> *whilk suld.*

<sup>2</sup> *satt.*

<sup>3</sup> *þat þerto langes.*

<sup>4</sup> *vs forto.*

<sup>5</sup> *ȝit satt we fond to.*

<sup>6</sup> *aȝt gate we wiȝt mak.*

<sup>7</sup> *& aȝt þe same.*

<sup>8</sup> *dix mil, Wace, ii. 132, l. 11,316.*

<sup>9</sup> *wiȝt we satt not.*

<sup>10</sup> *Anguisett his tale had.*

<sup>11</sup> *Honis soit, Wace, l. 11,321.*

<sup>12</sup> *þat wendyng suld not.*

<sup>13</sup> *did calle.*

<sup>14</sup> *He tauht it to.*



head mes-  
senger,

ffaire folden, & wel enseled,<sup>1</sup>  
 . & to þer maister was hit deled,<sup>2</sup>  
 & dide þem alle gret honour,  
 . Y-now he gaf hem of tresour, 11,892

and bids them  
tell the  
Emperor,  
"Arthur of  
France and  
Britain, will  
defend his lands  
against the  
Romans.

& bad hem seye to þe Emperour,  
 þat "Arthur of ffraunce [is] gouernour,  
 " & of Bretaigne chef & flour,  
 " & schal defendit, castel<sup>3</sup> & tour, 11,896  
 . " & be þer warant & socour<sup>4</sup>  
 " Ageyns Romainys to stonde in stour."<sup>4</sup>  
 " Seis<sup>5</sup> ȝour lord, y wil nought let

He will come  
to Rome, too,  
not to pay  
tribute, but to  
fetch it."

" To come þat day þat he haȝ set; 11,900  
 " No trewage to ȝelde, but trewage to<sup>6</sup> fet;  
 . " Loke he be redy, do þat he het!"

The Roman  
Emperor's  
messengers tell  
him of the  
grandeur of  
Arthur's court,

þe messegers þer leue þey tok,  
 Toward Rome þer wey þey schok, 11,904  
 & telde þe Emperour, when þey come,  
 þe grete nobleȝe of Arthures home,  
 . How mykel folk þey wyȝ hym fond,—  
 . So doughti þer nar<sup>7</sup> in no lond,— 11,908  
 & in what stede his court he held,  
 Al þe stat þer-of, þey teld,

of Arthur's  
courtesy and  
wisdom :  
"No kaiser  
living is like  
him,  
so courteous,  
so generous,  
so hospitable,

. How curteisly to þem he spak,  
 " Nought but wysdom<sup>8</sup> of his mouȝ brak; 11,912  
 " Nys non on lyue, cayser ne kyng,  
 " þat semeȝ so wel<sup>9</sup> his beryng,  
 . " Ne so curteys þer-wyȝ-al;  
 " His giftes ar large, & stonde<sup>10</sup> in stal; 11,916  
 " þer ys no kyng doȝ suche<sup>11</sup> costages  
 . " Of mete ne drynke, ne giftes of<sup>12</sup> wages;

<sup>1</sup> *we seilde.*

<sup>2</sup> *deilde.*

<sup>3</sup> *Satt defend boȝe toun.*

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *say.*

<sup>6</sup> *bot forto.* [leaf 70, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> *non is.*

<sup>8</sup> MS. *wysdon.*

<sup>9</sup> *semes so wele.*

<sup>10</sup> *standes.*

<sup>11</sup> *it is no kyng to his.*

<sup>12</sup> *no to gyue.*



“ Ne swilk *seruise* ys *per* non so well-served.  
 “ In no court, as in <sup>1</sup> his allon. 11,920  
 “ To aske hym trewe, hit is for nought;  
 “ He þenkes to aske *ze* þennes <sup>2</sup> brought.” You needn’t  
 . þe chartre þey schewed þer barouns, ask him for  
 . & seide, “ swich ys Arthures respouns.” 11,924 tribute: he  
 wants it of  
 you.”

When þe Romainys had wel herd The Romans,  
 How þe messegers answerd, on hearing  
 & þeir *lettre* <sup>3</sup> acorded wel this, and  
 Vntil þer sawe ilka del, 11,928 Arthur’s letter,  
 þat Arthur wolde no *seruise* do,  
 But haue trewage,—þe *lettre* wild so,—  
 þey seide to the Emperour alle aboute, tell the Em-  
 “ Wyþ force *ze* schul don hym loute. 11,932 peror he must  
 “ Passeþ Moungu wiþ host right stoute; <sup>4</sup> force Arthur  
 “ & *zif* he come, we schal hym route, down,  
 “ & reue hym his regne, maugre his snoute, and take his  
 “ & wyþ righte force hold hym wyþoute.” <sup>4</sup> 11,936 realm, in spite  
 of his snout.

¶ De Consilio Romanorum contra Arthurum, cum  
 nominibus Regum eorum.

When Lucius wyste Arthures respouns, Lucius sum-  
 . He saw <sup>5</sup> þe wille of his barouns, mons his host  
 & <sup>6</sup> dide somoun wyþoute delay  
 To be redy byn þe twentyþ <sup>7</sup> day, 11, 940 for the 20th  
 Wyþ hors & harneys to wende al prest [lf. 51, bk., col. 2.] day.  
 Ageyn Arthur toward þe west:  
 . “ ffor y schal nere stynte no stounde <sup>4</sup> He’ll not stop  
 . “ Til y come þere þat þey hym founde.” <sup>4</sup> 11,944 till he gets to  
 Arthur.

<sup>1</sup> *courte bot.*

<sup>2</sup> *þien.* [what ye thence took.]

<sup>3</sup> *chartre.*

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> & sawe.

<sup>6</sup> *he.*

<sup>7</sup> *be þe tuenty.* (al disme, Wace,  
 ii. 134, l. 11,362.)



## § Nomina Regum.

|                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| These kings<br>come to<br>Lucius :<br>Epistrot,<br>Otheon,<br>Hurtak,<br>Pandras,<br>Ypolipte,                    | ffirst com Epistrot þe kyng of Grece,<br>& Sire Otheon, Duc of Boece,<br>Sire Hurtak þe kyng of Turkeys,<br>A doughti knyght & a curteys,<br>Pandras þe kyng of Egipte, <sup>1</sup><br>& of Cyce <sup>2</sup> þe kyng Ypolipte,—<br>He was of gret seignurie,<br>An hundred cites at his baillie ;—                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 11,948<br><br><br><br><br><br><br>11,952                           |
| Evander,<br>Teucer,<br>Macipsa,<br>Elephatina,<br>Bockus,<br>Sertorius,<br>Polidetes,<br>Serses, and<br>Musensar. | Out of Syre cam Ewander,<br>& out of ffryse þe kyng Teucer,<br>& out of Babilloyne sire Macipsa, <sup>3</sup><br>& out of Spayne sire Elephatina, <sup>4</sup><br>& out of Mede þe kyng Bockus,<br>& out of Lubyre sire Sertorius, <sup>5</sup><br>Out of Bycynie sire Polidetes,<br>& out of Tyre þe kyng Serses, <sup>6</sup><br>Sire Musensar, kyng of <sup>7</sup> Aufrik,—<br>A lond ferne a ful gret stryk ;<br>But he broughte tresor gret plente, <sup>8</sup><br>& fair folk, & fele, to se. <sup>8</sup> — | <br><br><br>11,956<br><br><br><br><br><br>11,960<br><br><br>11,964 |
| Of Roman<br>Senators, come<br><br>Marcel,<br>Metel, &c.,<br>so many,<br>that if one<br>could find their<br>names  | þo þat were of þe senatours,<br>Men of Rome most of honurs,<br>Of þeym cam Marcel, Lucius, Catel, <sup>9</sup><br>Octa, Gayus, & sire Metel,<br>Manye opere <sup>10</sup> of þe same kynde,<br>þat noman may þer names fynde ;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <br><br><br>11,968                                                 |

<sup>1</sup> Crète, MS. du Roi, 27; d'Egypte, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; *Wace*, ii. 135, l. 11,374.

<sup>2</sup> Gète, MS. du Roi, 27; Crethe, MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé; *ib.* 11,375.

<sup>3</sup> *Micipsa*. [leaf 70, back.]

<sup>4</sup> *Alifatina*.

<sup>5</sup> *Sertonius*. (Sertorius, *Wace*, l. 11,383.)

<sup>6</sup> Et d'Iture li rois Xersès, *Wace*.

<sup>7</sup> *Mucensar out of*.

<sup>8</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>9</sup> *lucius katell*.

<sup>10</sup> & opere *Inouh*.



- . & þey alle þe names wer founde,<sup>1</sup>  
 . Me þynkeþ hit were but tynt, þe stounde<sup>1</sup> 11,972  
 . To write þe names of so fele hounde<sup>1</sup> it'd be lost  
 . þat were vncristned in þys mounde.<sup>1</sup> time to write  
 'em.  
 When alle were comen, symple & bolde,  
 ffour hundred þousand þer wer tolde, 11,976 400,180 armed  
 & an hundred & foure score, men,  
 Alle armed men, hit telles<sup>2</sup> byfore,  
 Wypoute fotmen & seriauntye,<sup>3</sup> and foot-  
 soldiers with-  
 . þat þe noumbre kan non descrye. 11,980 out number,  
 When alle were comen þat þider schold come,  
 At þe Lammesse þey wente<sup>4</sup> fro Rome, start at Lam-  
 & tok þer weye toward Moungu mas for the  
 Alps.  
 . Wyp mykel noyse & cry & heu.<sup>5</sup> 11,984

### ¶ De tenentibus Regis Arthury.

- When Arthur departed his meyne, Arthur  
 . & schulde go þer þey wold be,  
 By name he made þem alle somouns  
 Er þey wente, alle þe barouns, 11,988  
 & preied hem of help at here myght,— asks his helpers  
 But þat þey saued wel þeir rygth;—  
 And how mikel ilkon myght brynge,  
 . þat wolde he wyte ouer alle þynge. 11,992 how many men  
 they can bring  
 Irland, Gutland, & Norweye, Ireland, Ice-  
 Denmark, Island, & Orkeneye, land, &c.  
 Sex<sup>6</sup> score þousand þey hym het,<sup>7</sup> promise  
 Of alle þo landes gedered & fet,— 11,996 120,000  
 Knyghtes were namo of<sup>8</sup> þo,  
 But opere,—þat on fote most<sup>9</sup> go; men on foot,  
 armed

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> of armes men telle.<sup>3</sup> sargeancie.<sup>4</sup> remoued. (Entrant aost, de Rome murent, Wace, ii. 136, l. 11,401.)<sup>5</sup> hu.<sup>6</sup> Set, Wace, ii. 136, l. 11,412.<sup>7</sup> mette. [leaf 70, back, col. 2.]<sup>8</sup> non of alle. (N'estoient mie chevalier, Wace, l. 11,414.)<sup>9</sup> þei kouth not ride þei suld. (N'il ne savoient cevalchier, Wace, l. 11,415.)



|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                      |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| with spears,<br>battle-axes, &c.                 | On fote by-houed þem bere þer armes, <sup>1</sup><br>Dartes, gaelokes, & gysarmes; <sup>1</sup><br>pat was þe manere of þer lond, <sup>1</sup><br>þey hadde non oper, ne non þem fond. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                            | 12,000               |
| Normandy,<br>Poitou, &c.                         | ¶ Of Normandye & of Angeowe,<br>Of Pykardie & of Peytowe,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 12,004               |
| send 80,000.                                     | And out of fflaundes & of Brabant, <sup>2</sup><br>ffour score þousand wypouten want, <sup>3</sup><br>So mykel scholde þey fynde of fe, <sup>1</sup><br>& namore was þer ryght to be. <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                             | [leaf 52.]<br>12,008 |
| The Douze<br>Peers                               | In ffraunce were þanne twelue lordes fers, <sup>4</sup><br>pat men calle þe dusze <sup>5</sup> pers;<br>pyse dusze pers, lordes of ffraunce,<br>To Gerny <sup>6</sup> of Chartres þey hadde alliaunce;<br>Eche of hem <sup>7</sup> fond an hundred knyghtes<br>pat fel to þer <sup>8</sup> fe at alle rightes. | 12,013               |
| send 1,200<br>knights.                           | Ten þousand hette sire Ohel,<br>& two þousand sire Agusel; <sup>9</sup><br>& Arthur, of þys ilke lond<br>Sexti <sup>10</sup> þousand knyghtes he fond,<br>Wyp-outen fot-folk & archers,<br>& seriauntz & arblasters;                                                                                           | 12,016<br>12,020     |
| Ohel 10,000,<br>Agusel 2,000,<br>Britain 60,000, | Of þyse y ne fond no noumbre y-writen,<br>Ne of na mo ne coupe men witen.<br>¶ When Arthur wyste þe certeyn,<br>What ilk lord scholde brynge hym <sup>11</sup> ageyn<br>Of men of armes of god array,<br>He preied hem come, & sette a day,<br>At Barefleete in Normandye,<br>pider scholde come al þer nauye; | 12,024<br>12,028     |
| besides many<br>archers and<br>arbalisters.      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                      |
| Arthur bids<br>them all meet<br>him              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                      |
| at Barfleet;                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                      |

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> of fflandres & Boloyne. (Bologne, Wace, l. 11,420.)<sup>3</sup> essoyne (difficulty). essogne, Wace, l. 11421.<sup>4</sup> tuelfe lorde sers.<sup>5</sup> cald duze.<sup>6</sup> Geryn. (Gérin, Wace, l. 11,426.)<sup>7</sup> Ilk of þam.<sup>8</sup> fett þer.<sup>9</sup> Auguisel (or Anguisel).<sup>10</sup> quarante, Wace, l. 11,435.<sup>11</sup> how fele ilk kyng suld bring.



. & ilkon certeynlike þey het<sup>1</sup> and they pro-  
 . To be þere at þat day set. mise so to do.  
 þen went alle hom, kyng & knyght,  
 & purueyd hem þat þey were dight. 12,032

¶ De Modredo, ffratre Walwyny, traditore.

Sire Arthur hadde a cosyn, To Modred, a  
 Moddred he highte, a<sup>2</sup> traitur fyn ; traitor,  
 A noble knyght he was in stour,  
 But til his e[me] he was<sup>3</sup> traytour. 12,036  
 Arthur bitaughtym<sup>4</sup> his lond to kepe ;— Arthur en-  
 . Hym hadde ben bettere haue leid<sup>5</sup> to slepe ; trusts his land.  
 ffor he had loued<sup>6</sup> þe quene<sup>7</sup> priuely, But Modred  
 Arthures wyf, & leyn hure<sup>8</sup> by ; 12,040 had lain with  
 Nought was perceyued bytwyxt<sup>e</sup> hem to : Arthur's  
 Who schuld haue trowed hit had be<sup>9</sup> so ? queen,—  
 . Who wold haue went so synful lyf,<sup>10</sup>  
 pat þe cosyn had leyn by þe emes wyf ?<sup>10</sup> 12,044 the nephew  
 & namely of swylk a man ?<sup>10</sup> with his uncle's  
 porow al þe werld his los of ran.—<sup>10</sup> wife !—  
 Arthur bitaught hym Geneuere<sup>11</sup> þe quen, Yet Arthur en-  
 (Alas þat euere hit scholde so ben !)<sup>12</sup> 12,048 trusts Guene-  
 & al þe lond saue<sup>13</sup> þe coroune, vere to Modred,  
 & schop<sup>14</sup> his host to Southaumptoune, and marches to  
 per schipes y þe hauen ryden, Southampton.  
 pat Arthur & his folk abiden. 12,052

<sup>1</sup> him certeynly hette.

<sup>2</sup> *Modrede hight þat.* (A Mordret, un de ses nevos, *Wace*, ii. 138, l. 11,452.)

<sup>3</sup> to his *Eame* was he.

<sup>4</sup> he betauht him.

<sup>5</sup> had bien better haf liggen.

<sup>6</sup> he lufed.

<sup>7</sup> "Genievre estoit sa seror," says

the MS. du Roi, 7515<sup>3.3</sup>. Colb. ; *Wace*, ii. 138, l. 11,458.

<sup>8</sup> lay hir.

<sup>9</sup> wild haf wend it had bien. [lf. 71.]

<sup>10</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.

<sup>11</sup> *Goneuere*.

<sup>12</sup> *allas if myght oþer wais bien.*

<sup>13</sup> þe lond att bot.

<sup>14</sup> dight.



|                                                                           |                                                               |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| There are<br>mariners                                                     | <i>per</i> myghte men se þe mariners,                         |                    |
|                                                                           | . Many wyght man in schipes fers, <sup>1</sup>                |                    |
| tying ropes to<br>the banks,                                              | Ropes to righte, lynes to leye, <sup>2</sup>                  |                    |
|                                                                           | By banke & brymme <sup>3</sup> to tache & teye,               | 12,056             |
|                                                                           | Cables to knytte aboute þe mast,                              |                    |
| fastening sails<br>on yards,                                              | þe sail on ȝerde þey feste ful fast,                          |                    |
|                                                                           | . Ancres, ores, redy to hande,                                |                    |
| setting bow-<br>lines on bow-<br>sprits,                                  | . Roperes, helmes, right for to stande,                       | 12,060             |
|                                                                           | Bowlyne on bouspret to sette & <sup>4</sup> hale,             |                    |
|                                                                           | Cordes, kyules, atached þe <sup>5</sup> wale;                 |                    |
|                                                                           | When al was redy in god point,                                | [leaf 52, col. 2.] |
|                                                                           | Vnto þe lond þe schipes ioynt;                                | 12,064             |
|                                                                           | . Somme stode in schipe, somme on sand, <sup>6</sup>          |                    |
| running rails<br>and planks<br>ashore to get<br>men and horses<br>aboard. | Brygges & plankes þey caste to land, <sup>7</sup>             |                    |
|                                                                           | Wyþ men & hors <sup>8</sup> for to charge                     |                    |
|                                                                           | Cogges, barges, & <sup>9</sup> schipes large;                 | 12,068             |
|                                                                           | Brought yn helmes, hauberks & scheldes,                       |                    |
|                                                                           | . & al þat men yn bataille weldes,                            |                    |
|                                                                           | Hors in to drawe, hors in to dryue;                           |                    |
|                                                                           | Men hyed <i>per</i> -after yn ful blyue.                      | 12,072             |
| When all are<br>in,                                                       | When alle were inne, <sup>10</sup> and mad al ȝare,           |                    |
|                                                                           | & þey on <i>per</i> wey[e] schuld[e] fare,                    |                    |
| and greetings<br>sent to friends<br>at home,                              | To þeym o land þey preieden eft <sup>11</sup>                 |                    |
|                                                                           | To grete <i>per</i> frendes þat þey had <sup>12</sup> lefte : | 12,076             |
|                                                                           | . On boþe parties was heuy chere                              |                    |
|                                                                           | . [Whan frendes departed leue & dere.] <sup>13</sup>          |                    |
|                                                                           | ¶ When alle were ynne, & were o flote,                        |                    |
| the sailors                                                               | Mariners dighte þem to note,                                  | 12,080             |

<sup>1</sup> *sers.*<sup>2</sup> *lay . . . tay.*<sup>3</sup> *bi bro bi bankis.*<sup>4</sup> *boulyne to set boulyne to.* (After they are on board, Wace has "Boe-  
" lines sachent et halent," ii. 141,  
l. 11,510, from MS. du Roi, 73,  
Cangé.<sup>5</sup> *bordes keuiles atache to.* (? *kevil* :  
A.-Sax. *cæfli*, halter, bridle: Som-ner. But *kevel*, pole, Jamieson, and  
Atkinson's Cleveland Glossary.)<sup>6</sup> & *som on land.*<sup>7</sup> *kest to þe sand.*<sup>8</sup> *with horses.*<sup>9</sup> *Galeis cogges.*<sup>10</sup> MS. *inne.*<sup>11</sup> *spak to eft.*<sup>12</sup> & *praied þam grete þer frendes.*<sup>13</sup> From the Petyt MS. Left out  
in the Lambeth.



- per takel for to righte<sup>1</sup> & taille,  
 By þe wynd wel for to saylle;  
 Ancres o bord, sayl drowen heye,<sup>2</sup>  
 þe wynd blew wel, þer schipe gon fleye, 12,084  
 & þe mariners þat weren sleye,<sup>3</sup>  
 Ilkon dide þer maistrise:  
 Somme aforced þe wyndas,  
 Somme þe loof, somme þe bytas;<sup>4</sup> 12,088  
 þe mayster mariner was<sup>5</sup> byhynde,  
 þe schip to stere by<sup>6</sup> þe wynde.  
<sup>7</sup> (Queynte he was, & right hardy,  
 . & engynous man & sley, 12,092  
 þat first fond schip on se to fare,  
 & turnde wyþ þe wynd þer he nyste whare,  
 Lond to seke þat he saw nought,  
 Ne whiderward he schulde be brought.)<sup>7</sup> 12,096
- get the anchors  
on board,  
hoist sails,  
and the ships  
fly.
- The captains  
steer behind.
- (A quaint bold  
man he was  
that first set a  
ship on the sea  
to seek unseen  
lands.)

### ¶ De Sompno Arthury.

- Sire Arthur hadde weder at wille,  
 Saflyk he seyled, wythouten ylle;  
 Hys folk was ioiful & gl[a]dly let,  
 ffor þeire pathe fare to Bareflet.<sup>8</sup> 12,100  
 . Atte midnyght men gaf god kep,  
 Arthur fel on slomber & slep;  
 In his slepyng als he gan<sup>9</sup> lye,  
 Hym þoughte he sey a Bere flye 12,104  
 An hugely gret, a lothly best,<sup>10</sup>  
 & fley faste towards<sup>11</sup> þe est.
- The weather is  
fair,
- and the folk  
joyful.
- Arthur dreams
- that a huge  
Bear flies east,

<sup>1</sup> dight.<sup>2</sup> ankers upwond saile drouh hie.<sup>3</sup> þo maistres þat were slie.

<sup>4</sup> som þe lofe som þe betas. [leaf 71, col. 2.] ("betas," mot espagnol qui signifie les manœuvres (cordes): De Lincy, on the authority of M. Jal, historiographe de la Marine, Wace, i. 141, note. But?)

<sup>5</sup> maryners stode.<sup>6</sup> to.

<sup>7-7</sup> Not in P., though in Wace.  
(Cp. Horace, Odes, I. iii. l. 9.)

<sup>8</sup> þei red þam right to barbflete.<sup>9</sup> slepe as he goñ.<sup>10</sup> a long & an vgly beste.<sup>11</sup> flouh fast toward.



|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| and a flaming<br>Dragon flies<br>west ;                      | O þat oþer syde a Dragon vp steý ;<br>In to þe west hym þoughte he fleý ; <sup>1</sup><br>Of his mouþ a flaume cam out,<br>þe lond, þe water, schon al about.                                                                             | 12,108           |
| that they fight,                                             | þe bere assailed þe dragoun,<br>& he defended hym as a lyoun ;<br>. Wonderly ilk oþer gan assaille, <sup>2</sup><br>. & strong was þanne þer bataille ; <sup>2</sup><br>. Scharply þer ilk oþer smot,<br>. Bitterly boþe þey blewe & bot. | 12,112<br>12,116 |
| and the Dragon<br>clips the Bear<br>till he bursts.          | þe dragon was swyft, & sleýly <sup>3</sup> swypte,<br>þe bere in his clawes he clypte,<br>& þriste hym so þat he to-barst, <sup>4</sup><br>& doun vnto þe erþe hym cast.                                                                  | 12,120           |
| Arthur wakes,                                                | Arthur of his slepyng wok,<br>Gret tent of his drem he tok ;<br>He askede clerkes sete <sup>5</sup> hym aboute, [lf. 52, bk., col. 1.]<br>Wheþer hit mente drede or doute :                                                               | 12,124           |
| asks clerks<br>whether his<br>dream means<br>joy or trouble. | . " Y wolde wyte what hit wolde <sup>6</sup> mene,<br>. " & wheþer hit tokned ioýe or tene,<br>. " & wheþer hit was help or dere,<br>. " þat þe dragoun slow þe bere."                                                                    | 12,128           |

### ¶ Interpretacio Sompny Arthury.

|                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Some say that<br>Arthur is the<br>dragon, and a<br>giant is the<br>bear. | Somme þer were þus hit descried,<br>' Hym self þe dragon signefied,<br>' & þe bere som geaunt<br>' þat he schuld make <sup>7</sup> recreaunt,<br>' ffro fer schold come, & do gret wo,<br>' & þorow force he schulde hym slo.' | 12,132 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

<sup>1</sup> *it flegh.*<sup>2</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> *swyftly*. (Wace has for the three lines before, only " Mais li dragons

" l'ours enversoit," ii. 143, l. 12,540.)

<sup>4</sup> *to braste.*<sup>5</sup> *sat.*<sup>6</sup> *wild wit what it mot.*<sup>7</sup> *He suld him mak.*



- Somme oþer weys gan hit rede,  
 But alle þey seyde he schulde wel spede; 12,136  
 þen seide hym self, "y trowe hit menes  
 " þis werre, & manye oþer tenes Arthur thinks  
 " Bytwyxt me & þe Emperour. the fight means  
 " Let God al worthe, my creatour!" 12,140 his war with  
 the Emperor.
- ¶ At þat word þe day gan sprynge,  
 þe sonne ros faire y þe mornynge,  
 & at þe sonne rysyng in god tyme At sunrise they  
 þey come to Bareflete er pryme. 12,144 reach Barfleet,  
 ffro<sup>1</sup> schip to londe ful sone þey ȝede,  
 & in þe contre aboute gon sprede;  
 He seide he wolde his folk abyde,  
 þo þat were nought come<sup>2</sup> þat tyde. 12,148  
 land, and  
 spread about  
 the country.
- . Longe while<sup>3</sup> dwelled he nought,  
 þat tydynges men hym<sup>4</sup> brought, Arthur is told  
 þat þider was comen a geaunt, of a giant  
 & longe þer hadde ben his haunt; 12,152  
 Out of Spayne was he comen,<sup>5</sup>  
 & [had]<sup>6</sup> Sire Oheles nece y-nomen;  
 Mayde Eleyne was hure name, from Spain,  
 He had hure taken to do hure schame, 12,156 who has carried  
 & had hure brought vnto an hil, off Ohel's niece
- . þat non ne myghte ne durste<sup>7</sup> com til.—  
 Micheles Mount men calles<sup>8</sup> hit now, to St. Michael's  
 . þere þe geaunt Eleyne slow; 12,160 Mount,  
 Was þer non auter ne<sup>9</sup> no chapel  
 . þat ilke tyme þat þis chaunce fel;  
 Aboute þat hil þe water flowes,  
 . Comeþ þer non þat he ne rowes.— 12,164 which is sur-  
 rounded by  
 water.  
 þer<sup>10</sup> was non þat hadde þat myght  
 þat wyþ þe geaunt durst ones fight; No one dares  
 fight the giant.

<sup>1</sup> of. [leaf 71, back.]<sup>2</sup> not comen.<sup>3</sup> long stounde.<sup>4</sup> tydynges men to him.<sup>5</sup> MS. comen.<sup>6</sup> had.<sup>7</sup> dar.<sup>8</sup> callt.<sup>9</sup> altere no. (mostier ne, Wace,  
ii. 145, l. 11, 575.<sup>10</sup> it.



Those who had  
tried it before

Somme þer were vmwhile wylde fonde,<sup>1</sup>  
& hym assailed by water & londe, 12,168  
But he gaf nought of þeir<sup>2</sup> assaut,  
. ffor þey fulle euere in þeir<sup>3</sup> defaut;  
ffor grete roches at þem he cast,  
& þer schipes to-rof & brast. 12,172

were drowned  
or slain.

Many were drenkled, fele were slayn,  
. þo þat ascaped, hit was wyþ payn;  
þer-fore þe contre was ner al fled,  
þeir wonyng fursoke, þeir godes led, 12,176  
& lefte þat lond wast & wylde,  
ffor man or best, wyf or childe.

Men had left  
their dwellings,  
and the land  
was waste, for

this giant  
Dynabrok.

þe geauntes name was Dynabrok,  
. A grysly<sup>4</sup> man was on to loke. 12,180

¶ De Gygante Dynabroke. [lf. 52, bk., col. 2.]

Arthur calls

When Arthur hadde herd þe pleynt,  
. How wyþ þe geaunt þe folk was teynt,  
Kay and Beduer.  
He calde sire Caye & Beduer,<sup>5</sup>  
& ilk of þeym tok a squyer; 12,184

All three arm,  
and go

Armure dide þey wiþ hem lede,  
& ilk of þeym tok hym a stede.  
He nolde schewe hit to namo

after Dynabrok.

. þat he wolde<sup>6</sup> to þe geaunt go; 12,188  
zyf alle had wyst he wente so one,  
þe ost had ben abaischt ilkone;

Arthur trusts  
in God, and his

He tristed wel in<sup>7</sup> Godes grace  
þat he durste hym schewe his face, 12,192  
& on his grete<sup>8</sup> vaillauntise

own valiant-  
ness to fight  
the giant.

. Ar<sup>9</sup> he durst take þat emprise.

<sup>1</sup> *wold som tyme fond.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *his*. P. *þer*.

<sup>3</sup> *fett* in *att*.

<sup>4</sup> *grimly*. [leaf 71, back, col. 2.]

<sup>5</sup> The three next lines are in De Lincy's MS. of Wace, though turned

out by him in favour of another MS., vol. ii. p. 146, note 2.

<sup>6</sup> *suld*.

<sup>7</sup> *trasted wele on*.

<sup>8</sup> *owen*.

<sup>9</sup> *þat*.



- Al þat ilke night þey ryden,  
 þat þey no whar<sup>1</sup> stynte ne biden,  
 Til hit was y þe morn[e] tyde  
 þat þey seye wel þere bysyde  
 . A bot standynge at a stage;  
 þen hoped þey þere was þe passage.  
 . Two hilles wyþynne þe water wore,  
 . þat on was lasse, þat oþer more;  
 O þe more hil þer was a fyr,  
 ffro ferre þey sey hit brenne schir;  
 12,196 They ride all night,  
 and next morn-  
 ing,  
 12,200 see the cross-  
 ing; but there  
 is a small hill  
 as well as a big  
 one,  
 with a fire  
 12,204  
 2 þe lasse hil was nought so drey  
 ffro þe more, but euene ney;  
 An oþer fir was on þat hil;<sup>2</sup>  
 þer-fore Arthur was al wyl<sup>3</sup>  
 On whilk hil þe geaunt was,  
 Ne non couþe kenne hym þe righte pas.  
 þen bad he sire Beduer "go  
 " To serche þe hilles to & fro;  
 " & when þou wost þe certeyn,  
 " Hye þe þanne to me a-geyn."  
 12,208 on each,  
 so that Arthur  
 can't make out  
 on which hill  
 Dynabrok is.  
 He sends Bed-  
 uer to search  
 both hills.  
 12,212  
 þenne Beduer dide hym in þe bot,  
 & on þe nexte hil he smot.  
 12,216 Beduer rows to  
 the nearest hill,  
 . Beduer stod,<sup>4</sup> & hym auysed  
 . Whider-ward þe weyes wysed;  
 þe nexte wey he tok vp hey,  
 & als he wente he herde a cry;  
 12,220 goes high up it,  
 and hears a cry  
 of one plaining.  
 Gret pleynte he herde on make;  
 A party gan his herte quake;  
 He wende hit hadde þe geaunt ben,  
 . þat his comyng had wist or sen;  
 12,224 He thinks it is  
 Dynabrok,  
 He drow hys swerd al so smert,  
 & gadered hardinesse of hert,  
 and draws his  
 sword,

<sup>1</sup> neuer.<sup>2-2</sup> a noþer fire was oñ þe lesse  
hitt.<sup>3</sup> att witt.<sup>4</sup> smote.



& þought þat ȝyf he wyþ hym mette,  
 Wyþ hym to fighte he wolde nought lette. 12,228  
 But al þat þenkyng was in<sup>1</sup> vayn,  
 ffor on þe hil aboue þe playn  
 He fond a fir brennyng an hy,<sup>2</sup>  
 & a toumbe newe þer-by; 12,232  
 Als he bar his swerd in hande,  
 By þe toumbe he sey on sittande,  
 A womman, ner al naked,  
 Aboute hure hed hure her to-schaked;<sup>3</sup> 12,236  
 Biside þe toumbe þis womman lay,  
 & often cried "wey la way!"  
 & mente þe vilenye & þe peyne,  
 & seide, "alas for þe, Eleyne!" 12,240

but he soon  
 finds a fire  
 near a tomb,  
  
 with a woman  
 sitting by  
  
 crying "Alas  
 for thee,  
 Eleyne!"

¶ De Tumba Elene, & de nutrice eius. [leaf 53.]

Beduer sey þe toumbe was newe,  
 & of hure deol his herte gan rewe.  
 Whan scheo perceyued sire Beduer,  
 Scheo saide, "cheytyf, what wiltow<sup>4</sup> her? 12,244  
 "Som synne hap þe hyder y-brought,  
 "þat þy dep her hastow<sup>5</sup> sought;  
 "þis day ys þe schape to deye,  
 "ȝyf þe geaunt þe se wyþ eye. 12,248  
 "þis ilke hil swyþe þou weyue,  
 "So þat he þe nought perceyue."  
 "¶ Wyf," he seide, "for<sup>6</sup> charite,  
 "Let þy gretynge, & spek wyþ me, 12,252  
 "& sey me what þou art, & why  
 "þou wepest here so delffully,  
 "& ho ys leyd here on þis graue;

Beduer pities  
 her.  
  
 But she says  
 "Miserable  
 man, why are  
 you come to  
 your death?  
  
 Fly from this  
 hill and the  
 giant!"  
 Beduer asks  
  
 her who she is,  
 and why she  
 weeps.

<sup>1</sup> *bot.* [leaf 72.]

<sup>2</sup> *brennand hie.*

<sup>3</sup> *hir haire schaked.*

<sup>4</sup> *caitife what dos þou.*

<sup>5</sup> *dede here has.*

<sup>6</sup> *par.*



- “ & sey me soþ, so God<sup>1</sup> þe saue ! ” 12,256  
 ¶ “ I am,” scheo seyde, “ a wo-bygon,” “ I am a woe-  
 “ An helples þyng, a waryed on, begone,  
 “ & grete for a maydens<sup>2</sup> myshap who weeps for  
 9 “ þat whilom y norisched at my pap, 12,260 my foster-  
 . “ & souke y gaf hure of my brest;<sup>3</sup> child—  
 “ & þis ys hure toumbe<sup>4</sup> þat þou sest; this is her  
 “ Eleyne scheo highte, Oheles nece, tomb—  
 . “ Of flesche was non so fair a pece. 12,264 Eleyne, Ohel’s  
 “ To norische sche was me taught,<sup>5</sup> niece.  
 “ Alas þe while y euere hure aught ! Alas that ever  
 “ So cam þis fend to þys contre, she was trusted  
 “ & tok boþe Eleyne<sup>6</sup> & me, 12,268 to me !  
 “ & brouhte vs here vnto þis hyl, This fiend  
 . “ So þat noman dar come vs tyl, Dynabrok  
 “ Eleyne he wolde haue furlayn, seized her and  
 “ But sche ne myghte nought wyþ þat payn ; me,  
 “ He was so huge,<sup>7</sup> ouer mesure, 12,273 and ravished  
 “ & scheo so zong, þat myght nought dure. her,—  
 . “ þorow gret destresse hire herte brast, he so huge, she  
 “ In his armes scheo zald þe gast, 12,276 so young—  
 “ & yn þys toumbe y haue hure leyd ; so that she  
 . “ & þus hit was<sup>8</sup> als y haue seid.” died in his  
 ¶ þen seid he, “ wherto dwellest þou here, arms.  
 “ Syþen<sup>9</sup> sche ys ded þat was þe dere ? ” 12,280 I laid her in  
 “ Sire,” scheo seyde, “ y wil þe telle this tomb ;  
 . “ zif þou durstest<sup>10</sup> so longe dwelle. and I dwell  
 “ Sire, for y þe se of body auenaunt, here  
 “ & gentil man by [þi]<sup>11</sup> semblaunt, 12,284  
 “ When y sey Eleyne so schamely deye, because after  
 “ My wit was lorn, & al a-weye ; my Eleyne’s  
 death, I lost  
 my wit,

<sup>1</sup> criste.<sup>2</sup> I grete for mayden.<sup>3-3</sup> at souke .I. gaf hir of my pap.

I. norissched hir of my breste.

<sup>4</sup> One stroke too many for *um* in the MS.<sup>5</sup> to me scho was bitauht. [lf. 72, col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> hir.<sup>7</sup> grete.<sup>8</sup> so it is.<sup>9</sup> sen.<sup>10</sup> durste.<sup>11</sup> be þi.



and Dynabrok  
forced me to  
stay, to satisfy  
his lust on me.

Would that I  
could sink into  
the earth!  
He will come  
soon,  
and you are a  
dead man if  
you stay here.  
Flee at once!

He is on yon  
hill, by the fire  
you see.

Flee, and leave  
me to my  
sorrow.  
Would that I  
could die!"  
Beduer grieves  
for her,

but turns back  
to Arthur,

tells him how  
Eleyne died,  
and that the  
giant is on the  
big hill  
whence the  
smoke comes.  
Arthur waits

for the ebb of  
the tide;  
then he, Bed-

" Wyp force he dide me leue stille,  
" His lecherie in me to fulfille. 12,288  
" On God hym selue y take witnes,  
" þat al maugre myn hit es!  
" & ilka tyme þat y him se,  
" Y wilde be sonken, for y ne may fle; 12,292  
" & y trowe he comeþ right<sup>1</sup> sone,  
" His lecherie wyp me to done.  
" Y telle þe ded, ȝyf þou here bydes,  
" No þyng ne saueþ þe, ne hides; 12,296  
" Swyþe þou fle, y gyue þe red,  
" Y wolde nought þou were so<sup>2</sup> ded.  
" ȝonder ys he, y schal þe kenne,  
" On ȝone hil þer þou sest brenne; 12,300  
" Sone to come his tyme schal be, [leaf 53, col. 2.]  
" per-fore, sire knyght, y rede þou fle,  
" & let me haue my self my sorewe,  
" My wille ys to be ded<sup>3</sup> to morewe." 12,304  
Of hure wo sore hym ouer þought;<sup>4</sup>  
But he ne wiste what hure dought,  
Ne to make<sup>5</sup> long dwellyng.  
He turned ageyn vnto þe kyng; 12,308  
& als scheo seide, so he hym tolde,  
How Eleyne deyde, & scheo in holde,  
& he scholde fynde þe geaunt  
Y þe more hil, þer was his haunt; 12,312  
" Out of þat stede þe smoke cam<sup>6</sup> fro,  
" We may hym fynde ȝif þat we go."  
¶ ffor Eleyne had Arthur sorewe ynow,  
& abod til þe flod wyp-drow.<sup>7</sup> 12,316  
Vntil<sup>8</sup> þe ebbe a stounde þey bod,  
Wip þer hors þen ouer þey rod,

<sup>1</sup> hope [expect] he comes.

<sup>2</sup> wild not se þat þou were.

<sup>3</sup> to die.

<sup>4</sup> forþouht.

<sup>5</sup> ne he to mak. [leaf 72, back.]

<sup>6</sup> comes.

<sup>7</sup> widrouh.

<sup>8</sup> vnto.



- & wenten bote a softe <sup>1</sup> pas  
 Tyl þei perceiued wher he <sup>2</sup> was. 12,320  
 þeir stedes & þer palfreys  
 þeir squiers helde, wiþ oþer harneys ;  
 But sire Beduer & sire Kay  
 zede wiþ Arthur vp þe way. 12,324  
 Arthur seide, "y wil proue my might,  
 " Wiþ þe geaunt alone to fight ;  
 " Hold zow here byhynde a lyte ;  
 " Alone on hym wil y first smite ; 12,328  
 " While <sup>3</sup> y may my selue saue,  
 " Oþer help wil y non haue ;  
 " Me þynkeþ hit were no vasselage,  
 " pre til on ; hit were outrage ! 12,332  
 " Nere þe les, zyf þat ze se nede,  
 " Bettere ys help þan ouer drede ;  
 " ffor men seye, 'hit ys folye <sup>4</sup>  
 " 'In strengthe to mikel for to affye.' " <sup>4</sup> 12,336  
 þey seide, 'for prowess ne for zelp,  
 ' zyf hit were ned, þey wolde hym help.'

uer, and Kay  
ride across  
to the giant's  
hill,

and Arthur  
says he'll fight  
Dynabrok  
alone ;

three to one  
would be  
shameful.  
But still they  
may help him  
if they see  
need.

¶ De Occisione Gygantis Dynabrok per Arthurum.

- Arthur alone þe hil he tok <sup>5</sup>  
 . Vnto þe geaunt Dynabrok. 12,340  
 By a mykel fir he sat,  
 Rostyng a swyn gret & <sup>6</sup> fat,  
 & oþer flesche biside was sode ; <sup>7</sup>  
 His bryn, <sup>8</sup> his berd, þer-wiþ al lothen, <sup>9</sup> 12,344

Arthur finds  
Dynabrok

roasting a fat  
pig,

his eyebrows  
and beard all

<sup>1</sup> *schorte.*  
<sup>2</sup> MS. *scheo.* P. *he.*  
<sup>3</sup> *till.*  
<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.  
<sup>5</sup> Puis ont tot trois le mont puié,  
*Wace*, ii. 152, l. 11,867.

<sup>6</sup> & *roste suynes flesch fult.*  
<sup>7</sup> *som rosted & som was sothen.*  
<sup>8</sup> *les guernons* (moustaches),  
*Wace*, ii. 153, l. 11,872.  
<sup>9</sup> *his bryne his berde þer with was*  
*broþen.*



|                                                  |                                                                       |        |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| slobbered with<br>the fat.                       | & al to-soilled <sup>1</sup> wyþ þe spyk :                            |        |
|                                                  | . I trowe þat syght was ful loþlyk ;                                  |        |
|                                                  | But Arthur þoughte to haue þe grace                                   |        |
|                                                  | to smyte er he tok <sup>2</sup> his mace.                             | 12,348 |
| Dynabrok                                         | When þe geaunt of hym was war,                                        |        |
|                                                  | fferly he hadde how he cam þar,                                       |        |
| starts up to                                     | & stirte vp þenne al o glyft/,                                        |        |
| lift his mace,                                   | His grete mace <sup>3</sup> for to lyft ;                             | 12,352 |
| but as he's<br>doing it,                         | But Arthur auised hym wel ynow ;                                      |        |
|                                                  | Als he hys mace vpward drow,                                          |        |
| Arthur thrusts<br>at him with his<br>lance.      | . Arthur bar on hym wyþ his launce                                    |        |
|                                                  | . To combren hym, als of chaunce ;                                    | 12,356 |
| They fight                                       | . Longe þey foughte, a wel god while,                                 |        |
|                                                  | . But Arthur coupe mykel of gyle ;                                    |        |
|                                                  | . Nere sleighte & queyntise hadde ben, & gile, <sup>4</sup>           |        |
|                                                  | . Somme had be combred þer in a whyle ; <sup>4</sup>                  | 12,360 |
| and Arthur is<br>hard bestead.                   | . ffor kyng Arthur neuere er was <sup>4</sup> [lf. 53, back, col. 1.] |        |
|                                                  | . Bystad in so hard a cas. <sup>4</sup>                               |        |
|                                                  | . Dynabrok a-geyn hym stod                                            |        |
|                                                  | . Wyþ his mace, as geaunt wod,                                        | 12,364 |
| No three men<br>could lift Dy-<br>nabrok's mace. | ffor þre men, wyþoute þe forþe,                                       |        |
|                                                  | Schuld nought haue stired his mace from <sup>5</sup> erþe ;           |        |
|                                                  | He sey wel how he made his mynt,                                      |        |
| He aims a blow<br>at Arthur,                     | & wiþ his mace he teysed <sup>6</sup> his dynt ;                      | 12,368 |
|                                                  | . He wiste þe strok schulde be gret ;                                 |        |
|                                                  | Vnder his scheld al he schet,                                         |        |
| who catches it<br>on his shield,                 | & ageyn his <sup>7</sup> strok hit held.                              |        |
|                                                  | þen smot þe geaunt on his scheld,                                     | 12,372 |
|                                                  | & wyþ þat dynt so <sup>8</sup> heuy & stronge                         |        |
|                                                  | þe hilles alle aboute ronge,                                          |        |

<sup>1</sup> to solied.<sup>2</sup> come or he toke.<sup>3</sup> & toke his mace vp.  
[leaf 72, back, col. 2.]<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>5</sup> suld not lifte it fro þe.<sup>6</sup> teysed, poised ; cp. *teyse & tais-*  
*and*, Sevyn Sages, 1978, in Halliwell.<sup>7</sup> þe.<sup>8</sup> so was þe dynt.



- . & al þat was þer-inne, hit schok<sup>1</sup>  
 . When Arthur þat dynt so huge tok.<sup>1</sup> 12,376  
 Arthur was stoneyd, stakered, & stynt,  
 But ȝut fel he nought for þat dynt. and staggers  
 . Anoper strok wold he nought byde, under it,  
 . But peyned<sup>2</sup> hym to smyte a syde 12,380 but doesn't fall.  
 . Wyþ his swerd Caliborne; With Caliburn  
 . Scharply he gan hym torne;  
 pat swerd he lifte wel on hey,  
 . & valedde his scheld<sup>3</sup> a party; 12,384  
 Endlong<sup>4</sup> his forehed he hym smot,  
 . þe swerd bot wel, & he was hot, he smites Dy-  
 & entamed boþe his bryn<sup>5</sup> nabrok along  
 pat al þe skyn heng ouer hys eyn. 12,388 the forehead,  
 Wyþ þat strok he hadde ben slayn: and the bleed-  
 His mace he held wel þer a-gayn, ing skin falls  
 & his heued a party glent, over his eyes.  
 pat som of þe strok hit hent; 12,392 He'd have been  
 Netheles, wel was hit set; killed if he  
 þe blod al ouer his eyen hit schet;<sup>6</sup> hadn't put up  
 þen lost he þer al his sight, his mace, and  
 þen wax<sup>7</sup> he woder for to fyght, 12,396 dodged his  
 þen was he woder þen he was or,<sup>1</sup> head.  
 ffightyng als a wylde bor,<sup>1</sup> The blood  
 þe same weys so dide he;<sup>1</sup> stops up Dyna-  
 When he sey þat he myghte nought se,<sup>2</sup> 12,400 brok's eyes,  
 He ne lefte for swerd ne oper hirt  
 pat he vntil Arthur stirt; he gets wilder  
 Aboute his middel his armes he leyd, and wilder,  
 & on Arthur so sore he breyd,<sup>8</sup> 12,404 and fights like  
 Then he rushes  
 at Arthur,  
 seizes him by  
 the middle,

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> *etild*.<sup>3</sup> *his schelde he auailed* (lowered).<sup>4</sup> & o long.<sup>5</sup> *Les deus sorcils li entama,*  
*Wace, ii. 154, l. 11,896.*<sup>6</sup> *his Ine get.*<sup>7</sup> *was.*<sup>8</sup> *sare he braid.* [leaf 73.]



|                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| lifts him up,                                                                                  | . On heighte he lifte hym four fet ;                                                                                                                                              |        |
|                                                                                                | . & als he þere hym doun let,                                                                                                                                                     |        |
| and throws<br>him on his<br>knees.                                                             | Vpon his knes he hym kast.<br>þen Arthur proued his force fast,                                                                                                                   | 12,408 |
|                                                                                                | . Our lady hym halp, his wille was god,                                                                                                                                           |        |
| Arthur<br>gets up,                                                                             | Wyþ force he ros, & he vp stod ;<br>& Arthur was algate queynte,                                                                                                                  |        |
|                                                                                                | & his wille was neuere feynte ;                                                                                                                                                   | 12,412 |
|                                                                                                | . On þat syde he bar his scheld,                                                                                                                                                  |        |
| twists round,<br>forces the<br>giant's arms<br>open, gets free,                                | . & þe geaunt nought ne <sup>1</sup> held,<br>Wyþ þat he wroþ, <sup>2</sup> & turnde his syde,<br>& dide his armes <sup>3</sup> opene wyde.                                       | 12,416 |
|                                                                                                | When he hym self was fro hym broken,<br>& þat his body was nought loken, <sup>4</sup><br>fful lyght hym þoughte þat he was oute ; <sup>5</sup>                                    |        |
| and smites the<br>giant with his<br>sword.                                                     | Wip Caliborne þen ran he aboute, <sup>5</sup><br>And euere on þe geaunt <sup>6</sup> smot,<br>& Caliborne sore vpon hym bot.                                                      | 12,420 |
|                                                                                                | þe geaunt glente hider & tyder, <sup>7</sup> [leaf 53, back, col. 2.]<br>þe blod so blent hym, he nyst whider ;                                                                   | 12,424 |
| Dynabrok,<br>blinded by his<br>blood, gropes<br>about after<br>Arthur ;                        | He groped aboute hym for to <sup>8</sup> hent,<br>& Arthur aboute hym euere went/,<br>& smot hym sore woundes <sup>9</sup> fele,                                                  |        |
|                                                                                                | . Nought of hym ne wolde he spele ; <sup>10</sup>                                                                                                                                 | 12,428 |
| then he stops<br>still a second,<br>and Arthur<br>splits his head<br>down to his<br>shoulders. | . & at a turn þe geaunt stynt/,<br>Arthur gaf hym so gret a dynt<br><sup>11</sup> O þe hed, þat in to þe nekke hit dref,<br>& in to þe schuldres þe panne he clef ; <sup>11</sup> | 12,432 |
|                                                                                                | . 3yt he after Arthur raught,—<br>Arthur wyþ-drow <sup>12</sup> his swerd a draught,—                                                                                             |        |

<sup>1</sup> þe Geaunt nouht he ne.<sup>2</sup> wroþe (writhed).<sup>3</sup> armure.<sup>4</sup> not stoken.<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>6</sup> on þe Geaunt with his suerd he.<sup>7</sup> þider & þidere.<sup>8</sup> grapte about if he mot.<sup>9</sup> with wondes.<sup>10</sup> spele = spare.<sup>11-11</sup> þan down in to þe hede it drafe.þe panne in to þe schuldres  
klafe.<sup>12</sup> & Arthur drouh.



|                                                  |        |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| pat he stombled, & gaf a cry, <sup>1</sup>       |        | Dynabrok                    |
| A dredful & a lonly; <sup>1</sup>                | 12,436 | utters a dread-<br>ful cry, |
| When he fel, he gaf a lasche                     |        | and falls with              |
| As wyþ a blast had falle an asche;               |        | a sound like an             |
| & for þat fal Arthur low,                        |        | ash blown                   |
| He was venged hym þoughte <sup>2</sup> y-now;    | 12,440 | down.<br>Arthur laughs;     |
| ffro ferre he stod, & loked on hym, <sup>1</sup> |        |                             |
| . & seyde he was a geaunt grym; <sup>1</sup>     |        | says he's a                 |
| He bad Beduer he schulde go                      |        | grim giant,                 |
| To smyte þe heued þe body fro,                   | 12,444 | tells Beduer to             |
| & bytake <sup>3</sup> hit a squier               |        | cut Dynabrok's              |
| To schewe hit al þe host plener.                 |        | head off, and               |
|                                                  |        | have it shown               |
|                                                  |        | to the army.                |

¶ Hic narrauit Arthurus Beduero & Kayo de  
gigante Rytone.

|                                                        |        |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| þen telde Arthur to Beduer & <sup>4</sup> Kay,         |        | Arthur says he  |
| pat he nadde neuere suche affray,                      | 12,448 | never had such  |
| Of no geaunt but of on,                                |        | a fight,        |
| & þat geaunt highte Ryton; <sup>5</sup>                |        | except with the |
| fful manye kynges had he doni slo,                     |        | giant Ryton,    |
| & flow þe berdes of alle þo;                           | 12,452 | who made the    |
| Til a pane, as a furour, <sup>6</sup> he did hem tewe: |        | beards of the   |
| Loke ȝif Ryton were nought <sup>7</sup> a schrewe!     |        | kings he slew   |
| pat geaunt Riton sende his sonde                       |        | into a trimming |
| Til Arthur fro ferre <sup>8</sup> londe,               | 12,456 | for his cloak.  |
| . & seide he scholde make hym a-ferd                   |        | " This Ryton    |
| But he flowe of his owen <sup>9</sup> berd,            |        | sent to me,     |
| & sent hit hym vntil his pane,                         |        | and said that   |
|                                                        |        | unless I flayed |
|                                                        |        | off my beard,   |
|                                                        |        | and sent it him |
|                                                        |        | for his cloak,  |

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> venged wele.

<sup>3</sup> bitech.

<sup>4</sup> He told Beduer & sir.

<sup>5</sup> P. has for the next two lines,—  
he did mykett wonder & wo.  
& many kynges did he slo.

& att þer berdes he did of flo.

a pane he mad of alle þo.

[leaf 73, col. 2.]

<sup>6</sup> And as a forrour.

<sup>7</sup> se how Riton was.

<sup>8</sup> fer.

<sup>9</sup> awen.



|                                                                                                                 |                                                                  |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                                                                                                                 | . To menske hit <i>per</i> hit was wane ;                        | 12,460     |
|                                                                                                                 | & <i>zyf</i> he sent hit hym blepely,                            |            |
|                                                                                                                 | He schulde set hit most worschipfully, <sup>1</sup>              |            |
|                                                                                                                 | ffor he wolde vrle his pane wyþ-al                               |            |
|                                                                                                                 | . Aboute wiþ a ffylet smal ;                                     | 12,464     |
| I was to get<br>ready, and                                                                                      | And <i>zyf</i> Arthur wylde nought                               |            |
|                                                                                                                 | Do als Ryton hym bisought,                                       |            |
|                                                                                                                 | Greyþe hym as sone as <sup>2</sup> he myght,                     |            |
| fight him ;<br>and whoever<br>won,<br>should flay off<br>the other's<br>beard, and put<br>it on the cloak.      | ffor Ryton wolde wyþ hym fight ;                                 | 12,468     |
|                                                                                                                 | & whilk of þem might oper slo,                                   |            |
|                                                                                                                 | His berd he scholde don of flo,                                  |            |
|                                                                                                                 | & haue þe pane ilka del,                                         |            |
|                                                                                                                 | <i>per</i> -wyþ aboute vrle hit wel.                             | 12,472     |
| So I went to<br>him, slew him,<br>and won his<br>cloak on<br>Mount Derane.                                      | Arthur þen til Ryton went,                                       |            |
|                                                                                                                 | In bataille he slow hym <sup>3</sup> & schent,                   |            |
|                                                                                                                 | & wan þe pane & his berd ;                                       |            |
|                                                                                                                 | O þe mount Derane <sup>4</sup> he was conquerd.                  | 12,476     |
| No one has<br>given me<br>such trouble<br>since, save this<br>Dynabrok."                                        | Sipen fond Arthur neuere non                                     |            |
|                                                                                                                 | But Dynabrok, as was Ryton,                                      |            |
|                                                                                                                 | pat neuere dide til hym in dede,                                 |            |
|                                                                                                                 | pat he had of so mykel drede.                                    | 12,480     |
| Beduer gives<br>Dynabrok's<br>head to a<br>squire,<br>to show to the<br>host.<br>Ohel laments<br>Eleyne's fate, | . <i>per</i> þey hym slowe, <i>per</i> þey hym leued,            |            |
|                                                                                                                 | & Beduer tok a squier þe heued,                                  |            |
|                                                                                                                 | To bere & schewe þe host aboute,                                 |            |
|                                                                                                                 | Wher þat þey were, & in what doute.                              | 12,484     |
|                                                                                                                 | Sire Ohel ful sore byment <sup>5</sup>                           | [leaf 54.] |
|                                                                                                                 | pat his nece was so schent ;                                     |            |
| and builds a<br>fair chapel for<br>her,<br>wherein her<br>corpse is laid,<br>and it is called                   | A fair chapel for hure dide make,                                |            |
|                                                                                                                 | Of oure lady, for Eleyne <sup>6</sup> sake.                      | 12,488     |
|                                                                                                                 | Sipen <sup>7</sup> pat tyme scheo was <i>per</i> leyd,           |            |
|                                                                                                                 | ffor Eleyne, <sup>6</sup> 'Eleyne <sup>6</sup> toumbe' ys seid ; |            |

<sup>1</sup> *suld do it most curteisy.*<sup>2</sup> *Redy him sone als.*<sup>3</sup> *bataile slouh Riton.*<sup>4</sup> *de Rame.* (Et mont de Rave,  
MS. du Roi, 73, Cangé ; d'ArtaneMS. de l'Ars., 171. B.-L. ; Wace,  
ii. 158, note (a).)<sup>5</sup> *it ment.*<sup>6</sup> *Heleyn.*<sup>7</sup> *sen.*



& so men han cald hit ay<sup>1</sup>

'Eleyne's tounge' vnto þys day.<sup>1</sup>

12,492 Eleyne's tomb.

When þe host was al comen & ȝare,  
þo þat scholde wiþ Arthur fare,

Arthur, with  
his host,

. No þrowe<sup>2</sup> wolde he þare lye,

But passed sone al Normandie.

12,496 crosses Nor-  
mandy,

. His folk wax<sup>3</sup> wher-so he cam,

. þe doughtiest wyþ hym he nam,

. Out of castel & of cite,

& passed Burgoyne, al þat contre;

12,500 and Burgundy,  
to Hostun,  
where he hears  
that the Ro-  
mans are  
coming.

Vntil Hostun,<sup>4</sup> þyder he þought;

& þennes tidynges men hym<sup>5</sup> brought,

þat þey of Rome com wyþ gret route,

& tok þe contre al aboute.

12,504

¶ Al as<sup>6</sup> Arthur schulde a water passe—

Albe,<sup>7</sup> hit seis þe name wasse—

Al day til Arthur men tolde,

Wiþ passand men<sup>8</sup> & spies bolde,

12,508

þat þe Emperour was þere bysyde;

. To conseilte what best myghte bytide,<sup>9</sup>

His paulons, his penceles, þykke

Nought fer fro þenne had þey don wyk: <sup>10</sup> 12,512

"þer are so manye of<sup>11</sup> Romainys,

"& þyn host may nought<sup>12</sup> þeym ageyns.

"ffoure hap he agayns<sup>13</sup> on of þyne;

"& ȝif ȝe assemble, þou<sup>14</sup> most<sup>15</sup> tyne." 12,516

Arthur seide, "Godes help ys ney!

. "He wot ho schal haue þe maistri."

As Arthur is  
crossing the  
river Albe,  
spies tell him

that the Ro-  
man Emperor  
is close by,

with an army  
of four to one  
against his.

Arthur answers  
"God's help is  
nigh,"

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> while. [leaf 73, back.]

<sup>3</sup> flok wex.

<sup>4</sup> Ostun [Autun], Wace, ii. 160, 12,020.

<sup>5</sup> þien tiþinges titt him men.

<sup>6</sup> MS. Alas. P. has Als.

<sup>7</sup> Aube, Wace, ii. 160, l. 12,027.

<sup>8</sup> Li paisant, Wace, l. 12,028.

<sup>9</sup> him how best mot tide.

<sup>10</sup> fer þien had þei down pikke.  
(A.-Sax., wician, to encamp.)

<sup>11</sup> so many.

<sup>12</sup> & þou has non oste.

<sup>13</sup> ere agayn. <sup>14</sup> MS. þi, or þi.

<sup>15</sup> If bataile go þou satt.



raises a castle  
 on the river, for  
 refuge if he  
 needs it,  
 He left nought for no manace;  
 Vpon Albe<sup>1</sup> in a strong place 12,520  
 A castel he dide reyse & set,  
 . ȝyf he had nede to take recet;<sup>2</sup>  
 Smertly to make þei were al bon<sup>3</sup>  
 Wyþ folk ynow, & sone had don.<sup>3</sup> 12,524  
 When al was ended þe grete<sup>4</sup> tour,  
 He leyde in<sup>5</sup> his harneys & his tresour,  
 ȝyf chaunce come þei moste wyþdrawe<sup>6</sup>  
 To rest hem þere a litel prawe.<sup>7</sup> 12,528  
 and puts his  
 arms and  
 treasure there.

¶ *Arthurus misit nuncios ad Imperatorem.*

His castle being  
 finished,  
 Arthur ap-  
 points mes-  
 sengers,  
 . When þe castel was al dight,  
 . & defensable for kyng & knyght,  
 He ordeynd messegers<sup>8</sup> to wende,  
 . To þe Emperour he þoughte to sende, 12,532  
 Two erles þat were of noble lynage,  
 & wel spekyng,<sup>9</sup> of god langage:  
 Geryn of Chartres, a man of pris,  
 Wip Beofs of Hamptone,<sup>10</sup> an oþer ful wys; 12,536  
 Wip þise two wente sire Wawayn,  
 ffor he spak wel þe speche Romain;  
 ffor he had longe wip hem ben,<sup>3</sup>  
 & his connyng þey hadde wel sen;<sup>3</sup> 12,540  
 . ffor þat skile Arthur hym sent,<sup>3</sup>  
 . þat he wist best what þeir speche ment;<sup>3</sup>  
 & Arthur taughte þem þus to seye,  
 When þey schulde wende þer weye: 12,544  
 " Sey þemperour he go to Rome, [leaf 54, col. 2.]  
 " & to ffraunce non hender come,

Geryn of  
 Chartres,  
 Beofs of  
 Hampton,  
 and Wawayn  
 who knew  
 Roman,  
 to go and tell  
 the Emperor:  
 "I, Arthur, bid  
 you back to  
 Rome, out of

<sup>1</sup> Aube, *Wace*, l. 12,041.

<sup>2</sup> *him were nede to haf resette.*

<sup>3</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>4</sup> *up in þe.*

<sup>5</sup> *He did.*

<sup>6</sup> *com þat him bord fle.*

<sup>7</sup> *þer in tuo daies or þre.* (R.)

Manning follows the Arsenal MS. of *Wace* (ii. 161, note (c)) in the last four lines.

<sup>8</sup> *sent messengers.*

<sup>9</sup> *wel spoken.*

<sup>10</sup> *Beus of Oxenford.*



|                                                          |        |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| . " Ne til no landes þat y wan,                          |        | France and my  |
| . " Ne chalange hit as man <sup>1</sup> Romain ;         | 12,548 | lands ;        |
| . " þo ar myne ; & myne schul be ;                       |        | mine they are, |
| . " Romain of þeym schal neuere haue fee.                |        | and mine they  |
| . " ȝyf he wil nought turne ageyn,                       |        | shall be.      |
| . " Byd hem abide þe <sup>2</sup> bataille pleyn,        | 12,552 | If you won't   |
| . " & auenture at alle <sup>3</sup> chaunce              |        | go, then abide |
| . " To dereyne þe ryght of Rome & <sup>4</sup> ffraunce. |        | battle.        |
| . " As longe as y may ffraunce <sup>5</sup> saue,        |        | As long as I   |
| . " þe Romainys schul hit <sup>6</sup> neuere haue.      | 12,556 | can save       |
| . " Wyþ bataille, sey hym, y hit wan,                    |        | France, the    |
| . " & schal <sup>7</sup> defend hit fro ilka man.        |        | Romans shall   |
| . " Wyþ force, þer-of had þey first fee,                 |        | never have it. |
| . " Wyþ force þey les hit a-geyns me ;                   | 12,560 |                |
| . " & now wyþ bataille schal hit be <sup>8</sup> sene    |        | Let a battle   |
| . " Who schal haue hit quyt & clene."                    |        | decide between |
|                                                          |        | us."           |

### ¶ De nunciis Regis Arthury ad Imperatorem.

|                                                  |        |                |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| þe messegers þat wente þo nedes,                 |        | Arthur's mes-  |
| Horsed þem on gode stedes :                      | 12,564 | sengers get    |
| & armed þem at alle rightes,                     |        | good steeds,   |
| As fel vnto noble knyghtes.                      |        | and arm well.  |
| Oper Bretons herd her-of seye,                   |        | Britons ask    |
| & wente to mete hem bifore <sup>9</sup> on weye, | 12,568 | them to        |
| And preied hem <sup>10</sup> hertely for to do   |        |                |
| Som þyng, or seye þe Romainys to,                |        | insult the Ro- |
| þat þe werre myghte algate go                    |        | mans so that   |
| Er þey comen þe court fro :                      | 12,572 | the war may go |
|                                                  |        | on :           |

<sup>1</sup> be chalenged þorgh no.

<sup>2</sup> stand to.

<sup>3</sup> vs all to.

<sup>4</sup> whilk satt derayne þe Reme of.

<sup>5</sup> may it.

<sup>6</sup> france satt he neuer.

<sup>7</sup> & so.

<sup>8</sup> satt be.

<sup>9</sup> & led þam alle þre.

<sup>10</sup> à Gauvain, Wace, ii. 162, 1.  
12,080.



|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| "It's been<br>threatened,<br>so long that it'd<br>be a shame not<br>to fight. | "Hit hap be longe <sup>1</sup> manaced & pret,<br>"But so ney to-gydere were we nere <sup>2</sup> set ;<br>"Schame hit were þat eyþer zede<br>"Wipouten bataille or vaillaunte <sup>3</sup> dede. 12,576       |
| Besides, we're<br>sure to win ;                                               | . "zyf so bitide ze <sup>4</sup> hit bygynne,<br>"zyt schul Bretons prowessse wynne ;                                                                                                                          |
| so try to bring<br>on the fight."                                             | . "per-to algate dos 3our trauail, <sup>5</sup><br>" & þat we may, we wil 3ow vaille." <sup>5</sup> 12,580                                                                                                     |
| Wawayn says,<br>"You shall here<br>of us,"                                    | pen seide Wawayn, "in alle manere<br>"Of vs schul ze som tyding here ;<br>" & zyf ze se þat we ought dwelle,<br>"Tydyng per-of men schal telle." 12,584                                                        |
| and, with his<br>fellows, rides                                               | ¶ þe messegers passed a mountayne,<br>& þenne a wode, & syþen a playne ;<br>ffro <sup>6</sup> þat playne a partye helded,<br>& per-on were þe Romainys telled ; 12,588<br>. fful semly wypouten bost           |
| to and through<br>the Roman<br>host,                                          | þey come rydyng al <sup>7</sup> þorow þe host.<br>þe Romans on ilka side aboute,<br>Of per tentes comen <sup>8</sup> oute 12,592<br>po messegers to byholde,<br>. þat semed noble bodies <sup>9</sup> & bolde. |
|                                                                               | þey asked what tydynges þey brought,<br>Or þider for þe pes þey sought : 12,596<br>Wyp non þey stode, ne tales helde,<br>Tyl þey come to þe Emperours telde.                                                   |
| till they reach<br>Lucius's pavi-<br>lion.<br>Here they<br>alight,            | . When þey were at his paupyloun,<br>pere-byfore þey lyghte alle doun, 12,600<br>& bitok þeir hors <sup>10</sup> þeir pages,<br>. To stande right stille at certeyn stages.                                    |

<sup>1</sup> *it has bien long.*<sup>2</sup> *& now so nere togider ere.*<sup>3</sup> *manly.*<sup>4</sup> *þat.*<sup>5</sup> *P. leaves out these lines.*<sup>6</sup> *of.* [leaf 74.]<sup>7</sup> *ridand.*<sup>8</sup> *þei com.*<sup>9</sup> *men.*<sup>10</sup> *Bitauht þer hors.*



¶ *Hic venerunt Nuncii coram Imperatore.* [lf. 54, bk., col. 1.]

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| By-fore þe Emperour come alle þre,<br>& seide þeir message as men auise,<br>Geryn & Beofs <sup>1</sup> boþe ful wys;<br>And þe Emperour seide hem his auis,<br>& spak ageyn þeym <sup>2</sup> boþe fast.<br>But þenne spak Wawayn atte last:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 12,604                                                                                               | go before the<br>Emperor, and<br>give him<br>Arthur's<br>message:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| " We ar come fro þe kyng Arthour<br>" To þe, sire Lucius, Emperour;<br>" We are his knyghte to lyue & deye;<br>" His message y schal þe holy <sup>3</sup> seye.<br>" þys ys þe message <sup>4</sup> þat he þe sendes:<br>" He comaundes þe, & defendes,<br>" þat þou of ffraunce nought entremet,<br>" Ne no fot þideward ferrer <sup>5</sup> set;<br>" ffor Fraunce he holdes as his demeynes, <sup>6</sup><br>" & euere schal, for alle Romeynes. <sup>6</sup><br>" ȝyf þou of hym wilt ought chalenge,<br>" þorow bataille wil he hym venge.<br>" þorow bataille first wonne ȝe ffraunce,<br>" & les hit after þorow a chaunce;<br>" A-geyn Arthur ȝe hit les<br>" þorow bataille, as þe party ches,<br>" & now ys holde as his conqueste, <sup>7</sup><br>" & schal while þe sonne rysep est. <sup>7</sup><br>" & ȝyf þou sette chalange þer-ynne,<br>" þorow bataille byhouep þe hit wyne; <sup>8</sup><br>" þorow bataille schal hit be dereynt,<br>" þy chalangyng & al þy pleynt, | 12,608<br><br><br><br>12,612<br><br><br>12,616<br><br><br>12,620<br><br><br>12,624<br><br><br>12,628 | " King Arthur<br><br><br><br>forbids you,<br>Lucius, to set<br>foot farther in<br>France,<br>which is his.<br><br>If you claim it<br>he'll fight for<br>it.<br><br>He won it of<br>you;<br><br>and his it shall<br>be while the<br>sun rises in the<br>east.<br>If you claim it,<br>come and fight<br>for it |

<sup>1</sup> *beus.*

<sup>2</sup> & *teld agayn.*

<sup>3</sup> *I satt þe.*

<sup>4</sup> *gretyng.*

<sup>5</sup> *þou.*

<sup>6</sup> *demeyng . . . romeyns.*

<sup>7</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>8</sup> *þorgh þe bihoues it wyn.*



to-morrow,  
and win it if  
you can !”

- . “ & sone assigned<sup>1</sup> wypoute delay,  
 “ Com to morn, & prof<sup>2</sup> þy day, 12,632  
 “ & wyn hit ȝyf þou wyne schal !  
 . “ Or al to lese, or wyne<sup>3</sup> hit al !  
 “ ȝyf þou wilt nought turne a-geyn,  
 “ Al þy dwellyng is in veyn, 12,636  
 “ ffor þou hast lorn, & we haue wonnen,<sup>4</sup>  
 . “ So ferre we haue þy lond ouer ronnen.”<sup>4</sup>

### ¶ Responcio Lucii Inperatoris.

Lucius answers

“ France is  
mine.

If I did lose it,  
I'll win it  
again.”

A Roman  
knight Quyn-  
talyne,  
taunts Wa-  
wayn :

“ Britons are  
but braggers,

in word.  
Their deeds  
arn't worth a  
leek.  
You threaten

all day.

Put it into  
deeds !”

Wawayn cuts

- þenne seyde þemperour to þise þre,  
 “ To turne ageyn, hit schal nought be. 12,640  
 “ ffraunce ys myn, þider wol y go ;  
 “ ffor ȝif y lese hit, me schal be wo ;  
 . “ & ȝif y ha lore hit<sup>5</sup> at vnskyle,  
 “ Y schal hit wyne eft when God<sup>6</sup> wyle.” 12,644  
 þus he seide, for wel he wende<sup>4</sup>  
 þey hadde no force Fraunce to fende.<sup>4</sup>  
 A knyght þer was, hight Quyntalyne,  
 Syb þemperour, & his cosyn, 12,648  
 Contrariouly to Wawayn spak,  
 & vyleynlike he gan hym lak :<sup>7</sup>  
 “ Bretons,” he saide, “ ar bot auaunturs,  
 “ & manace mikel at rebours ; 12,652  
 “ þer bostful wordes ar nought to seke,  
 “ þer dedes ar nought worþ a leke.  
 . “ ȝe manace ay ‘ hit schal ben so ;’  
 . “ ȝour dedes ar noughte þat ȝe do. 12,656  
 . “ Al day bostfully ȝe þrete ;  
 . “ Dop hit in dede ! manace ȝe<sup>8</sup> lete !”  
 Wawayn hym listed, & gram low,<sup>9</sup> [lf. 54, bk., col. 2.]

<sup>1</sup> set. [leaf 74, col. 2.]

<sup>2</sup> proue. <sup>3</sup> haf.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> .I. haf lorn.

<sup>6</sup> saff wyn it whan grace.

<sup>7</sup> vilensly behynd his bak.

<sup>8</sup> do in dede þe manace.

<sup>9</sup> listend him Inouh.



But smertly out his swerd he drow, 12,660 Quyntalyn's  
 & smot his hed of þer al quit, head right off,  
 & bad his felawes horse þem tyt,  
 . And seyde vnto þe Romaynes alle,  
 . " Bretons schul rise, & ʒe schul falle ! 12,664 tells the Ro-  
 . " ʒow were wel bettere at Rome burgh,<sup>1</sup> mans they'd  
 . " þan reyse baner a-geyn Arthurgh !"<sup>1</sup> better go home,  
 þer-wyþ sire Wawayn his hors hent, and rides back  
 & homward alle þre þey went. 12,668 with Geryn  
 and Beofs.

¶ *De probitate nunciorum* Arthury.<sup>2</sup>

þe knyght<sup>3</sup> was frayed, no wonder was,  
 þe Emperour cried " alas ! alas !"

Lucius says

" Slayn þey haue sire Quyntalyn  
 . " Now right here byfore myn eyn ! 12,672

" ʒyf þey a-scape vs alle fro, they mustn't  
 " Merueille<sup>4</sup> may men telle of þo." escape.

Romayns ronne out of paulyons,  
 & hasted fast<sup>5</sup> after þe Bretons. 12,676 The Romans  
 pursue Arthur's  
 messengers ;

Ilkon tok þat þey myght hent,  
 & after þem prykede faste, & went.  
 On þer was þat hadde a stede, and one calls  
 þat byfore alle þe opere ʒede, 12,680 on  
 & cried ful loude, " abyd ! abyd !"

" ʒyf þou dar, turne, & to me ryd !" them to turn  
 and fight.

Sire Geryn herde what he seyde,  
 & turnde hym, & his spere forþ leyde, 12,684 Geryn turns,

& of his gode hors hym cast drives the Ro-  
 man off his  
 horse,

Als fer as þe spere wold last.  
 þen seide Geryn als he lay þore,  
 " þyn hors bar þe ouer faste<sup>6</sup> byfore ; 12,688

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> This heading is two lines lower  
 in the MS.

<sup>3</sup> *courte*.

<sup>4</sup> *mervailly*.

<sup>5</sup> *Suythe*.

<sup>6</sup> *fer*. [leaf 74, back.]



|                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| kills him, and<br>taunts him.                                               | <p>“ ȝit were þe bettere ha ben at þe ost<sup>1</sup><br/>         “ þan fort ha foched þy dep wyþ bost,<sup>1</sup><br/>         . “ &amp; haue holde þe fer o drey,<sup>1</sup><br/>         . “ ffor now þe ouer-þynkeþ þou come so ney.”<sup>1</sup></p>                                                                                                                                           |
| Beofs of Oxford                                                             | <p>¶ Beofs<sup>5</sup> of Oxenforde þen loked bak, 12,693<br/>         &amp; listned how þat Geryn spak,<br/>         . Saw þe Romain ded þer lay,<sup>1</sup><br/>         . &amp; his hors wente forþ o stray;<sup>1</sup> 12,696<br/>         þen þoughte sire Beofs,<sup>2</sup> “y am to blame<br/>         “ But y do til anoþer þe same.”</p>                                                   |
| turns too,<br>spears another<br>Roman through<br>the throat,                | <p>His hors he turnd þen, and abod,<br/>         &amp; til anoþer Romain rod; 12,700<br/>         &amp; wyþ his spere<sup>3</sup> he bar hym yn<br/>         þorow-out þe þrote, byneþe þe chyn.<br/>         Gapyng he lay at erþe al<sup>4</sup> streked<br/>         Als he was wyþ þe launce cheked. 12,704</p>                                                                                    |
| and chaffs him<br>for gaping.                                               | <p>þen seide sire Beofs,<sup>2</sup> for þat he gaped,<sup>5</sup><br/>         “ To þe mete fuer sone hym<sup>6</sup> raped,<br/>         “ But ly now stille þer, ar<sup>7</sup> þou ete,<br/>         “ &amp; ȝif þy felawes þe ouer gete, 12,708<br/> <sup>8</sup> “ Sey, ‘þe messegers wente here forþ god spede,<br/>         . “ ‘ &amp; wip suche musseles he can ȝow fede.’ ”<sup>8</sup></p> |
| Then comes<br>another Roman<br>knight,<br>Marcel, on a very fast<br>horse ; | <p>¶ þen cam anoþer ride faste<sup>9</sup> byforn,<br/>         A noble knyght of Rome born,— 12,712<br/>         Marcell, hit seyþ his name<sup>10</sup> hight,—<br/>         &amp; hadde an hors was ferly lyght;<sup>11</sup><br/>         Of þem alle last horsed he was,<sup>1</sup></p>                                                                                                          |
| and though                                                                  | <p>&amp; passed þe formest a gret pas;<sup>1</sup> 12,716<br/>         And for gret haste, as of chaunce,</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>2</sup> *Beus*.<sup>3</sup> *lance*.<sup>4</sup> *gaspand he fett & lay att*.<sup>5</sup> *þou gapid*.<sup>6</sup> *futt sone þou*. (De tex morsiax  
vous sai je pestre, *Wace*, ii. 168, l.  
12,211.)<sup>7</sup> *lig now stitt ore þat*.<sup>8-8</sup> *to þam may þou þe soþe say*.*þe messengers went bi þis way*.<sup>9</sup> *A noþer com ridand fast*.<sup>10</sup> *Marcell it sais þat he*.<sup>11</sup> *wyght*.



- He hadde furgete at hom his launce. he's forgot  
his lance,  
 He sporede his hors, forþ faste<sup>1</sup> gan schake, [lf. 55.]  
 Wel wende he Wawayn for to ha take, 12,720 he thinks he'll  
take Wawayn  
prisoner.  
 & seyde, "hit were ful gret ferlik<sup>2</sup>  
 " But he broughte Wawayn to þem al quyk."<sup>2</sup>  
 . Wawayn wondred hym ferne<sup>3</sup> fro  
 . þat his hors myght so wel go. 12,724  
 ffor Marcel neyghed Wawayn right hende,  
 . Wawayn to take ful wel he wende;  
 . But his hors com so smertly, But as he  
gallops by,  
 & passed Wawayn fast hym by, 12,728  
 & als he by Wawayn glent,  
 Wawayn had his swerd out hent, Wawayn  
cleaves his  
head down  
to his chest,  
 And clef his heued at o dynt,  
 porow helm, þat at þe breste<sup>4</sup> hit stynt; 12,732  
 His gode armure auailed nought,  
 Wyþ þat strok to<sup>5</sup> þe erþe he sought. and he falls to  
the ground.  
 In his fallynge, seide Wawayn,  
 " Marcel, y rede þou turne a-gayn, 12,736 " Go to hell,"  
says Wawayn,  
" and tell  
Quyntalyn  
that the Bri-  
tons can do  
something  
more than  
threaten."  
 " & go to Quyntalyn to helle,  
 " & on myn half þou hym telle,  
 " þat þe Bretons þat ȝe þus chace,  
 " Wel more con do þan<sup>6</sup> manace. 12,740  
 7. " Sey Quyntalyn, 'we hym by þe grete,  
 " ' & more wol gyue þan we wol hete!' "<sup>7</sup>  
 Now to-gydere þey gonne þem drawe, They kill three  
more Romans;  
 & oper þre þey dide of dawe; 12,744  
 Lenger to iuste myght þey nought stande,  
 But þem defended al wyþdrawande.<sup>8</sup>  
 þe Romainys on alle halue hem<sup>9</sup> went, and though the  
Romans attack  
them on all  
sides,  
 Wip swerd & spere strokes þey<sup>10</sup> lent, 12,748

<sup>1</sup> with sporse he smote þe hors.<sup>2</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>3</sup> hed selcouth fer.<sup>4</sup> þorgh þe helme to þe saditt.<sup>5</sup> with þe drauht. [lf. 74, bk., col. 2.]<sup>6</sup> more do þan þai.<sup>7-7</sup> & more þai gife þan þei hete.bi þe Marceþt Quintelyn .I.  
grete.<sup>8</sup> & were fleand.<sup>9</sup> ilk half þam.<sup>10</sup> suerdes & lances strokes.



they come off  
unharméd.

A nephew of  
Marcel's sees

his uncle lying  
dead,

and rides after  
Arthur's  
messengers.

He raises his  
sword to strike,

but Wawayn  
lets fly at his  
hand, cuts off  
his arm,

and would  
have finished  
him, but that  
the Romans  
crowd on them.  
However, they  
gain the wood  
next Arthur's  
castle.

But neuere for strok þat þey þer tok,<sup>1</sup>  
Of stirop ne sadel out ne schok,<sup>1</sup>  
Ne drowen blod, ne gof þem wounde,<sup>1</sup>  
Ne stopped þem þer wey no stounde.<sup>1</sup> 12,752

¶ þenne had Marcel a neuew  
þat was horsed vntil his prew :  
In his wey Marcel he fond,  
•Liggyng slayn þer<sup>2</sup> on a lond. 12,756

After þe messegers trauersed [he] þe feld ;  
& Wawayn houed, & byheld  
þat he cam so gret a spurne,  
. He had no leyser his hors to turne 12,760

. Vntil he cam among þem alle,  
& of his hand his spere<sup>3</sup> let falle,  
& drow his sword, scharp to byte :<sup>4</sup>  
He wende Wawayn wel to smyte ;<sup>4</sup> 12,764

& as he lifte his sword vp heye,  
At his hand Wawayn let fleye,  
& smot of boþe hand & arm,  
. So þat he dide namore harm. 12,768

Anoþer strok he scholde haue had,  
But wiþ þe Romayns þey were ouerstad,  
So ferly fele after þem schok.

But for al hem,<sup>5</sup> þe wode þey tok, 12,772  
þat was bitwixt hem & Arthures hold,  
þe newe castel y lang er told.<sup>6</sup>

¶ Hic misit Arthurus in obuiam sex mille armatos.

Arthur sends  
out 6,000 men  
to help his  
messengers.

Arthur our kyng, þat was at home,  
. A Wondred þe messegers nought ne come ; 12,776  
Sex þousand sent he for drede,  
To socoure þeym ȝyf þey had nede.

<sup>1</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>2</sup> *Slayn he lay.*

<sup>3</sup> *lance.*

<sup>4</sup> P. transposes these lines.

<sup>5</sup> *þat alle gate.*

<sup>6</sup> *.I. ore of told. (p. 438, l. 12,521).*



- pey come & passed to þe wodes side,  
 & þere wyþstode<sup>1</sup> for to abyde. 12,780  
 After þer messegers þey gaf þer tent, [lf. 55, col. 2.]  
 . ȝyf þey of hem had any glent ;  
 þey seye gret folk in partyes sprede,  
 þat folewede þre þat to þe wode ȝede. 12,784  
 . þen perceyued knyghtes & squiers  
 . þat þo þre were messegers  
 . þat þey come fore, & after sought.  
 . Pryuely þey stode, auised þer þought, 12,788  
 Siþen þey gaue a cri ful gret,  
 At ones vpon þe Romayns þei schet,  
 . Al vnwarned in þer vys.  
 þenne sprad þe Romayns in partis ; 12,792  
 Somme þat fledde were ouer-taken,  
 & somme prisoned, & halden<sup>2</sup> waken,  
 Somme slayn & beten doun,  
 . fful fewe were leten to<sup>3</sup> raunsoun ; 12,796  
 . Wip mikel wo any ascaped,<sup>4</sup>  
 . þat he ne was fruscht & al to-fraped.<sup>4</sup>
- The 6,000 see  
 the Romans  
 pursuing the  
 three mes-  
 sengers ;  
  
 they shout,  
 dash on the  
 Romans un-  
 awares,  
  
 rout,  
 take,  
 and kill them,  
  
 so that very  
 few escape.

### ¶ Petreus, Romanorum tribunus.

- A noble man was þere of Rome,  
 Of alle þer knyghtes he bar þe blome, 12,800  
 Petreus<sup>5</sup> his name hight,  
 . A worthi man, & mykel of myght ;  
 . What for his prowess<sup>6</sup> & god knyght,  
 Ten þousand men he ladde in fyght.<sup>7</sup> 12,804  
 He herde of þe Bretons assault,  
 . & how þer men were att defaut ;
- A noble Ro-  
 man, Petreus,  
  
 hears of the  
 Britons' as-  
 sault,

<sup>1</sup> stode. [leaf 75.]

<sup>2</sup> prisonde holden.

<sup>3</sup> full was giffen for.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> Peredur, MS. du Roi, 27 ; Pet-

reus, MS. du Roi. 73, Cangé ;

Wace, ii. 172, l. 12,310, and note.

<sup>6</sup> for richesse.

<sup>7</sup> had þorh right.



takes 10,000  
men,

and drives  
the Britons  
back to their  
wood.

There they  
hold their own,  
though Petreus  
tries to force  
them out.

“ Smertly wyþ ten þousand scheldes  
 “ To sokere hem go we to<sup>1</sup> þe feldes.” 12,808  
 Wyþ þo ten þousand þat he brought,  
 Vpon þe Bretons harde he sought,  
 þat maugre þeires he dide þem go  
 In to þe wode þer þey come fro ; 12,812  
 O þe playne myghte þey holde no place,<sup>2</sup>  
 þat to þe wode he gan þem chace ;<sup>2</sup>  
 & when þey were in wode teld,  
 Ageyn Petron þer owen þey held. 12,816  
 Petrens often on þem gan pres,<sup>3</sup>  
 But mikel of his folk he les,<sup>3</sup>  
 ffor þe Bretons stirt out & slow,  
 . & eft in to þe wode þem drow ; 12,820  
 By þe wodes side in a busch<sup>4</sup>  
 Was many a stour & many a frusch.<sup>5</sup>

¶ *Iterum misit Arthurus quinque mille armatos.*

Arthur  
wonders what  
has become of  
his messengers

and his 6,000  
men.

He sends Sir  
Ider and 5,000  
more men to  
see.

Ider and his  
men

hear a noise in  
the wood,

A rthur merueilled ferly strong  
 þat þe messegers dwelled so long, 12,824  
 & what þem letted, & þorow wham,<sup>6</sup>  
 þat þe sex þousand hom ne cam.<sup>7</sup>  
 þen cald he swyþe<sup>8</sup> sire Ider  
 þat was a doughti bachelor : 12,828  
 “ Tak fyf þousand,<sup>9</sup> & smartly fare,  
 “ þe sex þousand sekeþ, wher þey are.”  
 Sire Ider dide as Arthur bad,  
 . & for his wendyng fele were glad. 12,832  
 . Als Ider & his folk forþ ferde,  
 Gret noise vnder a wode þey herde ;

<sup>1</sup> *socoured þer men in.*

<sup>2</sup> *P. leaves out these lines.*

<sup>3</sup> *presse . . . lesse.*

<sup>4</sup> *brusse.*

<sup>5</sup> *many fight & many frusse.*

<sup>6</sup> *or for whome.* [leaf 75, col. 2.]

<sup>7</sup> *home ne come.*

<sup>8</sup> *he cald Nu sonne.* (Ider le fil  
Nut apela, *Wace*, ii. 173, l. 12,336.)

<sup>9</sup> *Set mil, Wace*, l. 12,337.



- . pey hied þem þanne, & wel go[d]<sup>1</sup> pas,  
 . pey dredde þem sore of som mys cas.<sup>2</sup> 12,836  
 þen say Ider þat sire Wawayn see Wawayn,  
 & Geryn, & Beof,<sup>3</sup> foughte oþer a-geyn. Geryn, and  
 In to þe most pres Ider þen sprong, rush, with a  
 & gaf a cri, þe wode al rong. 12,840 shout, to their  
 þanne were þe Bretons alle abouen, help,  
 þe Romainys route bakward schouen: and shove the  
 When Ider had met wyþ þe Romainys route, [lf. 55, bk., col. 1.]  
 . Of dynt ne deþ<sup>4</sup> had he no doute; 12,844 The Britons  
 . Lytel þey þoughte hem self to saue,<sup>5</sup> fight fearlessly,  
 . So fayn þey wolde þe werre haue; <sup>5</sup>  
 þe Romainys þey ouer ryden & ronne, and ride over  
 & þer gode stedes wonne; 12,848 the Romans.  
 . & þe Romainys atter power<sup>5</sup>  
 . Stryken & stoden ageyns Ider; <sup>5</sup>  
 Manye were on boþe partys  
 Slayn þer for to wyne pris. 12,852 Many are slain  
 on both sides.

- P**etreus, he þat y of tolde, Petreus  
 . þe noble Romain fers & <sup>6</sup> bolde,  
 He mayntende þer<sup>7</sup> bataille,  
 & sette his folk wysly<sup>8</sup> to assaille; 12,856 commands the  
 Wel coupe he stande, wel coupe he scurne,<sup>5</sup> Romans well;  
 & faire wyþdrawe hym, & eft retorne.<sup>5</sup> knows when  
 Bytwyxt þem<sup>9</sup> were many chaces, to stand, when  
 ffele turnynges & fele wanlaces: 12,860 to retire, and  
 þat hardy was, he fond hardy; charge again.  
 Who so coupe iuste, he fond redy;  
 þat wel coupe fighte, þer fond his fere; <sup>5</sup>  
 . þat nought ne coupe, þer myght he lere.<sup>5</sup> 12,864 There's plenty  
 of fighting of  
 all kinds for  
 those who  
 want it.

<sup>1</sup> a full gode.

<sup>2</sup> dred sore þer was som kas.

<sup>3</sup> beus.

<sup>4</sup> no dede.

<sup>5</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>6</sup> riche romeyn & so.

<sup>7</sup> was mayntenance.

<sup>8</sup> his folk he set right.

<sup>9</sup> with him & þam.



But the Britons keep no formation ; they think only of doing separately brave

deeds of arms.

Petreus, on the other hand, with his best men,

helps his others whenever they need it,

and rallies his fugitives.

Beofs sees how well Petreus manages, and that he must be killed if the Britons are to be saved

from their disordered array.

So Beofs calls the best British

Al þe Bretons, oft astray þey rod,  
 Non held to-gydere, ne oþer abod.  
<sup>1</sup> ffor prowesse þat þey ʒernde al day,  
 þer-fore þey nere of non array ; 12,868  
 þey nadde warde how þat þey ʒede,  
 But þat prowesse wer do of armes dede.<sup>1</sup>  
 ¶ Petreus bygan auise hym<sup>2</sup> more,  
 Hys beste men a-boute hym wore, 12,872  
 He coupe in werre wel stonde in stour,  
 & at his nede gete<sup>3</sup> hym socour ;  
 fful wel he halp þere help failed,<sup>4</sup>  
 & wel hym rescowed when he was sailed ;<sup>4</sup> 12,876  
 God tent til<sup>5</sup> al his men he tok,  
 . When þey astraied, whideward<sup>6</sup> þey schok,  
 & alle relyed þem wel ageyn,  
 . þat ilkon wyste his certeyn. 12,880

Beofs<sup>7</sup> of Oxenforde perceiued wel  
 þe comynges of Petron ilka del,  
 þat wyþoute los schold<sup>8</sup> þey nought go  
 But ʒyf þey mighte Petron slo,— 12,884  
 . Sle, or take in pleyn[e] feld,—  
 ffor his confort þe Romainys<sup>9</sup> vp held.  
 Hider & þider þe Bretons went,  
 Al out of array, & were ney schent. 12,888  
 þe beste barons<sup>10</sup> of þem alle,  
 Beofs<sup>7</sup> to consail gon þey[m]<sup>11</sup> calle :

<sup>1-1</sup> For these four lines P. has four at the bottom of the page in a fresh hand (or with a fresh pen), and then two over leaf in the same hand and with the old pen :—

& to do som dede þat day.  
 þerfor þe rode on þat aray.  
 þei ne rouht how þei ʒede.  
 bot þat þei did of armes dede.  
 to do som þei ʒerned aʒ day. [lf. 75.  
 þerfor þei rode at non aray. back.]

<sup>2</sup> was auised.

<sup>3</sup> at nede seke.

<sup>4</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>5</sup> on.

<sup>6</sup> where þei straied whidire.

<sup>7</sup> Beus.

<sup>8</sup> losse suld.

<sup>9</sup> MS. Bretons. P. comyng þe romeyns.

<sup>10</sup> bretons.

<sup>11</sup> See l. 12,896. P. gon þam.



|                                                          |                          |                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| ¶ " Lōrdes," he seyde, "spekeþ wyþ me,                   |                          | lords together,     |
| " þo þat til Arthur wol leaute.                          | 12,892                   | and says            |
| " Bygonne we haue a cuntek,                              |                          | " We've got         |
| " But Arthur wot nought of þis chek ;                    |                          | into this con-      |
| " Wypoute his wityng is þis tyrpeyl,                     |                          | test without        |
| " per-fore y cald ȝow to conseil ;                       | 12,896                   | Arthur's            |
| " ȝyf hit falle wel, wel schal vs be ;                   |                          | knowledge.          |
| " ȝyf hit ne do, we gete maugre.                         |                          |                     |
| " But ȝyf we in þys firste stour                         |                          | It's our first ;    |
| " Haue þe pris, <sup>1</sup> & bere þe flour,            | 13,000                   | and if we don't     |
| " I telle vs schent, ilka man,                           |                          | win it we're        |
| " & mikel maugre þat we hit gan. <sup>2</sup>            |                          | done for.           |
| " Hit was ȝour conseil as wel as oures,                  |                          | You wanted to       |
| " ȝe preied vs to bygynne þyse stoures :                 | 13,004                   | fight.              |
| " þe bettere per-fore peyne ȝow to do                    |                          | Mind, then ;        |
| " þyng þat y schal conseil to ;                          |                          |                     |
| " ffonde we now euer-ilkon                               | [leaf 55, back, col. 2.] | we <i>must</i> take |
| " ffort acombrey þylke <sup>3</sup> Petron ;             | 13,008                   | that Petreus,       |
| " Quik or ded, vs bos <sup>4</sup> hym haue,             |                          | alive or dead,      |
| " ȝyf [we] þis <sup>5</sup> day our folk schul saue ;    |                          |                     |
| " & elles schul we nere gon heþen,                       |                          | or <i>we</i> shall  |
| " þat we ne schul myl <sup>6</sup> be byneþen.           | 13,012                   | never go hence      |
| " per-for, lordynges, alle to-gyder                      |                          | alive.              |
| " ffolewes whar y turne, or whider,                      |                          | All of you,         |
| " & helpeþ wel when ȝe se nede :                         |                          | follow me, and      |
| " ȝyf we gete hym, ful wel we spede."                    | 13,016                   | help when           |
| Alle þey seide, " what so bitydes,                       |                          | I want you to."     |
| " We schul þe folewe wher <sup>7</sup> þou rydes ;       |                          | They all agree      |
| " Go we þanne, þat God vs a-vaille, <sup>8</sup>         |                          | to do so.           |
| " So þat we of hym ne faille." <sup>9</sup>              | 13,020                   |                     |
| Beofs <sup>9</sup> aspied & saw hym <sup>10</sup> sone : |                          | And Beofs           |
| " I se Petron ! make ȝow al bone !"                      |                          | spurs after         |
|                                                          |                          | Petreus, the        |

<sup>1</sup> *haf þe gre.*

<sup>2</sup> *we it began.*

<sup>3</sup> *for to slo ȝon ilk.*

<sup>4</sup> *bus.*

<sup>5</sup> *If we to.*

<sup>6</sup> *satt mykett.*

<sup>7</sup> *satt ride þat way.* [lf. 75, bk., cl. 2.]

<sup>8</sup> P. leaves out these lines.

<sup>9</sup> *Beus.*

<sup>10</sup> *futt.*



|                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| British lords<br>following him.                                                                                                                                                             | Beofs <sup>1</sup> smot þe hors wyþ þe spores,<br>& þey after, ouer feld & fores; <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 13,024                     |
| Beofs rides up<br>to Petreus,                                                                                                                                                               | Wilde he nere stynte ne ses<br>Vntil he cam in to alle þe pres<br>per Petron was, & til hym rod,<br>. Hors til hors þat þey bistrod;<br>Til hym ful faste Beofs <sup>3</sup> allied,<br>. & on hys felawes wel hym affied.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 13,028                     |
| seizes him by<br>the neck; and<br>down they both<br>fall.<br>Beofs holds<br>Petreus stone-<br>still.                                                                                        | ¶ Beof <sup>1</sup> by þe nekke Petron hent,<br>& doun til erthe boþe þey went;<br>Beof <sup>1</sup> fel doun al by hys wylle,<br>& held Petron al ston[e] <sup>4</sup> stille;<br>Beof <sup>1</sup> dide þere a ful gret wyle,<br>. & putte hym self in gret perile.                                                                                                                                                                      | 13,032<br>13,036           |
| Petreus<br>struggles, but<br>Beofs is tough,<br>and the Britons<br>stop the Ro-<br>mans from<br>rescuing<br>Petreus.<br>A fierce fight<br>with spears,<br>and then with<br>swords, follows. | Beofs held sore, & Petron drow; <sup>5</sup><br>Petron had go, nad Beofs be tow. <sup>6</sup><br>þe Romainys Petron wilde rescouse, <sup>7</sup><br><sup>8</sup> But Bretons a-geyn þem faste gan brouse,<br>Wyþ scharpe speres to-gidere sett, <sup>8</sup><br>& al to-frusched þat þey wip <sup>9</sup> mett:                                                                                                                            | 13,041                     |
| Helms are<br>pierced, shields<br>cloven,<br>hauberks<br>stript of mail,<br>men slain.                                                                                                       | <sup>10</sup> When speres myghte namore serue,<br>per swerdes drowe, ful faste to kerue;<br>Wyþ hardy herte ilk oper on hew,<br>In armes hente, of sadeles þrew,<br>Helmes bowed, & þorow were steke,<br>Scheldes clef, & swerdes breke,<br>Hauberks ryuen & al fur-mailed,<br>. Stedes slayn, stumbled & failled,<br>Men were slayn, & feld to grounde,<br>. & manye cast þat hadde no wounde;<br>. So þykke þey were to-gydere in þrong, | 13,044<br>13,048<br>13,052 |

<sup>1</sup> *Beus.*<sup>2</sup> *fors* (? not A.-Sax. *for*, way; but *fur*, *furh*, E.-Engl. *fore*, furrow: Stratmann's Dict., p. 228).<sup>3</sup> *Beus titt him fast was.*<sup>4</sup> *stone.*<sup>5</sup> *P. leaves out this line.*<sup>6</sup> *wild go but Beus was touh.*<sup>7</sup> *rescouh.*<sup>8-8</sup> *þe bretons ageyn þam fast sette.*<sup>9</sup> *with scharp lances togider mette.*<sup>10</sup> The Petyt MS. leaves out the lines from here to l. 13,058; and then puts lines 13,061-62, before lines 13,059-60.



- . Ilk oþer wroþ, ilk oþer swong,  
 . & ilk oþer of sadeles wrast,  
 . & vnder ho[r]se fet wer cast; 13,056 They twist  
 Non knew oþer, þey were so ney, one another  
 But by þer speche or by þer cry: out of their  
 Bretons cried " <sup>1</sup>kyng Arthour," saddles.  
 & Romainys, " Lucius <sup>1</sup> Emperour." 13,060 The Britons  
 þe Bretons faste on þem abated, cry " Arthur;"  
 & þe Romainys ful sore þem hated; the Romans  
 . þer coupe non knowe <sup>2</sup> for certeyn 13,064 " Lucius."  
 . Whilk was Breton, whilk was Romeyn, By speech alone  
 . But by þer speche þat þey spak, is Briton  
 . Or any out of þe pres ought <sup>3</sup> brak. known from  
 ffayn wolde Wawayn Petron haue, Roman.  
 . & Beofs <sup>4</sup> wold þey al-gate saue; 13,068 Wawayn  
 He brak in to þe <sup>5</sup> mykel pres, charges into  
 To smyte sore wold he nought ses; the press to  
 On alle sides he smot aboute, <sup>6</sup> secure Petreus,  
 & made þeym rounn <sup>7</sup> þorow-out þe route; <sup>6</sup> 13,072 and slays all in  
 Was þer non stod in his weye, <sup>6</sup> [leaf 56.] his way.  
 þat his dynt ne dide hym deye. <sup>6</sup>  
 Sire Ider on þat oþer <sup>8</sup> syde, Ider and  
 ffor Geryn durste no Romain byde; <sup>9</sup> 13,076 Geryn smite so  
 Ilk on for oþer bolded here hert, that  
 . & smyten strokes so grete & <sup>10</sup> smert  
 þat no Romain durst bide þer dynt,  
 . But fer on bak dide þem stynt; 13,080 no Roman  
 þen was Petron alle a-glyft. dares abide  
 þe Bretons vp sire Beofs <sup>11</sup> lyft, them.  
 & horsed hym ful wel a-geyn, The Britons  
 & toke Petron, þe maister Romain; 1,3084 rescue Beofs,  
 and take  
 prisoner

<sup>1</sup> P. inserts þe here.<sup>2</sup> Non kouth knaw.<sup>3</sup> ony out of þe pres.<sup>4</sup> Beus. <sup>5</sup> tuo þer.<sup>6</sup> P. leaves out these lines.<sup>7</sup> for roume; or roun, room, space.<sup>8</sup> on þe toþer side.<sup>9</sup> & Gerin durst non abide.<sup>10</sup> & þer strokes were so.<sup>11</sup> vp Beus.



|                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| to their wood.                                                            | porow al þe pres þey hym led, <sup>1</sup><br>& wiþ hym vntil wode þey fled, <sup>1</sup><br>& dide hym þer he mighte be syker,<br>& eft al newe bygonne to <sup>2</sup> byker.                                                      | 13,088                  |
| The fight begins again, but the Romans                                    | But þen had þey no gouernour<br>pat coupe meyntene þem in stour,                                                                                                                                                                     | Vassalacio<br>Brytonum. |
| are like a barge without a steerer.                                       | Namore þan schip or barge <sup>3</sup> can,<br>pere hym wanteþ a steris <sup>4</sup> man.                                                                                                                                            | 13,092                  |
| The Britons rout the Romans,                                              | ¶ penne broched þe Bretons among þem alle,<br>Man & hors <sup>5</sup> þey dide doun falle;<br>pat were fallen, þey ouer schok;                                                                                                       |                         |
| capture, slay, and spoil them;                                            | & þo þat fledde, <sup>6</sup> þey ouer-tok;<br>Somme þey slowe, & somme þey held,<br>& somme þey spoyled <sup>7</sup> y þe feld;<br>. Al were slayn þe moste frape, <sup>8</sup><br>. ffayn wer þey þat myghte a-scape. <sup>9</sup> | 13,096<br>13,100        |
| then turn back to the wood, and take Petreus and the prisoners to Arthur. | þen turnde a-geyn alle þe Bretons,<br>& come to wode to þer prisons,<br>& led <sup>10</sup> þem alle wiþ sire Petron,<br>& presented Arthur wiþ ilkon.                                                                               | 13,104                  |
| Arthur thanks them all,                                                   | þen þanked he his messegers,<br>& alle þe opere þat were þer pers,<br>& seide hem, “zyf hit may be wonne, <sup>11</sup><br>“ þe game þat we haue by-gonne, <sup>12</sup>                                                             | 13,108                  |
| and promises them rewards if he wins his battle.                          | “ He wolde <sup>13</sup> amende þer rente & fe,<br>. “ zyf þat tyme myghte bitide or <sup>14</sup> be.”                                                                                                                              |                         |

<sup>1</sup> P. transposes these lines. [lf. 76.]<sup>2</sup> new bigan þe.<sup>3</sup> þe schip.<sup>4</sup> þore it failes steris.<sup>5</sup> many hors.<sup>6</sup> þe fleand.<sup>7</sup> spoiled.<sup>8</sup> maste frap.<sup>9</sup> fo þei were þat myght it scap.<sup>10</sup> laid.<sup>11</sup> if it be wonnen.<sup>12</sup> þe werre þat was begonnen.<sup>13</sup> suld.<sup>14</sup> mot tide.







LONDON: Printed by EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.

For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

[11422.—750.—5/87.]



C A T A L O G U E  
OF  
ENGLISH, SCOTCH, AND IRISH RECORD  
PUBLICATIONS,  
REPORTS OF THE HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS  
COMMISSION,  
AND  
ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF  
THE PUBLIC RECORDS,

Printed for  
HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,

And to be purchased,

Either directly or through any Bookseller, from  
EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C., or  
ADAM AND CHARLES BLACK, 6, NORTH BRIDGE, EDINBURGH; or  
HODGES, FIGGIS, & Co., 104, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.



---

## CONTENTS.

---

|                                                                                 |   |   |   |   |   |   |           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----------|
| CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.                                                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | Page<br>3 |
| CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE<br>MIDDLE AGES | - | - | - | - | - | - | 9         |
| PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.                                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | 26        |
| WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY                                             | - | - | - | - | - | - | 29        |
| HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION                                               | - | - | - | - | - | - | 31        |
| REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS                              | - | - | - | - | - | - | 35        |

---

|                            |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS | - | - | - | - | - | - | 39 |
| IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS  | - | - | - | - | - | - | 40 |

---



# ENGLAND.

---

## CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

---

[IMPERIAL 8vo., cloth. *Price 15s. each Volume or Part.*]

---

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the want of proper Calendars and Indexes." Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few Persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls:—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I.  
*Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office,  
2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. (Vols. I. and II.), and by MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN, (Vols. III.-XII.). 1856-1872.

Vol. I.—1547-1580.

Vol. II.—1581-1590.

Vol. III.—1591-1594.

Vol. IV.—1595-1597.

Vol. V.—1598-1601.

Vol. VI.—1601-1603, with  
Addenda, 1547-1565.

Vol. VII.—Addenda, 1566-1579.

Vol. VIII.—1603-1610.

Vol. IX.—1611-1618.

Vol. X.—1619-1623.

Vol. XI.—1623-1625, with Addenda,  
1603-1625.

Vol. XII.—Addenda, 1580-1625.

These Calendars render accessible to investigation a large and important mass of historical materials. The Northern Rebellion of 1566-67; the plots of the Catholic fugitives in the Low Countries; numerous designs against Queen Elizabeth and in favour of a Catholic succession; the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward



Coke; the rise of the Duke of Buckingham, &c., and numerous other subjects, few of which have been previously known.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I.-XII.); *by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vol. XIII.); and *by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. XIV.-XVII., 1858-1882.

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Vol. I.—1625-1626.   | Vol. X.—1636-1637.    |
| Vol. II.—1627-1628.  | Vol. XI.—1637.        |
| Vol. III.—1628-1629. | Vol. XII.—1637-1638.  |
| Vol. IV.—1629-1631.  | Vol. XIII.—1638-1639. |
| Vol. V.—1631-1633.   | Vol. XIV.—1639.       |
| Vol. VI.—1633-1634.  | Vol. XV.—1639-1640.   |
| Vol. VII.—1634-1635. | Vol. XVI.—1640.       |
| Vol. VIII.—1635.     | Vol. XVII.—1640-41.   |
| Vol. IX.—1635-1636.  | Vol. XVIII.—1641-43.  |

This Calendar presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers relative to the history of the period to which it refers, many hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1875-1885.

|                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Vol. I.—1649-1649.  | Vol. VIII.—1655.      |
| Vol. II.—1650.      | Vol. IX.—1655-1656.   |
| Vol. III.—1651.     | Vol. X.—1656-1657.    |
| Vol. IV.—1651-1652. | Vol. XI.—1657-1658.   |
| Vol. V.—1652-1653.  | Vol. XII.—1658-1659.  |
| Vol. VI.—1653-1654. | Vol. XIII.—1659-1660. |
| Vol. VII.—1654.     |                       |

This Calendar is in continuation of those during the reigns from Edward VI. to Charles I., and contains a mass of new information.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860-1866.

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Vol. I.—1660-1661.   | Vol. V.—1665-1666.  |
| Vol. II.—1661-1662.  | Vol. VI.—1666-1667. |
| Vol. III.—1663-1664. | Vol. VII.—1667.     |
| Vol. IV.—1664-1665.  |                     |

CALENDAR OF HOME OFFICE PAPERS OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1878-1879. Vol. III. *Edited by* RICHARD ARTHUR ROBERTS, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1881.

|                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Vol. I.—1760 (25 Oct.)-1765. | Vol. III.—1770-1772. |
| Vol. II.—1766-1769.          |                      |

These are the first three volumes of the modern series of Domestic Papers, commencing with the accession of George III.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

- Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509-1589.  
 Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589-1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543-1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

These volumes relate to Scotland, between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568-1587.



CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland); *continued by* GUSTAVUS FREDERICK HANDCOCK, Esq. 1875-1886.

Vol. I.—1171-1251.

Vol. II.—1252-1284.

Vol. III.—1285-1292.

Vol. IV.—1293-1301.

Vol. V.—1302-1307.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860-1885.

Vol. I.—1509-1573.

Vol. II.—1574-1585.

Vol. III.—1586-1588.

Vol. IV.—1588-1592.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1872-1880.

Vol. I.—1603-1606.

Vol. II.—1606-1608.

Vol. III.—1608-1610.

Vol. IV.—1611-1614.

Vol. V.—1615-1625.

This series is in continuation of the Irish State Papers commencing with the reign of Henry VIII.; but for the reign of James I., the Papers are not confined to those in the Public Record Office, London.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860-1884.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574-1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513-1616.

Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617-1621.

Vol. IV.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1622-1624.

Vol. V.—America and West Indies, 1661-1668.

Vol. VI.—East Indies, 1625-1629.

These volumes include an analysis of early Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London (Vols. I.-IV.); and *by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq., (Vols. V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX.) 1862-1886.

Vol. I.—1509-1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515-1518.

Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519-1523.

Vol. IV.—Introduction.

Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524-1526.

Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526-1528.

Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529-1530.

Vol. V.—1531-1532.

Vol. VI.—1533.

Vol. VII.—1534.

Vol. VIII.—1535, to July.

Vol. IX.—1535, Aug. to Dec.

Vol. X.—1536, Jan. to June.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547-1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.



CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553-1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, &c. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest. The Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merit a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. These volumes treat only of the relations of England with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, (Vols. I.-VII.), and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law, (Vols. VIII.-XI.) 1863-1880.

|                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Vol. I.—1558-1559.   | Vol. VII.—1564-1565.  |
| Vol. II.—1559-1560.  | Vol. VIII.—1566-1568. |
| Vol. III.—1560-1561. | Vol. IX.—1569-1571.   |
| Vol. IV.—1561-1562.  | Vol. X.—1572-1574.    |
| Vol. V.—1562.        | Vol. XI.—1575-1577.   |
| Vol. VI.—1563.       |                       |

These volumes contain a Calendar of the Foreign Correspondence during the early portion of the reign of Elizabeth. They illustrate not only the external but also the domestic affairs of Foreign Countries during that period.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868-1883.

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Vol. I.—1557-1696.   | Vol. IV.—1708-1714. |
| Vol. II.—1697-1702.  | Vol. V.—1714-1719.  |
| Vol. III.—1702-1707. |                     |

The above Papers connected with the affairs of the Treasury comprise petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c. They illustrate civil and military events, finance, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867-1873.

|                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Vol. I.—1515-1574.   | Vol. V.—Book of Howth; Miscellaneous. |
| Vol. II.—1575-1588.  | Vol. VI.—1603-1624.                   |
| Vol. III.—1589-1600. |                                       |
| Vol. IV.—1601-1603.  |                                       |

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland, in the Lambeth Library, are unique and of great importance to all students of Irish history.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH 1862-1868.

|                                    |
|------------------------------------|
| Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485-1509.       |
| Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509-1525.     |
| Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II. |

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katherine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.



CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. 1873-1886.

Vol. III., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1525-1526.

Vol. III., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1527-1529.

Vol. IV., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1529-1530.

Vol. IV., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1531-1533.

Vol. IV., Part 2.—*continued*.—Hen. VIII.—1531-1533.

Vol. V., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1534-1536.

Upon the death of Mr. Bergenroth, Don Pascual de Gayangos was appointed to continue the Calendar of the Spanish State Papers. He has pursued a similar plan to that of his predecessor, but has been able to add much valuable matter from Brussels and Vienna, with which Mr. Bergeuroth was unacquainted.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864-1884.

Vol. I.—1202-1509.

Vol. II.—1509-1519.

Vol. III.—1520-1526.

Vol. IV.—1527-1533.

Vol. V.—1534-1554.

Vol. VI., Part I.—1555-1556.

Vol. VI., Part II.—1556-1557.

Vol. VI., Part III.—1557-1558.

Mr. Rawdon Brown's researches have brought to light a number of valuable documents relating to various periods of English history; his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FÆDERA. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.—Edw. III., 1066-1377. Vol. II.—Ric. II.—Chas. II. 1377-1654. Vol. III., Appendix and Index. 1869-1885.

The "Fædera," or "Rymer's Fædera," is a collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "Fædera" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price* 2s. 6d.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price* 2s. 6d.



*In the Press.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. Vol. VII.—1559, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. Vol. V., Part 2.—1537, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. XIV.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. V.—1592-1594.

*In Progress.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. VII.—America and West Indies, 1669, &c. Vol. VIII.—East Indies, 1630, &c.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. Vol. VI.—1720, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. Vol. XI.—1536.



## THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

---

[ROYAL 8vo. half-bound. Price 10s. each Volume or Part.]

---

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

- 
1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.

This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.



3. LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. I.—*La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei* II.—*Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris*. III.—*Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit*. Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., probably written in 1245, on the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA. Vol. I.—*Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ*. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. II.—*De Adventu Minorum*; re-edited, with additions. *Chronicle of the Grey Friars. The ancient English version of the Rule of St. Francis. Abbreviatio Statutorum, 1451, &c.* Edited by RICHARD HOWLETT, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1858, 1882.

The first volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It was the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed. The second volume contains materials found, since the first volume was published, among the MSS. of Sir Charles Isham, and in various libraries.

5. FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. Edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written, the disputes of the schoolmen had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The work gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true; and the chronicle reflects the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.



7. *JOHANNIS CABGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.* Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three parts, each having a separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, from the accession of Henry I. in 1100, to 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world. Capgrave was borne in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for which period his work is of some value.

8. *HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS*, by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. Edited by CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. *EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS) : Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum.* Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858-1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. *MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH : Bernardi Andreae Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia.* Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest are given in an appendix.

11. *MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V.* Edited by CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.



12. *MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati.* Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859-1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the 12th, 13th, 14th, and early part of the 15th centuries. The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the 14th century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the 12th, 13th, and early part of the 14th centuries.

13. *CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES.* *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and comes down to 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the Kingdom, not to be elsewhere obtained. Some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. *A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII.* Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. *The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON.* *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiæ*."

16. *BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA; 449-1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Achiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ.* *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. *BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales.* *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "*The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales*," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.



18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. 1399-1404. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in 447, and come down to 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout, though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V., VI., and VII. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861-1877.

These volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.



The *Topographia Hibernica* (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in 1183, the second in 1185-6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the *Topographia* of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* was written about 1188 and may be regarded rather as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history. Vol. VI. contains the *Itinerarium Kambriæ* et *Descriptio Kambriæ*: and Vol. VII., the lives of S. Remigius and S. Hugh.

22. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.

These letters and papers are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Dépôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and other provinces of France acquired by Henry V. Here may be traced, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared for its final overthrow.

23. THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to 1154, is justly the boast of England; no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.

The Papers are derived from the MSS. in Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from them is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in



date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066-1200. Vol. III.; 1200-1327. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862-1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which original portions are distinguished from mere compilations. If possible, the sources are indicated from which compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III. Vol. I., 1216-1235. Vol. II., 1236-1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862-1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272-1381: Vol. II., 1381-1422. 2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1307. 3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELowe ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1296; 1307-1324; 1392-1406. 4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMA WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIAE PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA; Vol. I., 793-1290: Vol. II., 1290-1349: Vol. III., 1349-1411. 5. JOHANNIS AMUNDESHAM, MONACHI MONASTERII S. ALBANI, UT VIDETUR, ANNALES; Vols. I. and II. 6. REGISTRA QUORUNDAM ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, QUI SÆCULO XV<sup>mo</sup> FLORUERE; Vol. I., REGISTRUM ABBATIAE JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE, ABBATIS MONASTERII SANCTI ALBANI, ITERUM SUSCEPTÆ; ROBERTO BLAKENEY, CAPELLANO, QUONDAM ADSRIPTUM: Vol. II., REGISTRA JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE, WILLELMI ALBON, ET WILLELMI WALINGFORDE, ABBATUM MONASTERII SANCTI ALBANI, CUM APPENDICE, CONTINENTE QUASDAM EPISTOLAS, A JOHANNE WHETHAMSTEDE CONSCRIPTAS. 7. YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ A THOMA WALSINGHAM, QUONDAM MONACHO MONASTERII S. ALBANI, CONSCRIPTUM. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1876.

In the first two volumes is a History of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans, from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.



In the 3rd volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, who lived in the reign of Edward I., from the Cotton MS. Faustina B. IX. in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219-231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cotton MS. Claudius E. III. fols. 306-331 : an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol, 1291-1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., also attributed to William Rishanger, but on no sufficient ground : a short Chronicle of English History, 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : a short Chronicle Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi, Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand : and fragments of three Chronicles of English History, 1285 to 1307.

In the 4th volume is a Chronicle of English History, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : Annals of Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, and a continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henry de Blanford, both from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : a full Chronicle of English History, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge ; and an account of the Benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the 15th century from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The 5th, 6th, and 7th volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum : with a Continuation, from the closing pages of Parker MS. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The 8th and 9th volumes, in continuation of the Annals, contain a Chronicle, probably by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The 10th and 11th volumes relate especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbots Whethamstede, Albon, and Wallingford, and may be considered as a memorial of the chief historical and domestic events during those periods.

The 12th volume contains a compendious History of England to the reign of Henry V., and of Normandy in early times, also by Thomas Walsingham, and dedicated to Henry V. The compiler has often substituted other authorities in place of those consulted in the preparation of his larger work.

29. *CHRONICON ABBATIE EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMIE ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418. Edited by the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.*

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. *RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. I., 447-871. Vol. II., 872-1066. Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863-1869.*

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355-1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sudbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Britannia*, in 1747.

31. *YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 20-21, 21-22, 30-31, 32-33, and 33-35 Edw. I.; and 11-12 Edw. III. Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-*



at-Law. Years 12-13, 13-14 Edward III. · *Edited and translated by* LUKE OWEN PIKE, Esq., M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1886.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of Cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of attention on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY 1449-1450. —Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conférences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in 1450. Commencing with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ending with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The period embraced is less than two years.

33. HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863-1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckham was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre, and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge,* 1864-1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting



not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. *ANNALES MONASTICI*. Vol. I.:—*Annales de Margan*, 1066–1232; *Annales de Theokesberia*, 1066–1263; *Annales de Burton*, 1004–1263. Vol. II.:—*Annales Monasterii de Wintonia*. 519–1277; *Annales Monasterii de Waverleia*, 1–1291. Vol. III.:—*Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia*, 1–1297. *Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia*, 1042–1432. Vol. IV.:—*Annales Monasterii de Oseneia*, 1016–1347; *Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes*, 1066–1289; *Annales Prioratus de Wigornia*, 1–1377. Vol. V.:—*Index and Glossary*. Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registry of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. *MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS*. From MSS. in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

8. *CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST*. Vol. I.:—*ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI*. Vol. II.:—*EPISTOLÆ CANTUARIENSES*; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in Decembar 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. *RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE*, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. I. Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. Vol. III., 1422–1431. Edited by Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A. 1864–1879. Vol. IV. 1431–1443. Edited by Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-law. 1884.

40. *A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN. NOW CALLED ENGLAND*, by JOHN DE WAURIN. Albina to 688. (Translation



of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471 after the second deposition of Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Vols. III., IV., V., VI., VII., VIII., and IX. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D., Norrisian Professor of Divinity, Vicar of St. Edward's, Fellow of St. Catharine's College, and late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865-1886.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVRE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livre de Reis de Engleterre." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French. It is supposed that Peter of Ickham was the supposed author.

43. CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant-Keeper of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866-1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067-1253. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Manuscript Department of British Museum. 1866-1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed



the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the "Historia Major." The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. *LIBER MONASTERII DE HYDA: A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER, 455-1023. Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq. 1866.*

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde Chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements, which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. *CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, from the EARLIEST TIMES to 1135; and SUPPLEMENT, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150. Edited, with Translation, by WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.*

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are, the invasions of foreigners, and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. *THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I. Vols. I. and II. Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1866-1868.*

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first, is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum;" in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, to the death of Henry III.; in the third, a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. *THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, OR THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN. Edited, with a Translation, by JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.*

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not an eye-witness, must have derived his information from eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. *GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169-1192, known under the name of BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH. Vols. I. and II. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.*



This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. *MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD* (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. *CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOVEDENE*. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868-1871.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (see No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree; showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work; it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. *WILLELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS MONACHI DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI QUINQUE*. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

William of Malmesbury's "Gesta Pontificum" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

53. *HISTORIC AND MUNICIPAL DOCUMENTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN, &c. 1172-1320*. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

A collection of original documents, elucidating mainly the history and condition of the municipal, middle, and trading classes under or in relation with the rule of England in Ireland,—a subject hitherto in almost total obscurity. Extending over the first hundred and fifty years of the Anglo-Norman settlement, the series includes charters, municipal laws and regulations, rolls of names of citizens and members of merchant-guilds, lists of commodities with their rates, correspondence, illustrations of relations between ecclesiastics and laity; together with many documents exhibiting the state of Ireland during the presence there of the Scots under Robert and Edward Bruce.

54. *THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, FROM 1041 to 1590*. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1871.

The original of this chronicle has passed under various names. The title of "Annals of Loch Cé" was given to it by Professor O'Curry, on the ground that it was transcribed for Brian Mac Dermot, an Irish chieftain, who resided on the island in Loch Cé, in the county of Roscommon. It adds much to the materials for the civil and ecclesiastical history of Ireland; and contains many curious references to English and foreign affairs, not noticed in any other chronicle.

55. *MONUMENTA JURIDICA. THE BLACK BOOK OF THE ADMIRALTY, WITH APPENDICES*. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1871-1876.

This book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy, and was probably compiled for the use of the Lord High Admiral of England. Selden calls it the "jewel of the Admiralty Records." Prynne ascribes to the Black Book the same authority in the Admiralty as the Black and Red Rocks have in the Court of Exchequer, and most English writers on maritime law recognize its importance.



56. MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VI.:—OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., AND BISHOP OF BATH AND WELLS. *Edited, from a MS. in the Archiepiscopal Library at Lambeth, with an Appendix of Illustrative Documents, by the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.* Vols. I. and II. 1872.

These curious volumes are of a miscellaneous character, and were probably compiled under the immediate direction of Beckynton before he had attained to the Episcopate. They contain many of the Bishop's own letters, and several written by him in the King's name; also letters to himself while Royal Secretary, and others addressed to the King. This work elucidates some points in the history of the nation during the first half of the fifteenth century.

57. MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS, MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI, CHRONICA MAJORA. Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067 to A.D. 1216. Vol. III. A.D. 1216 to A.D. 1239. Vol. IV. A.D. 1240 to A.D. 1247. Vol. V. A.D. 1248 to A.D. 1259. Vol. VI. Additamenta. Vol. VII. Index. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registry of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.* 1872–1884.

This work contains the "Chronica Majora" of Matthew Paris, one of the most valuable and frequently consulted of the ancient English Chronicles. It is published from its commencement, for the first time. The editions by Archbishop Parker, and William Wats, severally begin at the Norman Conquest.

58. MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA.—THE HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS OF WALTER OF COVENTRY. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.* 1872–1873.

This work, now printed in full for the first time, has long been a *desideratum* by Historical Scholars. The first portion, however, is not of much importance, being only a compilation from earlier writers. The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable and interesting.

59. THE ANGLO-LATIN SATIRICAL POETS AND EPIGRAMMATISTS OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres).* 1872

The Poems contained in these volumes have long been known and appreciated as the best satires of the age in which their authors flourished, and were deservedly popular during the 13th and 14th centuries.

60. MATERIALS FOR A HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VII., FROM ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by the Rev. WILLIAM CAMPBELL, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools.* 1873–1877.

These volumes are valuable as illustrating the acts and proceedings of Henry VII. on ascending the throne, and shadow out the policy he afterwards adopted.

61. HISTORICAL PAPERS AND LETTERS FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society.* 1873.

The documents in this volume illustrate, for the most part, the general history of the north of England, particularly in its relation to Scotland.

62. REGISTRUM PALATINUM DUNELMENSE. THE REGISTER OF RICHARD DE KELLAWE, LORD PALATINE AND BISHOP OF DURHAM; 1311–1316. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.* 1873–1878.

Bishop Kellawe's Register contains the proceedings of his prelacy, both lay and ecclesiastical, and is the earliest Register of the Palatinate of Durham.

63. MEMORIALS OF SAINT DUNSTAN, ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY. *Edited, from various MSS., by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.* 1874.

This volume contains several lives of Archbishop Dunstan, one of the most celebrated Primates of Canterbury. They open various points of Historical and Literary interest, without which our knowledge of the period would be more incomplete than it is at present.



64. *CHRONICON ANGLIÆ, AB ANNO DOMINI 1328 USQUE AD ANNUM 1388, AUCTORE MONACHO QUODAM SANCTI ALBANI.* Edited by EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, Esq., Barrister-at-Law, and Assistant-Keeper of the Manuscripts in the British Museum. 1874.

This chronicle gives a circumstantial history of the close of the reign of Edward III. which has hitherto been considered lost.

65. *THÓMAS SAGA ERKIBYSKUPS. A LIFE OF ARCHBISHOP THOMAS BECKET, IN ICELANDIC.* Vols. I. and II. Edited, with *English Translation, Notes, and Glossary* by M. EIRÍKR MAGNÚSSON, M.A., Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge. 1875-1884.

This work is derived from the Life of Becket written by Benedict of Peterborough, and apparently supplies the missing portions in Benedict's biography.

66. *RADULPHI DE COGGESHALL CHRONICON ANGLICANUM.* Edited by the REV. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A. 1875.

This volume contains the "*Chronicon Anglicanum*," by Ralph of Coggleshall, the "*Libellus de Expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum*," usually ascribed to the same author, and other pieces of an interesting character.

67. *MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF THOMAS BECKET, ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.* Vols. I., II., III., IV., V., and VI. Edited by the REV. JAMES CRAIGIE ROBERTSON, M.A., Canon of Canterbury. 1875-1883. Vol. VII. Edited by JOSEPH BRIGSTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. 1885.

This publication comprises all contemporary materials for the history of Archbishop Thomas Becket. The first volume contains the life of that celebrated man, and the miracles after his death, by William, a monk of Canterbury. The second, the life by Benedict of Peterborough; John of Salisbury; Alan of Tewkesbury; and Edward Grim. The third, the life by William Fitzstephen; and Herbert of Bosham. The fourth, anonymous lives, *Quadrilogus*, &c. The fifth, sixth, and seventh, the Epistles, and known letters.

68. *RADULFI DE DICETO DECANI LUNDONIENSIS OPERA HISTORICA. THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF MASTER RALPH DE DICETO, DEAN OF LONDON.* Vols. I. and II. Edited, from the *Original Manuscripts*, by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1876.

The Historical Works of Ralph de Diceto are some of the most valuable materials for British History. The *Abbreviationes Chronicorum* extend from the Creation to 1147, and the *Ymagines Historiarum* to 1201.

69. *ROLL OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE KING'S COUNCIL IN IRELAND, FOR A PORTION OF THE 16TH YEAR OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD II. 1392-93.* Edited by the REV. JAMES GRAVES, A.B. 1877.

This Roll throws considerable light on the History of Ireland at a period little known. It seems the only document of the kind extant.

70. *HENRICI DE BRACON DE LEGIBUS ET CONSUEUDINIBUS ANGLIÆ LIBRI QUINQUE IN VARIOS TRACTATUS DISTINCTI. AD DIVERSORUM ET VETUSTISSIMORUM CODICUM COLLATIONEM TYPIS VULGATI.* Vols. I., II., III., IV., V., and VI. Edited by SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1878-1883.

This is a new edition of Bracton's celebrated work, collated with MSS. in the British Museum; the Libraries of Lincoln's Inn, Middle Temple, and Gray's Inn; Bodelian Library, Oxford; the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris; &c.

71. *THE HISTORIANS OF THE CHURCH OF YORK, AND ITS ARCHBISHOPS.* Vols. I. and II. Edited by JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1879-1886.

This will form a complete "*Corpus Historicum Eboracense*," a work very much needed, and of great value to the Historical Inquirer.

72. *REGISTRUM MALMESBURIENSE. THE REGISTER OF MALMESBURY ABBEY; PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE.* Vols. I. and II. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield; and CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A. 1879, 1880.

This work illustrates many curious points of history, the growth of society, the distribution of land, the relations of landlord and tenant, national customs, &c.

73. *HISTORICAL WORKS OF GERVASE OF CANTERBURY.* Vols. I. and II. *THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF STEPHEN, HENRY II., and RICHARD I., BY GERVASE, THE MONK OF CANTERBURY.* Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D.; Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; &c. 1879, 1880.



The Historical Works of Gervase of Canterbury are of great importance as regards the questions of Church and State, during the period in which he wrote. This work was printed by Twysden, in the "*Historiæ Anglicanæ Scriptores X.*," more than two centuries ago. The present edition has received critical examination and illustration.

74. *HENRICI ARCHIDIACONI HUNTENDUNENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM. THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH, BY HENRY, ARCHDEACON OF HUNTINGDON, from A.D. 55 to A.D. 1154, in Eight Books. Edited by THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1879.*

Henry of Huntingdon's work was first printed by Sir Henry Savile, in 1596, in his "*Scriptores post Bedam*," and reprinted at Frankfort in 1601. Both editions are very rare and inaccurate. The first five books of the History were published in 1848 in the "*Monumenta Historica Britannica*," which is out of print. The present volume contains the whole of the manuscript of Huntingdon's History in eight books, collated with a manuscript lately discovered at Paris.

75. *THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF SYMEON OF DURHAM. Vols. I. and II. Edited by THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq., M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1882-1885.*

The first volume of this edition of the Historical Works of Symeon of Durham, contains the "*Historia Dunelmensis Ecclesiæ*," and other Works. The second volume contains the "*Historia Regum*," &c.

76. *CHRONICLES OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD I. AND EDWARD II. Vols. I. and II. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D., Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, &c. 1882, 1883.*

The first volume of these Chronicles contains the "*Annales Londonienses*" and the "*Annales Paulini*:" the second, I.—*Commendatio Lamentabilis in Transitu magni Regis Edwardi*. II.—*Gesta Edwardi de Carnarvan Auctore Cancnico Bridlingtoniensi*. III.—*Monachi cujusdam Malmesberiensis Vita, Edwardi II.* IV.—*Vita et Mors Edwardi II. Conscripta a Thoma de la Moore.*

77. *REGISTRUM EPISTOLARUM FRATRIS JOHANNIS PECKHAM, ARCHIEPISCOPI CANTUARIENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A., 1882-1886.*

These Letters are of great value for illustrating English Ecclesiastical History.

78. *REGISTER OF S. OSMUND. Edited by the Rev. W. H. RICH JONES, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon. Vols. I. and II. 1883, 1884.*

This Register, of which a complete copy is here printed for the first time, is among the most ancient, and certainly the most treasured, of the muniments of the Bishops of Salisbury. It derives its name from containing the statutes, rules, and orders made or compiled by S. Osmund, to be observed in the Cathedral and diocese of Salisbury. The first 19 folios contain the "*Consuetudinary*," the exposition, as regards ritual, of the "*Use of Sarum*."

79. *CHARTULARY OF THE ANCIENT BENEDICTINE ABBEY OF RAMSEY, from the MS. in the Public Record Office. Vols. I. and II. 1884, 1886. Edited by WILLIAM HENRY HART, Esq., F.S.A., and the Rev. PONSONBY ANNESLEY LYONS.*

This Chartulary of the Ancient Benedictine Monastery of Ramsey, Huntingdonshire, came to the Crown on the Dissolution of Monasteries, was afterwards preserved in the Stone Tower, Westminster Hall, and thence transferred to the Public Record Office.

80. *CHARTULARIES OF ST. MARY'S ABBEY, DUBLIN, &c., preserved in the Bodleian Library and British Museum. Edited by JOHN THOMAS GILBERT, Esq., F.S.A., M.R.I.A. Vols. I. & II. 1884 and 1885.*

These Chartularies, published for the first time, are the only documents of that description known to exist of the ancient establishments of the Cistercian Order in Ireland; two being of St. Mary's Abbey, Dublin, and one of the House at Dunbrody, Wexford. One Chartulary is in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, together with that of Dunbrody; the second is in the British Museum.

81. *EADMERI HISTORIA NOVORUM IN ANGLIA, ET OPUSCULA DUO DE VITA SANCTI ANSELMI ET QUIBUSDAM MIRACULIS EJUS. 1884. Edited by the Rev. MARTIN RULE, M.A.*

This volume contains the "*Historiæ Novorum in Anglia*," of Eadmer; his treatise "*De Vita et conversatione Anselmi Archiepiscopi Cantuariensis*," and a Tract entitled "*Quaedam Parva Descriptio Miraculorum gloriosi Patris Anselmi Cantuariensis*."



82. CHRONICLES OF THE REIGNS OF STEPHEN, HENRY II., AND RICHARD I. Vols. I. II., and III., 1884-1886. *Edited by* RICHARD HOWLETT, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-law.  
Vol. I. contains Books I.-IV. of the "Historia Rerum Anglicarum" of William of Newburgh; Vol. II. contains Book V. of that work, the continuation of the same to A.D. 1298, and the "Draco Normannicus" of Etienne de Rouen.  
Vol. III. contains the "Gesta Stephani Regis," the Chronicle of Richard of Hexham, the "Relatio de Standardo" of St. Aelred of Rievaulx, the poem of Jordan Fantosme, and the Chronicle of Richard of Devizes.
83. CHRONICLE OF THE ANCIENT ABBEY OF RAMSEY, from the Chartulary of that Abbey, in the Public Record Office. 1886. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM DUNN MACRAY, M.A., F.S.A., Rector of Ducklington, Oxon.  
This Chronicle forms part of the Chartulary of the Abbey of Ramsey, preserved in the Public Record Office (*see* No. 79).
84. CHRONICA ROGERI DE WENDOVER, SIVE FLORES HISTORIARUM. Vol. I. *Edited by* HENRY GAY HEWLETT, Esq., Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue.  
This edition gives that portion only of Roger of Wendover's Chronicle which can be accounted an original authority.
85. THE REGISTERS OF THE MONASTERY OF CHRIST CHURCH, CANTERBURY. *Edited by* JOSEPH BRIGSTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. Vol. I., 1887.
86. THE METRICAL CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER. *Edited by* WILLIAM ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. Parts I. and II., 1887.
87. CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE. *Edited by* FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law. Parts I and II. 1887.

### *In the Press.*

- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* Sir GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, D.C.L., Oxon., and M. GUDBRAND VIGFUSSON, M.A. Vols. I.—IV.
- LESTORIE DES ENGLIS SOLUM GEFREI GAIMAR. *Edited by* the late Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records; *continued and translated by* CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A. Vols. I. and II.
- THE TRIPARTITE LIFE OF ST. PATRICK, with other documents relating to that Saint. *Edited by* WHITLEY STOKES, Esq., LL.D., D.C.L., Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford; and Corresponding Member of the Institute of France. Parts I. and II.
- CHARTULARY OF THE ANCIENT BENEDICTINE ABBEY OF RAMSEY, from the MS. in the Public Record Office. Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM HENRY HART, Esq., F.S.A., and the Rev. PONSONBY ANNESLEY LYONS.
- WILLELMI MONACHI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE REGUM GESTIS ANGLORUM, LIBRI V.; ET HISTORIÆ NOVELLÆ, LIBRI III. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D., Bishop of Chester. Vols. I. and II.
- CHARTERS AND DOCUMENTS, ILLUSTRATING THE HISTORY OF THE CATHEDRAL AND CITY OF SARUM, 1100-1300; forming an Appendix to the Register of S. Osmund. Vol. III. *Edited by* the Rev. W. H. RICH JONES, M.A., F.S.A., Canon of Salisbury, Vicar of Bradford-on-Avon.
- A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN NOW CALLED ENGLAND, BY JOHN DE WAURIN. 1399-1422. (Translation of Vol. II). *Edited and translated by* the late Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq., F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.
- FLORES HISTORIARUM, PER MATTHÆUM WESTMONASTERIENSEM COLLECTI. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registry of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.
- RANULF DE GLANVILL; TRACTATUS DE LEGIBUS ET CONSUECUDINIBUS ANGLIÆ, &c. *Edited and translated by* Sir TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L.



CHRONICLE OF ADAM MURIMUTH, with the CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF AVESBURY.  
*Edited by* EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, Esq., Keeper and Egerton Librarian  
of the Manuscript Department in the British Museum.

YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD III. *Edited and translated by* LUKE OWEN  
PIKE, Esq., M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.

### *In Progress.*

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT  
BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. IV.; 1327, &c. *Edited by* the late Sir THOMAS  
DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records, and C. TRICE  
MARTIN, Esq., B.A., F.S.A.

THE TREATISE "DE PRINCIPUM INSTRUCTIONE," of GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS; with an  
Index to the first four volumes of the "Works of Giraldus Cambrensis,"  
edited by the Rev. J. S. Brewer. *Edited by* GEORGE F. WARNER, Esq., of  
the Department of MSS., British Museum.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUEs ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A  
PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. V. 1443-1461.  
*Edited by* Sir WILLIAM HARDY, F.S.A., and EDWARD L. C. P. HARDY, Esq.,  
F.S.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law.

THE RED BOOK OF THE EXCHEQUER, preserved in the Public Record Office.  
*Edited by* WALFORD DAKING SELBY, Esq., of the Public Record Office.

ANNALS OR MEMORIALS OF ST. EDMONDSBURY. *Edited by* THOMAS ARNOLD, Esq.,  
M.A., of University College, Oxford.

CHRONICLE OF HENRY KNIGHTON, Canon of Leicester, to the death of RICHARD II.  
*Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D.

LEXICON GEOGRAPHICUM. From a Manuscript of the 14th century. *Edited by*  
FRANK SCOTT HAYDON, Esq., B.A., Assistant Keeper of the Public Records.

CHRONICA ROGERI DE WENDOVER, SIVE FLORES HISTORIARUM. *Edited by* HENRY  
GAY HEWLETT, Esq., Keeper of the Records of the Land Revenue. Vol. II.

THE REGISTERS OF THE MONASTERY OF CHRIST CHURCH, CANTERBURY. *Edited by*  
JOSEPH BRIGSTOCKE SHEPPARD, Esq., LL.D. Vol. II.

### PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS. &c.

[In boards or cloth.]

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Hen. III.—Edw. III.  
*Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). 12s. 6d. each.

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Hen. III.—Ric.  
III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Folio (1821—1828):  
Vol. 3, 21s.; Vol. 4, 24s.

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4.  
*Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), 18s.

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon.  
GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), 18s.

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS.  
Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). 21s.

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS.  
*Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4), 21s.

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN  
CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, folio (1819—  
1828). 31s. 6d. each; Indices, 30s. each.



- VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817–1834). 25s. each. The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENS ASSERVATI. 19 Edw. I.—Hen. VIII. *Edited by* D. MACPHERSON, J. CALEY, W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and Rev. T. H. HORNE. Vol. 2. folio (1818). 21s.
- FÆDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FÆDERA, New Edition, folio. Vol. 3, Part 2, 1361—1377 (1830): Vol. 4, 1377—1383 (1869). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. Vol. 3, Part 2, 21s.; Vol. 4, 6s.
- DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to Pleadings, &c., Hen. VII.—13 Eliz. Part 4, Calendar to Pleadings, to end of Eliz. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio. Part 3 (or Vol. 2), 31s. 6d.; Part 4 (or Vol. 3), 21s.
- CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, ELIZ.; with Examples of Proceedings from Ric. II. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vol. 3 (1832), folio, 21s.
- PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, with Records and Muniments relating to Suit and Service to Parliament, &c. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio. Vol. 2, Div. 1, Edw. II., 21s.; Vol. 2, Div. 2, 21s.; Vol. 2, Div. 3, 42s.
- ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. Vol. 1, 63s.; Vol. 2, 18s.
- PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Ric. II.—33 Hen. VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837). 14s. each.
- ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* T. DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), 31s. 6d. The Introduction, separately, 8vo. 9s.
- ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835). 28s.
- ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; 1417—1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 12s. 6d.
- ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LOND. ASSERVATI, temp. Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835). 18s.
- EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836); Vol. 1, 14s.; Vol. 2, 18s.
- FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIA DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844); Vol. 1, 8s. 6d.; Vol. 2, 2s. 6d.
- ANCIENT CALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; with Documents illustrating its History. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836). 42s.
- DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and Transactions between Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837). 18s.
- ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 30s.
- REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831—1837. 1 Vol. folio (1837). 8s.
- REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838), 31s. 6d.



- ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, with Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry I.; Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from 7th to 10th century; and Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), 40s. 2 Vols. royal 8vo, 30s.
- ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good, modified by Regulations prior to the Conquest by Edward I.; and anomalous Laws, principally of Institutions which continued in force. With Translation. Also, Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), 44s. 2 Vols. royal 8vo., 36s.
- ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6s.
- THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE, 2, 3, 4 HEN. II., 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 4s. 6d.
- THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE, 1 RIC. I., 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844). 6s.
- DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, from the Records of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844). 5s. 6d.
- MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846). 2s. 6d.
- REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REG. SCOT. in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). 10s. 6d.
- ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. Folio) 1814—1875). *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. Vol. 1, 42s. Vols. 5 and 6 (in three Parts), 21s. each Part; Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, 10s. 6d. each; Vol. 12 (Index), 63s. Or, 12 Volumes in 13, 12l. 12s.
- ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). 10s. 6d.
- ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII), 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). 10s. 6d.
- ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer, containing Payments out of the Revenue, 44 Edw. III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), 35s. Or, royal 8vo., 25s.
- ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, James I.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), 30s. Or, royal 8vo., 21s.
- ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, Henry III.—Henry VI.; from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), 40s. Or, royal 8vo., 30s.
- HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853). 12s.
- HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. Henry VIII.—Anne (1509—1714). A Book of Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856). 40s.
- STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols. 4to. (1830—1852), 10s. 6d. each.
- Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.  
 Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.  
 Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.  
 Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.



## WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

---

**DOMESDAY BOOK**, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, under the Superintendence of W. BASEVI SANDERS, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861-1863), boards. Price 8s. to 1l. 3s. each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 20l. (*The edition in two volumes is out of print.*)

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England\* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The Commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in the demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late King; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester, and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director-General of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

---

\* For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.



**FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE**, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel Sir HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. *Price*, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16s.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865. (*Out of print.*)

Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.) 1866.

Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.

Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters, and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580-3.

**FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS.** Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Lieut.-General J. CAMERON, R.E., C.B., F.R.S., and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part I. *Price* 2l. 10s.

The Anglo-Saxon MSS. represented in this volume form the earlier portions of the collection of archives belonging to the Dean and Chapter of Canterbury, and consist of a series of 25 charters, deeds, and wills, commencing with a record of proceedings at the first Synodal Council of Clovestho in 742, and terminating with the first part of a tripartite cheirograph, whereby Thurston conveyed to the Church of Canterbury land at Wimbish in Essex, in 1049, the sixth year of the reign of Edward the Confessor.

**FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS.** Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Major-General A. COOKE, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part II. *Price* 3l. 10s.

(Also, separately. Edward the Confessor's Charter. *Price* 2s.)

The originals of the Fac-similes contained in this volume belong to the Deans and Chapters of Westminster, Exeter, Wells, Winchester, and Worcester; the Marquis of Bath, the Earl of Ilchester, Winchester College, Her Majesty's Public Record Office, Bodleian Library, Somersetshire Archæological and National History Society's Museum in Taunton Castle, and William Salt Library at Stafford. They consist of charters and other documents granted by, or during the reigns of, Baldred, Æthelred, Offa, and Burgred, Kings of Mercia; Uhtred of the Huiccas, Ceadwalla and Ini of Wessex; Æthelwulf, Eadward the Elder, Æthelstan, Eadmund the First, Eadred, Eadwig, Eadgar, Eadward the Second, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Eadward the Confessor, and William the Conqueror, embracing altogether a period of nearly four hundred years.

**FAC-SIMILES OF ANGLO-SAXON MANUSCRIPTS.** Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, upon the recommendation of the Master of the Rolls, by the DIRECTOR-GENERAL of the ORDNANCE SURVEY, Colonel R. H. STOTHERD, R.E., C.B., and collected and edited by W. BASEVI SANDERS, Assistant Keeper of Her Majesty's Records. Part III. *Price* 3l. 10s.

This volume contains fac-similes of the Ashburnham collection of Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., including King Alfred's Will. The MSS. represented in it, range from A.D. 697 to A.D. 1161, being charters, wills, deeds, and reports of Synodal transactions during the reigns of Kings Wihtred of Kent, Offa, Eardwulf, Coenwulf, Cuthred, Beornwulf, Æthelwulf, Ælfred, Eadward the Elder, Eadmund, Eadred, Queen Eadgifu, and Kings Eadgar, Æthelred the Second, Cnut, Henry the First, and Henry the Second. In addition to these are two belonging to the Marquis of Anglesey, one of them being the Foundation Charter of Burton Abbey by Æthelred the Second with the testament of its great benefactor Wulfric.



# HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION.

---

REPORTS OF THE ROYAL COMMISSIONERS APPOINTED TO  
INQUIRE WHAT PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS BELONGING  
TO PRIVATE FAMILIES AND INSTITUTIONS ARE EXTANT  
WHICH WOULD BE OF UTILITY IN THE ILLUSTRATION OF  
HISTORY, CONSTITUTIONAL LAW, SCIENCE, AND GENERAL  
LITERATURE.

| Date.                         | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price.       |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|--------------|
| 1870<br>(Re-printed<br>1874.) | <p>FIRST REPORT, WITH APPENDIX -</p> <p>Contents :—</p> <p>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Abingdon, and other Corporations, &amp;c.</p> <p>SCOTLAND. Advocates' Library, Glasgow Corporation, &amp;c.</p> <p>IRELAND. Dublin, Cork, and other Corporations, &amp;c.</p>                                                                                                              | f'cap | C. 55            | s. d.<br>1 6 |
| 1871                          | <p>SECOND REPORT, WITH APPENDIX, AND INDEX TO THE FIRST AND SECOND REPORTS - - - - -</p> <p>Contents :—</p> <p>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Oxford Colleges; Monastery of Dominican Friars at Woodchester, Duke of Bedford, Earl Spencer, &amp;c.</p> <p>SCOTLAND. Aberdeen and St. Andrew's Universities, &amp;c.</p> <p>IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde; Dr. Lyons, &amp;c.</p>      | „     | C. 441           | 3 10         |
| 1872                          | <p>THIRD REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - - -</p> <p>Contents :—</p> <p>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Cambridge Colleges; Stonyhurst College; Bridgewater and other Corporations; Duke of Northumberland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Marquis of Bath, &amp;c.</p> <p>SCOTLAND. University of Glasgow; Duke of Montrose, &amp;c.</p> <p>IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde; Black Book of Limerick, &amp;c.</p> | „     | C. 673           | 6 0          |



| Date. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price.       |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|--------------|
|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |       |                  | <i>s. d.</i> |
| 1873  | FOURTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX.<br>PART I. - - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Westminster Abbey; Cambridge and Oxford Colleges; Cinque Ports, Hythe, and other Corporations, Marquis of Bath, Earl of Denbigh, &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, &c.<br>IRELAND. Trinity College, Dublin; Marquis of Ormonde.                                             | f'cap | C. 857           | 6 8          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | „     | C. 857 i.        | 2 6          |
| 1876  | FIFTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Dean and Chapter of Canterbury; Rye, Lydd, and other Corporations, Duke of Sutherland, Marquis of Lansdowne, Reginald Cholmondeley, Esq., &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Earl of Aberdeen, &c.                                                                        | „     | C. 1432          | 7 0          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | „     | C. 1432 i.       | 3 6          |
| 1877  | SIXTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX. PART I. -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Oxford and Cambridge Colleges; Lambeth Palace; Black Book of the Archdeacon of Canterbury; Bridport, Wallingford, and other Corporations; Lord Leconfield, Sir Reginald Graham, Sir Henry Ingilby, &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Duke of Argyll, Earl of Moray, &c.<br>IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde. | „     | C. 1745          | 8 6          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. INDEX - - -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | „     | C. 2102          | 1 10         |
| 1879  | SEVENTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX.<br>PART I. - - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>House of Lords; County of Somerset; Earl of Egmont, Sir Frederick Graham, Sir Harry Verney, &c.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | „     | C. 2340          | 7 6          |
|       | DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>Duke of Athole, Marquis of Ormonde, S. F. Livingstone, Esq., &c.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | „     | C. 2340 i.       | 3 6          |
| 1881  | EIGHTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>List of collections examined, 1869–1880.<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Duke of Marlborough; Magdalen College, Oxford; Royal College of Physicians; Queen Anne's                                                                                                                                  | „     | C. 3040          | 8 6          |



| Date. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price. |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|--------|
|       | Bounty Office; Corporations of Chester, Leicester, &c.<br>IRELAND. Marquis of Ormonde, Lord Emly, The O'Connor Don, Trinity College, Dublin, &c.                                                                                                                      |       |                  | s. d.  |
|       | DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>Duke of Manchester.                                                                                                                                                                                            | fcap  | C. 3040 i.       | 1 9    |
|       | DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>Earl of Ashburnham.                                                                                                                                                                                           | „     | C. 3040 ii.      | 1 4    |
| 1883  | CALENDAR OF THE MANUSCRIPTS OF THE MARQUIS OF SALISBURY, K.G. PART I.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 8vo.  | C. 3777          | 3 5    |
| „     | NINTH REPORT, WITH APPENDIX AND INDEX. PART I. - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>St. Paul's and Canterbury Cathedrals; Eton College; Carlisle, Yarmouth, Canterbury, and Barnstaple Corporations, &c.                                                                         | fcap  | C. 3773          | 5 2    |
|       | DITTO. PART II. APPENDIX AND INDEX -<br>Contents :—<br>ENGLAND. House of Lords; Earl of Leicester; C. Pole Gell, Alfred Morrison, Esquires, &c.<br>SCOTLAND. Lord Elphinstone, H. C. Maxwell Stuart, Esq., &c.<br>IRELAND. Duke of Leinster, Marquis of Drogheda, &c. | „     | C. 3773 i.       | 6 3    |
|       | DITTO. PART III. APPENDIX AND INDEX - - - -<br>Contents :—<br>Mrs. Stopford Sackville.                                                                                                                                                                                | „     | C. 3773 ii.      | 1 7    |
| 1885  | TENTH REPORT - - - -<br>This is introductory to the following :—                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 8vo.  | C. 4548          | 0 3½   |
| „     | (1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>The Earl of Eglinton, Sir J. S. Maxwell, Bart., and C. S. H. D. Moray, C. F. Weston Underwood, G. W. Digby, Esquires.                                                                                                                  | „     | C. 4575          | 3 7    |
| „     | (2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>Wells Cathedral.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | „     | C. 4576 ii.      | 2 0    |
| „     | (3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>The Family of Gawdy, formerly of Norfolk.                                                                                                                                                                                              | „     | C. 4576 iii.     | 1 4    |
|       | (4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - -<br>The Earl of Westmorland, Captain Stewart, Lord Muncaster. Shropshire Collections, &c. PART IV.                                                                                                                                         | „     | C. 4576          | 3 6    |



| Date. | —                                                                                                                                                                                          | Size. | Sessional Paper. | Price.          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------------|-----------------|
| -     | (5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>The Marquis of Ormonde, Earl of Fingall, Corporations of Galway, Waterford, the Sees of Dublin and of Ossory, Archives of the Jesuits in Ireland. PART V. | 8vo.  | 4576 i.          | - s. d.<br>2 10 |
| -     | (6.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>Marquis of Abergavenny, Lord Braye, &c. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                              | —     | —                | —               |
| -     | ELEVENTH REPORT. <i>In the Press.</i><br>This is introductory to the following :—                                                                                                          | —     | —                | —               |
| 1887  | (1.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>Salvetti Correspondence. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                             | —     | —                | —               |
| 1887  | (2.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>The House of Lords. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                                  | —     | —                | —               |
| -     | (3.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>The Corporations of Southampton and Lynn. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                            | —     | —                | —               |
| -     | (4.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>The Marquess Townshend. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                              | —     | —                | —               |
| -     | (5.) APPENDIX AND INDEX - - -<br>The Earl of Dartmouth. <i>In the Press.</i>                                                                                                               | —     | —                | —               |

Stationery Office,  
July 1887.



## ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS.

REPORTS Nos. 1-22, IN FOLIO, PUBLISHED BETWEEN 1840  
AND 1861, ARE NO LONGER ON SALE. SUBSEQUENT  
REPORTS ARE IN OCTAVO.

| Date. | Number<br>of<br>Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1862  | 23                      | Subjects of Research by Literary Inquirers, 1852-1861.—Attendances at the various Record Offices, previously to the passing of the Public Record Act.                                                                                                                                                                                                   | s. d.<br>0 4 |
| 1863  | 24                      | List of Calendars, Indexes, &c., in the Public Record Office.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 0 7½         |
| 1864  | 25                      | Calendar of Crown Leases, 33-38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Bills and Answers, &c., Hen. VIII.—Ph. & Mary, for Cheshire and Flintshire.—List of Lords High Treasurers and Chief Commissioners of the Treasury, from Hen. VII.                                                                                                                                | 0 8          |
| 1865  | 26                      | List of Plans annexed to Inclosure Awards, 31 Geo. II.—7 Will. IV.—Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., Hen. VI.—Eliz., for Cheshire and Flintshire.—Calendar of Writs of General Livery, &c., for Cheshire, Eliz.—Charles I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. III. and Edw. I.—List of Documents photozincographed, Will. I.—Hen. VII. | 0 7          |
| 1866  | 27                      | List of Awards of Inclosure Commissioners.—References to Charters in the Cartæ Antiquæ and the Confirmation Rolls of Chancery, Ethelbert of Kent—James I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. II.—List of Documents photozincographed, Hen. VIII. and Edw. VI.                                                                      | 1 6          |
| 1867  | 28                      | Fees in the Public Record Office.—Calendar of Fines, Cheshire and Flintshire, Edw. I.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Edw. III.—List of Documents photozincographed, Mary and Eliz., and Scottish, Part I.—Table of Law Terms, from the Norman Conquest to 1 Will. IV.                                                               | 0 10½        |



| Date. | Number of Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1868  | 29                | Calendar of Royal Charters.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Richard II.—Hen. VII.—Durham Records, Letter and Report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | s. d.<br>0 9 |
| 1869  | 30                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory.—Durham Records, Inventory, Indexes to Kellawe's Register.—Calendar of Deeds, &c., on the Chester Plea Rolls, Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Decrees of Court of General Surveyors, 34–38 Hen. VIII.—Calendar of Royal Charters.—State Paper Office, Calendar of Documents relating to the History of, to 1800.—List of Documents photozincographed, Eliz.—Anne.—Tower of London. Index to Documents in custody of the Constable of.—Calendar of Dockets, &c., for Privy Seals, 1634–1711, in the British Museum. Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Venetian Ciphers. | 3 0          |
| 1870  | 31                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Royal Charters, Will. II.—Ric. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Chancery Enrolments; Cursitor's Records.—List of Officers of Palatinate of Chester, in Cheshire and Flintshire, and North Wales.—List of Sheriffs of England, 31 Hen. I. to 4 Edw. III.—List of Documents photozincographed, Scottish, Part II.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 2 3          |
| 1871  | 32                | Part I.—Report of the Commissioners on Carte Papers.—Calendarium Genealogicum, 1 & 2 Edw. II.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 2 2          |
| 1871  | --                | Part II.—Charities; Calendar of Trust Deeds enrolled on the Close Rolls of Chancery, subsequent to 9 Geo. II. c. xxxvi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 5 6          |
| 1872  | 33                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Venetian Transcripts.—Greek copies of the Athanasian Creed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 1 10         |
| 1873  | 34                | Parliamentary Petitions; Index to the Petitions to the King in Council.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—List of Documents photozincographed, Scottish, Part III.—Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 1 9          |
| 1874  | 35                | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—Palatinate of Lancaster; Inventory and Lists of Documents transferred to the Public Record Office.—Durham Records, Calendar of Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—List of Documents photozincographed, Irish, Part I.—Second Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 1 6          |



| Date. | Number<br>of<br>Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1875  | 36                      | Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Ancient Charters or Grants.—List of Documents photozincographed; Irish, Part II.—M. Armand Baschet's Report upon Documents in French Archives relating to British History.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, to end of reign of Hen. IV.                                         | s. d.<br>4 4 |
| 1876  | 37                      | Part I.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Ancient Rolls of the Chancery of the County Palatine.—M. Baschet's list of French Ambassadors, &c., in England, 1509–1714.                                                                                                                                                                          | 1 2          |
| 1876  | —                       | Part II.—Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester; Hen. V.—Hen. VII.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4 4          |
| 1877  | 38                      | Exchequer Records, Catalogue of Special Commissions, 1 Eliz. to 10 Vict., Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, 1 Eliz. to end of James I.—List of Representative Peers for Scotland and Ireland.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 4 3          |
| 1878  | 39                      | Calendar of Recognizance Rolls of the Palatinate of Chester, 1 Hen. VIII.—11 Geo. IV.—Exchequer Records, Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records; Calendar of Lancashire Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Third Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—M. Baschet's List of Despatches of French Ambassadors to England, 1509–1714. | 4 6          |
| 1879  | 40                      | Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission Commonwealth—James II.—Miscellaneous Records of Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer.—Durham Records, Calendar of the Cursitor's Records, Chancery Enrolments.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Ric. II.—21 Hen. VII.—Rules and Regulations respecting the public use of the Records.                                                                    | 3 0          |
| 1880  | 41                      | Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, William and Mary to George I.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Report from Rome.—List of Calendars, Indexes, &c. in the Public Record Office on 31st December 1879.                                                                                                                                                           | 4 8          |
| 1881  | 42                      | Calendar of Depositions taken by Commission, George II.—Calendar of Norman Rolls, Hen. V., Part II. and Glossary.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 1 Edw. I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4 0          |
| 1882  | 43                      | Calendar of Privy Seals, &c., 1–7 Charles I.—Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Court Rolls, Hen. III.—Geo. IV., Calendar of Privy Seals,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 3 10         |



| Date. | Number<br>of<br>Report. | Chief Contents of Appendices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Price.       |
|-------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
|       |                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <i>s. d.</i> |
| 1883  | 44                      | Ric. II.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 2 Edw. I.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Fourth Supplementary Report on the Shaftesbury Papers.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report on Libraries in Sweden.—Report on Papers relating to English History in the State Archives, Stockholm.—Report on Canadian Archives.                                                                                                                                |              |
| 1883  | 44                      | Calendar of Patent Rolls, 3 Edw. I.—Durham Records, Cursitor's Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Calendar of French Rolls, 1-10 Hen. V.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Report from Venice.—Transcripts from Paris.—Report from Rome.                                                                                                                                                                                            | 3 6          |
| 1884  | 45                      | Duchy of Lancaster Records, Inventory of Ministers' and Receivers' Accounts, Edw. I.—Geo. III.—Durham Records, Cursitor's Records, Inquisitions post Mortem, &c.—Treasury of the Receipt of the Exchequer, Calendar of Diplomatic Documents.—Anglo-Saxon Charters photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome and Stockholm.—Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Transcripts from Venice.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 4 Edw. I. | 4 3          |
| 1885  | 46                      | Presentations to Offices on the Patent Rolls, Charles II.—Anglo-Saxon Charters, &c., photozincographed.—Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome.—Second Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 5 Edw. I.—Catalogue of Venetian Manuscripts bequeathed by Mr. Rawdon Brown to the Public Record Office.                                                                                                                | 2 10         |
| 1886  | 47                      | Transcripts from Paris.—Reports from Rome.—Third Report on Archives of Denmark, &c.—List of Creations of Peers and Baronets, 1483-1646.—Calendar of Patent Rolls, 6 Edw. I.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 2 2          |
|       |                         | There have also been printed Indexes to Reports 1-22, and Reports 23-39.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |              |

*Public Record Office,  
January 1887.*



# SCOTLAND.

## CATALOGUE OF SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS

PUBLISHED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF

### THE LORD CLERK REGISTER OF SCOTLAND.

[OTHER WORKS RELATING TO SCOTLAND WILL BE FOUND AMONG THE PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, *see pp. 26-28.*]

1. CHRONICLES OF THE PICTS AND SCOTS, AND OTHER EARLY MEMORIALS OF SCOTTISH HISTORY. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Edited by* WILLIAM F. SKENE, LL.D. *Price* 10s. *Out of print.*
  2. LEDGER OF ANDREW HALYBURTON, CONSERVATOR OF THE PRIVILEGES OF THE SCOTCH NATION IN THE NETHERLANDS (1492-1503); TOGETHER WITH THE BOOKS OF CUSTOMS AND VALUATION OF MERCHANDISES IN SCOTLAND. *Edited by* COSMO INNES. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Price* 10s.
  3. DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE HISTORY OF SCOTLAND FROM THE DEATH OF KING ALEXANDER THE THIRD TO THE ACCESSION OF ROBERT BRUCE, from original and authentic copies in London, Paris, Brussels, Lille, and Ghent. In 2 Vols. royal 8vo., half bound (1870). *Edited by* Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON. *Price* 10s. *each.*
  4. ACCOUNTS OF THE LORD HIGH TREASURER OF SCOTLAND. Vol. 1, A.D. 1473-1498. *Edited by* THOMAS DICKSON. 1877. *Price* 10s.
  5. REGISTER OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF SCOTLAND. *Edited and arranged by* J. H. BURTON, LL.D. Vol. 1, 1545-1569. Vol. 2, 1569-1578. Vol. 3, A.D. 1578-1585. Vol. 4, A.D. 1585-1592. Vol. 5, 1592-1599. Vol. 6, 1599-1604. Vol. 7, 1604-1607. Vol. 8 in progress. *Edited by* DAVID MASSON, LL.D. 1877-1884. *Price* 15s. *each.*
  6. ROTULI SCACCARII REGUM SCOTORUM. THE EXCHEQUER ROLLS OF SCOTLAND Vol. 1, A.D. 1264-1359. Vol. 2, A.D. 1359-1379. *Edited by* JOHN STUART, LL.D., and GEORGE BURNETT, Lyon King of Arms. 1878-1880. Vol. 3, A.D. 1379-1406. Vol. 4, A.D. 1406-1436 (1880). Vol. 5, A.D. 1437-1454 (1882). Vol. 6, 1455-1460 (1883). Vol. 7, 1460-1469 (1884). Vol. 8, A.D. 1470-1479 (1885). Vol. 9, 1480-1487 Addenda, 1437-1487 [(1886)]. Vol. 10, 1488-1496. Vol. 11 in progress. *Edited by* GEORGE BURNETT. *Price* 10s. *each.*
  7. CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS RELATING TO SCOTLAND. *Edited by* JOSEPH BAIN. Vol. I (1881). Vol. II. 1272-1307 (1884). Vol. III. (in progress). *Price* 15s. *each.*
  8. REGISTER OF THE GREAT SEAL OF SCOTLAND. A.D. 1424-1513 (1882). A.D. 1513-1546 (1883). A.D. 1546-1580 (1886). A.D. 1580 (in progress). *Edited by* JAMES BALFOUR PAUL and J. M. THOMSON. *Price* 15s. *each.*
- FAC-SIMILES OF THE NATIONAL MSS. OF SCOTLAND. (*Out of print.*)  
Parts I., II., and III. *Price* 21s. *each.*

Stationery Office,  
July 1887.



# IRELAND.

---

## CATALOGUE OF IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS.

---

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT AND CLOSE ROLLS OF CHANCERY IN IRELAND. HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH. *Edited by* JAMES MORRIN, Royal 8vo. (1861-3). Vols. 1, 2, and 3. *Price* 11s. each.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF IRELAND.

Senchus Mor. (1865-1880.) Vols. 1, 2, 3, and 4. *Price* 10s. each.

Vol. 5 in progress.

Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. Unbound. *Price* 25s.

Abstracts of the Irish Patent Rolls of James I. With Supplement. *Price* 35s.

---

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE EARLIEST EXTANT SPECIMENS TO A.D. 1719. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, F.S.A., M.R.I.A. *Part* 1 is out of print. *Parts* II. and III. *Price* 42s. each. *Part* IV. 1. *Price* 5l. 5s. *Part* IV. 2. *Price* 4l. 10s.

This work forms a comprehensive Palæographic Series for Ireland. It furnishes characteristic specimens of the documents which have come down from each of the classes which, in past ages, formed principal elements in the population of Ireland, or exercised an influence in her affairs. With these reproductions are combined fac-similes of writings connected with eminent personages or transactions of importance in the annals of the country to the early part of the eighteenth century.

The specimens have been reproduced as nearly as possible in accordance with the originals, in dimensions, colouring, and general appearance. Characteristic examples of styles of writing and caligraphic ornamentation are, so far as practicable, associated with subjects of historic and linguistic interest. Descriptions of the various manuscripts are given by the Editor in the Introduction. The contents of the specimens are fully elucidated and printed in the original languages, opposite to the Fac-similes—line for line—without contractions—thus facilitating reference and aiding effectively those interested in palæographic studies.

In the work are also printed in full, for the first time, many original and important historical documents.

*Part* I. commences with the earliest Irish MSS. extant.

*Part* II.: From the Twelfth Century to A.D. 1299.

*Part* III.: From A.D. 1300 to end of reign of Henry VIII.

*Part* IV. 1.: From reign of Edward VI. to that of James I.

In *Part* IV. 2.—the work is carried down to the early part of the eighteenth century, with Index to the entire publication.

ACCOUNT OF FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS OF IRELAND. IN ONE VOLUME 8vo., WITH INDEX. *Price* 10s. *Parts* I. and II. together. *Price* 2s. 6d. *Part* II. *Price* 1s. 6d. *Part* III. *Price* 1s. *Part* IV. 1. *Price* 2s. *Part* IV. 2. *Price* 2s. 6d.

Stationery Office,  
January 1887.

---





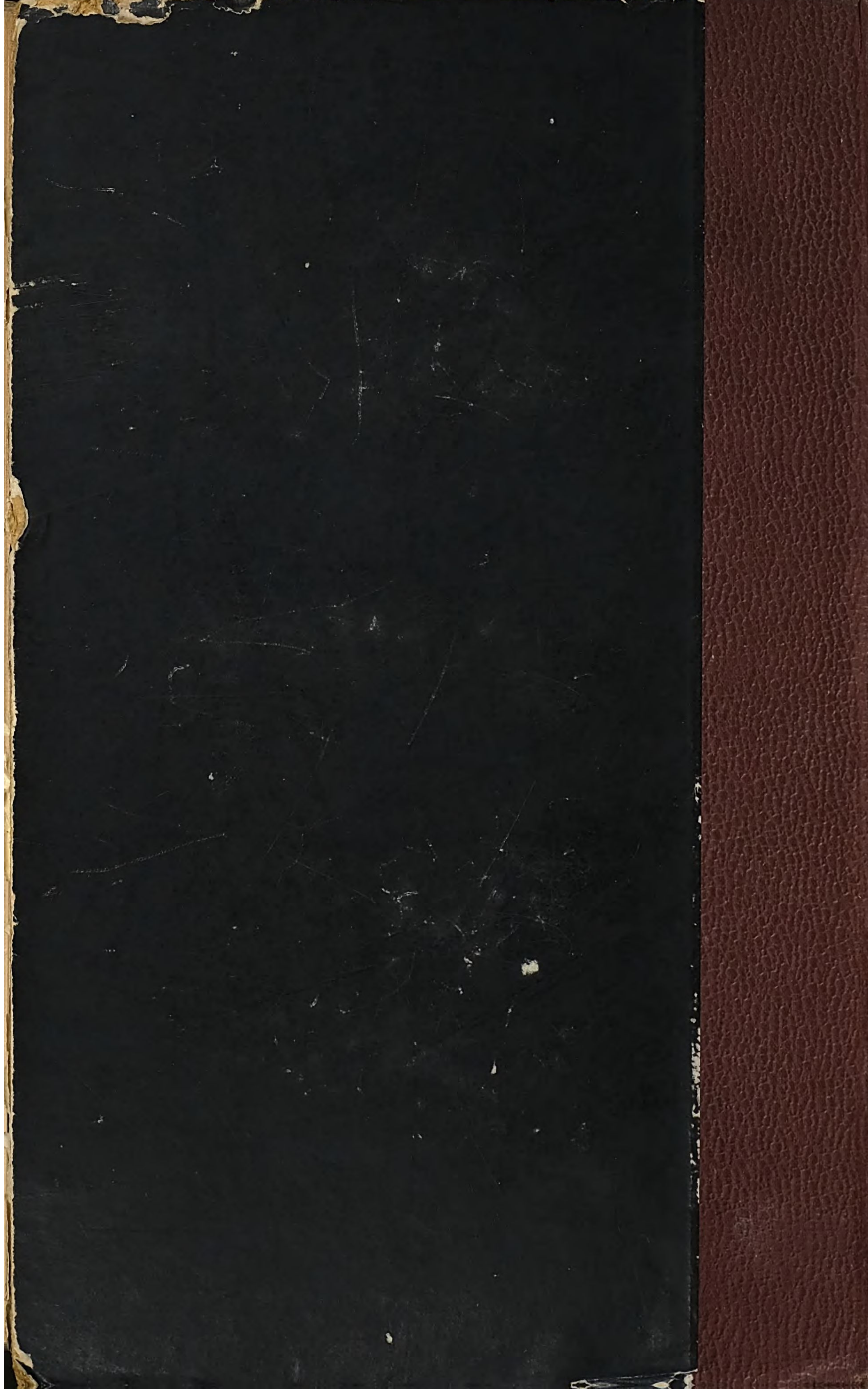














Robert Manning of Brunne

The Story of England by Robert Manning of Brunne, A. D. 1338 Edited from  
Mss. at Lambeth Palace and the Inner Temple, by Frederick J. Furnivall

Bd.: 1

London 1887

Brit. 485 xd-92,1

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11576606-5